280 d 25

A

Compleat History

OF THE

TURKS,

From their ORIGIN in the Year 755, to the Year 1718.

CONTAINING

The Rise, Growth, and Decay of that Empire, in its respective Periods, under their several KINGS and EMPERORS.

Collected not only from the best *European*, but also from *Oriental* Authors, never hitherto published in *English*.

Illustrated with the *Effigies*, curiously engraven, of all their *Kings* and *Emperors*, and of such famous *Generals*, &c. as have signaliz'd themselves in the Wars against them: As also with an exact MAP of the *Turkish* Empire.

To which are added,

I. Their Maxims of State and Religion.
II. A DICTIONARY explaining the Names and Nature of their Religious Sects, Civil and Military Offices, their Festivals, Rites, Customs, *&c.*
III. The Life of their Prophet *MAHOMET*.
IV. The ALCORAN at large, translated from the *Arabick* by the Sieur *De Ryer*, and now faithfully *English'd*.

In FOUR VOLUMES.

LONDON,

Printed by J. DARBY in *Bartholomew-Close*, for ANDR. BELL at the *Cross-Keys* and *Bible* in *Cornhil*, W. TAYLOR at the *Ship* in *Pater-noster-Row*, and JOHN OSBORNE at the *Oxford-Arms* in *Lombard-Street*. M. DCC. XIX.

THE PREFACE.

THE Turks have been a Nation not for many Ages past, that from an obscure Original become so famous for their Conquests and Warlike Atchievements, and of latter Years so remarkable for the terrible Overthrows and Losses they have sustain'd, that a Compleat History of the Rise, Progress, and Decay of their Empire, cannot but expect a kind Reception from the Intelligent Reader: and therefore as I take the nature of a Preface to be purely nothing else but to give a just Idea of the Treatise to ensue, and the Manner of the Performance, I shall without any impertinent Excursions, apply my self thereto with as much Brevity and Perspicuity as may be.

I am not unsensible of the great Pains taken by Mr. Knolles, Sir Roger Manley, and Sir Paul Ricaut, in their larger Volumes of the History of this Nation, and how much beholden I am to them for Assistance in the present Undertaking: But as I hope it will be allowed me, that their Labours are interspersed, and frequently interrupted, if not with many trifling things, yet certainly with such as are remote from the main Subject, whereby the Matter becomes loose and disjointed, the capturing of them is not only justifiable, but necessary, so as that the whole may seem entire and of a piece: And therein, amidst such great variety of Times and Actions, I have used my utmost to make the Connections appear easy and natural.

THE PREFACE.

THE Turks *have been a Nation now for many Ages past, that from an obscure Original became so fam'd for their Conquests and Warlike Atchievements, and of latter Years so remarkable for the terrible Overthrows and Losses they have sustain'd, that a Compleat History of the Rise, Progress, and Decay of their Empire, cannot but expect a kind Reception from the Intelligent Reader; and therefore as I take the nature of a Preface to be purely nothing else but to give a just Idea of the Treatise to ensue, and the Manner of the Performance, I shall, without any impertinent Excursions, apply my self thereto with as much Brevity and Perspicuity as may be.*

I am not unsensible of the great Pains taken by Mr. Knolles, *Sir* Roger Manley, *and Sir* Paul Ricaut, *in their larger Volumes of the History of this Nation, and how much beholden I am to them for Assistance in the present Undertaking: But as I hope it will be allowed me, that those Labours are interspersed, and frequently interrupted, if not with many trifling things, yet certainly with such as are remote from the main Subject, whereby the Matter becomes loose and disjointed; the castrating of them is not only justifiable, but necessary, so as that the whole may seem entire and of apiece: And herein, amidst such great variety of Times and Actions, I have used my utmost to make the Connections appear easy and natural.*

I acknowledge I have received great Satisfaction and Light from the learned Mr. Herbelot's Bibliotheque Orientale, in compiling this History; concerning which, I may by the way observe, the Oriental Library is an Abstract of all the Oriental Books, writ in Turkish, Arabick and Persick, that had been perused by him; from which he drew an Abridgment of the whole History of the Levant, which he has executed very happily, and runs thro all the Revolutions of Time from Adam to the Age he lived in. By the help of this useful Work, I have been enabled to clear several Obscurities and Inconsistencies relating to our Subject, that I was much grieved with; and I must freely own I had never been able to have compleated the Dictionary any thing tolerably to any body's Satisfaction, nor my own neither, had it not been for this excellent Author, from whom I have borrowed most of my Materials, and without which the whole Work must have been lame and defective.

But besides this useful Author, I have endeavour'd to improve my Design from all other Treatises I thought fit for my purpose; as for Lives, those of Tamerlane the Great, Scanderbeg, Serini, &c. from particular Sieges, as those of Rhodes, Malta, Candia, Vienna, Buda, &c. from Travels, as Sandys, Dubartas, Thevenot, Tavernier, Brown, &c. I met with some things not unuseful in Hackluit and Purchas's Voyages, in Smyth's State of the Ottoman Empire, and more particularly in the Noble Baptista Nani's History of Venice, in relation to the Reigns of Achmet I. Osman, Amurath IV. and Sultan Ibrahim. Busbequius I did not neglect to turn over, tho I found Knolles and Ricaut had done it long before me.

But I am in a more special manner to take notice of the History of the Catholick League against the Turks, writ by the Illustrious Signior Garzoni, at the Command of the Republick of Venice, which is so distinguishable for noble Characters and Descriptions; and concerning which, and the preceding Histories of that State, it may not be amiss to observe, that after the determination of any considerable War, the Senate appoints one of their own Order to write the History of it, and to make it the more compleat and authentick, orders all the necessary Papers of State to be laid before him. Neither must I forget the Present State of *Russia*, by Captain Perry, wherein we have bet-

ter

ter Hints and truer Notices of the last War between the Muscovites and Turks, than in any other Account extant.

But to name no more Authors, and the Assistances receiv'd from them, I need say nothing more than this of the Method, That I have studied to make it as natural, plain and easy as I could. Neither have I been wanting in my Endeavours to correct the Errors, and supply the Defects in the respective Tables of the Christian Princes Contemporaries with the Turkish Sultans; and our Helvicus his Chronology, and others, have continued them down, in respect to the greater Crowns of Europe, to this time.

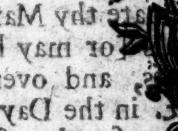
Dictionaries, in all civiliz'd Nations, Ages and Languages, have been receiv'd as Books of universal Benefit for the Improvement of Mankind; and therefore, I think, there is no need I should make any Apology for that subjoin'd hereunto, wherein I have made it my aim not only to comprehend and explain all the Terms contain'd in the History of the Turks, which are more obvious and easier turn'd to by this Method, than they could have been if dispersed up and down the Volumes, and explain'd as occasion requir'd, which yet must have made the Discourse broken and unpleasant, but also render'd it very serviceable for the perusing and better understanding of the Oriental Histories and Affairs, wherewith commonly we have but a slender acquaintance.

The Map I lay no Claim to, that when well perform'd never fails to recommend it self; and for the Person who design'd and engrav'd it, his Proficiency and great Ability in his own Profession is now so well known in England, as well as in Foreign Parts, that I have no occasion to say any thing of it. Only I must observe, that besides a compleat View of the whole Turkish Empire in the present State thereof, you have therein all the Countries conquer'd from it in the late Wars superadded, and nicely distinguish'd.

Neither have I any thing to offer concerning the Heads of the Sultans and others, design'd for the ornamenting of this Work; only that that of the present Grand Signior, is done after a Picture drawn of him in his Habit of giving Audience, by a very ingenious Gentleman, who has had very frequent Opportunities to see and observe him.

The

The fourth Volume of this Work is a Tranſlation of the Alcoran, *with the Life of* Mahomet, *prefixed to it, which I have principally extracted from that of* Du Ryer, deaux, *the learned Dean of* Norwich; *by whoſe great Candour and Abilities, we have it now freed from all thoſe Falſities, Prejudices, and Miſrepreſentations it hath ſo long laboured under; inſomuch, that the Impoſtor appears to have had the Right of Primogeniture, in the moſt illuſtrious Tribe of all the Arabs, the antienteſt and moſt unmixed Nation of any we know of, in the whole World.*



The Titles of the Cham of the Crim-Tartars, or King of Leſſer-Tartary, the Name of whole Family is Gheraï.

THOU to whom returns the Power of Commanding, the Portion of Authority, the Stock of Proſperity, the Gain of Happineſs, mighty in compleat Power,

The Titles of the Sultan of the Turks.

GOD's Deputy on Earth, Lord of the Lords of this World, Poſſeſſor of Men's Necks, King of Believers and Unbelievers, King of the Kings of this World, Emperor of the *Eaſt* and *Weſt*, Emperor of the *Chakans* of great Authority, Prince and Lord of the moſt happy Conſtellation, Majeſtick *Cæſar*, Seal of Victory, Refuge of all the People in the whole World, the Shadow of God, diſpenſing Quiet in the Earth; King of *Greece*, and *Aſia the Leſſer*, (viz. *Anatolia*) and *Arabia*, and *Perſia*, and *Turkey*, and *Tartary*, and *Arabia Felix*, and *Petræa*, *Egypt* and *Syria*, and *Cara-Amanca*, and *Curdiſtan*, *Circaſſia*, and the *Abazite*, and *Georgians*; Lord of the *White* and *Black-Sea*, and the Ocean, [*viz.* the Sea of *Oman*] Prince of *Hungary*, *Wallachia*, *Moldavia*, *Algiers*, *Algiers* and *Barbary*; as likewiſe Lord of a Thouſand and Thouſand Regions and Provinces; Sultan *Achmet Cham*, Son of Sultan *Mahomet*, *&c.* May God illuminate thy Maxims, and reward with Benefits their Tryals (or may he illuminate their Proofs or Arguments, and over-baliance their Tryals by good Deeds) *viz.* in the Day of Judgment, when all Mens Arguments for themſelves and their Actions are put to the Tryals.

The Titles of the Cham *of the* Crim-Tartars, *or King of Leſſer* Tartary, *the Name of whoſe Family is* Gherai.

THOU to whom returns the Power of Commanding, the Portion of Authority, the Stock of Proſperity, the Gain of Happineſs, mighty in compleat Power,

Power, or renowned Glory: thou who walkeſt in the way of Strength, and proſperous Event: thou who art inſerted in the Series of Glory and Majeſty, choſen by the great Grace of the propitious King with God; Warlike *Gherai-Cham* of *Crim*, and *Nogati*, and *Circas*, and *Albi-Kirman*, or *Albi-Caſtri*, and *Tat* and *Taman*, and King and Lord of other great States and Armys. May the moſt high God perpetuate thy Highneſs.

The Titles of the Prime Viſier.

MOST venerable Senator, moſt magnificent Counſellor, Orderer of the World, Moderator of the Commonwealth, by a ſublime or firm Thought, diſpatching human Affairs by Counſel, that anſwers the Intention; Faſhioner of the Foundation or Structure of the [*Ottoman*] Proſperity and Felicity, Exalter of the Eſtabliſhments, and Supports of its Happineſs and Majeſty, Diſpoſer of the Dignities of the higheſt Vicariate, Executor of the Law of the great Empire, Lion of the Foreſt in Battel, Lion of the Hills in the Engagement, covered with the various Graces and Benefits of the Supreme King Baſſa. May God make thy Eminence Eternal, and double thy Authority and Proſperity, and proſper thy Hopes with Good.

THE CONTENTS OF THE CHAPTERS OF THE FIRST VOLUME.

BOOK I.

CHAP. 1. *Of the first Kingdom of the* Turks *in* Persia, *under* Tangrolipix. pag. 1
2. *The Life of Sultan* Axan, *and others.* 9
3. *Of the* Turkish *Affairs in* Syria, Palestine, *and* Egypt *in the time of* Saladin, *&c.* 28
4. *Of the Ruin of the* Turkish *Empire in* Persia, *and their Successe in the Lesse* Asia *under the* Aladin *Kings.* 41

BOOK II.

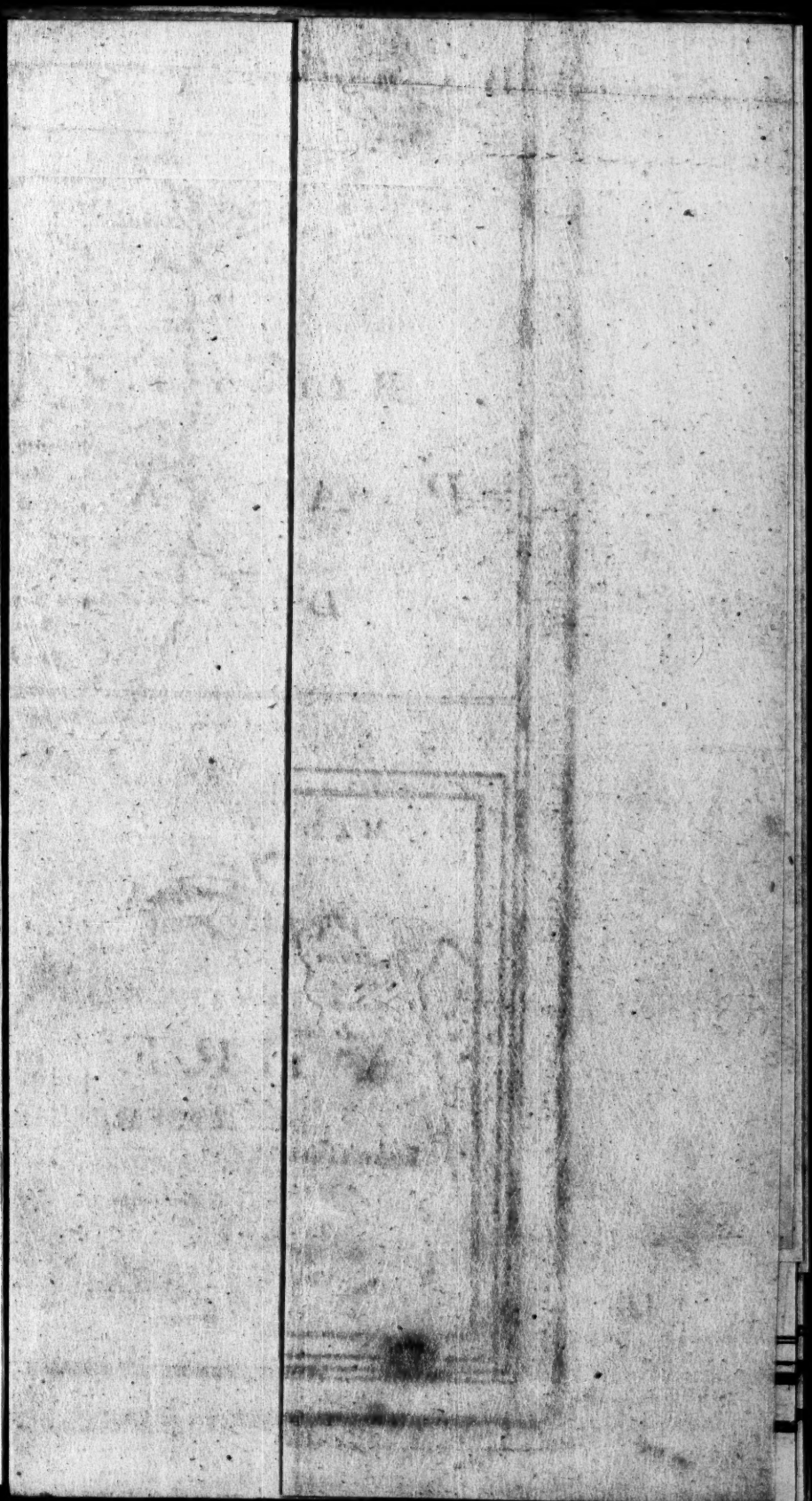
CHAP. 1. *The Life of* Othoman, *first Founder of the* Turkish *Empire.* 70
2. *The Life of* Orchanes, *or* Urchan, *second King of the* Turks. 91
3. *The Life of* Amurath *the First, King of the* Turks. 98
4. *The Life of* Bajazet *the First, King of the* Turks. 108

BOOK III.

CHAP. 1. *The Life of* Mahomet *the First, King of the* Turks. 123
2. *The Life of* Amurath *the Second, King of the* Turks. 136
3. *The Life of* Mahomet *the Second, sirnam'd the Great, first Emperor of the* Turks. 178
4. *The Life of* Bajazet *the Second, Emperor of the* Turks. 228

BOOK IV.

CHAP. 1. *The Life of* Selymus *the First, Emperor of the* Turks. 250
2. *The Life of* Solyman *the First, sirnam'd the Magnificent, Emperor of the* Turks. 279
3. *The Life of* Selymus *the Second, Emperor of the* Turks. 391
4. *The Life of* Amurath *the Third.* 424



Longitude from Tenerif 25 30 35 40 45 50

PART OF GERMANY

PART OF POLAND

PART OF

PART OF EUROPE

FRANCE.

AUSTRIA

BAVARIA

HUNGARY

Moldavia

Transilvania

Stiria

Croatia

Sclavonia

Bosnia

Servia

Wallachia

Bulgaria

ROMANIA

EUXINE

ITALY

VENICE

GULF OF VENICE.

DALMATIA

Corsica

Sardinia

NAPLES.

MEDITERRANEAN SEA.

SICILY.

Malta

IONIAN SEA.

Morea.

Achaia

Epirus.

Macedonia

Constantinople

LITTLE

ARCHIPELAGO

Rhodes

Candia I.

Cyprus

LEVANT

PART OF TUNIS.

ALGIERS.

BARBARY.

TRIPOLI.

BILDULGERID.

Desart of Barca

BARCA

EGYPT

PART OF AFRICA

DESART OF ZAARA.

Tropick of Cancer.

Ratisbone

Vienna

Saltzburg

Munchen

Lion

Genua

Florence

Roma

Naples

Palermo

Messina

Siracusa

Lipara I.

Tunis

Bona

Bizerta

Gozo

Tripoli

Old Tripoli

Gulf of Zidra

Barca

Lucho

Salonef

Coroberia

Old Cairo

Cairo

Suez

Benesuef

Grodol

Ammon now Berdeoa

Said

Minie

Afna

Alguechet

Aziruth

Cana

Assuan or Assuana

Derna

Alexandria

Rosetta

Damiata

Ageron

Stangonie

Scarpanto

Candia

Sapienza

Modon

Navarino

Zant

Cefalonia

Corfu

Lepanto

Smirna

Philadelphia

Laodicea

Colossus

Halicarnassus

Rhodes

Gallipoli

Sestos

Abydos

The Dardanells

Troy

Pergamos

Nicomedia

Bursa

Adrianople

Philippopoli

Sophia

Nicopoli

Belgrade

Pristina

Nouibazar

Widin

Nissa

Sabacz

Semendria

Sarayo

Zara

Spalatro

Ragusa

Cattaro

Durazzo

Albano

Salonichi

Larissa

Thessalonica

Zeitun

Lepanto

Corinth

Napoli di Romania

Napoli di Malvasia

Missitra

Arcadia

Cefalonia

Zant

Corfu

Ithaca

Santa Maura

Cassandra

Metelina

Foglia

Scio

Serdis

Ephesus

Tenedos

Troy

Callipoli

Constantinople

Scutari

Calcedonia

Chiavje

Belgrade

Semendria

Widin

Nissa

Sophia

Philippopoli

Adrianople

Varna

Silistria

Dan

Danube R.

Danube

Save R.

Drave R.

Theiss R.

Rhine R.

Rhone R.

Po R.

Ister R.

Boristhenes R.

Niester R.

Borysth R.

Tanais R.

Don R.

Volga R.

Kiow

Cracow

Vistula

Mount Crapack

Braclaw

Kamieniec

Lemberg

Zamoy

Prutz R.

Jassy

Tekeli

Cassovia

Agria

Neuhausel

Comorn

Raab

Presburg

Vienna

Munkatz

Tokay

Zolnock

Clausenburg

Weissenburg

Hermanstat

Cronstat

Cibinium

Segedin

Temeswar

Temesvar

Lugos

Karansebes

Mehadia

Cyulla

Coloczca

Essek

Posega

Sirmich

Mitrovitz

Sabacz

55 60 65 70 75 80 85

50 45 40 35 30 25

PART OF MOSCOVY.

EUROPA.

P. OF GREAT TARTARY.

LITTLE TARTARY

CIRCASSIA

TARTARY

THE CASPIAN SEA.

NE or BLACK SEA.

GEORGIA or

GURGESTAN.

ARMENIA or

ASSIRIA

TURCOMANIA

DIARBECK

PART OF PERSIA.

Desarts of Arabia

Arabia Petræa

ELCATIF.

LABSA.

MECCA

VODANA.

ARABIA FÆLIX.

ADEN.

ARABIAN SEA.

Straits of Babelmandel

Gulf of Baſſora

Gulf of Ormus.

THE RED SEA

Amaſia

Aſia

Aſia

A

A Compleat

HISTORY

OF THE

TURKS, &c.

BOOK I.

CHAP. I.

Of the First Kingdom of the Turks *in* Persia, *under* Tangrolipix.

IT's a received Maxim amongst Antiquaries, That what any Nation says concerning their own Origin ought not to be despis'd or slighted: therefore I shall begin our Enquiry with what the Oriental Authors say concerning the Rise of this People, who are the Subject of our History. As for the Name *Turk*, 'tis the same in all Languages known to us in *Europe*, the Plural whereof the *Arabs* make to be *Atrack*, and give it in common to those we call *Othomans*, *Tartars*, *Chineses*, and *Moguls*. *Meckhond*

Origin of the Turks, *according to the Oriental Authors.*

hond and *Khondenier*, who treat at large in their Oriental Histories concerning the Original of this Name, alledg, that after *Noah*'s Ark rested upon the *Gordian* Mountains, which they call *Gioudi*, that Patriarch divided the World between his three Sons; and that all the Countries, from the said Mountains to the uttermost Bounds of the East, with the Northern Parts of the World, fell to *Japhet*, who before he left his Father, receiv'd, together with his Blessing, a very remarkable Present, which was a Stone, whereon the Name of God was inscrib'd; and was at the same time inform'd, that that mysterious Name contain'd all the Essentials of Religion and Divine Worship. This Stone, they alledg'd, had the Virtue to produce Rain or fair Weather, as *Japhet* had occasion; and it multiply'd and produc'd others of the same Virtue, which the Eastern *Turks* pretend to have in their custody. With this fabulous Blessing they assign *Japhet* a fabulous Offspring, the eldest of which was call'd *Turk*; and hence, they say, all the Nations descended from him, call *Japhet*, *Aboul Turk*, *viz.* the Father of *Turk*. *Japhet*, they tell us, after having given good Instructions to his Children, both as to Religion and Government, made his Son *Turk* Sovereign of *Turqueſtan*, whom the Eastern *Turks* call *Japhet Oglan*, *viz.* the Son of *Japhet*, and own him to be the Founder of their Race.

Now *Turk*, besides the Prerogative of Primogeniture, was also endow'd with much better Qualities than his other Brothers, and therefore was own'd as Sovereign over all those Countries possess'd by them; but their Families increasing and growing very numerous, they resolv'd to seek new Habitations, and march'd out with Colonies, which became Mothers to the greatest Nations in the World. Wherefore *Turk* and his Family being thus left alone in a Country of no great Extent, resolv'd to visit the neighbouring Parts, and at last came to the Bank of a fine Lake surrounded with little Hills, from whence issu'd divers Springs of sweet Water, whereof some were hot, which all discharg'd themselves into a very fine Meadow, and with which agreeable Place, call'd by the *Moguls Sileukai*, and by the *Arabians Siluk*, *Turk* was so taken, that he fix'd his Abode here; his People at the same time building them-

themſelves Huts of Wood and Earth for their more convenient Habitations: ſo that it was the firſt inhabited Place of *Turqueſtan*, and remarkable for being that where *Turk* erected his Royal Court. He govern'd his Family and Subjects with great Prudence and Juſtice for a long time, having lived 240 Years, and left behind him four Sons and a Daughter, being ſucceeded by his eldeſt *Iliniougeli*. The *Moguls* call the Laws of Government he publiſh'd, *Jaſſack*; and ſuch as break them, they ſay, fall into *Jaſſa*, where they are puniſh'd without Remiſſion, either with Death or Whipping, according to the nature of their Crimes.

Turk's Poſterity was divided into four great Tribes, and theſe were afterwards ſubdivided into eighty, and they into two Wings, call'd the Right and the Left; to whom, tho originally one and the ſame People, it was a fundamental Law, that they ſhould not intermix or make any Alliance one with another. *Tartar* and *Mogul* are alſo reckon'd amongſt the Deſcendants of *Turk*; and from them the two great Nations of *Tartars* and *Moguls* derive their Name. Now part of thoſe *Turks* lived without any fixed Place of Abode, putting their Herds into Cotes, like the People call'd *Nomades* by the *Greeks*; from which wandring or vagabond *Turks*, the *Turkomans* are deſcended.

If we may credit ſome Eaſtern Authors, the *Turks* were not always *Mahometans*; for ſome of them alledg, that the *Oguzians*, from whom they derive the *Othoman* Family, were *Chriſtians*, and that till the time of *Ginghiskan* and *Tamerlain* there were Hoards or Nations of *Tartars* that profeſs'd Chriſtianity. They had likewiſe a Diſtinction among them of Believing and Infidel *Turks*, who frequently made war upon one another, and particularly ſince Muſſulmaniſm prevail'd amongſt them. Neither are we to paſs over their being diſtinguiſh'd alſo into Eaſtern and Weſtern *Turks*, the latter whereof are call'd *Othomans*, as the other comprehend the *Moguls*, *Aſiatick Tartars*, *Ararians*, and many other Nations not known to us. But why the Name *Turk* ſhould among the *Perſians* and *Arabians* at this day ſignify a Vagabond or Robber, the beſt reaſon that can be given for it muſt be, becauſe of the frequent Damages done by them to thoſe People.

But to close with our Eastern Authors upon this Head: Some of them derive the Origin of the *Turks* from the *Arabians*, the Posterity of *Ismael* the Son of *Hagar*, whence they were call'd *Hagarens*; but being asham'd of that Name, because of their spurious Original, they assum'd that of *Saracens*. Those *Arabians* they divide into *Gentiles* and *Mussulmen*, the first being those who preceded *Mahomet*, and the other such as embrac'd his Religion: which last conquer'd a great part of *Asia*, *Africa*, and *Europe*, and extended their Religion further yet than their Empire; and of whom there are at this day four potent Monarchies, to wit, the *Turks*, *Persians*, *Moors* and *Moguls*, besides several other Kings and Princes in *Transoxana* and the *Indies*, whose Laws and Religion are all in *Arabick*.

Origin of the Turks *according to the* European *Authors.*

This is the Substance of what the Oriental Authors say concerning the Rise and Division of this People. We shall now briefly consider what our *Europeans* have writ on this Subject. Authors are much divided in their Opinions concerning them: Some from the Affinity of the words *Turic* and *Teucri* have had the Vanity to make them to be of *Trojan* Descent; especially seeing they have so long inhabited the lesser *Asia*, wherein the antient and famous City of *Troy* once stood. Others will have them to come first out of *Persia*, without any manner of Authority; while some again will have *Arabia*, and others *Syria*, their original Countries. But *De Mornay*, a learned *Frenchman*, derives them, together with the *Tartars*, from the ten *Jewish* Tribes, which were carry'd by *Salmanassar* King of *Assyria* into Captivity, and planted in *Media* and other Northern Countries, where there are some to this day that retain *Jewish* Names; and the word *Turk*, which in *Hebrew* signifies banish'd Men, gives countenance to it. *Leunclavius* also observes there were a kind of barbarous People near *Riga* in *Livonia*, call'd *Lettoes*, who with perpetual Lamentations repeated in the Fields these words, *Jeru Jeru*, *Masco Lon*; which he took to be their lamenting over *Jerusalem* and *Damascus*, being all the dark Remembrance they had of their antient Habitations.

But the best Historians, upon clearer Conjectures, have assign'd *Scythia*, that prolifick Hive, for their original Country; of whom *Mela*, in describing the People

ple living about the *Tanais* (now *Don*) makes mention in theſe words: *Geloni urbem ligneam habitant; juxta Thyrſagetæ, Turcæq; vaſtas ſylvas occupant, aluntur q; venando, &c.* *Pliny* alſo, in reckoning up the Nations about the *Palus Mæotis*, agrees very well with *Mela*, and particularly mentions them; to which if we add the Aſſimilation of Manners between the *Turks* and *Scythians*, we ſhall ſtill have more reaſon to believe them to be originally deſcended from thence.

The Reaſons of their leaving their native Country.

But however obſcure their Country is, the Time and Reaſon of their leaving it is no leſs ſo. Some will have it to have been in the Year 844. by the Straits of Mount *Caucaſus*; while others, with greater probability, make it to have been in 755. by the *Caſpian* Sea, and that for mere Neceſſity and Want. But the moſt favourable Reaſon offer'd for their Tranſmigration, is an Invitation given them by the *Sultan* of *Perſia* to come and aſſiſt him in his Wars, as having a great Opinion of their Valour, tho there is no true Ground for it. However it were, by the Straits aforeſaid they paſſed thro *Georgia*, and firſt ſeiz'd on that part of *Armenia*, which they call'd *Turcomania*, and is enjoy'd by their Poſterity to this day; where they lived a long time roaming up and down with their Cattle and Families, after the manner of their Anceſtors, and as the *Tartarian* Hoards do to this very time; and where in proceſs of time they ſo increaſed in Power and Empire, that they became very famous: inſomuch that the *Saracens* under their *Caliphs*, the Succeſſors of their falſe Prophet *Mahomet* (after they had in leſs than two hundred Years over-run the greateſt part of *Europe*, *Aſia*, and *Africa*) beginning to decline, and grown forgetful of their Obedience to their great *Caliph*, fell out among themſelves; ſo that *Mahomet*, Sultan of *Perſia*, being hard put to by the *Indians* on one ſide, and the *Caliph* of *Babylon* on the other, beſought the Aſſiſtance of the *Turks*, who were now his Neighbours, as being advanc'd in Dominion as far as the Banks of the *Araris*, the Boundary of his Empire, and who ſent him 3000 ſtout Soldiers under the Command of *Tangrolipix*, a valiant Commander of the *Selzuccian* Family. With this Reinforcement *Mahomet* overcame *Piſaſiris*, the *Caliph* of *Babylon*; but being unwilling the *Turks* ſhould return into their own Country, ac-

Tangrolipix ſent to aid the Sultan of Perſia.

cording to their Desire, they grew discontented, and retiring into the Desart of *Caravonitis*, *Mahomet* sent an Army of 20000 Men, and ten of his chiefest Captains against them, who for want of Water and other Necessaries, would not enter into the Desart, but encamped by the side of the Forest, to consult what was best for them to do; while *Tangrolipix*, in the mean time, after two days long March, suddenly surpriz'd them in their Camp, and totally routed them: which so flush'd him, that he then adventur'd to come into the open Plains; and being join'd by some revolted *Turks*, who were afraid of *Mahomet*'s Threats for the late Defeat, advanc'd, and gave the Sultan battel near *Ispahan*, the Capital City of *Persia*; where, after a most terrible Battel, in the height whereof Sultan *Mahomet* fell off his Horse, and brake his Neck, the two Armies came to an Agreement, and by common Consent proclaim'd *Tangrolipix* Sultan of *Persia*: about which time they embrac'd the Religion of *Mahomet*, to which they were not much averse, as before using Circumcision.

Tangrolipix *made Sultan of* Persia.

Tangrolipix *conquers* Babylon.

Tangrolipix being possess'd of the Kingdom of *Persia*, soon made war upon *Pisasiris*, *Caliph* of *Babylon*, whom at length he slew, and annex'd his Kingdom to his own: then sent *Cutlu-Muses* his Cousin with an Army against the *Arabians*, who put him to flight; but returning by *Media*, and being deny'd Passage, he fought *Stephen*, the *Greek* Emperor's Lieutenant, and defeated him: upon which he would have persuaded *Tangrolipix* to invade *Media*; who not hearkning to his Advice, went at the head of a great Army against the *Arabs* in Person, and was defeated by them. After his Return, calling to mind what *Cutlu-Muses* had told him concerning the invading of *Media*, he went about it in earnest, tho not with the desir'd Success; for, besides the Defeat and Loss of his Nephew *Asan*, sirnamed the *Deaf*, the Lieutenant of the Emperor in *Media*, being join'd by divers Troops from *Iberia* under the Command of *Siparides* Governour of that Province, his Brother *Habramy-Alim*, after the taking of the rich City of *Arzen*, was a little before night encounter'd and defeated by them: however *Siparides* fighting valiantly in one of the Wings of the Army, was taken Prisoner by the *Turks*, for whose Ransom the

the Emperor having sent a great Sum of Mony with some Presents to *Tangrolipix*, he sent all back again, and freely set him at liberty, requiring he would never more bear Arms against the *Turks*; and withal order'd an Embassador to *Constantinople*, who proudly demanded the Emperor to become tributary to the Sultan: which being as disdainfully rejected, the Sultan invades the Imperial Provinces with all his strength, but stopt at *Coime*; and thinking it not advisable to proceed any farther, returns to *Media*, and besieg'd *Mantzichiert*, a strong City, fortify'd with a triple Wall and deep Ditches, but without success: for after one and thirty days siege, on the last of which, *Alcan* one of his chief Captains, who persuaded him to that Attack, was slain, he was forced to march off.

Besieg'd Mantzichiert *in vain.*

Soon after his Brother *Habramy Alim* revolted from the Sultan, and joining with *Cutlu-Muses*, who was already in Rebellion against him, he encounters them near *Passar*, defeated their Army, took his Brother Prisoner, and put him to death; while *Cutlu-Muses* with his Cousin *Melech* and 6000 *Turks* fled into *Armenia*, and thence (being closely pursued) to *Arabia*. The Sultan afterwards ravag'd *Iberia*; but upon the news of the approach of a considerable Army of the Emperor's against him, under the Conduct of a valiant Commander, *Michael Acoluthus*, he retired to *Tauris*, leaving one *Samach* with 3000 *Turks* to infest the Frontiers; which they did with the greatest success, because the Emperor *Monomachus* imposed a Tribute on the Frontiers, whereas before they were wont to be free from all Exactions, in lieu whereof they were bound to defend all the Passes from the Enemies Incursions. His Successors also being lazy and covetous, gave the *Turks* great advantages, till at length *Constantine Ducas* dying, and leaving his Wife *Eudocia* with her three Sons, *Michael*, *Andronicus*, and *Constantine*, all very young, in the Empire; she, notwithstanding her Engagement to the Senate, on her being admitted into the Administration, that she would not marry, took *Diogenes Romanus*, a Person of noble Extraction and great Fame, out of Prison, made him first General of all her Forces, and by the means of an Eunuch of hers did so gull the Patriarch *Johannes Xiphilines* with a sham Story of her being in love with a Ne-

Overthrows his Rebels.

phew of his, that he gave up the Writing whereby she had engaged not to marry again, and then took *Diogenes* for her Husband, whom she caused to be proclaim'd Emperor: who prepared an Army to go against the *Turks*, which the Sultan hearing of, divided his own, and sent one part into the South of *Asia*, and the other into the North to ravage the Country, which surpriz'd and sack'd *Neo-Cæsarea*. But the Emperor with some of his Troops having got between them and home, and so way-laid them, routed and took all their Baggage, with their Provisions and Booty, and soon after had the City of *Hierapolis* yielded to him, where he built a strong Castle. Whilst he staid there, news was brought him, that part of his Army which he had sent away had been overthrown by the *Turks*, who also surrounded him on every side as he was upon his march with a small Force to relieve them, to whom the Governour of *Aleppo* had revolted at the same time: but *Diogenes* gallantly fought his way through, and obtain'd a glorious Victory; and after the taking of divers Towns, quarter'd his Army in *Cilicia*, and thence return'd to *Constantinople*. Next Spring the *Turks* fell into the Empire again, defeated *Philaretus*, *Diogenes*'s General, sack'd the rich and populous City of *Iconium*; but before the Emperor could come up with them, retired, and being first stript by the *Armenians* in the Plains of *Tharsus*, had much ado to escape him by night. However the *Turks* some time after surrender'd the City of *Mantzichiert* to him, and some of his Troops under *Nicephorus Bryennius* routed the *Turks* near that place, tho himself having his Horse slain under him, was taken Prisoner, and brought to the Sultan, who used him very civilly, and asked him divers Questions about the *Greek* Emperor his Master, and shew'd him his own Power at the same time.

Turks take Neo-Cæsaria, and are routed by Diogenes.

Diogenes his other Successes.

CHAP.

CHAP. II.

The Life of Sultan Axan, *and others.*

T*Angrolipix* being now dead, he was ſucceeded by his Son *Axan*, a Man of great Wiſdom and Diſcretion, who ſent Embaſſadors to the Emperor to treat of a Peace; whom he uſed very haughtily, bidding them go tell their Maſter, that if he were deſirous of Peace, he ſhould leave his Camp for him to lie in, and ſo ſent them away: the effect of which was a great Battel ſoon after fought between them. But tho the Chriſtians were much inferiour in number to the Infidels, by reaſon the Emperor had ſent *Ruſelius* away with part of the Army ſome time before againſt *Chliat*, yet they fought it out a long while, till the Emperor at laſt being afraid the Sultan ſhould ſend part of his Army to attack his Camp, cauſed a Retreat to be ſounded, and began to draw off in good order; but others took it for a flight, and particularly *Andronicus* the Son of *John Ducas*, the late Emperor *Conſtantine*'s Brother, who envying the Emperor, gave out to ſuch as were about him, that he was fled: on which, turning his Horſe about to fly with all ſpeed towards the Camp, moſt of the reſt did the like. So that the Emperor, at laſt left in a manner all alone wounded, and his Horſe ſlain under him, was taken Priſoner; of which notice being given to the Sultan, he would not at firſt believe it: but being aſſured of the Truth by *Baſiliacus* one of his Captains, whom the *Turks* held as Priſoner, and the Emperor brought before him, the Sultan, upon his proſtrating himſelf, preſently took him up and ſaid, *Grieve not, noble Emperor, at thy Misfortune, for ſuch is the Chance of War, ſometimes overwhelming one, and ſometimes another; neither fear thou any harm, for I will uſe thee not as my Priſoner, but as an Emperor:* which he preſently did, aſſigning him Attendants, with an Equipage ſutable to his Quality, and diſcharging ſuch Priſoners as he deſired. Then having concluded a perpetual Peace with him, on promiſe of a Mar-

Axan *Sultan of the* Turks.

The Emperor Diogenes *taken Priſoner, and diſcharged.*

Marriage to be made betwixt their Children, he honourably diſmiſs'd him. The Emperor in *Turkiſh* Habit coming to *Theodoſopolis*, ſtaid there for ſome time to have his Wounds cured, and then with the Sultan's Embaſſador ſet forward towards *Conſtantinople*; but underſtanding in the mean time that his Empreſs *Eudocia* was depoſed by the Traitor *John Ducas Pſellus*, and others, and her eldeſt Son *Michael Ducas* ſet up, he ſtopt at the Caſtle of *Docia*: then *John* ſent *Andronicus* his eldeſt Son againſt him with a great Army, by whom he was defeated, and flying into the City of *Adana*, was there beſieg'd, and forced to make a Reſignation of the Empire. His Eyes were afterwards put out by order of the young Emperor, of which he died in the Iſland of *Prola*.

Forced to reſign the Empire.

His Death.

Axan the Sultan endeavours to revenge the Death of *Diogenes* by invading the Imperial Provinces, not for Spoil and Booty only, as in former times, but to conquer and hold the ſame; but he was diverted in ſome meaſure from the Proſecution of his Deſign by the Return of *Cutlu-Muſes*, his Couſin *Melech*, and others from *Arabia*, whither they had fled ſome time before, for fear of *Tangrolipix*, and who had got ſuch an Army together, that they were ready now to try the matter by plain Battel. *Axan* no ways declin'd it; but as they were ready to engage, the Caliph of *Babylon* (from whom, tho the *Turks* had taken away all Temporal Juriſdiction, yet in matters of Religion they ſtill had him in great reverence and eſteem, as their chief Biſhop, and Succeſſor to their great Prophet) interpoſed his Authority, and brought them to this Agreement: That *Axan* ſhould ſtill enjoy his Kingdom and Territories entire, and that whatever *Cutlu-Muſes* and his Sons conquer'd of the *Conſtantinopolitan* Provinces, ſhould be wholly their own, as Sovereign Lords of them. This made them go in earneſt to work, ſo that in a ſhort time they ſubdued all *Media*, with a great part of *Armenia*, *Cappadocia*, *Pontus* and *Bithynia*, as alſo of leſſer *Aſia*; and at the ſame time *Nicephorus Botoniates* depoſed the *Greek* Emperor *Michael Ducas*, by the aſſiſtance of this *Cutlu-Muſes*, as himſelf was ſome time after ſerv'd in the ſame manner by *Comnenus*.

An Agreement between Axan, Cutlu-Muſes, &c.

But to return: *Axan* at the ſame time that he made thoſe Conceſſions to *Cutlu-Muſes*, as aforeſaid, did alſo give

give to *Ducas* and *Melech*, two of his near Relations, the Government of *Damaſcus* and *Aleppo*, with that part of *Syria* which adjoin'd to them, on purpoſe to incroach that way on the Caliph of *Egypt*, who then had under his Juriſdiction all the Country as far as *Laodicea* in *Syria*; but conditionally, that they ſhould ſtill remain his Vaſſals, and hold of him as their Sovereign, who yet prevail'd mightily in their Arms to the deſtruction of the *Saracen* Empire, as will appear in its proper place.

Peter the Hermit his Pilgrimage, and the effect of it.

But whilſt *Cutlu-Muſes* and his Army, ſupported by Sultan *Axan*, prevailed mightily againſt the Chriſtians in the leſſer *Aſia*, and *Melech* with his Couſin did the ſame againſt the Caliph of *Egypt* in *Syria*; one *Peter* a *French* Hermit, animated with a Zeal to viſit *Jeruſalem*, and the holy Sepulchre, got into *Syria*, moſtly poſſeſs'd then by the *Turks* and *Saracens*: and being very diligent in obſerving every thing relating to them, and their Cruelty to the Chriſtians there, he went from thence to *Jeruſalem*; where conſulting with *Simon* the Patriarch, and the grand Maſter of the *Hoſpitalers*, how they ſhould be relieved from the diſtreſſed State they laboured under, they agreed that thoſe two ſhould preſſingly write to the Pope and other Chriſtian Princes on their behalf; and *Peter* took upon him to be the Meſſenger, who delivered the Letter into the hands of Pope *Urban* the Second, and withal gave a pathetick Relation of all the Miſeries of the Chriſtians under the *Turkiſh* Thraldom, of which himſelf had been an Eye-witneſs. This ſo affected the old Father, that he call'd a Council at *Clermont* in *France*, where there met 310 Biſhops, and the Embaſſadors of moſt Chriſtian Princes, to whom the forementioned Letter was read; and *Peter* the Hermit in an eloquent Speech ſet forth the intolerable Miſeries of the poor Chriſtians in the Eaſt, the Deſolation of Places, Cruelty of the *Turks*, *&c.* in ſo lively, preſſing, and engaging a manner, that they reſolved upon a religious War; and all declared, as if inſpired with one Spirit, their Conſent, by often crying out, *Deus vult*, *Deus vult*, God will have it ſo, God will have it ſo. Upon the diſſolution of the Council, and when every one was return'd to his own Country, there was nothing to be ſeen in a ſhort time but multitudes of Men of all ſorts, with

Council of Clermont, and the Reſult of it.

red

The Crusade.

red Crosses on their Breasts (the mark of their Expedition) ready to go and spend their Lives in the recovery of the Holy Land; and supposed in all to be no less than 300000 Men, of whom the Commanders in chief were *Godfrey* of *Bouillion* Duke of *Lorrain*, and his Brethren; *Hugh* Brother to the *French* King *Philip*; *Raymond* and *Robert* Earls of *Flanders*; *Robert* Duke of *Normandy*, *William* the Conqueror's Son; *Stephen de Valois* Earl of *Chartres*; and *Peter* the Hermit, who was exceeding serviceable, and the first after *Gualtier Sensaviour*, that with 40000 Men passed thro *Germany*, *Hungary*, and *Bulgaria*, till they came to *Constantinople*, where they were not much welcome to the Emperor *Alexius Comnenus*. However they received some Relief from him, and so marching on, got into *Bithynia*, and encamped not far from the City of *Nice*. They were soon after followed by *Godfrey* and others by different ways, who also met at *Constantinople*, where they brought the Emperor to enter into a League with them; whereby it was agreed, That during the time of that Expedition, he should furnish them with new Supplies of Men, Arms, Provision, and all other Necessaries, on condition to restore to the Empire what Provinces, Countries or Cities, they should recover out of the *Turks* and *Saracens* hands: tho this League afterwards came to little or nothing.

But while these things were transacting, and *Godfrey* on his march, the Army in *Bithynia* deposed *Gualter*, and advanc'd one *Raymond*, a valiant *German* Commander, in his room; took possession of *Exorgum*, mutiny'd again, and suffer'd great Losses from the *Turks* by Ambushes: so that *Peter* the Hermit, with the poor Remains of them, took refuge in *Cinite*, till *Godfrey*'s Arrival; who, notwithstanding the bad Condition he found the Christian Troops in, (who had been reduced to that low ebb by Sultan *Solyman* the Son and Successor of *Cutlu-Muses*, a warlike Prince, and one that very much enlarged his Power) resolv'd to lay siege to the antient City of *Nice*, which lasted longer than the Christians expected, because of the new Supplies that came to the *Turks* by the Lake *Ascanius*, which join'd to the other side of the City. But the Christians at length making themselves Masters of the Lake, the Place was surrrender'd, *July* 5. 1097. and amongst others

Nice besieged and taken by the Christians.

1097.

others that were made Priſoners, was *Solyman*'s Wife, with two of her Children, whom the Princes ſent away to *Conſtantinople*, as they alſo gave up the City to *Alexius* the Emperor, whoſe Fleet had in that Siege done good ſervice, by taking the Lake from the *Turks*.

The Army decamped from hence, and after four days march came to a River, which water'd rich Paſtures; where, as they were about to encamp, ſudden news was brought into *Bohemund* the Prince of *Apulia*'s Quarters, that the *Turks* were near with a great Army ready to charge him: for *Solyman*, by the aid of the Sultan of *Perſia*, had got together a Body of 60000 Men, with which he fell furiouſly upon the Chriſtian Army, who repulſed him with great loſs; but ſome of the *Turkiſh* Horſe wheeling about, broke into *Bohemund*'s Camp, from whence while he beat them out, and was returning again to the Battel, he found his Men, whom he had left in a manner Maſters of a glorious Victory, giving way. But *Bohemund* renewing the Charge, made the Victory again doubtful; and the *Turks* once more attempted his Camp, as a ſure way to incommode him, and had certainly carry'd it, but for *Hugh* the *French* King's Brother, who with 30000 Men came ſeaſonably to its relief, and made ſuch a ſlaughter of the *Turks*, both there and elſewhere, that they were totally routed, with the loſs of 40000 Men, and 2000 of the Chriſtians. *Solyman* notably diſſembled his Loſs, giving out he had got the Victory; but deſtroy'd the Country as he went, that the Chriſtians might find no ſubſiſtance.

A great Battel between the Chriſtians and Turks.

The latter defeated.

The Succeſs of this Battel was attended with the Surrender of divers places to the Chriſtians with little reſiſtance, as *Antioch* in *Piſidia*, *Iconium* the Metropolis of *Cilicia*, *Heraclea*, and other places; and the Chriſtians, for the more expeditious carrying on of their Conqueſts, divided their Army into two Bodies: one under *Baldwin* and *Tancred* ſubdued *Tarſus*, *Edeſſa*, and *Manuſſa*, with all *Cilicia*, in a ſhort time; while the other conquered the leſſer *Armenia*, *Cappadocia*, the Cities of *Cæſarea* and *Socor*, and likewiſe traverſed all the Provinces of the leſſer *Aſia*, chaſing the *Turks* every where before them; which made *Solyman*, in craving aſſiſtance from Sultan *Axan*, deliver himſelf complainingly to this effect: 'The famous City of

Divers Cities yield to the Chriſtians.

'*Nice*,

'*Nice*, with the Country of *Romania*, which we by 'your aid and power have got from the Kingdom of 'the *Greeks*, and of your Bounty poſſeſs'd, the Chriſ-'tians of the Kingdom of *France* have again taken 'from us.'

Fluſh'd with theſe great Succeſſes, all the Chriſtians bound themſelves by Oath never to return, till they had won *Jeruſalem* from the Enemy: ſo paſſing over Mount *Taurus*, they quickly became Maſters of the City *Mareſia*; and the Earl of *Flanders* being ſent to ſummon the City of *Artaſia*, about 15 miles from *Antioch*, as ſoon as the Citizens ſaw the Chriſtian Colours, they fell upon the *Turkiſh* Gariſon, and put them all to the ſword: and the *Turks* fail'd in their Attempt of taking the Place before the Chriſtians came up, and conſequently of the Revenge they deſign'd to take on the People. Neither were the *Turks* more ſucceſsful at the River *Orontes*, where they diſputed the paſſage of the Chriſtians, but in vain: ſo that their Army being got over, march'd and encamped before the famous City of *Antioch*, *October* 21. 1097. which was gariſon'd with 7000 *Turkiſh* Horſe, and 20000 Foot, under the command of one *Caſſianus*, Governour under the *Perſian* Sultan. The Place was alſo very ſtrongly fortified; ſo that the Siege was carry'd on with Aſſaults and various Succeſſes, till the beginning of *February*, when ſo much Rain fell, and the Beſiegers were reduced to ſuch Straits and Scarcity, that they knew not what to do: their Men died away in ſhoals, and thoſe who had been the moſt forward in this Expedition, began to ſlink, and think of withdrawing privately home; nay *Tancred*, *Bohemund*'s Nephew, and even *Peter* the Hermit, were found among this number, but were reprimanded and detain'd. However, the *Turks* having loſt 2000 Men in attempting to relieve the Place, it diſcouraged the Gariſon very much, inſomuch that they deſired a Truce for ſome time, which was agreed to by the Chriſtians, who during that time were very friendly one with another: but that being broken in a ſhort time after by the Death of one *Vollo* a *Frenchman*, ſlain by the *Turks*, the Siege was renew'd again; and the Governor being oblig'd to make uſe of the Service of divers Chriſtians for the defence of it, and particularly of one *Pyrrhus*, who had the command of a Tower

Antioch *beſieged by the Chriſtians.*

Tower called then the *two Sisters*, but afterwards St. *George*'s, he betray'd the City to the Christians, who entring it, *June* 3d, 1098, by night, made a great Slaughter of the *Turks*, and found great Wealth therein, but little Provision. And tho *Cassianus* the Governour made a shift to escape out of the Place, yet wandring thro the Mountains, he fell into the hands of the *Armenian* Christians, who there slew him. *Betray'd to them.* 1098.

While the Christians were engag'd in the Siege of *Antioch*, *Corbanus* the Sultan of *Persia*'s Lieutenant with a great Army besieged *Edessa*; but it was so well defended by *Baldwin*, that they were forced to quit it. And tho *Corbanus* was inform'd, as he was on his march, that *Antioch* was lost; yet he resolved to run the hazard of a Battle, in hopes to recover it again, but without Success: for after a terrible Conflict both within and without the City, they retreated, when (they say) they had lost above 100000 Men to the Christians 4200: And the next day, *June* 28th, the *Turks*, who had still kept the Castle, despairing of Relief, surrendred it. *Turks beaten.*

Upon the taking of *Antioch*, *Hugh* the *French* King's Brother was sent to *Alexius* the Emperor, to make him a tender of it; but he, as conscious of Non-performance of the League, refus'd to accept of it: whereupon *Bohemund*, by the general Consent of the whole Army, was chosen Prince of *Antioch*. Next Autumn the Christian Army was visited with a severe Plague, which swept away fifty thousand of them, and soon after with an unhappy Difference between *Bohemund* and *Raymond*; tho the former, for the publick Good, gave way to his Adversary, and retired, after the taking of *Rugia* and *Albaria*, to *Antioch*. The same Animosity arose next Spring upon their taking the Field, when *Bohemund* still gave way; and the rest of the Army marching on, came at length in sight of *Jerusalem*, at which they expresst exceeding great Joy.

And now we have mention'd *Jerusalem*, it will not be improper to give a short account of the State of it, and the various Revolutions it underwent to this time. After the Destruction of it by *Titus Vespatian*, it lay buried in its Ruins till the time of *Adrian* the Emperor, when it was rebuilt about the Year 136, and called *An Account of* Jerusalem.

led *Ælia* after his Name, and together with its Name changed in some measure its Situation: for whereas before it was seated on a steep rising Hill, *Adrian* translated the whole to the very Top of the Hill. Upon the decease of the Emperor, this new-built City recovered its antient Name of *Jerusalem*, and was inhabited by the Christians; over whom, *Mark*, first Bishop of the *Gentiles* there, had the Charge. But the *Roman* Emperors of those times being Idolaters, *Jerusalem*, as well as other Places, suffered divers Persecutions, till the Days of *Constantine* the Great; from whence forward it flourished for 300 Years under the *Greek* Emperors, to the time of *Phocas*, who having cruelly murder'd the Emperor *Mauritius* and his Children, it gave *Chosroe* King of *Persia*, *Maurice* his Father-in-law, occasion with all his Force to invade *Syria*; who carrying all like a Torrent before him, took also *Jerusalem* about the Year 610, tho *Heraclitus* recovered it again in 624. The *Saracens* now revolting from the Emperor for want of their Pay, began with a new Religion (*viz.* that of *Mahomet*) to set up a new Empire, and so for the Space of 370 years held *Palestine*, *Syria*, *Egypt*, &c. in their possession, and extremely oppresst the poor Christians in *Jerusalem*, till the *Turks* came and took it, with the adjacent Countries from them; in whose hands the Place now was, when the Christian Army came before it.

Jerusalem *besieged by the Christians.*

Now the Governour of *Jerusalem* understanding by his Spies the Designs of the Christians, took care to provide the Place with a good Garison, and Store of Provision for a long Siege; which did not discourage the Christians from taking their Posts. *Godfrey* with the *Germans* and *Lorrainers* lay next the City, and neareſt to him the Earl of *Flanders*, and *Robert* the *Norman*; before the West Gate was posted *Tancred* Earl of *Tholouse*, but *Bohemund* and *Baldwin* were both absent. They were mightily discourag'd in the fierce Assaults they made for want of Water in that hot season, there being only the Well of *Siloe* that yielded any. The *Genoese* also came to the Siege, and having among them divers good Engineers, they proved of great Use in carrying on of the Siege, and invented a huge moving Tower, out of which they greatly annoy'd the Besieg'd, and by the help whereof they at length entered the

the City; whereof Duke *Godfrey* was the first Man, follow'd by his Brother *Eustace* and others; and put all they met with to the Sword, without respect to Age or Sex. In this Confusion a great many of the better sort of *Turks* retiring into *Solomon*'s Temple, and armed with Despair, maintain'd a most terrible Fight against the Christians, which lasted with the utmost Resolution and Obstinacy on both sides, till the Darkness of the Night parted them, with the Loss of Heaps of Men on either side; but upon a Proclamation of Quarter to be given next day, the surviving *Turks* that held the upper part of the Temple, came down and surrender'd to the victorious Christians, who now became Masters of this City in 1099, after it had been in the hands of the Infidels four hundred Years. *Taken.* 1099.

Having return'd their solemn Thanks to the Almighty, and done all other things necessary for the Health and Preservation of the City, about eight days after the Princes consulted about making a King of *Jerusalem*, and *Robert* Duke of *Normandy* was pitch'd upon by the general consent of all; but about the same time hearing of his Father's Death, he declined it, in hopes of the *English* Crown, which his Brother *William Rufus* carried from him. Then *Godfrey* of *Bologn* was saluted King, at whose Inauguration he refused to be crown'd with a golden Crown, saying, It became not a Christian to wear a Crown of Gold, where Christ the Son of God had, for the Salvation of Mankind, sometime wore a Crown of Thorns. Godfrey *made King of* Jerusalem.

After this *Godfrey* marches against the *Turks* assembled at *Ascalon* to revenge their Losses, fell upon them, and slew near a hundred thousand of them: but not long after came a great Plague which swept away Multitudes of People, and among others *Godfrey* King of *Jerusalem*, who dy'd *July* 18, 1100. when he had scarce reigned one year; in whose room his Brother *Baldwin* Count of *Edessa* was elected King, who with the Assistance of the *Venetians* and *Genoese* by Sea, and of *Bohemund* King of *Antioch* by Land, took *Cæsarea* and *Stratonis*, and overthrew the *Egyptian* Sultan's Troops at *Rama*. But notwithstanding the Reinforcements the King receiv'd from *Europe*, the *Turks*, *Arabs* and *Egyptians* again invaded the Country about *Rama*, and gave the Christians a notable Defeat, slew the Earls 1100. Baldwin *succeeds, and his Actions.*

of *Chartres*, *Burgundy*, and *Tholouſe*, and the King himſelf hardly eſcap'd to *Joppa*; where recruiting his Army, he fell upon and defeated the *Turks* in his return, while *Tancred* Prince of *Galilee* took *Apamea*, the Metropolis of *Cœloſyria*; and *Baldwin* Governour of *Edeſſa* beſieged *Carras*, and had reduc'd it to a great Extremity, when an Army of the Sultan of *Perſia* fell upon him, routed his Troops, and took him Priſoner, who was ranſomed five Years after.

King *Baldwin* after his late Victory did not reſt very long, but with his whole Power laid ſiege to *Ptolemais* (*Acon*) upon the Sea-ſhore in *Phœnicia*; but failing in his Enterprize, and being upon his return, he fell in with ſome of the Enemies Troops, where he was wounded mortally, tho he died not till a long time after. However by the Aſſiſtance of the *Genoeſe* Fleet he attack'd the City of *Ptolemais* again the Year following, which after twenty days ſiege, ſurrender'd upon Articles; and ſoon after the Caliph of *Egypt*'s Troops were alſo defeated by him. Fluſh'd with Succeſs, he lays ſiege to the City of *Berytas*, took it *April* 1111. 23. 1111. by aſſault, and put all to the Sword; and being that very Year aſſiſted by a Fleet out of *Norway*, he beſieged the famous City of *Sydon*, which ſurrender'd to him the 19*th* of *December*. After which he diſmiſt the Fleet, and return'd in triumph to *Jeruſalem*; *Tyre* being the only City on the Sea-Coaſt of *Phœnicia* that remain'd in the Enemies hands, which he could not take in a Siege of four Months. The *Turks* two Years after, with an Army from *Perſia*, invading *Cœloſyria*, *Baldwin* in conjunction with *Tancred*, the Son and Succeſſor of *Bohemund* King of *Antioch*, and the Count of *Tripolis*, encounter'd them for a long time with uncertain Succeſs; tho the Numbers of the *Turks* at length prevailing, put the Chriſtians to the rout. The King recruiting his Army, made an Expedition into *Egypt* in the laſt year of his Reign, and took *Pharamia*, but in his return to *Jeruſalem* died at *Laris* in the year 1118.

Baldwin *dies.*

Another Baldwin *made King.*

Baldwin, ſirnam'd *Brugenſis*, Governour of *Edeſſa*, and his Couſin, was choſen in his ſtead; againſt whom the ſame Summer the Caliph of *Egypt*, with the Aſſiſtance of the *Turks*, and King of *Damaſcus*, came with a great Army: and tho both Armies lay in ſight of each other

other ſome time, yet they retir'd without coming to any Action. However *Gazi*, one of the greateſt Princes of the *Turks* in the leſſer *Aſia*, in conjunction with the King of *Damaſcus*, and *Debeis* King of *Arabia*, invading the Country about *Antioch*, fell upon and ſlew *Roger* Prince of that City, near *Aleppo*, with moſt of his Army; but roving up and down careleſly after their Victory, gave King *Baldwin* an Opportunity to rout and make a great Slaughter amongſt them: who ſome time after took *Garaze*, one of the ſtrongeſt Caſtles belonging to the King of *Damaſcus*, which he raſed to the ground. But now comes a hard turn of Fortune upon *Baldwin*; for *Balac* the *Perſian* Sultan with a great Army of *Turks* invading the Country about *Antioch*, and the other being impatient of delay, and not ſo much as protracting the War till the Arrival of the *Venetian* Succours, march'd on with what Troops he had againſt the Enemy, with greater Courage than Conduct; by whom he was defeated and taken Priſoner, and with ſome others of his beſt Commanders carry'd away Captives to *Carras*. *Defeated and taken Priſoner.*

In the mean time the Caliph of *Egypt* laid ſiege to *Joppa* both by Sea and Land; but being defeated by the Doge of *Venice* by Sea, who came to the Relief of it, and by the Lord *Euſtace* (who had the Adminiſtration of the Kingdom of *Jeruſalem* during the King's Captivity) in a notable Battle near *Aſcalon*, this encourag'd the Chriſtians to lay ſiege to the antient, famous and ſtrong City of *Tyre* by Sea and Land; and after many brave Aſſaults, and four Months time, the *Turks* ſurrender'd the Place, *June* 29. 1124. and the *Venetians* for their good Service, had according to Articles with the Kings of *Jeruſalem*, the third part of the City aſſign'd them. Not long after this good Succeſs, King *Baldwin* was ſet at liberty for a Ranſom of 100000 Ducats, after a Captivity of eighteen Months; but continu'd not long idle, for he overthrew the *Turks* in three notable Battels, and the *Egyptians* and *Saracens* near *Aſcalon*: but *Hugh Paganus* the firſt Maſter of the Templars, with the freſh Supplies he brought from divers Chriſtian Nations, in conjunction with *Baldwin*, and other Chriſtian Princes of *Syria*, could by no means carry *Damaſcus*, whoſe Siege they puſh'd on with great Vigour; for beſides the Reſolution of 1124. Tyre *taken by the Chriſtians.* Baldwin *ſet at liberty.*

the Garison and Strength of the Place, the Elements did not favour them, and so they retir'd.

Mean while *Fulk* Count of *Turin*, &c. of about sixty Years of Age, having settled Affairs at home, takes an Expedition into the Holy Land; to whom King *Baldwin* gave his Daughter *Melisenda* alias *Margaret* in Marriage, and with her the Succession of the Kingdom of *Jerusalem*, wherein he was actually invested on the Death of *Baldwin* (which happen'd *August* 22. 1131.) and was haras's'd with divers domestick as well as foreign Troubles; more particularly was defeated at, and besieg'd in the Castle of *Monteberrare* by the *Turks*, which he was glad to deliver up on condition of his own and the Besieged's Liberty; and sometime after was slain with a Fall off his Horse, being succeeded by his Son *Baldwin* the Third. About this time *Sanguin* the *Turk* laying hold of the opportunity of a Discord between *Raymond* Prince of *Antioch*, and *Joscelin* Count of *Edessa*, besieg'd *Edessa*, the Count being absent; and took it by mining: where he exercis'd all imaginable Cruelty towards the poor Christians in the Place. But *Baldwin* in the first Year of his Reign recover'd the Castle of *Tobal* from the *Turks*, which he strongly fortify'd; tho undertaking an Expedition against the King of *Damascus* next year, he was by *Naradin* the *Turk*, the King's Son-in-Law, so hardly put to it, that his and his Army's Escape was accounted a Miracle.

Fulk *King of* Jerusalem. - 1131.

Baldwin 3.

Edessa *taken by the* Turks.

Now the News of the Loss of *Edessa*, with the Miseries of the Christians, coming into all parts of *Christendom*, *Conrade* the Third, Emperor of *Germany*, with the Assistance of some Princes of *Germany* and others, rais'd a great Army; with which, after many Difficulties, Discouragements, and Disappointments from the *Greek* Emperor *Emanuel*, and the drowning of many gallant Men by the sudden overflowing of the River *Melas*, he arriv'd at *Constantinople*; and not only was deny'd to enter the City, and disappointed of Provision and other Necessaries, but after their Departure into *Asia*, the *Greek* Emperor held secret Intelligence with the *Turks*, and contriv'd the means whereby they might be best defeated: hereupon some part of them was by *Pampluno*, a *Turkish* Commander, routed near *Balhis*, and many slain; but attempting to do the like to that part

Conrade *the Emperor's Expedition to the Holy Land.*

part of the Army which paſs'd thro *Phrygia*, they not only fail'd in their Enterprize, but were themſelves defeated with a great Slaughter. The *Turks* hereupon thought it moſt adviſable to endeavour to ſtop the Chriſtians Paſſage over the River *Meander*, and for that purpoſe encamp'd on the other ſide of it with a great Army; which the Emperor obſerving, retir'd a little out of the danger of the Enemies ſhot, and commanded his Soldiers to refreſh themſelves and their Horſes that night, that they might be ready againſt morning to give the Enemy battel; whom he drew out accordingly, and deliver'd himſelf to them to this purpoſe: *That this Expedition was taken in hand for Chriſt's ſake, and the Glory of God, and not of Man; and therefore having contemn'd a pleaſant Life at home, ſeparated from their neareſt Friends and Relations, they endured Miſeries in foreign Countries, were expos'd to Dangers, pin'd with Hunger, quaked with Cold, and languiſh'd with Heat, had the Earth for their Beds, the Heavens their Covering; and tho famous, rich, and ruling over Nations, wore always their Gorgets as neceſſary Bonds, and were laden with them and their Armour, as* Peter *the great Servant of Chriſt was ſurcharg'd with two Chains, and kept with four Quaternions of Soldiers: But thoſe Barbarians, divided from them by the River, were Enemies to the Croſs of Chriſt, whom they had long deſir'd to encounter, and in whoſe Blood (as* David *ſaid) they had vow'd to waſh themſelves. For who was ſo ignorant as not to know, if they deſir'd directly to aſcend to Heaven (for God was not unjuſt, but knew the cauſe of their coming, and would recompenſe them with immortal Fields and ſhady Dwellings of Paradiſe, who had forſaken their own Dwellings, and choſe rather for his ſake to die than live) if they call'd to remembrance what thoſe uncircumciſed had done againſt their Friends and Countrymen, if they were touch'd with Compaſſion for their innocent Blood ſpilt, they muſt fight valiantly, and let no Fear nor Terror daunt them? They ſhould let thoſe Barbarians know, by how much their Saviour excell'd the other falſe Prophet and Seducer, by ſo much they were ſuperior to them in all things. Seeing therefore they were a holy Camp, they ſhould not cowardly loſe themſelves, or fear for Chriſt's ſake honourably to venture their Lives: For if Chriſt died for them, how much juſter was it they ſhould*

His Speech to his Soldiers.

die for him? Let them fight in the Name of Chriſt, with an aſſur'd Expectation of Victory, for he hoped none of the Enemy would be able to ſtand; but if they died, they ſhould have an honourable Burying-place, wherever they fell for Chriſt's ſake. Let the Perſian *Archer, for Chriſt's ſake, ſtrike me; I'll die in aſſur'd Hope, and with that Arrow, as with a Chariot, will come into that Reſt, which ſhall be dearer to me, than if I ſhould with a baſe ordinary kind of Death in my Sins, end my days in my Bed. Now then let us take revenge on them, with whoſe impure Feet our Kinſmen and Chriſtian Brethren were trodden down, who are gone into that common Sanctuary, wherein Chriſt our Saviour is become a Companion of the Dead: We are thoſe mighty Men, we have all drawn our Swords, which ſtand about the lively and divine Sepulchre, as about* Solomon's *Bed; wherefore we that be free-born, let us take out of the way thoſe* Hagarens, *the Children of the Bond-woman; and let us remove them as Stones of Offence out of Chriſt's way, whom (I know not why) the* Greeks *feed up as greedy Wolves to their own Deſtruction, and with ſhame fat them with their Blood: whereas Men truly courageous and wiſe, ought to have driven them from their Provinces and Cities, as ravening wild Beaſts from their Flocks. Now as for the Difficulty of paſſing this River, I my ſelf will ſhew you the way, and be the firſt that ſhall take it. I know the Water beaten back by our Force, will be at a ſtand, and break its Courſe, returning as it were backward; the* Iſraelites *of old, by a means not unlike, paſs'd over* Jordan. *The Attempt ſhall be tranſmitted to all Poſterity; by no Tract of Time ſhall it be worn out, but remain freſh in memory, to the great Diſhonour of the* Turks, *whoſe dead Bodies, ſlain at this River, ſhall lie like a Mountain, and be ſeen as a Trophy of our Victory, to the World's end, and our immortal Praiſe and Glory.*

Defeats the Turks. The Emperor had no ſooner done, than all the Troops chearfully took the River, and landed without oppoſition on the other ſide, fell with great Fury upon the Enemy, and after ſome ſmall Reſiſtance, put them to flight; and like fierce Lions purſuing the Chaſe, covered the Fields and Valleys all over with dead Bodies, whoſe Bones being afterwards collected into Heaps, appear'd long after as ſo many Hills in the ſight of Travellers. After this Victory the Emperor laid ſiege to

Ico-

Iconium, the chief Seat of the *Turkiſh* Kings in the leſſer *Aſia*; but the Place being well fortify'd both by Art and Nature, and valiantly defended by the *Turks*, and Want and Mortality creeping into the Emperor's Army, many of whom were poiſon'd (as was ſaid) by the *Greeks*, the Siege was rais'd. *Baldwin* in the mean time fortify'd *Gaza*, as a Bulwark againſt *Egypt*, and took *Aſcalon* from the *Turks* after two deſperate Aſſaults. But *Lewis* the Eighth, the *French* King, his Expedition into the Holy Land, much about the ſame time as the Emperor's (which is refer'd to the Year 1146.) and his beſieging *Damaſcus*, was to as little purpoſe as the Emperor's Siege of *Iconium*; the Cauſe whereof was chiefly attributed to the *Greek* Emperor *Emanuel*. *Unſucceſful.* 1146.

Now the State of the Chriſtians in *Syria*, for ſome Years after the foreſaid Expeditions, reſted in good Peace: but *Noradin* the *Turk*, mov'd with ſome Injuries from the Chriſtians, laid cloſe ſiege to *Paneada*, a City in Mount *Libanus*, took and ras'd it, and overthrew King *Baldwin* ſome time after at the River *Jordan*: and the Chriſtians having repair'd the City again, he attempted to take it a ſecond time, but was prevented by the Approach of King *Baldwin* with his Army to relieve it; who ſome time after, viz. *Feb.* 13. 1163. was poiſon'd by a *Jewiſh* Phyſician, after he had reign'd twenty Years. He was a Prince ſo much beloved, not only by his Friends, but by his Enemies, that when *Noradin* King of *Damaſcus* was excited by ſome of his Captains to invade his Kingdom at the time when they were ſolemnizing his Funeral Obſequies, he refus'd it, and anſwer'd, *That Compaſſion and Regard was to be had to the juſt Sorrow of the Chriſtians his Subjects; for they had loſt ſuch a King, that the like was hardly again to be found in the World.* *Death of* Baldwin 3. 1163.

But to leave the Affairs of the Kingdom of *Jeruſalem*, and return to the Proceedings of the *Turks* at the ſame time in leſſer *Aſia*. After the Death of Sultan *Solyman*, one *Mubamet* ſucceeded him; who breaking out into open War with *Maſat* Sultan of *Iconium*, *John Comnenus*, the *Greek* Emperor, gave aid to *Maſat* againſt the other: but they agreeing, join'd their Forces, and overthrew the Emperor, as he was beſieging *Iconium*; after which *Maſat* at his Death divided his

Dominions between his three Sons, giving *Iconium* to *Clizasthan* the eldest; *Amasia* and *Ancira*, with *Cappadocia*, to *Jagupasan*; and to *Dadune* the Cities of *Cæsarea*, *Sebastia*, and the adjacent Countries. The Sultan and *Jagupasan* falling out, the Emperor *Emanuel* took part with the latter, who by his help got many Victories; which made the Sultan *Clizasthan* apply himself to the Emperor, make a League with him, and even wait upon him to *Constantinople*, calling him Father, and the Emperor him Son. But all was Dissimulation, for after his Return home, he thrust *Dadune* out of *Sebastia*, and did not restore it to the Emperor according to Agreement; and having by War, and the Death of *Jagupasan*, possess'd himself of his Partition, he grew very potent, and invading the Emperor's Dominions, took the City of *Laodicea* from him, and mightily ravag'd the Country thereabouts.

Emperor Emanuel *at war with the* Turks.

This made the Emperor pass into *Asia* with a great Army, and fortify *Dorileum* and *Subleum* on the Frontiers; after which he return'd to *Constantinople*, and from thence expostulating with the Sultan about breach of Promise, while the other retorted, it came to an open Rupture. The Effect of this was the Emperor's raising a mighty Army, with which he march'd into *Asia*, in order to call the other to an account for it: But tho the Sultan did all he could to distress the Christian Army in their March, by destroying the Country before them, and other Stratagems, and withal had procur'd great Aid from the Sultan of *Persia*, his Kinsman; yet fearing the doubtful Event of War, he sought Peace by an Ambassador, which was proudly rejected by the Emperor, who scornfully order'd him to tell his Master, He would give him answer to his Requests under the Walls of *Iconium*. This made the Sultan with all his Force possess himself of the Straits of *Zibrica*, by which the Christian Army must necessarily pass; the Entrance into which was by a long Valley, enclos'd with high Mountains on either side, which towards the North rising and falling, as the Hills gave way, open'd into divers large Valleys, that by degrees grew again straiter and straiter, with high and craggy Rocks.

Emperor's great Overfight.

Into this dangerous Valley the Emperor enters with his whole Army, where he had not been long, but the

Turks

Turks from the Mountains ſhew'd themſelves on either ſide, and ply'd the Chriſtians with their deadly Shot as thick as Hail. However the Sons of *Angelus*, and others in the Van, throwing themſelves into a three-ſquare Battel in the Form of a Wedg, with their Targets cloſe over their Heads, by plain Force drove the *Turks* out of the Straits with little Loſs, and recover'd the Top of the Hill, where they incamp'd; which the reſt of the Army not preſently following, the *Turks* aſſaulted them firſt from the Cliffs on every ſide, and thence deſcending into the Plain, firſt routed the right Wing, which, with *Baldwin* their gallant Leader, were moſt of them ſlain; and the *Turks*, to increaſe the Miſery of the diſtreſs'd Chriſtians, who ſaw now no way of eſcape, ſhew'd them the Head of *Andronicus Bataza*, the Emperor's Nephew, on the Point of a Lance, who coming with an Army out of *Paphlagonia* againſt the *Turks* of *Amaſia*, was by the way overthrown and ſlain by them. However the brave Emperor, not to be wanting to himſelf in this Labyrinth of Diſtreſs, with a few choice Soldiers, reſolv'd to fight his way thro the Enemy, or die upon the ſpot; which he happily effected, tho the other Troops that attempted to follow him could not accompliſh it, but were miſerably ſlain there and in the other Straits, thro which they endeavour'd to paſs: and, as an Addition to the Miſery, the Sand rais'd by the Men and Horſes, ſo blinded the Soldiers on both ſides, that many times they kill'd one another without reſpect either to Foe or Friend.

Enclos'd by the Turks, *yet makes his Eſcape.*

The Emperor himſelf almoſt ſpent, but out of danger, ſtood a while to take breath under a wild Pear-tree, without a Man to attend him; when a poor Soldier eſpying him, helped him up with his Helmet, and buckled on his Armour, which before hung dangling about him, when in the mean time a *Turk* coming up, took his Horſe by the Bridle, and would have made him Priſoner; but the Emperor with the Truncheon of his broken Lance ſtriking him down, clear'd himſelf of him: yet he was no ſooner freed from him, than that a Body of ſtraggling *Turks* would have ſeiz'd him alſo; but having ſlain one of them with the aforeſaid Horſeman's Staff, and ten of his own Men coming in to him, he eſcaped them again: and after having run thro

thro many other dangers, at last got safe to the Troops that were gone before. But before he had quite joined them, finding himself ready to faint for thirst, he order'd some Water to be fetch'd him out of an adjacent River; but then perceiving by the taste thereof that it was infected, he said, with a deep Sigh, *O how unfortunately have I tasted Christian Blood!* To which a saucy Soldier reply'd, *I say, 'tis not now the first time; but you have long since, and often drunk the Blood of Christians, even till you were drunk again, at the time you did with most grievous Exactions vex and devour your poor Subjects.* But he wisely seem'd as if he did not hear it; as he did at another time, when being to animate his Soldiers to rescue his Treasure, like to fall into the hands of the Enemy, an impudent Fellow told him, his *Treasure should have been given to the Soldiers before, rather than now, when it cannot be recovered without great Danger and Bloodshed; and therefore if you are a Man of Valour, as you would be accounted, and the case requires, valiantly charge the* Turks *your self, and so recover your ill-gotten Goods.* To whom he made no other answer, than, *Good words, Soldier*; and so put it up.

The saucy Sayings of two Soldiers to the Emperor.

Soon after the Emperor was joined by *Andronicus Contostephanus* with some Troops more, who thro good fortune had made their escape from the Enemy; but these Remains of the Christian Army were still in so miserable a condition, and so apprehensive of being totally destroy'd by the Enemy, that the Emperor had thoughts of escaping alone, and leaving the rest to shift for themselves; yet he was diverted from this purpose by a severe Reprimand from a common Soldier, who overheard him communicate his Design to his Generals. But very providentially, in the height of his distress, the *Turk* of his own accord offers him by an Embassador honourable Conditions of Peace; one Article whereof was, That *Dorileum* and *Subleum*, before fortify'd by the Emperor, and the ground of that unfortunate War, should be rased again. The latter was actually demolish'd; but declining to do the other, the *Turk* complains of it by his Embassador, and finding no redress, but that the Emperor was forced out of necessity to sign those Articles, yet not obliged now to keep them; this so incensed the Sultan, that he sent

Peace offered him by the Turks.

an

an Army of 24000 Men, under one of his famous Captains named *Atapack*, to deſtroy the Emperor's Provinces and Towns even to the Sea-Coaſts, and in token thereof to bring him ſome of the Sea-water, an Oar, and ſome Sea-ſand back along with him, which he did accordingly: but upon his return with a rich Booty, as he paſt the River *Meander*, he fell into the hands of *John Bataza* ths Emperor's Nephew, and *Ducas Conſtantine* a valiant Commander, where he was ſlain with all his Army. *His Death.* Many other Conflicts happen'd between the Imperialiſts and *Turks* till the Death of *Emanuel*, who a little before his deceaſe took upon him the habit of a Monk, after he had worthily govern'd the Empire 38 years, and who was ſucceeded by *Alexius Comnenus* or *Porphyrogenitus*, a Child of 12 years old; in whoſe Reign, and the two ſucceeding Emperors, *Andronicus* and *Iſaac Angelus*, *Clizaſthan* Sultan of *Iconium* found means to take from the Empire divers ſtrong Towns and Caſtles in the leſſer *Aſia*, together with a great part of the Country of *Phrygia*; and at length died full of Years, leaving behind him four Sons, *Maſut*, *Coppatine*, *Reucratine*, and *Caichoſroes*, all at years of Maturity, amongſt whom he divided his Kingdom; bequeathing unto the firſt *Amaſia*, *Ancira*, *Dorileum*, with ſeveral other pleaſant Cities in *Pontus*; to *Coppatine*, *Melytene*, *Cæſarea*, and the Colony now call'd *Taxara*; to *Reucratine* he allotted *Aminſum*, *Docea*, with ſome other Cities on the Sea-Coaſt; but unto *Caichoſroes* he left *Iconium* his Regal Seat, and with it *Lycaonia*, *Pamphylia*, and all the adjacent Countries as far as *Cottiangum*. Of theſe, *Coppatine* did not long ſurvive his Father, about whoſe Inheritance *Reucratine* and *Maſut* fell out, and at laſt came to an open War; but *Maſut* proving too weak for the other, quitted his Claim, and made a peace with him, while *Reucratine*, a Man of an ambitious and haughty Spirit, declared war againſt his Brother *Caichoſroes*, who doubting his Strength, fled to the Emperor *Alexius Angelus* for aſſiſtance, who being not very eaſy at home himſelf, afforded him none: ſo that being ſcarce come back to *Iconium*, he was expelled from thence by *Reucratine*, and forced to fly into *Armenia*, where he was by *Zebune* King of that Country, and a *Turk* alſo, honourably received, but failed of the Aid he deſired, the

Turkiſh Sultans at variance among themſelves.

King

King pretending he was in league with *Reucratine*. And so the poor Sultan utterly discourag'd, return'd again to *Constantinople*, and there very meanly spent the remainder of his days.

CHAP. III.

Of the Turkish *Affairs in* Syria, Palestine, *and* Egypt *in the time of* Saladin, *&c.*

The Turks *in* Syria, *&c.*

BUT now we must leave the *Turkish* Affairs in the lesser *Asia*, and see how they proceeded in *Syria*, *Judæa*, and *Egypt*; where those restless People never ceased to enlarge their Empire, till they had brought all these Countries under their Obedience. Young *Almericus* his Brother succeeding *Baldwin* in the Kingdom of *Jerusalem*, the beginning of his Reign was troubled with the *Egyptians* denying to pay him the usual Tribute; in revenge whereof he march'd in person into *Egypt*, routed Sultan *Dargan* and his Army, who to stop the pursuit, cut the Banks of the *Nile*. Upon which *Almericus* return'd to *Jerusalem*, but soon after went back again to aid *Dargan* against *Saracon*, whom *Noradin* King of *Damascus* sent with an Army to restore Sultan *Sanar*, and depose *Dargan*; who being slain in this Expedition, *Saracon* kept for himself what other places he took; which made *Sanar* join his Troops with *Almericus*, and endeavour to drive *Saracon* out of *Egypt*. In the mean time *Noradin* making an inroad upon the Christian Frontiers, was by *Gerbert*, Lay-Master of the Templars, routed near *Tripoli*, and had much ado to escape half-naked, while most of his Men were slain. But soon after, to revenge the disgrace, he laid siege to *Arethusa*; yet hearing of the March of *Bohemund* of *Antioch*, *Raymond* the younger, Earl of *Tripolis*, and others against him, he drew off, but was so eagerly pursued by the Christians, that he got the opportunity to hem them in, in deep and rotten Fens; and there not only made a great slaughter of the Soldiers, but took all the chief Commanders prisoners, except the Prince of *Armenia*, who foreseeing the danger, left off the pursuit

Christians routed by the Turks.

purſuit in time. The Prince of *Antioch* was about a year after ranſomed for a great Sum of Mony; but the Count of *Tripolis* continued a Captive for about eight years. The ſurrendring of *Arethuſa* and *Paneade* was the conſequence of this Victory to *Noradin*, while *Saracon* took two Caſtles from the Chriſtians, one in the Country of *Sidon*, and the other in the Borders of *Arabia*; and ſoon after march'd with a mighty Army into *Egypt*, againſt whom Sultan *Sanar* craved the aſſiſtance of *Almericus*, in conjunction with whom he overthrew him in a great Battel fought upon the Banks of the *Nile*; but the *Turks* in their flight lighting upon the King's Carriages, with the whole Baggage of the Army, had the luck to make a prey of them: whereby it happen'd, that as the Chriſtians had the Victory, ſo the *Turks* enjoy'd the Spoil.

The City of *Alexandria* being ſoon after block'd up by *Almericus*, *Saracon* left his Nephew *Saladin* with a thouſand Horſe in the place, and ſecretly marching off with the reſt of his Army, paſſed thro the Deſarts, and did great harm in the upper parts of *Egypt*; but not being able to relieve *Alexandria* with all the force he could make, and the Town being in diſtreſs, he made a peace with *Almericus* by the means of the Count of *Cæſarea*, and another noble Perſon that were his Priſoners, by which the City was forthwith ſurrender'd to the King, from whence he arrived at *Aſcalon* with great Glory, *Sept.* 21. 1167.

Alexandria *beſieged, and delivered to* Almericus.

1167.

Almericus fluſh'd with the late Expedition, and much encouraged thereunto by *Gerbert* Maſter of the Templars, he ſoon found a pretence againſt the Sultan to break with him; and ſo with a puiſſant Army march'd into *Egypt* again, and ſat down before *Peluſium*, which after three days ſiege he took by Aſſault, put all to the ſword, and gave it according to promiſe to the Templars. Then he attack'd *Caire*, while his Fleet deſtroy'd the City of *Tapium*. In the mean time the Sultan, deluding him with the Promiſe of a great Sum of Mony if he would grant him Peace, got *Saracon* once more to come with a great Army to his aid, whoſe conjoin'd Powers *Almericus* not being able to withſtand, forſakes his Conqueſt, and retired home, having by this Expedition, begun with the breach of his Faith, laid the foundation of the Ruin of his Kingdom.

Almericus *his Conqueſts in, and Return from* Egypt.

Some

Some time after this, *Saracon* under the most specious shew of Friendship, rendring the Sultan of *Egypt* secure, got the better opportunity to kill him. And this was no sooner done, but *Saracon* was by the great Caliph (from whom the *Egyptian* Sultans, as from their Superiours, the true Successors of their great Prophet *Mahomet*, took their Authority) appointed Sultan, being the first *Turk* that ever enjoy'd the same Dignity; which he did not enjoy a full year, but that he was taken away by Death, and was succeeded by his Nephew *Saladin*, who being altogether a martial Man, and not regarding the reverend Majesty of the *Caliph*, as all his Predecessors had done, knock'd out his Brains with his Mace, and utterly rooted out all his Posterity, dividing the great Treasures of the *Egyptians* among his *Turks*, the more to encourage them to follow him in his Wars against the Christians. Then with a great Army in 1170, he enter'd *Palestine*, and took *Daron*: he likewise made divers Incursions into the said Countries the succeeding years. *Noradin* Sultan of *Damascus* dying in the mean time, was succeeded by his Son *Melechsala*, as was also *Almericus* by his young Son *Baldwin* in the Kingdom of *Jerusalem*, to whom *Raymond* Count of *Tripolis* was by common Consent chosen Protector; and who, upon *Saladin*'s possessing himself of the Kingdom of *Damascus*, whose Neighbourhood and Greatness he liked not, in conjunction with *Cotobed* Prince of *Parthia*, and *Melechsala*'s Uncle, opposed him with their Troops, but without success. However, the better to confirm himself in his new-gotten Kingdom, he qualified the Resentment of the Christian Princes with Presents and otherwise for a time; but finding at length they miserably wasted the Country about *Emissa* and *Cesarea*, *Saladin* from *Egypt* invaded the Kingdom of *Jerusalem*, and ransack'd all before him. But King *Baldwin* finding his Army dispers'd, suddenly fell upon and routed his Army, after a dubious Fight of some hours continuance, wherein most of them were slain or afterwards perish'd with Hunger and Cold, it being *Nov.* 25. 1177. But *Saladin* in his turn overthrew the Christians in another Fight that passed between them and part of his Army: For as they had defeated the *Turks*, and were securely dividing the Spoil, he attack'd them, and miserably slew many

Saladin *Sultan of* Egypt, *his Wars and Actions.*

1170.

Beaten by Baldwin.

1177.

Beats him.

many of them; which Victory of his rendred his Name dreadful to the Christians of *Syria*. However, there was a Peace upon this made between him and King *Baldwin*, which lasted for about two years; when *Saladin*, eager in the pursuit of his haughty Designs, invades the Holy Land with a mighty Army, and seem'd to carry all before him, when the King, encourag'd by the Knights of the Order, encountring him near a Village call'd *Robolet*, defeated and destroy'd most of his Army; and *Saladin* himself by long Marches had much ado to get again to *Damascus*. In revenge of this he recruited his Army, and besieg'd *Beritus* both by Sea and Land, as his Brother did *Darum*; but he thought not fit to abide the King's coming to relieve it (of whose March he had certain advice by some Letters he had intercepted) but retired to *Sephor*.

Beaten again.

Now *Saladin* finding he could do no good against the King of *Jerusalem*, turn'd his Forces another way, and passing the *Euphrates*, fell into *Mesopotamia*, and took *Edessa*, *Carras*, and divers other Places, while King *Baldwin* ravaged the Country of *Damascus*: in revenge whereof, *Saladin*, after his Success in *Mesopotamia*, march'd directly to *Aleppo*, which was soon after treacherously surrender'd to him; and taking advantage of *Baldwin*'s Sickness, he fell into the Holy Land, and ravaged a great part of the Country, but could not take the strong City of *Petra*. However King *Baldwin* found the Power of the *Turks* to grow so great, that he thought fit to send Embassadors to the Council of *Verona*, who very gravely, in the Pope and Emperor's presence, represented the bad Condition of the Christians in the East, and pressingly craved Aid, wherein they were encouraged; and so went from thence to divers Christian Courts, where meeting with the like encouragement, they return'd to *Jerusalem* with the good news. And indeed no more came of it, because of the Discords of the *European* Princes; which Disappointment hastned *Baldwin*'s Death, which happen'd *May* 16. 1185. aged 25 Years: being succeeded by *Baldwin* the Fifth, a Youth, who died soon after, and in whose room came *Guy*, the last King of *Jerusalem*, who was so much envy'd by *Raymond* Count of *Tripolis* his Competitor, and wrought so much Discord amongst the Christians, as hasten'd the fatal Period of the

Saladin invades Mesopotamia.

Takes Aleppo.

Baldwin's Death. 1185.

the Kingdom of *Jeruſalem* apace: which *Saladin* obſerving, with a vaſt Army of *Turks*, *Saracens*, and *Egyptians*, beſieg'd *Ptolemais*, that was ſtrongly fortify'd, and gariſon'd by the Knights Templars and Hoſpitalers; and notwithſtanding a moſt terrible Aſſault
1187. made upon it on *May*-day in 1187, not only defended it ſtoutly, but at the ſame time ſallied out, and made a terrible ſlaughter of the *Turks* on all ſides, who in this Action loſt 15000 Men, and the reſt fled: With whom ſided all this while the traitorous Count of *Tripolis*, to whom *Saladin* promiſed the Kingdom of *Jeruſalem*, to be held of him, and who adviſed him to beſiege *Tiberias*, a City in his Juriſdiction; for the Relief of which he ſhammingly importun'd the Aid of the King and other Princes, who kindly joining his Troops with their own Forces, engag'd in a moſt terrible Battel againſt a vaſt Army of the *Turks*, conſiſting of 120000 Horſe, and 160000 Foot, for a whole day together with uncertain Succeſs; but renewing the Fight the next day, the *Turks* by the Treaſon and ſhameful Flight of the Count of *Tripolis* gain'd the Victory, and took King *Guy*, *Gerbert* Grand Maſter of the Templars, the Marquiſs of *Montferrat*, and divers other Priſoners.

Saladin victorious.

Now the Conſequence of this Victory was, that *Saladin* without any great reſiſtance took the Cities of *Ptolemais*, *Biblis* and *Berithus*, in all which places he uſed his Victory with great moderation; and with the like good fortune, in the ſpace of one Month, took all the Sea-port Towns between *Sidon* and *Aſcalon*, except the antient City of *Tyre*; beſieg'd *Aſcalon* alſo for nine days, but being loth to loſe time, he march'd away directly to *Jeruſalem*, which he ſummon'd to yield, perſuading the Citizens, while they had time, to ſubmit to his Mercy: but they rejecting the Summons, he attack'd the place with great vigour for fourteen days, when the Citizens conſidering their own condition, and the bad ſtate of the Kingdom, capitulated *Octob.* 2. 1187. upon condition that ſuch Chriſtians as had a mind to it, might ſtill remain with their Goods and Liberty in the City, and the reſt depart with what they could carry on their backs; who were ſome time after miſerably lighten'd of their Burdens by the falſe Count of *Tripolis*, as they were going towards *Tripolis*, *Tyre*, and *Antioch*, the only three Cities now left to the Chriſtians

Takes Jeruſalem.

in

in *Syria*: but he did not live long to enjoy it, for he was shortly after found dead in his Bed, and (as some say) circumcised. *Ascalon* also was soon after *Jerusalem* surrender'd to *Saladin*, upon condition of the Freedom of the Citizens to stay or depart, and of the King and Master of the Templars free Liberty, which was afterwards perform'd: but he had not the same success with the Siege of *Tyre*, which was supply'd by the Marquis of *Montferrat* with *Isaac Angelus* the *Greek* Emperor's Fleet; tho to balance this, he had the famous City of *Antioch* betray'd to him by the Patriarch for Mony, and therewith 25 Cities more, with all the Provinces belonging thereunto, always accounted to have been the third part of the Kingdom of *Jerusalem*.

Antioch *betray'd to him.*

But while these things were in agitation, great Preparations were made by divers *European* Princes to oppose the *Turks*; and King *Guy*, as soon as he had got his liberty, and was dispensed by the Pope of his Oath to *Saladin*, that he would never attempt to recover his Kingdom, and being join'd by divers scatter'd Troops out of all parts of *Syria*, laid siege to *Ptolemais*: to the relief of which *Saladin* coming up, they fought a sharp Battel, wherein the Christians had been totally routed, had it not been for *Jeffrey Lusignan* the King's Brother, who in good time came on with fresh Supplies, and repress'd the fierce Assaults of the Enemy, now almost in possession of the desired Victory: however the Christians lost 2000 Men, and *Gerbert* Master of the Templars; but still continued the Siege all Winter, tho drawn into an Ambuscade by *Saladin* (under hopes of Provision) wherein also he slew multitudes of them.

Ptolemais *besieged by the Christians.*

In the mean time *Frederick* Emperor of *Germany* having raised a potent Army, march'd thro *Hungary*, *Bulgaria*, and *Thrace*, for the relief of the distressed Christians in *Syria*; and arriving at *Constantinople*, was received with much honour by the then Emperor *Isaac Angelus*, tho more for fear and formality, than any good-will: and therefore he did all he could to hasten his Passage into *Asia*, where he overthrew the *Turks* under the Sultan of *Iconium*, and taking the City by force, gave the Soldiers the plundering of it. He also beat the *Turks* in another Battel, took the City of *Philomela*, and raised it, putting all to the sword, because, contrary to the Law of Nations, they slew the Messenger he

Frederick *the Emperor's Expedition into the East.*

ſent to ſummon them to ſurrender. He likewiſe marched into the leſſer *Armenia*, took *Melitene*, and routed the *Turks* that came to relieve it with a great ſlaughter; and entring into *Comagena*, gave a great defeat to *Saphadin*, *Saladin*'s Son: but purſuing the Enemy too eagerly, his Horſe foundred under him as he paſſed the River *Saleph*, was dragg'd by the Stirrup thro the Water, and almoſt drowned, being taken up for dead on the other ſide, and ſaid no more than, *Lord receive my Soul*, before he gave up the Ghoſt, *June* 10.

His Death.

1190. 1190. In his ſtead his Son *Frederick* was choſen General, upon whom, with the reſt of the Army yet mourning for the death of the Emperor, the *Turks* gave a ſudden and fierce Charge, in hopes to have overthrown him, but without ſucceſs: and the Chriſtians were ſoon after encounter'd with a worſe Enemy, to wit, Famine, which made the General in his march turn a little aſide for *Antioch*, which was eaſily ſurrendred to him, and where his Soldiers Wants were plentifully relieved; but he had not ſtaid there above fifteen days, but the Plague began to rage in the Army, which encouraged *Dodequin*, *Saladin*'s General, to fall upon him; between whom there enſued a great and doubtful Battel, the Chriſtians exceeding the Enemy in Valour, and they them again in Numbers: at laſt the former gave way, which being obſerv'd by *Frederick*, he with a Troop of brave Horſe brake in with that fury upon the Enemy, that the *Turks* were glad to give way; and being ſeconded by *Leopold* Duke of *Auſtria* with a Body of Foot, totally routed them with the loſs of four thouſand Men, and but of few Chriſtians. After which, *Frederick* march'd into *Cœloſyria*, pacified *Laodicea*, took *Berithus*, and ſeveral Cities in *Syria* which belonged before to the King of *Jeruſalem*, but were now revolted to the *Turks*. Coming to *Tyre*, he buried his Father there; and giving *Guy* and the other Chriſtian Princes that were ſtill before *Ptolemais* notice of his arrival, he ſignify'd his deſire of joining them with his Army, and they ſhould ſend him Ships to tranſport them accordingly: which was readily done, and himſelf and his Men receiv'd by the Princes in their Camp with all Demonſtrations of Joy imaginable. With this ſtrong Reinforcement the Chriſtians reſolved to attack the City in earneſt; and having aſſign'd unto each Nation its quarter,

Great Battel between the Turks *and Chriſtians.*

quarter, they all made a general Aſſault upon it with exceeding fury on the 14th of *October*, but were as notably repulſed by the *Turkiſh* Gariſon; after which many light Skirmiſhes paſſed between them and the *Turks* abroad, but more for Booty than any thing elſe. In the mean time, divers Princes of the Weſt came to the ſiege, but their number rather increaſed the want of Proviſion, than furthered the Service; neither did the Diſcord between *Guy* and the Marquiſs of *Montferrat* do the Chriſtians any good, but much harm, among whom the Plague raged, of which Duke *Frederick* died, to the great grief of the whole Army, and was afterwards ſolemnly buried at *Tyre* near his Father. Now all the hopes of the diſtreſſed Chriſtians in the Eaſt conſiſted in the arrival of thoſe two mighty Princes, *Richard* the Firſt King of *England*, and *Philip* the Second of *France*; the laſt of which after a terrible Storm wintering at *Meſſina*, at length ſafely arrived with his Fleet at *Ptolemais*, where he was joyfully received by the Chriſtians, now the third year lying at the ſiege: while King *Richard* was detained longer in *Sicily* than he expected, by reaſon of a difference that happen'd between him and *Tancred* King of that Iſland, about his Siſter *Joan*'s Dowry; but at length putting to Sea, two of his Ships by ſtreſs of Weather were driven aground upon the Coaſt of *Cyprus*, and uſed barbarouſly by that People who robbed them, ſlew ſome of the Men, and impriſoned the reſt: nay, with the like unkindneſs, they would not ſuffer the reſt of the Fleet to put in, but were every where up in Arms to oppoſe them, which ſo incenſed the King, that he forthwith landed his Men, and quickly poſſeſs'd himſelf of the whole Iſland, taking their King (as they call'd him) *Iſaac Comnenus*, whom ſome term'd Emperor of the *Griffons*, Priſoner, whom in ſilver Chains he ſent into *Syria*; and having diſpoſed all things in good order, purſued the reſt of his Voyage, and at length arrived at *Ptolemais*, where his Reception was very honourable, and from whom, as well as the *French* King, mighty things were expected.

K. Richard *takes* Cyprus.

And now the Chriſtians at the ſiege fell hard to work, and with much fatigue undermined one of the greateſt Towers of the City (called the *Accurſed Tower*) with part of the Wall, in order to facilitate

a way into the City: and therefore all things being ready for the firing of their Mine, an Aſſault was alſo concerted at the ſame time, in the heat of which the Tower and Wall falling, open'd a Breach for the Chriſtians, which made the *Turks* preſently deſire a Parley, and ſo deſpairing of their Lives, did on the 12th of *July* 1191. ſurrender up the City, holy Croſs, 2000 Captives, and ſuch as they ſhould require of all them that were in the power of *Saladin*; beſides 200000 *Conſtantinopolitan* Ducats to be given by him to the two Kings for their Charges in the Siege, for the payment of which the *Turks* in the City were to remain as Hoſtages. But the *Germans* entring the City firſt, and pitching their Colours upon the Walls, gave great offence to the other Princes, eſpecially King *Richard*, who cauſed them to be taken down and ſtampt upon, to the diſpleaſure of Duke *Leopold*, who not long after remembred the King for it.

1191. Ptolemais *taken by the Chriſtians.*

But this was not all the difference that happen'd, for preſently the two great Kings of *England* and *France* fell at variance: Their Ambition, and an old Grudg about *Adela* the *French* King's Siſter, whom the other after affiancing would not marry, adminiſtred Fuel to their Diſſenſions, which made the *French* King reſolve to return home, pretending the ſtate of his Health would not allow his farther ſtay; but King *Richard* ſuſpecting his real Deſigns againſt his Provinces in *France*, made him ſwear he would not in his abſence invade them. After which he departed, as did likewiſe *Leopold* Duke of *Auſtria* ſoon after, who was followed by the *Venetians*, *Piſians*, and *Genoeſe*; which came no ſooner to the ears of *Saladin*, but he refuſed to pay the Mony, or reſtore the Priſoners according to the Articles of *Ptolemais*, and threatned alſo to chop off the Heads of all the Chriſtian Captives he had in his power, if the King ſhew'd any extremity to the Hoſtages in the City: tho he afterwards ſent Embaſſadors to King *Richard* with large Preſents, deſiring a longer time for the ſparing his Hoſtages, which together with the Preſents the King refuſed; at which the *Turk* was ſo enraged, that he beheaded all the Chriſtian Priſoners he had, which the King would not prevent, but upon the day appointed cauſed 2500 (or, as the *French* and *Germans* will have it, 7000) in the ſight of *Saladin*'s Army to be executed.

The

The Loſs of the ſtrong Town of *Ptolemais* much impaired the Reputation of *Saladin*, even among his own People; ſo that being now apprehenſive of further Loſſes, and hurried headlong with Deſpair, he raſed all the Towns along the Sea-Coaſt of *Syria* and *Paleſtine*; eſpecially thoſe of greateſt Importance to the Enemy, which King *Richard* and the Templars fortify'd again and repeopled. But their Proceedings herein and other things were in a great meaſure obſtructed by the Diviſions between them; but *Conrade*, Marquiſs of *Montferrat* (who laid claim to the Title of King of *Jeruſalem*) being aſſaſſinated, King *Richard* deals with *Iſabel* his Wife, in whoſe right the Marquiſs made his claim as aforeſaid, to relinquiſh that troubleſom Title, and to marry the Earl of *Champaign* his Nephew, to whom he gave the City of *Tyre*: and then apply'd himſelf to *Guy* to make a reſignation alſo of the Kingdom of *Jeruſalem*, and in lieu thereof to receive at his hands the Kingdom of *Cyprus*, which the poor King was glad to accept; and had a good bargain on't, for that pleaſant Kingdom continu'd in his Family of the *Luſignans* for the ſpace of 283 Years, whereas King *Richard* had only the bare Title of King of *Jeruſalem*, which ſome of his Succeſſors likewiſe uſed. However, not to be wanting to his Claim, and the Cauſe he was engag'd in, he directs his March with all his Forces towards *Jeruſalem*, till he came to a Place call'd *Arſua*, betwixt *Cæſarea* and *Joppa*. *Saladin* ſtill watching his Motion at a diſtance, and upon all occaſions ready, by Ambuſhes and otherways to impede his March; and attempting once to fall upon his Rear, *James de Avenes*, who commanded the *Flemings*, receiv'd him boldly, till the *French* firſt, and then the *Engliſh* came to ſuccour him: which brought it to a general Battle, where there was great Valour ſhew'd on both ſides, eſpecially by the *Turks*, who knew the Chriſtians Deſign was to beſiege *Jeruſalem*, on which their main Hope and Glory depended. The *French* and the *Engliſh* on the other ſide ſtrove who ſhould ſhow the greateſt Valour, neither would the *Flemings* ſeem any way to come ſhort of either of them. The Fight began about Noon, and ended with the Day: King *Richard* was wounded with an Arrow, and *Jaque* ſelling his Life very dear to the great aſtoniſhment of the Infidels, who at length ſlew him,

Saladin declining.

K. Richard got the Title of King of Jeruſalem.

Battel between the Turks *and Chriſtians.*

him, dying left the Victory to the Christians. The King thought to have march'd on, but the Approach of Winter and other Inconveniences alter'd his Resolution; so that he returns back to *Ascalon*, which he fortify'd, while the Duke of *Burgundy* with his *French*-men quietly winter'd at *Tyre*. In the Spring the King took the field again, advances as far as *Bethlehem*; where by the way he took a great number of Camels laden with great Store of Provision and Ammunition, sent by *Saladin* out of *Egypt* to *Jerusalem*: but the Backwardness of the *French* hindred him from laying siege to *Jerusalem*, and so he return'd to *Ptolemais*; at which time also being inform'd that the *French* King had invaded *Normandy* contrary to his Oath, and excited his Brother *John* to dispossess him of the Kingdom of *England*, he thought it most advisable for him to come to some good Terms with *Saladin*, and so to return home. But the politick Sultan taking advantage of the Inconveniences the Christians labour'd under, would hearken to no Conditions, but such as might both for the present weaken the Christian Forces in *Syria*, and discourage others from coming thither for the future; and the King was forced to agree that the Christians should forthwith restore whatever they had won in this three Year's War, *Ptolemais* only excepted; and the *Turks* for five Years to come were not to molest the Christians, but to suffer them to live peaceably by them. And as the King was unhappy in the Terms of Peace, so he was in his return home: for being taken prisoner by *Leopold* Duke of *Austria*, whom before he had disgrac'd at the Siege of *Ptolemais*, he sold him to the Emperor *Henry*, for 40000 Crowns; by whom he was kept a Prisoner a year and three months, and then ransom'd for 150000 *l.*

Richard *makes peace with the* Turks.

Taken prisoner.

Saladin's *Death.*

But to return again to the *Turks*: About this time died the famous Sultan *Saladin*, the great Terror of the Christians; who being mindful of human Frailty, at his Funeral commanded only his Shirt, by way of an Ensign, to be tied to the Point of a Lance, and carried before the Corps to the Grave, with a simple Priest preceding, and crying aloud, *Saladin, Conqueror of the East, of all the Grandeur and Wealth he had in his Life-time, carries no more with him after his Death, than his Shirt.* He was indeed a great Prince, and tho

repre-

repreſented for the moſt part by our Chriſtian Hiſtorians to be very cruel, yet give me leave to relate one Story of him very remarkable, and much to his Glory. A *French* Gentleman engag'd in theſe Wars, being taken priſoner by him, had leave, at the Sultan's own motion, after ſome years Captivity, to return home, and raiſe him ſuch a Ranſom, which he was to bring himſelf by ſuch time to him. The Gentleman, right glad of his Liberty upon any terms, haſtens into *France*, and there quickly rais'd ſuch a Sum upon his Eſtate, as the Sultan requir'd, which he carried to him with all expedition: coming into his preſence, and making the tender, the Sultan, who when he gave him that liberty, never expected to ſee him more, ſmiled at the Adventure, and order'd him to keep the Mony for himſelf, to which he added as much more of his own, upon condition that the eldeſt of his Family (in memory of the Fact) ſhould for ever after be called *Saladin:* And I am informed the Family is ſtill in being, and that they continue the ſame to this day. *Saladin* had reign'd about ſixteen Years, and left nine Sons behind him, who were all murdered by their Uncle *Sephradin*, ſave one called alſo *Sephradin*, Sultan of *Aleppo*, who by the help of his Father's Friends eſcaped his Uncle's bloody hands. Now of this *Sephradin* the Uncle deſcended *Meludin* Sultan of *Egypt*, and *Coradin* Sultan of *Damaſcus* and *Jeruſalem*; *Saladin*'s great Kingdom being by them now again rent in pieces.

Now the Death of *Saladin* encourag'd *Celeſtinus* the Pope, to excite the Chriſtian Princes of the Weſt to another Expedition; but he could prevail upon none but the *Germans* under the Command of *Henry* Duke of *Saxony*, and others, to undertake it: who directing their March through *Hungary* and *Thrace*, were relieved by the *Greek* Emperor *Alexius Angelus* with all Neceſſaries, and in the *Grecian* Ships tranſported to *Antioch*, and ſo march'd by land to *Tyre*, with an Intention to have gone to relieve the *Germans* beſieg'd in *Joppa*, who before their arrival were all treacherouſly ſlain, and the City raſed: Wherefore they march'd to *Sidon*, which the *Turks* had abandon'd, then took and fortify'd *Berithus*; but laying ſiege to *Torone*, the *Turks* came on to the Relief of it, that the Chriſtians were glad to quit it, and be gone. This made the

An Army of Germans in the Eaſt.

Garison of *Berithus* abandon the Place, and march with the Army to *Joppa*, which they re-fortify'd, while the *Turks* rased *Berithus* again (which was in the year 1197.) and then marched to *Joppa* to disturb the Christians in their Works; who hearing of their coming, advanc'd by night about five Miles from the Place, on purpose to draw the *Turks* to a convenient Place of Battel: who believing the Christians fled, pursu'd hastily with part of their Army; but the others turning upon them, killed some thousands of them, and put the rest to flight; then return'd to re-fortify *Joppa*. But the Joy of the Victory was much allay'd by the sudden Death of the Duke of *Saxony*, who overheating himself in the day of Battel, fell into a Fever, of which he died the first day after, and of the Duke of *Austria*, who was mortally wounded in the Action, and died the following Night. The *Germans* soon after return'd confusedly home, after whose departure the *Turks* took *Joppa*; who entred in at one of the Gates betray'd them by one within, while the *Germans* were merrily carousing it upon St. *Martin*'s Day: with which Success they grew so insolent, that they thought presently to drive the Christians quite out of *Syria*; but by the coming of *Simon* Count of *Montfort* a most valiant and experienc'd Commander thither, with a Regiment of tall Soldiers, and the civil Discord of the *Turks* themselves about the Sovereignty, their Fury was repress't, and a Peace concluded for ten years, during which the *Turks* were not to molest the Christians in *Tyre* or *Ptolemais*; which happened in 1198. or 1199. after which the Count returned into *France*, as we must do to the lesser *Asia*, to see how the *Turkish* Affairs stood on that side, leaving for a season those poor Remnants of the Christians in *Tyre* and *Ptolemais* in peace; but to be e'er long devoured of the barbarous Infidels their Enemies.

1197.

Fight, and defeat the Turks.

CHAP.

CHAP. IV.

Of the Ruin of the Turkish *Empire in* Persia, *and their Success in the Lesser* Asia *under the* Aladin *Kings.*

ALL Empires have their Rise, Increase, Mutations, and Decays: so it has been with that of the *Turks*, planted first by *Tangrolipix* in *Persia*, and the other Eastern Parts, which was increas'd by *Axan* and his Successors, whose Names and Actions we have trac'd as far as History gave us any light, and the same continu'd 170 Years; but then declining, was to give place to a more formidable Power, and settle it self elsewhere: for it happen'd at that time, that the *Tartars*, or rather *Tattars*, who inhabited the Northern barren Parts of *Asia*, the most barbarous of all other Nations, stirred up by Want, and the Persuasions of one *Zingis*, or *Cangis*, who was reputed a great Prophet amongst them, now made their General, and dignify'd with the Title of *Ula Chan*, *i. e.* the mighty King, vulgarly the Great *Cham*, first invaded their poor Neighbours, whom they easily subdu'd; then passing over *Caucasus* and part of *Taurus*, and coming as it were into another World full of Nature's Delights, carry'd all before them. Old *Zingis*, their fortunate General, being dead in this Expedition, his Son *Haccata*, the eldest of twelve Brothers, and a Man of great Wisdom and Courage, took upon him his Father's Command; who detaching part of his Army to subdue the Countries Westward, turn'd himself towards the East, where having subdu'd the *Bactrians* and *Sogdians*, with divers other Nations, entred into *India*, conquer'd the Countries on each side the *Indus*, and built the great City of *Cambala* in the Country of *Cathai*. After which he manag'd his Wars in other Parts by his Lieutenants, who were for the most part his Brethren or Kinsmen, by whom he subdu'd the *Arochosians*, *Margians*, and many other Nations; and entring into *Persia*,

Persia, conquer'd that Country, with all *Parthia*, *Assyria*, *Mesopotamia*, and *Media*: at what time one *Cursumes*, of the *Greeks* call'd *Corsantes*, reign'd over the *Turks* in the City of *Balch* or *Belch*, in the Country of *Choraſan*, the ſartheſt part of *Perſia*; who being not able to withſtand the *Tartars*, fled with all his People, but died by the way, and was the laſt of the Kings of the *Selzuccian* Family that reign'd over the *Turks* in *Perſia*. But his Son *Ugnan Chan*, taking the Command of the *Turks* upon him, ſeiz'd *Babylon*, now *Bagdat*, which ſtands by the Ruins of old *Babylon*; where putting all the People to the Sword, he there, and in the adjacent Country, fix'd himſelf and his Followers, but had no long reſt, before he was purſu'd by the *Tartars*, who took him Priſoner, and expell'd his People thence.

The Turks *driven out of* Perſia *by the* Tartars.

Now there was at the ſame time another Kingdom of the *Turks* at *Nuchan*, a City of *Perſia* not far from *Choraſan*, where *Solyman* of the *Oguzian* Family, as well as many of his Predeceſſors, had reign'd; who being terrify'd and warn'd by his Neighbour's Fall, fled alſo with his Subjects into the leſſer *Aſia*, poſſeſs'd by the *Turks* their Countrymen, long before led thither by *Cutlu-Muſes* and his Sons, and partly held by them ever ſince, tho with various Fortunes. Now theſe new-come *Turks*, under the Conduct of *Aladin* the Son of *Hei Huſren*, deſcended alſo of the *Selzuccian* Family in *Perſia*, taking the opportunity of the mortal Diſcord that reign'd between the *Latins* and the *Greeks*, and the *Greeks* amongſt themſelves, ſeiz'd upon *Cilicia* and the adjacent Countries; and firſt at *Sebaſtian*, but afterwards at *Iconium*, erect a new Kingdom, which from this *Aladin* was by the *Turks* call'd the Kingdom of the *Aladin* Kings, tho their Names were not all ſo.

1202.

Turkiſh *Kingdom erected at* Iconium.

Now about this time, and ſoon after, there happen'd great Changes in the *Conſtantinopolitan* Empire; and that City it ſelf was at length taken by an Army of Chriſtians from the Weſt, deſign'd at firſt for an Expedition into the Holy Land: and the *Greek* Empire following the Fortune of its Imperial City, the *Latins* divided it amongſt themſelves; *Conſtantinople* and the Country of *Thrace*, with a limited Sovereignty over all the reſt of the Provinces already or afterwards to be gain'd by the *Latins*, being given to *Baldwin* Earl of

of *Flanders*; who while he was fixing himſelf in his new Acqueſts, as the *Venetians* and others were in their Partitions, *Theodorus Laſcaris*, the Emperor *Alexius Angelus* his Son-in-Law, who at the taking of *Conſtantinople* fled into *Bythinia*, was there moſt joyfully receiv'd by the People; and ſo poſſeſſing himſelf of the Countries of *Bithynia*, *Phrygia*, *Myſia*, *Ionia*, and *Lydia*, even from the Windings of the famous *Meander* Southward, to the *Euxine* Sea Northward, took upon him the Title of Emperor, and fix'd his Imperial Seat at the famous City of *Nice*. At the ſame time alſo *David* and *Alexius Comneni*, Grand-Sons to the Tyrant *Andronicus* (ſometime Emperor of *Conſtantinople*) poſſeſſing the more Eaſtern Countries of *Pontus*, *Galatia* and *Cappadocia*, erected to themſelves another Empire in *Trapezond*, where their Poſterity reign'd many Years, till their Empire, as well as that of *Conſtantinople*, fell into the hands of *Mahomet* the ſecond Sultan of the *Turks*, as you'll hear hereafter. And thus you ſee the *Greek* Empire, expos'd as it were to a general Spoil, was no longer one, but many Empires: *Baldwin*, as aforeſaid, reigning at *Conſtantinople*, the Marquiſs of *Montferrat* in *Theſſaly*, *Laſcaris* at *Nice*, the *Comneni* in *Trapezond*, and the *Venetians* in the Iſlands, all in Royal Dignity; to ſay nothing of the many other Toparchies erected out of the Ruins of it.

But to come nearer to our intended Hiſtory of the *Turks*, we are to obſerve that *Alexius Angelus*, who had been ſome time Uſurper of the *Greek* Empire, and wander'd up and down for his Subſiſtance and Safety, hearing that his Son-in-Law *Theodorus Laſcaris* reign'd in *Aſia* in the Quality of Emperor, he could not but repine that any other but himſelf ſhould be ſo honour'd; and therefore ſailing in that ambitious Humour out of *Greece* into *Aſia* over the *Egean* Sea, he privately came to *Jathatines* Sultan of the *Turks*, and his old Acquaintance, then reſiding at *Attalia*, which not long before he had taken from the Chriſtians, unto whom he made known his Miſery, and how his Empire had been rent from him as well by the *Greeks* as *Latins*, and deſir'd he would aſſiſt him to recover part thereof, eſpecially that in the leſſer *Aſia*, which was injuriouſly detain'd from him by *Laſcaris*. This *Jathatines*,

tines, now Sultan of *Iconium*, was a younger Son to Sultan *Aladin*, who not long ſurviving his Brother *Cati-Choſroe*, left his Kingdom to his two Sons, *Aradin* and *Jaſſadin*, call'd by the *Greeks*, *Aratines* and *Jathatines*; who ſoon quarrelling about the Sovereignty (that admits of no Equality) the younger was driven into Exile by *Aratines*, and to ſave his Life was glad to fly to *Alexius*, then reigning at *Conſtantinople*, by whom he was honourably entertain'd, and, as ſome ſaid, converted and baptiz'd: but his Brother dying ſoon after, he return'd home, and renouncing Chriſtianity, was by the *Turks* receiv'd for their Sultan; of whom *Alexius*, now reduc'd to the like Extremity, craves Aid againſt his Enemies. The Sultan, partly out of Gratitude, and partly Hopes of Intereſt, ſends Embaſſadors to *Laſcaris*, requiring him in a threatning manner to deliver up his Empire to *Alexius* his Father-in-Law; at which *Laſcaris* was not a little troubled, as fearing both the Sultan's Power, and the Affection of the People to their old Emperor: but propoſing that matter in Council, and finding his People were affected towards him, and ready to hazard their Lives in his Quarrel, he, accompany'd only with two thouſand choice Horſe, together with the Sultan's Embaſſador, forthwith advances towards *Philadelphia*, while the Sultan, with *Alexius* in his Company, with 20000 *Turks*, laid ſiege to *Antioch* upon the *Meander*; which *Laſcaris* no ſooner underſtood, and knowing if the Sultan got the place that ſtood upon ſuch a River, and was the Boundary of his Empire, it would open a way for him into the Heart of *Romania Aſiatica*, to the endangering of the Loſs of his whole Empire; but he reſolv'd with thoſe few to endeavour to relieve it with all ſpeed: and being come near, he ſent the *Turkiſh* Embaſſador a little before (he following him cloſe at the heels) who acquainting his Maſter of his Approach with ſo ſmall a Power, the Sultan could ſcarce be perſuaded to believe it; however he thought fit haſtily to put his Army in the beſt poſture which the Narrowneſs of the Place would admit of. Now of the Emperor's 2000 Horſe, there were 800 *Italians*, Men of great Reſolution, who upon the firſt Charge broke thro the midſt of the Sultan's Army, and diſorder'd the whole Battel; and they were follow'd by the

Antioch *beſieg'd by* Jathatines *the* Turk.

the *Greeks*, tho not with equal Courage: But thoſe *Italians*, now ſeparated from the reſt, in their Return were ſo beſet by the *Turkiſh* Horſe and Foot on all ſides, that they all ſold their Lives at ſo dear a rate as is ſcarce credible. The *Greeks* alſo, hardly put to by the *Turks*, and diſcourag'd by the Death of the *Italians*, were upon the point of flying, when the Sultan now almoſt in poſſeſſion of an aſſur'd Victory, deſcrying the *Greek* Emperor, and truſting to his own Strength, ſingled him out (who was as ready as himſelf for the Combat) and at the firſt Blow ſtruck him ſo hard upon his Head with his Mace, as might have kill'd a Bull; ſo that the Emperor being ſtun'd therewith, fell off his Horſe, and yet coming ſomewhat to himſelf in the Fall, he quickly recover'd his Feet, and with his Falchion hox'd the hinder Legs of the Sultan's Mare, which was a moſt beautiful Creature, and exceeding tall, and from which the Sultan tumbled down as from a high Tower, and before he could recover himſelf, had his Head cut off by the Emperor; which he fix'd upon the Point of a Lance erected in the ſight of the *Turks*, wherewith they were ſo terrify'd, that they left the Emperor the Victory, who before was above half routed; which ſucceſs ſoon after produc'd him a Peace upon his own Terms. *Alexius* in the mean time (who was the Author of theſe Troubles) being taken in the Battel, and carry'd Priſoner to *Nice*, was, notwithſtanding his Demerit, kindly uſed by the Emperor his Son-in-Law.

Sultan Jathatines *ſlain by* Laſcaris *the Emperor.*

While theſe things were doing in the *Conſtantinopolitan* Empire, the Affairs of the Chriſtians in *Syria* grew worſe and worſe, inſomuch that the Knights Hoſpitalers and Templars applying themſelves to Pope *Innocent* for Relief, he gave the Title of King of *Jeruſalem* to *John* Count of *Brenne*, Dauphin in *France*, and diſcharg'd *Almericus*, now King of *Cyprus*, who would do nothing for them, of it: in purſuance of which, the Count haſten'd to *Syria*, landed at *Ptolemais*, and was in the Year 1209. crown'd King; with which ſome derided him, ſtiling him *Roy ſans ville*, while *Almericus* died of Grief ſoon after. Now was the ten Years Truce, made between the *Turks* and Chriſtians at the coming over of *Simon* Count of *Montfort*, as already mention'd, near expiring, which had not given to thoſe poor

1209.

Remnants

Remnants of Christians so much time of Rest and Breathing, as the Discord of the *Turks* among themselves did; which having been kept up for nine Years between *Noradin* and *Sephadin* about the Sovereignty, was now ended by the Death of the latter: *Noradin* contenting himself with the Government of *Aleppo*, while *Corradin* and *Meledin*, the Sons of *Sephadin*, divided the Father's Kingdom between them; the one taking *Damascus* and *Syria* for his share, and the other *Egypt*: but all Enemies to the Christians.

Another Expedition of the Christians into the Holy Land.

Things being in this state in the East, Pope *Innocent* the Third summon'd a general Council at *Lateran*, where among other things another Expedition into the Holy Land was agreed on; and some time after, *Henry* Count of *Nevers* and many brave Fellows met together at divers Ports in the *Adriatick*, where making a Fleet of 200 Sail, they put to Sea, and having a prosperous Voyage, safely landed at *Ptolemais* in *Syria*; being afterwards follow'd thither by *Andrew* King of *Hungary*, *Lewis* Duke of *Bavaria*, and *Leopold* Duke of *Austria*, with all their Forces: from whence they march'd into *Galilee*, and routed some Companies of *Turks* by the way; then coming to the River *Jordan*, and the King of *Hungary* bathing himself therein forthwith (as if discharg'd of his Vow) return'd with all his Troops to *Ptolemais*, and so home; but the other Christians (tho much discourag'd) march'd on to Mount *Thabor*, but quickly return'd to winter at *Ptolemais* and *Tyre*. Upon the Approach of the Spring, when they began to deliberate upon the Preparations of the ensuing Campaign, it was resolv'd that forasmuch as the Kingdom of *Egypt* was the chief Support of the *Mahometan* Religion, and that so long as the same stood, there was no likelihood that the Christians should do any great Feats in *Syria*, to attempt the Conquest thereof, was an Exploit best becoming their Valour, and of greatest use to them, since *Jerusalem* and the Land of *Palestine* would then of course fall into their hands; and forasmuch as the taking of *Damiata*, antiently *Pelusium*, standing at the mouth of the *Nile*, and in a most pleasant Country, would very much facilitate the Conquest of the whole Kingdom, they resolv'd to begin with the Siege of it. Now we are to observe, that the Place was surrounded with a navi-

navigable Ditch drawn from the *Nile*, in the form of an Island towards *Syria*, and fortify'd with three strong stone Walls; at the mouth of the Ditch, at the entrance into the City, stood a strong Watch-Tower, and round it several fair Houses, in the form of a little Town intrench'd; besides which, the Ditch was barr'd with a strong Iron Chain, that it was impossible for any Ship to enter without breaking the same, which the Christians did with their Fleet upon their Arrival; but thinking so to have made their Passage to the City, they found a greater Obstruction at the Watch-Tower. Now the Christians, after the manner of fighting in those days, had upon certain flat Vessels built high Towers of Wood, in order to the assaulting of the Watch-Tower; in approaching to which, amidst the Noise and Hurry on both sides, one of them surmounting the rest in height, and overcharg'd with Men, fell down with most terrible Noise, crush'd many of their Men to death, miserably maim'd others, while some leapt into the *Nile*, and others aboard the next Ships to save themselves. *John*, titular King of *Jerusalem*, who had been chosen General, did all he could to comfort them for the Accident, and to encourage the Men to go on with their Enterprize; while *Meledin*, Sultan of *Egypt*, encamp'd with a great Army in the sight of *Damiata*, thereby to encourage the Besieged, and feed them with hopes of Relief, and frequently by the way of the River sent them News, Messages, Victuals, Soldiers, Armour, and other Necessaries: but all this did not discourage the Christians, who finding the Sultan would neither offer nor accept of Battel, they resolv'd to set upon the Tower again, and having very dextrously, upon two Ships fasten'd together, fram'd a strong Tower of Timber that equal'd their Watch-Tower in height, they approach'd with it near the other, and follow'd with their Fleet ready for the Assault; while the Army at Land stood in Battel-Array, as well to discourage the Besieged, as to oppose the Sultan in case he attempted to relieve them. The Assault was very terrible, the Christians with their Ships drew as near Land as possibly they could, that they might come to handy-strokes with the Enemy upon the River-side, while the *Barbarians* endeavour'd by shot and all other means imaginable to keep them

Damiata *besieg'd by the Christians.*

them off, and hinder their landing: But one of the Christians Ships happening to run aground on that side of the River where the Enemy lay, and being boarded by them, who made a cruel slaughter of the Christians; one of the Soldiers going down under the Hatches, bor'd a great hole in the bottom of the Ship, which presently sunk with all the *Turks* and Christians aboard it. At the same time the new-invented Tower of the Christians being brought close to the Watch-Tower, so terrify'd the Besieged, that the remainder fled, after divers of them had been slain, and so left the Tower to the possession of the Christians: when the Soldiers also landed from the other Ships, and entring the Suburbs, put all they found to the Sword, even to the last Man, and therein found great store of Provision, but far more rich Movables, insomuch that it seem'd to have been the Spoil of *Arabia*, *Persia*, and the *Indies*.

The Christians in this heat, and fear of the Besieged, resolv'd to prosecute the Work, and assault the strong Town of *Damiata*, which yet they could not carry; however they so invested it now on all sides, as to cut it off from all Supply and Communication with the Sultan's Army: But while they continu'd before the Place, the overflowing of the *Nile* did them much hurt, for the Removal of which they gave themselves to Fasting and Prayer for three days; when on the fourth the Wind falling, the River decreas'd, which made them turn their Devotion to Thanksgiving. At the same time the Sultan's Provision growing scarce, he sent away half of his Army to the Country of *Caire*; when Embassadors came from *Corradin*, Sultan of *Damascus* and *Jerusalem*, to the Christian Princes, to sue for Peace, both for himself and his Brother the Sultan of *Egypt*, offering to restore the Holy Cross, and all other Conquests made by him or his Predecessors: which the greater part of the Army approv'd of, saying, if all these things were given up, there was no more cause of War, or obstruction to their returning victorious Coquerors home; but the Pope's Legate *Honorius*, King *John*, the Master of the Templars and Hospitalers, Duke of *Austria*, and the *Germans* oppos'd it, and rejected the Offers. Whereupon *Corradin* fearing the Christians would come at length to *Jeru-*

salem,

ſalem, as the Place they moſt deſir'd, raſed its Walls, and left nothing ſtanding that was ſtately but the Tower of *David* and the Holy Sepulchre, which (they ſaid) he did at the Requeſt of the Chriſtians of divers Nations who lived there.

The Chriſtians had been now ſix Months engag'd in the Siege, and ſeeming as if weary of the length of it, kept not ſo good a guard as before to prevent Relief: which being perceiv'd by the Sultan, he drew nearer unto the Town, and under the Covert of the ſilent Night hoped he might ſend ſome Supplies to the Beſieged; and indeed the foremoſt of the *Turks* had already enter'd the City, when the Chriſtians taking the Alarm, fell ſo furiouſly upon the reſt, that thoſe who were within fearing leſt the Enemy in that Confuſion might enter pell-mell with them into the place, ſhut the Gates againſt them, who all fell by the Swords of the Chriſtians: who, encourag'd with this Succeſs, drew out and offer'd the Sultan battel, which he as induſtriouſly declin'd, being unwilling to venture all upon the Event thereof; but the other fluſh'd with hopes of Conqueſt, attack'd him in his Trenches, tho they came off with the loſs of many Men. In the mean time there were two mercileſs Enemies, that crept into the City, who ſeldom ſpared any, *viz.* Famine and the Plague, which ſwept away abundance of the Inhabitants, who would willingly have given up the Place in time, if the chief Commanders had not hinder'd them: upon the former of which the Chriſtians built very much, but knew nothing of the latter, till ſome of the Soldiers (after a Year's Siege) in a bravado endeavour'd to ſcale the Walls; in doing of which, finding no Reſiſtance, and all ſilent, as if there had been no body in the City, they ſtood hearkning a while, and then return'd with an account of their Adventure to the Camp. This the Commanders at firſt thought to be Policy in the Beſieged, yet afterwards attempted to ſcale the Walls, when taking the Bulwark without any Reſiſtance, they enter'd further into the Town, where a ſmall Company of *Turks* and *Barbarians*, the miſerable Remains of the Plague and Famine, began to make ſome faint oppoſition, but were quickly cut to pieces; then the Gates were open'd, and the Chriſtians enter'd into a deſolate City,

Damiata taken by the Chriſtians without Reſiſtance.

and of 70000 Persons found not above 3000 alive, and them mostly young Children. Thus was *Damiata* taken by the Christians, *Novemb.* 5. in the Year 1221. where they got a vast Booty, and staid there above a year after, as a Colony wherein they had been willing to settle, and forget their native Countries. Now it was agreed in the beginning of this War, that what City or Territory soever should be taken from the *Turks* or Infidels, it should be given to the King of *Jerusalem*; but the Pope's Legate pretending a Power above all the rest in his Master's behalf, adjudged the City from thenceforward to belong to the See of *Rome*: which made the King retire in discontent to *Ptolemais*, and with much difficulty was importuned to return to *Damiata* the following year, to take the supreme Command upon him, the Soldiers declaring they would be commanded by no other than the King of *Jerusalem*. Being arriv'd in the Camp, and having an Army of about 70000 Men, he did at the Legate's instigation set out in the Month of *August*, the hottest time of the Year, with a design to besiege *Caire*; where he was no sooner arriv'd, but the Christians did all they could to provoke the *Turks* to fight, but they declin'd it: whereupon the former besieg'd the City, which spun out to a great length. But tho the Christians had a mighty opinion of their own Valour at this time, yet they encamp'd in a low ground within the Banks and Causeways of that fenny Country, under the Covert of which they thought themselves as safe as in their Trenches, against all sudden Sallies or Attempts of their Enemies; but if they were not mistaken in the first, they were certainly in the last, for the Enemy on a sudden taking up the Sluices of the *Nile*, the River began to rise and overflow: so that all the Ground where the Christians lay was covered with Water so high, that the Victuals were corrupted, and there was no place for a Man to stand or lie dry in.

1221.

The Misery of the Christians in the drowned Lands in Egypt.

Being thus coop'd up and environ'd with the Waters for three days, without any possibility of Relief, the poor Soldiers dropt down dead every where, for want of Food and Sleep, and so perish'd in the Water; neither was there any other way for the rest to escape the like Death, than by submitting to Necessity, and accepting of such Terms as the proud Enemy would pro-

propoſe to them. And indeed the Sultan, not ſo much deſiring their Lives, as the Liberty of his Country, required to have the City of *Damiata* reſtored to him, and every thing in the ſame manner as it was before the Siege; and ſo the Chriſtians without any more ado to depart his Country. Theſe hard Conditions were accepted by the diſtreſſed Chriſtians; but when they were brought to *Damiata*, and propoſed to the Chriſtians left there, there was a mighty Contention aroſe between them whether they ſhould be accepted or no; and the ſame being communicated to the Army before *Caire* (now almoſt drowned in the Waters) they ſent them word, if they would not deliver the Town to the Sultan, they would forthwith ſend to *Ptolemais*, which would not fail to conſent, to have it, inſtead of *Damiata*, ſurrender'd to the *Turks*: ſo that the other hereupon agreed to a Surrendry, and ſo *Damiata* came again into the hands of the *Turks* without fighting for it. But the Indignity was render'd the more tolerable to the Chriſtians, becauſe Sultan *Meledin* (who had now without bloodſhed gain'd ſo great a Conqueſt) did no ways miſuſe the Chriſtians, but very courteouſly reliev'd them with Proviſion and other Neceſſaries, and by faithful Guides conducted them ſafely out of his Country. *Corradin* alſo his Brother, Sultan of *Damaſcus*, made truce with the Chriſtians for eight years; the benefit whereof we'll leave them to enjoy, and in the mean time return to the Affairs of the *Turks* in leſſer *Aſia*, with what fell out amongſt their Neighbours, ſo far as 'tis neceſſary for the Illuſtration of this Hiſtory.

Damiata ſurrendred to the Turks.

We told you before that *Baldwin* Earl of *Flanders* was the firſt of the *Latins* created Emperor of *Conſtantinople*, who was ſucceeded therein by his Brother *Henry*, and he by his Son-in-law *Peter* Count of *Auſſerre*, who being treacherouſly ſlain by *Theodorus Angelus* Prince of *Epirus*, was ſucceeded by his Son *Robert*, and he again by *Baldwin* his Son, who was the fifth and laſt Emperor of the *Latins* in *Conſtantinople*: for tho the Imperial City, with the Countries of *Thrace*, *Theſſaly*, *Achaia*, *Macedonia*, *Peloponneſus*, and the reſt of the Provinces of *Greece*, were for the moſt part under the Government of the Emperor *Baldwin*, and the *Venetians*, or other *Latin* Princes; yet the op-

Latin *Emperors of* Conſtantinople.

preſſed *Greeks*, the natural Inhabitants thereof, in their hearts were not theirs, as abhorring a foreign Yoke; but were more devoted to their own natural Princes, *Theodorus Laſcaris*, who reigned at *Nice* in *Bithynia*, and *Alexius Comnenus* at *Trapezond* (both already mention'd) who by the *Greeks* were both ſtiled Emperors, and ſo reputed. *Laſcaris*, the better belov'd of the two, had a far greater Power, and having fought many a ſevere Battel, and ſtrongly fortified his Cities againſt the Invaſion of his Enemies, as well *Turks* as *Latins*, ſeem'd to have eſtabliſh'd an Empire in *Aſia* in the ſpace of 18 years, where he reign'd, and then died; leaving his Dominions to *John Ducas Batazes*, who had married his fair Daughter *Irene*: who being a very wiſe and valiant Prince, conquer'd moſt of the Iſlands belonging to the Empire of *Conſtantinople*, with divers other places, and ravaged the Country, even as far as the Gates of that famous City; and having made a League with *Aſſan* King of *Bulgaria* on the one hand, and with the Sultan of *Iconium* on the other, who both courted his Friendſhip, he ſettled his Empire in great peace; which by his wiſe Management produced vaſt Plenty in his Territories, while the *Turks* in the mean time oppreſs'd with Want, purchaſed Bread from his Subjects at a dear rate, and with all that they had valuable in the World, who were now alſo at a very low ebb, becauſe of the *Tartars* preſſing hard upon them, even in their Provinces of the leſſer *Aſia*: ſo that the greatneſs of the Profit ariſing from the Plenty of the Chriſtians, and the *Turks* Penury, may be eaſily gather'd from hence, in that of Eggs daily ſold, ſo much Mony was in a ſhort time collected, as purchaſed the Empreſs an Imperial Crown of Gold richly ſet with Oriental Pearls and precious Stones of great value, which the Emperor call'd *Ovata*.

Frederick *Emperor of* Germany *his Expedition into the Holy Land.*

In the mean time, *Frederick* the *German* Emperor having of a long time vow'd an Expedition into the Holy Land, was, out of a ſiniſter Deſign of the Popes *Honorius* the Fourth and *Gregory* the Ninth (who had a mind to increaſe their Power and Dominion by his abſence) preſſed upon, and in a manner enforced to perform it in the Year 1228. and being landed with his Men at *Ptolemais*, was there moſt kindly received by the Chriſtian Forces, notwithſtanding all the Pope's Threats

Threats and Curſes againſt him. Of whoſe Arrival when Sultan *Meledin* had intelligence, who was loth to draw ſo potent an Enemy upon him, he did by his Embaſſadors offer him honourable Terms of Peace, which he concluded with him for ten Years; importing, 1. That he ſhould be anointed and eſteemed King of *Jeruſalem*. 2. That the holy City, with all the Land of *Paleſtine*, ſhould be delivered up to him. 3. That he might at his pleaſure fortify the Cities of *Nazareth* and *Joppa*. 4. That all ſuch places as were ſometime in the poſſeſſion of *Baldwin* the Fourth King of *Jeruſalem*, and taken from him by Sultan *Saladin*, ſhould be reſtored. Laſtly, That all Priſoners on both ſides ſhould be ſet at liberty without ranſom. Hereupon, the Emperor marched with his Army to the deſolate City of *Jeruſalem*, was there crowned on Eaſter-day, 1229. and having repaired the Walls, and ſome Churches, fortify'd and gariſoned *Nazareth* and *Joppa*, and appointed *Raynold* Duke of *Bavaria* his Lieutenant in *Syria*, he, with two Gallies only, returned to *Italy*: ever ſince which time the Kings of *Sicily* (as the Emperor was) have been call'd Kings of *Jeruſalem*; and the King of *Spain*, to whom *Sicily* belongs, entitles himſelf ſo at this day.

Makes an honourable Peace with the Turks.

Next Year, *viz.* 1230, the Pope *Gregory*, in ſpite of the Emperor *Frederick*, excited the King of *Navarre*, the Counts of *Montfort* and *Champaigne*, with divers others, to take up arms againſt the *Turks* and *Saracens*; who after a long March paſſing the *Thracian Boſphorus*, arrived in *Bithynia*, and coming to the River *Sangarius*, there ſtaid a while to refreſh themſelves: thence paſſing thro *Galatia* and the leſſer *Aſia*, at length came to the ſtraits of *Amanus*, part of Mount *Taurus*, poſſeſs'd before by the *Turks*, and the Sultan of *Iconium* himſelf was incamp'd not far off with a great Army. However the valiant Count *de Montfort*, who led the Van, forced his way, whilſt the King of *Navarre* attack'd the Sultan in his Camp, tho in vain; wherefore he divided his Army into three Bodies, and followed the Count, placing his Baggage in the Center, and his beſt Troops in the Rear: but the *Turks*, who knew the Advantages of all the ground much better than they, attack'd them every where as they ſaw occaſion, and particularly in a great Plain,

K. of Navarre's *unſucceſsful Expedition to the Eaſt.*

where they ſlew a vaſt number of them. However they arrived at length at *Antioch* in a pitiful diſtreſſed plight, and were by Sea carry'd to *Ptolemais*, thence afterwards by the Templars to *Gaza*, where by their Incurſions (with whom none of the Emperor *Frederick*'s Troops would join) they endeavour'd to repair their Loſſes, but were almoſt all of them ſlain one morning by the *Turks*, who overtook them on their return to *Gaza* laden with Spoil, of which number were the aforeſaid Counts; and the King with much difficulty eſcaped to *Joppa*, from whence he went afterwards and viſited *Jeruſalem*, then return'd to his own Country, having perform'd nothing of what the World expected from him.

About four Years after, the Duke of *Bavaria*, the Emperor's Lieutenant, dying, after he had peaceably govern'd that Kingdom for five years; the Templars, who, if they could in his Life-time, would have broken the League with the *Turks*, now actually did: which coming to the ears of the Sultan of *Egypt*, he raiſed a great Army, and alſo ſent for the *Choraſins*, a warlike Nation then lying near *Babylon*, to come to his aſſiſtance, with which he took *Gaza* by Aſſault, and put all to the ſword. He did the ſame alſo by *Aſcalon*, and other places; and having trepan'd the Chriſtians near *Tiberias* to engage him, he made a terrible ſlaughter, notwithſtanding their ſtout Reſiſtance, of many thouſands of their Soldiers, beſides the greateſt part both of the Knights Templars and Hoſpitalers, while ſuch as eſcaped fled to *Tiberias*. Fluſh'd with the Succeſs of ſo great a Victory, he march'd on and took *Jeruſalem* without reſiſtance, where he put Man, Woman, and Child to the ſword, and then raſed it to the ground, and defaced even the holy Sepulchre, for the gaining of which ſo many brave Fellows had loſt their Lives; but this ſeem'd to be a juſt Reward of the Templars Perfidy, and fell out in the Year 1234.

French King's Expedition into the Eaſt.

Divers Chriſtian Princes of the Weſt were much concern'd at theſe Loſſes, but none ſo animated to endeavour to repair them, as the *French* King *Lewis* the Ninth; who being attended with his three Brothers, the Counts of *Poictiers*, *Anjou*, and *Artois*, with divers other illuſtrious Perſonages and a brave Army, embark'd at *Marſeilles*, *Aug.* 25. 1248. and the 20*th* of *September* following

following arriv'd ſafely in the Iſland of *Cyprus*, where he was royally entertain'd by *Guy de Luſignan* then King of that Country; and wintering in the ſaid Iſland, abundance of his Men were ſwept away by the Plague. In the mean time the Templars ſuſpecting if the *French* got the Victory, they would take all into their own hands, and ſo diminiſh their Power and Authority, wherewith they tyrannized over the other poor Chriſtians, privately ſend Embaſſadors to *Meledin* Sultan of *Egypt*, to perſuade him betimes to come to ſome good Accommodation: to which the *Turk* agreeing, he ſent one of his Nobles to treat with the Templars concerning a Peace, provided it might be done with the Conſent of the *French* King. Hereupon the Templars write to the King to perſuade him to it, amuſing him at the ſame time with falſe Suggeſtions of the Sultan's great Preparations and Power; but being undeceiv'd by the King of *Cyprus*, and being join'd in that Iſland by divers great Men, who from ſeveral parts of *Chriſtendom* came to ſhare in his Deſign and Adventures, and among others by *William Longeſpee* the valiant Earl of *Salisbury*, attended with a Body of brave luſty *Engliſh* Soldiers, he ſet ſail from thence, and in about five days fell in with the Coaſt of *Egypt*, and there with all his Fleet came before the ſtrong City of *Damiata*; which the Sultan, being before apprehenſive of it, had fortified very much and well gariſon'd. Upon the approach of the Chriſtians, the Governour was ready upon the ſhore with a great many Men to oppoſe their landing; but the Chriſtians manning their long Boats with their Archers and Croſs-Bows, beat the Enemy from the ſhore, and landed their Men in as good order as they could, where for a while there was a ſharp Conflict betwixt them, but at laſt the *Turks* fled, leaving their Governour and 500 of their beſt Soldiers behind them dead upon the ſhore. The City of *Damiata* was 1249. exceeding rich, populous, and ſtrong, and indeed wanted for nothing to make a good Defence; but the late Defeat, and Remembrances of its Miſeries in the former Siege, made the People the night following, a little before day, every Man ſet fire to his own Houſe, and ſo by a Bridg of Boats, made on purpoſe, to fly over the great River, which they brake behind them. However the Chriſtians after much induſtry and difficulty

Damiata *fired and forſaken by the* Turks.

culty put out the Fire, and were rewarded with abundance of Riches and ſtore of Proviſions: which happy and unexpected Victory happen'd to the Chriſtians in the beginning of *October* in the Year 1249.

The Sultan diſcouraged with the Loſs, offer'd for the Redemption of the Town and a Peace more Territories in *Syria* and *Paleſtine*, than the Chriſtians had enjoy'd of a long time before; but nothing leſs would ſerve the *French*, than the Surrender of the famous City of *Alexandria* unto them, to the great diſcontent of the *Turks* and *Saracens*. But the old Sultan *Meledin* dying in theſe Troubles, was ſucceeded by *Melech-ſala* or *Melexala*, a valiant and courageous Prince, well beloved of his Subjects, juſt returned out of *Syria* and *Arabia*, where he had been craving Aid of the *Mahometan* Princes againſt the Chriſtians, which he receiv'd chiefly from the Sultan of *Daſmaſcus*; and having been ſucceſsful in a great Skirmiſh with the Chriſtians near *Damiata*, and knowing how they began to be pinch'd for want of Proviſions, it encouraged him to withſtand them with Vigour.

Melech-ſala *ſucceeds Sultan* Meledin.

But while the Chriſtians winter'd in their Camp near *Damiata*, the Governour of *Grand Caire*, who was well affected to Chriſtianity, and highly offended with the Sultan for putting his Brother wrongfully to death, by ſecret Meſſengers perſuaded the *French* King to come and beſiege that City, promiſing to deliver it up to him, which he readily agreed to; and therefore ſending for the Earl of *Salisbury* and his Men, who by reaſon of many Indignities offered him by the Earl of *Artois* eſpecially, the King's Brother, was retir'd to *Ptolemais*, for which he could have no redreſs, he was with the promiſe of better uſage induced to join the King: who being much ſtrengthned by his coming, but more by the new Supplies brought to him by his Brother *Alphonſus* out of *France*, and leaving a good Gariſon in *Damiata* under the Command of the Duke of *Burgundy*, with his Queen and the Pope's Legate, he marched away; and having refuſed the Sultan's Offer of reſtoring to him all the Land of *Paleſtine*, a great Sum of Mony for defraying the Charges of the War, and all the Priſoners he had, provided he would give up *Damiata*, and make a peace with him, he came at length to paſs an Arm of the *Nile*, where he found the Sultan

Sultan on the other ſide ready to oppoſe him: But being better conducted by a fugitive *Saracen* to a Ford, he ſent the Earl of *Artois*, Maſter of the Templars, and Earl of *Salisbury* with a Third of the Army before, who paſſing the River at the ſaid Ford, fell unexpectedly upon the *Turks* in their Tents, and put them to flight; which ſo elevated *Artois*, that all that the experienced Templars (whom he upbraided with the names of Daſtards and Cowards) could ſay, could not perſuade him from purſuing his imaginary Conqueſt. And tho the Earl of *Salisbury* interpoſed, and would have pacified matters between him and the Maſter of the Templars, who told the *French* Earl that he durſt diſplay his Colours, and ſhould find his Knights as ready to follow as he was to go before them, as well as diſſuaded him from the Enterprize; the *French* Earl call'd him alſo Daſtard and Coward, wiſhing the Army were rid of him, and the great Cowards his Countrymen. To which *Salisbury* reply'd, *Well General, go on in God's name, and wherever you dare ſet your foot, mine ſhall be as far as yours, and I believe we go this day where you ſhall not dare to come nigh my Horſe's Tail.* Which proved true indeed, tho he ſaid it with reference to the *Frenchmens* frequent reviling of him and his Men with the name of *Engliſh* Tails.

Hereupon the proud Earl of *Artois* march'd on, and being firſt repulſed at the Caſtle of *Mawſor*, he was preſently after hemm'd in on all ſides by the *Turkiſh* Army, who made a miſerable ſlaughter of the poor Chriſtians, tho they defended themſelves with incredible Bravery; but being over-power'd, and the Earl of *Artois*, who now muſt needs repent of his Raſhneſs, beholding *Salisbury* valiantly fighting, bid him fly, ſeeing God, as he ſaid, fought againſt them. But the noble Earl anſwer'd, *God forbid that my Father's Son ſhould run away from the face of a* Saracen. In ſhort, the Earl of *Artois* in his flight was drowned in the River of *Thaſnes*; *Salisbury* fought at laſt even upon his knees, to the deſtruction of many a *Turk* and *Saracen*, by whom he was finally ſlain and not vanquiſh'd, and with him periſh'd the whole Army, not one eſcaping but two Templars, one Hoſpitaler, and one common Soldier, the Meſſengers of this deplorable News. The Sultan alſo burnt and drowned all the ſick Men the

The whole Army deſtroy'd by the Turks.

King

King ſent down the *Nile* for *Damiata*, none eſcaping but one *Alexander Gifford* an *Engliſhman*, who with five Wounds in his Body got ſafe to the *French* Camp.

In the mean time the Sultan having intelligence of the Agreement between the King and the Governour of *Grand Caire*, took care to ſecure him; but the King notwithſtanding this, the Reproaches of the *Turks* who now inſulted him, the Sickneſs of his Men, and the Importunity of his Nobles to return himſelf by Water to *Damiata*, would not do it, but paſſing the River by the Ford, where his Brother had paſſed before him, and coming to the place of Battel, where ſtill remain'd the miſerable Object of his ſlain Soldiers, he had not been there long, when the Sultan with a great Army appear'd, between whom and the Chriſtians there enſued a terrible Fight for three hours; but the *Turkiſh* Numbers at length prevailing, and no way left for the Chriſtians to fly, they were all overthrown and ſlain, except ſome few ſaved in hopes of a large Ranſom. The King himſelf, with his two Brothers *Alphonſo* and *Charles*, being taken and brought before the Sultan, he ask'd him, what had mov'd him to make war againſt him? To whom the King made anſwer, *It was for his Religion, and the Defence of the Name of his God.* This unfortunate Battel was fought *April* 5. 1250.

French *King taken priſoner.*

1250.

The Sultan preſently upon this Overthrow ſent of his own Soldiers the like number as the *French* were of, with *French* Colours, and habited like *Frenchmen*, to *Damiata*, where the Duke of *Burgundy* commanded, with a deſign to deceive the Gariſon by this Artifice to let them in, but this would not do: ſo that the beſt game the Sultan had now to play, was to make the moſt of his Royal Priſoner, whom he cheer'd up with good words, and began to treat with him about his Liberty; propoſing, that the King ſhould forthwith deliver *Damiata* up to him, and pay him for his own and his People's Ranſom, and for the Charge of the War, 8000 Pounds in Gold; that all Priſoners ſhould on both ſides be freely ſet at liberty, and ſo a Peace be concluded for ten years. For aſſurance whereof, the Sultan offer'd to ſwear he would renounce *Mahomet*, if the King would Chriſt, in caſe they fail'd in any thing they promiſed; which Profaneneſs the good King deteſted

deteſted and rejected, and the Sultan wondring at his Conſtancy, took his Word without any Oath at all, and ſo publiſh'd the League. But whilſt this was in agitation, Sultan *Melechſala* was ſuddenly in the midſt of his Nobles ſlain by two deſperate *Mamalukes*; and one *Turquiminus*, a ſturdy Slave of their own Order and Vocation, by the conſent of the whole Army, was created Sultan in his ſtead, who in a manner agreed to the ſame Conditions in his own Name, receiv'd and demoliſh'd *Damiata*, that it might no more ſerve the Chriſtians for an entrance into his Kingdom: and the King having paid the Ranſom, was tranſported to *Ptalemais* (tho the falſe *Mamaluke* did not deliver the Priſoners according to Compact) where he ſtaid four years, repairing *Cæſarea*, *Joppa*, &c. and ſo returned home; where we leave him, and ſhall a little enquire into this new ſort of Dynaſty introduced into the Kingdom of *Egypt* by the Death of the late Sultan, before we proceed any farther. *Ranſomed.*

And here we are to obſerve, that the late *Egyptian* Sultans, being frequently invaded by divers Chriſtian Princes, and repoſing but little Confidence in the Valour of the Effeminate *Egyptians*, had bought a vaſt number of Slaves, eſpecially of the poor and hardy *Circaſſians*, antiently call'd *Getæ* and *Zinchi*, lying near *Colchis* and the *Euxine* Sea; which were brought to *Grand Caire*, and other Cities by Merchants, and of whom the Sultans taking their choice, committed them to the Care of good Maſters, by whom they were taught to run, leap, vault, ſhoot, ride, and all other Feats of Activity, as alſo to exerciſe all manner of Arms on horſeback and on foot; and then were taken into Pay, and enroll'd together as the Sultan's choice Horſe, being commonly call'd by the name of *Mamalukes*: of whoſe good Service the late Sultans finding frequent Experience, they ſpared no Mony for the maintenance and increaſe of them, by daily erecting Nurſeries ſtored with the young Fry, which as they grew up, were incorporated with the reſt; inſomuch that in a ſhort time all things came to be managed by *Mamalukes*, eſpecially in time of War; and by their Valour the Sultans gained many ſignal Victories, as they did now of late againſt the *French*. But at laſt growing proud of their Preferment, and forgetful of their *The beginning of the Kingdom of the Mamalukes in Egypt.*

their Duty, they ſlew the Sultan their Maſter, who was the laſt of the *Turkiſh* Race, and put up one of their own number, as before mentioned; and even as a Vacancy fell, they ſupply'd it with one from among themſelves, and would not ſuffer any Sultan's Children to ſucceed his Father in the Kingdom, for fear they ſhould in proceſs of time grow proud of their Anceſtors, reckon them as their Slaves, and at length introduce a more free Government amongſt them. This Law they eſtabliſh'd as immutable, That tho the Sons of the *Mamalukes* might enjoy their Fathers Eſtates, yet they ſhould by no means take upon them the Name and Honour of a *Mamaluke*, whereby they were debar'd from any hand in the Government; neither did they allow of any born of *Mahometan* Parents, or of the *Jewiſh* Race, to be admitted into that Order, but only ſuch as being born Chriſtians, during their Captivity were to be inſtructed in the *Mahometan* Religion, or being adult Perſons, abjur'd Chriſtianity. Under this Form of Government they flouriſh'd many years, but at length had their Period, as you'll ſee in the courſe of this Hiſtory of the *Turks*, whom we ſhall now a little conſider in another part of the World, from whence their greateſt Riſe ſhall proceed. But we ſhall firſt ſay ſomewhat briefly, and more afterwards, of the *Greek* Empire by way of intermixture, becauſe otherwiſe the *Turkiſh* Affairs cannot be ſeen with ſo clear a light as might be deſired. While that part of the *Greek* Empire in the leſſer *Aſia* flouriſh'd mightily under that excellent Prince *John Ducas Batazes* (to ſay nothing of that of *Trapezond* under the *Comneni*) the Power of the *Latins* declin'd as faſt at *Conſtantinople* under the Government of *Baldwin* the Second, both which Emperors have been before mention'd: but the former, after the happy Reign of 33 years, dying at about the Age of ſixty, he was ſucceeded by his Son *Theodorus Laſcaris*, who in the beginning of his Reign renew'd the League his Father had made with *Jathatines* the *Turkiſh* Sultan, and paſſing with an Army over the *Helleſpont* into *Europe*, to appeaſe ſome Troubles raiſed in *Macedon* and *Thrace*, he was there advertiſed by Letters from *Nice*, that *Michael Paleologus*, whom he had left Governour in his abſence, was ſecretly fled to the *Turks*, under pretence of his being miſrepreſented by

by his Enemies to the Emperor, whoſe Diſpleaſure he feared; by whom he was kindly entertain'd, and made uſe of as being a very good Soldier againſt the *Tartars*, to whom he did good ſervice in a Battel the *Turks* fought againſt them: tho they were at laſt by the Revolt of a near Kinſman of the Sultan and his Followers totally routed, and reduced to ſuch great ſtraits, that the Sultan *Jathatines* thought it beſt to fly to the Emperor *Theodorus* for help. He receiv'd him very kindly, and ſent him home with a Body of Men under the Command of *Iſaac Ducas*, ſirnamed *Murtzafle*, a Man much in favour with him; in recompence of which, the Sultan gave the Emperor the City of *Laodicea*, tho the Chriſtians held it not long in their hands.

Not long after, *Michael Paleologus* was by a Letter from the Emperor kindly invited to return home; which he did accordingly, but firſt bound himſelf by ſolemn Oath to bear true Allegiance to the Emperor, his Son, and Succeſſors: but the Emperor *Theodorus* after three years Reign departing this Life, and leaving his Son *John* a Child of ſix years old to ſucceed him, he firſt on his Death-bed made *Arſenias* the Patriarch, and one *George Muzalo* (a Perſon of mean Deſcent, but whom by his Complaiſance and Fidelity the Emperor had raiſed to great Honours) to be his Protectors. But *Muzalo* (as 'tis uſual in ſuch Circumſtances) being envied by the Nobility, all the precaution he could ever uſe could not ſecure his Life; but he was barbarouſly murder'd at the Abby of *Soſandra*, at the very Altar he fled to for refuge, together with his two Brothers *Andronicus* and *Theodorus*, who were Men of great account. Hereupon *Paleologus*, deſcended from the Imperial Houſe of the *Comneni*, who was a Man of Parts, Elocution, and Popularity, and overtopt the reſt of the Nobility, not only eaſily got to be Protector to the young Emperor, but ſoon after the Title of *Deſpot*, a nearer ſtep ſtill to the Empire; and being ſaluted ſome time after near unto *Magneſia* by ſome of his favourite Nobility with the Title of Emperor, the Patriarch, who before thought to excommunicate him, was now induced to ſet the Crown upon his Head, yet not as upon one that ſhould ſtill enjoy the Empire, but as upon a Man according to the neceſſity of the Time

and

and Government, till the young Child came of age, to whom he was to give place, and resign the Empire. But he afterwards barbarously put out his Eyes, that he might thereby be incapacitated for the Government, and secure the Empire to himself, which he mightily enlarg'd, and among other his great Actions reduced the famous Imperial City of *Constantinople*, with the adjacent Territories, under his obedience in the Year 1261. after it had been in possession of the *Latins* fifty eight Years, and so made an end of the Empire of the *Latins*.

Constantinople *recovered to the* Greek *Empire.*

But to return: While these things were agitated in the *Greek* Empire, *Mango* great Cham of *Tartary*, excited by *Aitonius* King of *Armenia*, by whose persuasion he embraced the Christian Religion, sent his Brother *Haalon* with a great Army against the *Turks* and *Saracens* in *Syria* and *Palestine*: which *Haalon*, who was also a Christian, in six months time over-ran all *Persia* and the adjacent Countries; then entring into *Assyria*, laid siege to *Babylon* the Seat of the Great *Caliph*, who was honoured above all others as the true Successor of *Mahomet*. Upon the taking of which, he put all to the sword, and gave the Spoil to the Soldiers; but the *Caliph* himself, reserv'd for that purpose, he commanded to be set in the midst of the infinite Treasure which he and his Predecessors had most covetously heaped up together, and that he should eat as much of that Gold and Silver and precious Stones as he pleased; saying scoffingly, That so good a Guest should by no means be fed with any thing but what was of greatest value, which he desired him not to spare: but all this could not hinder him from starving with Hunger. *Babylon* thus sack'd, and almost rased, the *Tartar* marching on thro *Mesopotamia*, by the way took the City of *Rhoais*, where *Aiton* King of *Armenia*, and Author of this Expedition, join'd him with 12000 Horse and forty thousand Foot; and so entring into *Syria*, in a few days took *Aleppo*, which he sack'd and rased in the Year 1260. with several other strong Towns sometime belonging to the Kingdom of *Antioch*. Then one *Malcanesar*, Sultan of *Damascus*, commanded over all *Syria* and *Palestine*, who terrify'd with his great Loss, came with his Wife and Children, and prostrated himself before the *Tartarian* Prince, in hopes thereby

1260.

The Tartars *successful against the* Turks.

by to save some good part of his Kingdom; but instead thereof he was carry'd away captive, and afterward, to the terrour of his Son, cut in pieces in his sight under the Walls of *Damascus*, when it had been in vain assaulted twice by the *Tartars*: but at length they carry'd that strong City, and overthrew all the *Mahometan* Mosques therein. Then designing to go forward to *Jerusalem*, and with the Conquest of *Palestine*, news was brought *Haalon* that his Brother *Mango* was dead; which made him return home, when he had spent six years in this Expedition: tho in token of his good-will towards the Christians and their Affairs, he left his Son *Abaga* with 20000 Horse behind him in *Syria*, to assist them in their War, if they went about the Recovery of the Holy Land. He having tarried there for a time, and hearing of his Father's domestick Troubles, follow'd him home, but left *Guirboca* a valiant Commander with 10000 Horse behind him for the same purpose as his Father had left him; who, by the Insolency of some Christian Soldiers in Garison about *Sidon*, of a Friend made an Enemy, in revenge besieged *Sidon*, took, sack'd, and burnt it to the ground, and then continued with the *Tartars* to do the Christians all the hurt he could, till he and most of his Men were some time after routed and slain by *Melech* the *Mamaluke* Sultan of *Egypt*; who thereby became Master, in a manner, of all *Syria* and *Palestine*.

Damascus *taken by the* Tartars.

Turkish *Kingdom ended in* Syria, *&c.*

Possess'd by the Egyptian Mamaluke *Sultan.*

Neither did the *Turkish* Affairs succeed much better in the lesser *Asia*, where *Jathatines* the Sultan being invaded by the *Tartars*, and having lost *Iconium* his Regal City, fled with his Brother *Melech* to the *Greek* Emperor *Michael Paleologus*, in hopes to be reliev'd by him in his turn, for the Kindness he had shew'd him upon the like occasion, when he fled from the late Emperor *Theodore*. But the Emperor, who was incumbred with Wars on all sides, thought it not convenient to lend him any Troops from his new-establish'd Empire, as he desired; neither, in conformity to his other Request, was he willing to assign him any part of his Dominion to dwell in: for he having been a potent Prince, and Sovereign of large Territories, was not like to content himself with a little Land; besides which, his Nobility, at that time dispersed by the *Tartars*, would in all likelihood flock to him in great numbers

Sultan Jathatines *his Exile.*

numbers as unto their Head, as ſoon as they once heard he was fixed in any place. Yet on the other hand, to thruſt him off with Unkindneſs, who had ſo generouſly entertain'd the Emperor in the like Extremity, he was very loth to do; and therefore feeding him with fair Words, he by that means kept him for a time in ſuſpenſe, between Hope and Deſpair: but at laſt he was commanded, with all his Retinue to the number of 12000, in the Emperor's abſence, tho certainly not without his privity, to retire to *Ænus*, a maritime City of *Thrace*, where he lived for a time in diſcontent, like an honourable Priſoner at large; yet had ſo many *Argus* Eyes upon him, that he could by no means make his eſcape. But when *Paleologus* had put the young Emperor *John*'s Eyes out (as already mention'd) *Fathatines* found means in hopes of his Liberty, as well as *Theodora*, *John*'s Siſter, and the Wife of *Conſtantinus* Prince of *Bulgaria*, to excite her Husband with an Army to revenge that Outrage done to her Brother, which he did accordingly in conjunction with 20000 *Tartars* that lay by the *Iſther*; and having overrun the Country, and done a world of other miſchief in the Territories of the *Greek* Empire, and amongſt other places ſeized on *Ænus*, where the Sultan was Priſoner, the *Tartars* carry'd him over the *Iſther*, and being by them ſet at liberty, he died ſoon after.

His Death.

He was ſucceeded in his Kingdom by *Meſoot* the Son of *Kei-Cubades*, and *Kei-Cubades* the Son of *Feramcine*, deſcended alſo of the *Selzuccian* Family; but how near in blood to Sultan *Fathatines*, is not known. Between theſe two, as his Vaſſals, *Saga* the Great *Tartar Cham*, by whom they were preferred for the payment of a yearly Tribute, divided the *Turks* Kingdom, aſſigning the firſt the City of *Amida*, antiently *Amiſus*, and *Aminſus* in *Galatia*; *Melatia*, otherwiſe call'd *Meletine*, in *Armenia* the leſs; *Sevaſte* or *Sebaſtia*, and *Harbarie* before *Satabrea*, both in *Cappadocia*, with all the adjacent Country. But unto *Kei-Cubades* he gave *Iconium*, the antient Seat of the *Turkiſh* Sultans, with all *Rumulia Aſiatica*, or the maritime Countries of the leſſer *Aſia*. So that the *Turks* Kingdom, which had of a long time flouriſhed in the *Selzuccian* Family in *Perſia*, *Syria*, *Paleſtine*, and *Egypt*, was already quite overthrown by the *Mamalukes* and *Tartars*, and

Turkiſh *Empire in* Aſia *almoſt ruined by the* Tartars.

was

was now brought very low in the leſſer *Aſia* by the diviſion thereof between the foreſaid two weak Princes, reigning here but at the *Tartars* devotion. In this confuſion of the *Turkiſh* Empire, not only Men of Power and Authority ſhared amongſt themſelves ſome one Corner of the declining Kingdom, and ſome another, but many of the obſcureſt and baſeſt of the People ſeizing the Straits of the Mountains, from thence by daily Incurſions did much harm to the adjacent Countries of the Chriſtians; and ſo much the more, becauſe they were but ill provided with Gariſons and good Frontiers: which Negligence of the *Greeks* proved a great cauſe of the Decay and Ruin of their Dominions in the leſſer *Aſia*. For the Miſchief paſſing unregarded, daily grew more and more, the *Turks* ſtill gaining upon the *Greeks* what they loſt unto the *Tartars*. At length it happen'd that a great Body of theſe bold *Turks* meeting in *Paphlagonia*, with a deſign to invade the Territories of the Chriſtians, the Emperor *Michael Paleologus* ſent a great Army againſt them; which thro the Unskilfulneſs of the Commanders, was utterly defeated by the *Turks*, few or none of them eſcaping with the news. With this Succeſs the *Turks* being mightily fluſh'd, preſently over-ran all the Country as far as the River *Sangarius*, upon the Banks whereof the *Greek* Emperor was glad to fortify divers Towns and Places to keep them out of *Bithynia*; notwithſtanding which, they ſoon after ſubdued all the Countries from *Pontus* and *Galatia*, to the *Lycian* and *Carian* Seas, and the River *Eurymedon*, and the ſame they divided amongſt themſelves into divers Toparchies, little or nothing acknowledging the Sovereignty either of *Meſoot* or *Kei-Cubades*.

Turks prevail againſt the Chriſtians.

In the mean time, the *Tartars* and *Egyptian* Sultans with their *Mamalukes* conflicted hard about the Dominion of *Syria*, while all things went to wrack with the poor Chriſtians in thoſe parts: And of all the Preparations made by divers Chriſtian Princes of the Weſt in 1271, to come and relieve them, there were none but two, that gave them any ſuccour, *viz.* Prince *Edward*, afterwards the firſt of that Name King of *England*, who performed many brave Actions againſt the Infidels above the number of Forces he had with him, and was very like to be barbarouſly aſſaſſinated at the Ad-

1271.

miral of *Joppa*'s Instigation, who feigned a desire of becoming a Christian, for the better concealing of his villanous Design; and after him *Henry* Prince of *Mecklebourg*, sent into the Holy Land by the Emperor *Rodolph* (in conformity to his Vow) who landing at *Ptolemais*, made many notable Incursions into the Enemies Territories, where he carry'd all before him; but was at length surprized and taken Prisoner, from whence he was carry'd to *Grand Caire*, and remained a Captive 26 years; when one of the *Mamalukes*, a *German* Renegado, being chosen Sultan, he order'd him to be brought before him, and ask'd, *If it would not do him good to celebrate the Nativity of his Christ with his Friends in* Germany? for now the time of year was at hand. *And I know*, said the Sultan, *thou art so given to thy Superstition, that thou valuest that more than thy Liberty.* *'Tis true*, said *Henry*, *mighty Prince; for Liberty would signify nothing, if Christ by his Incarnation had not taken away our Captivity: and therefore I would to God thou didst but know how much all Men owe to the Memory thereof, and I wish heartily I could persuade thee to it.* *God forbid*, said the Sultan; *for I remember when I was chief Engineer under thy Father at* Knese-Fenick *in* Livonia, *and there did him good service, I was altogether a Christian; but now that I have forsaken that Error, I have also chang'd my private Fortune. But as for thy Religion, I have nothing to say, I speak of thy Liberty: wouldst thou therefore be glad to be free, and return home? It's natural for me*, answer'd the Prince, *to do so, tho my Fortune is otherwise, and depends wholly upon thy Will: I desire to return home, but if you deny me, I must, as I have hitherto done, take it in good part; being persuaded that* Anastasia *my Wife, and my dear Children* Henry, Leo, *and* John, *have long since celebrated my Funeral, and done mourning.* *You are mistaken*, said the Sultan, *for I am sure they know you are alive, and pray heartily for your Return: I do indeed owe much to the Memory of your Father, and therefore this day give you your Liberty.* This done, he furnish'd him with all Necessaries; but being in his Passage taken by Pirates, and brought back to the Sultan, he pity'd his Misfortunes, and sent a Ship on purpose to carry him to *Marseilles*, from whence he travelled by Land to his own Country.

Hence-

Henceforward all things grew worse and worse with the Christians in the *East*; *Tripolis* fell into the hands of the *Egyptian* Sultan *Elpis* in 1289. he also took and razed *Sydon* and *Berithus*, and in 1291. sent a great Army under *Emirech Ariphus* to besiege *Ptolemais*; during which time being chosen Sultan in the room of *Elpis* deceased, he push'd on the Siege with the utmost Vigour, and at last took the Place by dint of Sword: and thus, together with *Ptolemais*, was the Name of the Christians utterly rooted out of *Syria* and *Palestine* in the year 1291. about 192 years after the winning of *Jerusalem* by *Godfrey* of *Bologn*. And tho *Cassanes* a great *Tartar* Prince, at the Instigation of an *Armenian* Christian Lady, whom he married, took the Cause upon him, and did actually recover and repair the City of *Jerusalem*, and other places; yet this Conquest did not last long, for upon his Departure out of *Syria*, the *Egyptian* Sultan re-possest himself of all again. And in this state we are necessitated to leave them, that we may the more closely pursue our main Subject.

1289.

Christians lose all in the East.

We have already mention'd the Division of the *Turkish* Kingdom in the lesser *Asia* between *Mesoot* and *Kei-Cubades*, Tributaries to the *Tartars*. Now the first of these dying without Issue, and the other leaving a Son behind him known by the Name of *Aladin* the 2*d*, both the Kingdoms were united under him, tho still continuing tributary to the *Tartar*. This *Aladin* did no great feats (tho the Power of the *Tartars* began to decline in his time) but dying without issue, whereby the *Selzuccian* Family became extinct, one *Sabib* his Visier-Azem or chief Counsellor, a Man of great Authority, aspired to get the Kingdom, which yet he could not hold long, nor transmit to his Posterity: For every one upon such a juncture of time being willing to get as much as he could, and to think he had as much right as any body, as above hinted; the *Turkish* Kingdom in the lesser *Asia* was in a short time reduced as it were into a mere Anarchy, no King being now left amongst them; but the whole Kingdom was divided into divers Lordships, the greatest of which Princes was one *Caraman Alusirius*, who as strongest took possession of *Iconium* the Regal Seat of the *Turkish* Sultans, with all the Country of *Cilicia*, part of the Frontiers of *Lycaonia*, *Pamphylia*, *Caria*, and the greater

Turkish Kingdom rent in sunder.

Phrygia, as far as *Philadelphia*, and the City of *Antioch* upon the River *Meander*; all which Territories together were afterwards call'd *Caramania*, according to his Name, and it is commonly known by the same to this day. Of this *Caraman* also descended those *Caramanian* Kings, who for a long time after unfortunately strove with the *Othoman* Family for the Sovereignty of Empire, till at last they with their Kingdom, and the rest of the *Turkish* Dynasties, were in the fatal Greatness of the *Ottomans* swallow'd up and devour'd: but of these more in their proper places. As for the other Sharers, the next to *Caraman* was one *Sarachan*, by the *Greeks* called *Sarchan*, from whom the Country of *Ionia Maritima* was called *Saruchan Ili*, and *Saruchania*, i. e. *Saruchan*'s Country. The greatest part of *Lydia*, with part also of the greater *Mysia*, *Troas* and *Phrygia*, fell to *Calamus*, and his Son *Carasius*, of whom it was called *Carasia*, or *Carasi Ili*, i. e. *Carasius* his Country. Most of the antient *Mysia*, with part of *Lydia*, was possest by *Aidin*, and of him called *Aidinia*, or *Aidin Ili*. Some part of the great Country of *Pontus*, with the Cities of *Heraclea Pontica*, *Castamona*, *Synope*, and others near the *Euxine* Sea, besides the Country of *Paphlagonia*, fell into the hands of the Sons of *Omer* or *Amur*, from whom that Country was denominated, but is commonly called *Bolli* from a City in that Country so named by the *Turks*; as was also *Mendesia* or *Menteşia*, a Country in the lesser *Asia*, called so by the *Turks*, of *Mendos* or *Myndus* a City of *Caria*. Besides these three were divers other Dynasties erected, which would be too tedious to particularize; and therefore we are to observe, that these Princes, one and all, that shared the *Aladinian* Kingdom between them, were descended of the better sort of *Turks*, who driven by the *Tartars* out of *Persia*, had under them seated themselves in the lesser *Asia*, as we have already accounted for. But amongst all of them that divided the *Turkish* Kingdom, it's in a manner agreed by the unanimous consent of Historians, that *Othoman* the Raiser of his House and Family was one of them, who indeed in the latter time of the late Sultan *Aladin*, began to flourish, and was by him for his Valour extraordinarily respected, but of his Kingdom held no more than one poor Lordship called *Saguta* in *Bithynia*, not far from Mount

Othoman.

Olympus

Olympus (long before beſtowed upon his Father *Ethrogul* for his good Services, with ſuch other ſmall Holds hereabouts, as he had gain'd from the weak Chriſtians his Neighbours) for tho he were really a *Turk* born, yet he was not of the *Selzuccian* Family, but of another Houſe and Tribe; and therefore not thought to have ſo good a right to any part of the late Sultan's Provinces or Territories as they had, who being of his Family, and countenanc'd by long Preſcription, envied the ſudden riſe of the *Oguzian Turk*, who was to them as it were a mere Stranger, whoſe Fortune for all that (I know not by what ſecret Foreknowledg) they ſeemed to fear, would in time prove dangerous to them and their Poſterity, wherein indeed they found themſelves no way deceiv'd. But of all that relates to *Othoman*, we ſhall more particularly treat in the firſt Chapter of the next Book.

BOOK II.

CHAP. I.

The Life of Othoman, *firſt Founder of the* Turkiſh *Empire.*

FOR the clearer View of what we are juſt ready to enter upon in relation to the *Turks* and their Affairs, it will be neceſſary to recapitulate ſome things in commixture with other Matters, all which ſhall be done with as much Brevity as may be, that the Chain of our Hiſtory may appear to be as little broken as poſſible. At ſuch time therefore as the *Turkiſh* Kingdom founded by *Tangrolipix* in *Perſia*, flouriſhed in the *Selzuccian* Family, his Succeſſors, there was alſo another Kingdom of theirs at *Machan*, but nothing comparable to this in Power or Glory. Now in that City, and over that ſmall Kingdom reign'd one *Solyman*, by his Subjects honour'd alſo with the Name of Sultan or King; at the ſame time that the *Tartars* under the Command of old *Zingis*, leaving their own Country, carrying all before them, and having conquer'd the fartheſt parts of the Eaſt, where they fixed their Kingdom, turned their Forces upon *Perſia*, and there ſubdu'd the *Turkiſh* Kingdom at *Balch* in *Coraſan*, expelling the *Turks* with

Some Recapitulation.

Curſumes


OTHOMAN.
ORCHANES.
AMURATH. I.
BAIAZET. I.
M. v. Gucht. Sculp.



Curſumes their laſt King out of that Country, after they had there from the time of *Tangrolopix* reigned about 172 years.

Now this *Solyman*, of whom we ſpeak, then reigning at *Machan*, was not of the *Selzuccian* Family, but of the *Oguzian* Tribe, a Family alſo famous amongſt the *Turks*; who ſeeing the *Selzuccian* Sultan *Curſumes*, or *Cuſſumes*, as ſome call him, driven out of his Kingdom by the *Tartars*, his Country overrun, and the great Caliph of *Babylon* alſo overthrown, he thought it not proper for him to tarry in his Country any longer, but to make the beſt of his way with as many of his Subjects as would follow his Fortune unto ſome other of better Safety; and hearing that *Aladin* the Son of *Kei-Huſrea*, or *Cai-Coſroe* (a great Man of the *Selzuccian* Family, and near a-kin to the late Sultan *Curſumes*) who for fear of the *Tartars* had lately retir'd into *Romania Aſiatica*, had there by force of Arms fixed his Habitation amongſt the Chriſtians, he in hopes of the like good Fortune, and for the Zeal of his Superſtition, accounting any Acquiſitions from the Chriſtians to be good, then took his way after him with as many of his Kindred and Subjects as would follow him in his new Adventures; and coming to *Artezerum*, a City in the borders of *Armenia* and *Cappadocia*, there ſeated himſelf and his People after the manner of the *Tartarian Nomades* their Anceſtors, in poor Tents and Carts cover'd with a coarſe kind of Cloth, from whence they were called *Hamaxophoreti* and *Hamaxobii*, that is, People carried or living in Carts. When *Solyman* had ſtaid a while about *Artezerum*, he remov'd from thence to *Amazia*; and tho he ſubdued a large Territory thereabouts, yet being apprehenſive he was not in a condition to maintain it, and hearing at the ſame time that Affairs in *Perſia* were in a much better ſtate than they had been for ſome time, he reſolved to return home to viſit his native Country: So paſſing thro *Syria*, he ſeiz'd upon a Caſtle near *Aleppo* called *Ziaber-Cala*, and there for a time ſtaid to refreſh his People; but advancing from thence as far as the *Euphrates*, he was drown'd therein as he endeavour'd to paſs it, and his Body buried near unto *Ziaber-Cala* Caſtle aforeſaid. Hereupon ſome of theſe *Oguzian Turks*, weary with their long Travels,

Solyman *Sultan of* Machan *his Adventures.*

His Death.

fixed themselves in the Country thereabouts, to whom the *Turks* that now possess that Castle refer their Origin. The rest of the *Turks* seated themselves, some in *Arabia* and *Syria*, while others return'd back to *Romania* the same way they came.

Solyman thus lost, left four Sons, *viz. Sencur-Teken*, *Jandogdis*, *Ertogrul*, otherwise by some call'd *Orthrobules*, who was the Father of *Othoman*; and *Dunder*. Now with these four Brothers the greatest part of the *Oguzian Turks* returning into *Romania*, as aforesaid, after they had rested a while, they march'd up along the *Euphrates*, and came to a Place call'd *Passin-Ovasi*, about ten Miles above *Arterum*, where *Ertogrul* and his Brother *Dunder*, with four hundred Families, being unwilling to go any further, staid with their Carts and Tents; while the other two passing the River, return'd with the rest into *Persia*, where we leave them to their unknown Fortunes: But *Ertogrul* with his Brother and three Sons, after divers Conflicts with the People thereabouts, thought it best to return again into *Romania*, and coming to *Ancyre*, thence to the black Mountains, and so to a Plain called *Sultan-Ungi* by the *Turks*, about 75 Miles East from *Nice* in *Bithynia*, he had there many Skirmishes with the Christians; and coming to hear of the Power of Sultan *Aladin* at *Iconium*, of whom you have an account in the close of the last Book, he sent his second Son *Serugatin*, a bold well-spoken Man, to desire in that his so large a Kingdom, as yet not so well peopled by the *Turks*, to grant to his poor exil'd Country-men some small Corner to dwell in. The Sultan used the Messenger very courteously, and left him not without hopes of Success; but the Sultan happening to engage about this time in a dangerous Conflict with his Enemies the *Tartars*, wherein he was like to lose his Life, *Ertogrul*, tho a New-comer, yet waiting all Opportunities to do the Sultan Service, suddenly with four hundred Men fell upon the Rear of the *Tartars*, now almost in possession of a great Victory, and charg'd them so vigorously, that they were totally routed: For which good Service the Sultan highly honour'd him, and conferred upon him and his *Turks* a Country Village called *Guguta* (mention'd before) situate between the Castle of *Bilezuga* and Mount *Tmolus* in the greater *Phrygia*; in

Ertogrul *and his Son's Adventure.*

in which they liv'd in Winter, but fed their Cattel in Summer upon the ſaid Mountain, and that called *Ormenius*, between the Rivers *Sangarius* and *Licus*; and at the ſame time committed to his Protection that ſide of the Country wherein he dwelt, being in the very Frontiers of his Kingdom, which Charge he manag'd very well.

Ertogrul having lived thus ſome years, and brought great Peace unto his Neighbours, as well Chriſtians as *Turks*, it happen'd that the Chriſtians of *Cara-Chiſar*, call'd antiently *Melanopyrgon*, but more latterly *Mawroncaſtron*, *i. e.* Black Tower or Caſtle by the *Greeks*, fell out with him, and ill uſed both him and his People; whereof *Ertogrul* complaining to the Sultan, he left him to beſiege the Caſtle, whilſt himſelf marched againſt the *Tartars*, now enter'd into *Caria*, and had taken *Heraclea*, which he overthrew: and *Ertogrul* carried his Buſineſs on ſo vigorouſly that he took it by aſſault, and lived for many years after in great Peace in the times of the ſucceeding Sultans, and during the Revolutions that happen'd in the *Turkiſh* Kingdom, to the days of the ſecond and laſt *Aladin*, who in the Frontier Country near *Saguta*, the Dwelling-place of old *Ertogrul*, had divers Lieutenants and Captains, Governours of Caſtles and other Fortreſſes; with whom *Othoman*, *Ertogrul*'s youngeſt Son, who far exceeded his Brethren in Spirit and Courage, was well acquainted, but eſpecially with the Captain of *Inungi*, whom he often viſited.

Othoman *in love with* Malhutin.

Now it happen'd, that as *Othoman* who was yet but young, was going to be merry with the Governour of *Eski-Chiſar*, a Caſtle about 24 miles from him, he chanc'd to ſee at *Iburne* in *Phrygia*, a beautiful Maid called *Malhutin*, with whom he fell paſſionately in love, and without her Father's knowledg ſent a Friend privately to her to entreat her to marry him; but ſhe being of mean deſcent, and apprehenſive *Othoman* was not in earneſt, put him off, and wiſh'd him a more equal Match. Now *Othoman* going to viſit the ſaid Governour another time, could not forbear communicating to him his Affections towards *Malhutin*, with ſo many Commendations of her Beauty, that the Governour really fell paſſionately in love with her himſelf, which he could not ſo conceal, but *Othoman* diſcerned

ſomewhat

ſomewhat of it, and therefore he forthwith diſpatch'd a truſty Servant ſecretly to the Maid's Friends, ordering him in his Name to tell them, that as they tender'd her Honour, they ſhould preſently ſend her away to ſome ſafe place, leſt ſhe were ſhortly taken away by a great Man that was more amorous of her Perſon, than he reſpected her Honour; and ſoon after himſelf went to his dear Friend the Captain of *In-ungi*, where he diverted himſelf for a time, while the Governour of *Eſki-Chiſar*, call'd *Sultan-Ungi*, ſending one of his truſty Servants to *Iburne*, to ſee fair *Malhutin*, and how things went there, got Information of what *Othoman* had done; and preſently ſent to the Captain of *In-ungi*, who was within his Juriſdiction, to deliver *Othoman* to him: which the other refuſing, the Governour preſently laid ſiege to the Caſtle, the Gariſon whereof was dubious at firſt what they ſhould do, but at laſt reſolv'd to defend it, tho their Irreſolution made *Othoman* think of his Eſcape, who with his Brother *Jundus* and a few Followers, quite broke thro the Enemy's Camp, and being joined by a few luſty Fellows on the Frontiers of his Father's Territories, turned back and routed his Purſuers; about which time died his Father *Ertogrul*, after having liv'd 93 years, *An.* 1289. in whoſe ſtead, notwithſtanding the oppoſition made by ſome for the Advancement of his Uncle *Dunger*, yet *Dunger* himſelf was the firſt that ſaluted *Othoman* with the Title of Governour of the *Oguzian Turks*; and ſo he became a great Commander amongſt them, and was honour'd with the Title of *Oeſman-Beg* or the Lord *Oſman*, tho his Government was yet but very mean and pitiful. It was not long before *Othoman* happen'd to fall out with the Captain of an adjacent Caſtle called *Einegiol*, who moleſted the *Oguzian* Herdſmen in driving their Cattel to and fro; in revenge whereof, he ſent ſeventy of his beſt Men over Mount *Ormenius*, to endeavour, if poſſible, to ſurprize or ſet his Enemy's Caſtle on fire; but underſtanding the Captain had laid an Ambuſh for him, he augmented his Number, and with great fury falling upon him, after an obſtinate Fight, got the victory, tho with the Loſs of his Nephew *Hozza* and others. Soon after he ſurpriz'd the Caſtle of *Chalce* near *Einegiol*, and put all the Chriſtians there to the ſword, then burnt

1289.

Made Governour of the Oguzian Turks.

Takes Chalce, *and other Adventures.*

burnt it; of which the Chriſtians made a heavy complaint to the *Cara-Chiſar*, or greateſt Commander thereabouts, and that the Neighbourhood of theſe newcome Herdſmen was grown intolerable. Hereupon the Governour ſpeedily diſpatch'd a good Body of Soldiers under the Command of his Brother *Calanus*, with orders to join the reſt of the Chriſtians at the Caſtle of *Einegiol*, with whom *Othoman* fought a ſharp Battel near *Opſicium*, wherein he loſt his Brother *Sarugatin*, and many Soldiers, *Calanus* being alſo ſlain in that Action. Now *Aladin* Sultan of *Iconium* underſtanding this loſs of *Othoman*, for whom he had a great Eſteem, gave him the City of *Paleapolis*, with all the adjacent Territory, and leave to beſiege, take or ſpoil the Caſtle of *Cara-Chiſar*, which at laſt he won, put all the Chriſtians to the ſword, cruelly executed the Governour, and gave the Plunder of the Place to his Soldiers, reſerving only the fifth part, which he ſent as a Preſent to the Sultan. Incourag'd with this good Succeſs, he began to conſult about enlarging his Juriſdiction in good earneſt; but rejecting his Brother *Jundus*'s Advice, who was for his puſhing on his good Fortune without delay, he enter'd into a League with the Chriſtians round about him, but with a Reſolution to keep it with ſome, and break it with others, as ſhould beſt ſerve his turn: eſpecially he courted the Friendſhip of *Michael Coſſi* Captain of *Hirmen-Caia* Caſtle, who was very uſeful afterwards to him in his Wars, and turned *Mahometan*.

In the mean time, *Othoman* took all imaginable care to ſet his new Government in order, by building a Temple at *Cara-Chiſar* for the Exerciſe of the *Mahometan* Religion, appointing Markets in proper Places, and adminiſtring Juſtice to his People: But it happening at this time, that the Captains of *Bilezuga* and *Capri-Chiſar* falling out, *Othoman* took the Captain of *Bilezuga*'s part, and got him the Victory againſt his Enemy; who flying thereupon to his Caſtle, *Othoman* preſently beſieg'd and took it, while the Lord of *Bilezuga* was ſo elevated with his ſucceſs, and rewarded the *Turkiſh* Soldiers after ſo haughty and inſolent a manner, that *Othoman* could hardly forbear laying hands on him: but diſſembling his Anger, he ſecretly communicated his Diſcontent to his Couſin *Dunder*,

and

and the disgrace that was done to the *Turks* by that proud Christian: but the other using Arguments to dissuade him from any Attempts against the Captain, for whom he had a respect, and *Othoman* doubting the same, he did without any more ado, to prevent discovery, shoot him thro with an Arrow. Soon after *Michael Cossi* invited *Othoman* to the Marriage of his Daughter, where, according to the custom of that Country, making richer Presents than the Christians, they so far envy'd him as to contrive his Death; the Execution whereof was referr'd to the Captain of *Bilezuga*, who was of great Power and Authority amongst the Christians, and who to further the Design, carrrying it outwardly very free towards *Othoman*, invited him to honour with his Presence the Marriage of his Daughter with the Captain of *Jarchisar*, at such a time; before which *Othoman* sent him a Present of fat Oxen and Sheep in his Brother *Jundus*'s Name, and said he would be at the day appointed there himself.

Design to assassinate him discovered.

The Captain pleased with this, acquaints *Michael Cossi* with his Intentions, desiring him to keep up *Othoman*'s Resolution, to come to the Marriage; but *Cossi* hating the Treachery, informed *Othoman* of it, by whom *Othoman* sent a Message to the Captain, full of Acknowledgments for the former use of his Castle for his People, and desir'd now he was at wars with Prince *German Ogli*, he might have leave to send some of his best Movables thither again, for their better Security; and withal, that he design'd to bring his Mother-in-law, Wife, and their Retinue with him, to the Wedding. Now instead of rich Movables, he pack'd up armed Men, and sent them to the Castle of *Bilezuga* in the Twilight; then with some of his best Soldiers in Womens Apparel, as if they had been his Wife and Mother-in-law, went thither himself, and desir'd the Captain, his Women might be sent to the Castle for conveniency of Lodging, and Privacy; which done, those in the Packs, and these disguis'd Fellows suddenly drew their Swords, kill'd the Guard, and seized the Castle. *Othoman* who was all this while with the Captain, supposing the time when the Fact was done, made away toward the Castle, and the Captain with his Men after him, who was slain, and the rest put to flight. Next Morning he also surprized the Castle

Caſtle of *Jarchiſar*, and took the Captain and his Daughter the fair *Lulufer* (who was that day to be married) priſoner. The Caſtle of *Durgut-Alpes* likewiſe quickly fell into his hands; and after having ſettled a good Government amongſt his Subjects, he laid ſiege to *Nice* in *Bithynia*, famous for a General Council held there againſt *Arius*; which being in diſtreſs, ſent to the Emperor of *Conſtantinople* for Aid, who forthwith ſent ſome Soldiers to the relief of it. *Othoman* hearing this, withdrew his Troops from before the Place, and laying an Ambuſh for them near their landing-place, they fell into it before they could draw up in order of battel, and were there moſt of them ſlain, while the remainder miſerably periſh'd at Sea. The conſequence was the Surrender of the rich City of *Nice* to *Othoman*, with the Spoils whereof he greatly enrich'd his Soldiers; only the fifth part he ſent to Sultan *Aladin*, who highly honoured him upon this occaſion with a fair Enſign, Drums, Trumpets, a Princely Robe, and other things. And ſoon after *Othoman* heard of the Sultan's Death, as he was deſigning in perſon to give him a Viſit; and tho he was mightily concern'd that *Sahib*, one of his Counſellors, had taken upon him the Dignity of Sultan, as expecting, if not all, at leaſt a ſhare of *Aladin*'s Dominions, yet he preſently upon his death thought it a proper time to take upon him the Princely Honours before granted him by the Sultan, which he for Modeſty ſake had forborn while the other was alive. Wherefore he made one *Druſu*, ſirnamed *Faitiche*, *i. e.* a Man learned in the *Turkiſh* Law, Biſhop and Judg of *Cara-Chiſar*; commanding the publick Prayers, which were wont to be made for the Health and Proſperity of the great Sultan deceas'd, to be now made for himſelf, which was firſt openly done by the ſaid Biſhop in the Pulpit of *Cara-Chiſar*. He alſo at the ſame time began to coin Mony in his own Name, and to take upon him all other Honours appertaining to the Dignity of a Sultan or King; and this happen'd about ten years after the death of his Father *Ertogrul*, *Anno Dom.* 1300. to which time the beginning of the great Empire of the *Turks* under the fortune of this *Othoman*, may juſtly be referred.

Reveng'd on his Enemies.

Takes Nice.

Beginning of the Turkiſh *Empire.* 1300.

Now when *Othoman* had thus taken upon him the Majeſty of a King, he made his Son *Orchanes* Prince and

and Governour of *Cara-Chisar*, and advanced his principal Followers to be Governours of other strong Forts and Castles, several of which places retain the Names of those Captains to this day. As for himself, he made choice of the City *Neapolis*, about 20 miles from *Nice*, to be the place of his Royal Residence (where also divers of his Nobility built them Houses) and chang'd its Name to *Despotopolis*, that is, the City of the Lord or Prince: but all this while he was not negligent of doing all he could to enlarge the Bounds of his Kingdom, and to that end being attended with his Son *Orchanes*, he made divers Incursions into the adjacent Countries, and surprized such places as he thought might best serve for the Enlargement of his Territories; to particularize each of which, would be too tedious and inconsistent with the Compass of this History.

But to omit nothing that is truly material and useful to the Reader, we are to observe, that those Christian Princes who govern'd the Countries adjoining to this new Kingdom, fearing lest the Greatness of *Othoman* might in a short time prove their utter Confusion, resolved to unite their Forces, and to hazard their whole Fortune to the chance of one Battel: in order to which, those Princes, who were for the most part of *Mysia* and *Bithynia*, confederating together, raised all the Force they could, and with Fire and Sword invaded *Othoman*'s Dominions; who being forewarned of the Storm, had provided for it the best he could, and no sooner heard of the Enemies having entred his Territories, but in a warlike manner he marched directly towards them, and meeting with them in the Confines of *Phrygia* and *Bithynia*, there they came to a general Battel, which was obstinately fought on either side with a great Slaughter: but at last Fortune inclining to *Othoman*'s side, he there obtain'd a glorious Victory. Here *Casteleamus*, one of the greatest of the Christian Commanders, was slain: *Tekensis* also, so named from the Country which he govern'd in *Phrygia*, being pursued by *Othoman* to *Ulubad* Castle near to the place of battel, was by the Governour deliver'd up to him, who cruelly cut him to pieces, and then took in that Castle, with all the adjacent Country. As for the Prince of *Bithynia* (to say nothing of the rest) the principal Author of this Work, he fled into the strong City of *Prusa*, being

Othoman *defeats the Christians.*

being quickly follow'd by *Othoman*, who design'd to have forced it; but finding that impracticable, he presently caused two strong and large Castles to be built upon the chief Passages leading to it, which were finished in about a Year's time; and therewith blocking up the City so closely, that little or nothing could be well brought into it, we will at present leave it, and observe that *Othoman* by the opportunity of this and his late Victory, having subdued most part of *Bithynia*, returned home in triumph. *Blocks up* Prusa.

Hereupon finding himself pretty secure from Enemies without, he applies his Mind to the regulating of Government at home with good Laws and Constitutions, which brought People from all quarters to dwell there; so that in a short time his Kingdom became very populous, and himself most famous for good Government: And thus he lived in peace and quietness for some years, being now grown aged and much afflicted with the Gout. But his old Soldiers, who abhor'd Peace, coming unanimously to intreat him to undertake some honourable War for the enlargement of his Territories, he was mightily pleased with them for their forwardness, thank'd and dismiss'd them for that time, promising he would not be unmindful of their Request. However thinking it proper to make every thing safe at home before he entred upon a foreign Expedition, he sent for *Michael Cossi* the only Christian Commander, whom for his merit he had always suffered to live peaceably on his Estate, as it were, in the heart of his Kingdom, with a design to persuade him, if possible, to turn *Mahometan*, and thereby remove all cause of distrust; but otherwise to make war upon him as his utter Enemy. *Cossi* not dreaming of what follow'd, came with some Soldiers along, as supposing the Sultan would have him attend him in some warlike Expedition; but finding the real cause of his being sent for, and the danger he was in, kissing the Sultan's Hand after the *Turkish* manner, he desired him to instruct him in the Principles of the *Mahometan* Religion, which ever after he promised to embrace: for which compliance, *Othoman* immediately presented him with an Ensign and a rich Robe, which are assured Tokens of the *Mahometan* Sultans Favours to their Vassals, and their undoubted possession of such Lands as they hold.

Othoman's *Conqueſts.* hold. This done, *Othoman*, to ſatisfy the deſires of the Soldiery, invaded the neighbouring Countries, took many ſtrong Caſtles and Fortreſſes, ſubdued the greateſt part of *Phrygia*, *Myſia*, and *Bithynia*, with other Regions, even as far as the *Euxine* Sea: And when thro Age and Infirmity he was unable to go to the field in perſon, he managed his Wars by his Son *Orchanes*, who in his Father's Life-time performed many great Actions.

Digreſſion of the Greek *Empire.* But while *Othoman* is making his Conqueſts in this manner at pleaſure, it may be wonder'd what is become of the *Greek* Emperors all this time; but alas their Empire was full of inteſtine Diviſions and Commotions, which we ſhall briefly hint at, and then reaſſume the Thred of our Hiſtory. We have already recounted how *Michael Paleologus* came to be *Greek* Emperor by Treachery; who being afraid of the Princes of the Weſt, eſpecially *Charles* King of *Sicily* an active Prince, and Friend to the depoſed Emperor *Baldwin*, to entangle him near home, propoſed to Pope *Gregory* the Tenth to reconcile the *Greek* with the *Latin* Church: which created ſuch a confuſion and buſtle in the former, that many People forſook their Country (while others were perſecuted for Non-compliance) and went to fix themſelves in foreign Regions, out of the reach of Popiſh Superſtition and Cruelty. But the Emperor dying before the thing was fully accompliſhed, his Son and Succeſſor *Andronicus* thinking, by reſtoring the Government again to the *Greek* Church, he ſhould the better eſtabliſh his own, found it not ſo eaſy a thing to effect, thro the addictedneſs of ſome to the *Romiſh* Church. His Jealouſy alſo of his Brother *Conſtantine Porphyrogenitus* made him more negligent perhaps than otherwiſe he would have been of the common Enemy's Incroachments. However, *Alexius Philantropenus*, a famous old Commander, being made Governour of the Cities of *Ionia*, and the Frontiers of the Empire along the *Meander*, did him great ſervice againſt the *Turks*; but growing proud with ſucceſs, aud rebelling againſt his Prince (tho he was not long-lived, being delivered up to *Libadarius* by the *Cretenſians* his Followers, who put him to death) it made *Andronicus* jealous of his own Subjects; and the *Maſſagetæ* or *Alani*, who were Chriſtians, and dwelt beyond the *Iſther*, happening at that

that time to be oppreſs'd by the *European Tartars*, they offer'd with 10000 of their Families to come over and ſerve the Emperor in his Wars againſt the *Turks*; who after ſome difficulty to get them ſupply'd with Arms and other Neceſſaries, to the oppreſſion of his Subjects, tranſported them over for *Aſia* under the Command of his eldeſt Son *Michael Paleologus*, and then his Collegue in the Empire: at whoſe firſt appearing towards *Magneſia*, the *Turks* retired to their Mountains and Faſtneſſes, till knowing their Number and Security, they came ſuddenly down upon the young Emperor in his Camp, and ſoon routed him; who after he had done all he could to make his Men ſtand, tho in vain, retired to the ſtrong Caſtle of *Magneſia*, there to expect the Event of this Misfortune, which was indeed very fatal: for the *Maſſagetæ* not only ravaged the Country of the poor Chriſtians, as they retired; but marching directly to the *Helleſpont*, there repaſs'd into *Europe*, as if they had been ſent for over the *Iſther*, the ſooner to ſhew the *Turks* the way unto the Sea-ſide in *Aſia*: for the young Emperor returning ſoon after to *Conſtantinople*, the *Mahometans* came down and conquer'd all the Countries as far as *Lesbos*, to the great ruin and diminution of the *Greek* Empire.

But notwithſtandiug this diſappointment, the Emperor being in the vein of entertaining Foreigners, took alſo about this time a Body of *Catalonians* under the Command of one *Rouzerius*, once a famous Pirate, but now a fam'd General, into his ſervice; who in conjunction with other Troops being ſent into *Aſia* againſt the *Turks*, did no feats at all againſt them: but turning their Arms and Ravages upon the poor Chriſtians, under pretence of want of Pay, committed horrible Outrages and incredible Damage in the Country. But *Rouzerius* being ſlain near *Oreſtrias* in *Thrace*, as he was coming in a very inſolent manner to demand his Pay of the young Emperor *Michael*, his Followers in a rage firſt ſlew all the Citizens of *Calipolis*, and fortify'd themſelves as well as they could, to which the Emperor's Slowneſs did not a little contribute; yet diſtruſting their Strength, they ſent for aſſiſtance to the *Turks*, who dwelt on the other ſide of the Strait over againſt them in *Aſia*, who preſently ſent them five hundred good Soldiers, that were quickly followed by

Turks firſt called into Europe.

others eager of Prey: with which Reinforcement they did great injury to the adjacent Country. And this is the first, but fatal time we find the *Turks* come into *Europe*, which will not end here.

Now the *Catalonians* and *Turks* lying about *Cypsella* and *Apri* in *Thrace*, *Michael* the Emperor with his own Troops in conjunction with the *Massagetæ*, and a People called *Turcopoli*, encamped at *Apri*; but since we have mention'd this People, it will not be improper to give some account of them. We have already in the first Book of this History related how Sultan *Jathatines* fled out of his Dominions in *Asia* to the Emperor of *Greece* for Protection, with a number of *Turks* his Followers; but being in process of time set at liberty by the *European Tartars* at *Ænum*, and fled, the *Turks* whom he left behind with *Melech*, renouncing their Superstition, were baptized and became Christians with their Families; being enrolled among the Emperor's Soldiers, and distinguished by the name of *Turcopoli*. But to return: The Emperor soon after being informed by his Scouts of the approach of the Enemy, gave order for Battel; and finding the Enemies Army drawn into three Divisions, he did the like by his, placing the *Turcopoli* and *Massagetæ* in the left Wing, the *Macedonian* and *Thracian* Horse in the right, and the rest with the Foot in the main Body: whereas in the Enemies Army the *Turks* were placed in both the Wings, and *Catalans* in the Center. At Sun-rising the Signal for Battel being given, the *Massagetæ*, by what means or instigation is not known, withdrew and stood aloof off as idle Spectators of the Action; and the *Turcopoli* doing the same, this Defection so discouraged the *Greeks*, who expected brave things from them, that all the Emperor could do by Promises, Intreaties, and his own Example in valiantly charging the Enemy, where he had his Horse slain under him, and was like to be taken prisoner, could not stop their flight; the consequences whereof were a great slaughter of them, a ravaging of the Country, and the Revolt of the *Turcopoli* to the *Catalans*, they being enroll'd in the Regiment of *Chaleb*, the *Turkish* General.

The Turcopoli.

Michael *Emperor beaten by the* Catalans.

Now the *Turks* and *Turcopoli* having, for some time after this, follow'd the Fortune of the *Catalans*, till they

they came to invade *Theſſaly*, but then growing diſtruſtful of their Company, their Commanders *Melech* and *Chaleb* deſired the General of the *Catalans* to give them leave to return quietly home, which the other granted; and ſo they parted, having firſt divided the Spoils they had taken during that long War, according to the number of both Parties. But they kept not long together, for the *Turcopoli* under *Melech* being conſcious of their Revolt and Treachery to the *Greek* Emperor, from whom they could not reaſonably expect any favour, retired to *Charles* Prince of *Servia*, who took all their Arms and Horſes from them, and order'd them to fall to their reſpective Trades, till he thought fit otherwiſe to make uſe of them. But *Chaleb* with the *Turks* his Followers, to the number of about 1300 Horſe, and 800 Foot, ſtaying a while in *Macedonia*, offered the *Greek* Emperor peaceably to depart, provided he would grant him ſafe Paſſage over the *Helleſpont*, which was agreed to; yet the *Greek* Officers and Soldiers obſerving the great Booty which the *Turks* had got, began to contrive how they ſhould make themſelves maſters of it. In order to which, delaying to provide the Shipping promiſed them for their Tranſportation, and deſigning to maſter them all in the night, the *Turks* luckily got ſome intimation of it, and therefore ſurprized preſently a Caſtle hard by, which they notably fortified and defended; but wiſely fearing the Power of the *Greek* Emperor, tho he was ſlow enough to come and unroof them, they ſent for and received Aid from their Countrymen in *Aſia*, with which Reinforcement they ravaged the adjacent Country. At length the Emperor reſolved to prevent the miſchief, by taking the foreſaid Caſtle, which was the Receptacle and Refuge of his Enemies; and to that end march'd not only with his regular Troops to attack it, but the Country People in general with their Spades and Mattocks came flocking to him, as if they would have digged down the place, and overthrown both it and the *Turks* their Enemies together: but proceeding very careleſly and negligently in their Works, and the *Turks* obſerving it, they placed all their Wealth, Women, and other things ſafe within their Trenches; while themſelves with eight hundred choice Horſe only, well armed, ſallied out and penetrated even as far as the

Turks *rout the Emperor.*

Imperial Standard, which ſo terrify'd the *Greeks*, but more particularly the Ruſticks amongſt them, that they began to fly; whoſe Example being followed by the reſt, it came in a manner to a general Rout: which the Emperor did all he could to prevent, but in vain, tho many of the beſt Officers, aſhamed of ſuch a baſe Action, made divers bold ſtands, to cover the Emperor and their flying Country-men from the Purſuit; but many of them were hemmed in by the *Turks*, and taken priſoners: beſides which, all the Emperor's Treaſure fell into the Enemies hands, as alſo divers Colours, and even the Imperial Crown it ſelf, richly beſet with Pearl and precious Stones, which the ſaid *Chaleb* put upon his Head, laughing at the *Greek* Emperor that had wore it a little before.

Ravage Thrace.

The *Turks* elevated with this unexpected Victory, ravaged all *Thrace* for two years together in a moſt miſerable manner without controul. At length *Philes Paleologus*, a near Relation of the Emperor's, a very devout and upright Perſon, but never famed for a Soldier, moved with the Miſery of his Country, deſir'd the Emperor he might make choice of a few Officers and Troops to go out with him againſt theſe inſolent *Turks*, hoping, he ſaid, by the Grace of God to revenge the Injuries done by them, and to return to him again with Victory. This the Emperor agreeing to, he firſt of all incouraged his Officers and Soldiers with all manner of Courteſy, in reſpect to Mony, Arms, and the like; then perſuaded them to uſe an honeſt and temperate Courſe of Life, and valiantly to play the Men, promiſing at the End of the War to reward every one according to his Merit: then underſtanding by his Spies, that *Chaleb* with 1000 Foot and 200 Horſe was ravaging the Country about *Bizia*, he march'd forthwith to intercept him, and coming the third day to a Rivulet called *Xerogipſum*, he encamped in a great Plain near it, where having put all things in good order of Battel, and left nothing unſaid to his Men which might induce them to be brave, he had not lain two days, but his Scouts brought him word at midnight that the Enemy with their Booty was at hand, and indeed by Sun-riſing they were got in ſight of each other. The *Turks* not terrify'd with the ſurprize, having made a Barricade of their Waggons and Car-

Carriages, bound faſt their Priſoners with their Booty and according to their uſual cuſtom throwing Duſt upon their Heads, bravely advanc'd againſt the Chriſtians, who receiv'd them with great Reſolution and Order; and *Philes*, at the head of the right Wing, firſt charged a Squadron of the Enemies, and immediately unhorſed two of them one after another: but his Horſe being ſorely wounded under him, he haſtily retir'd out of the Battel, which incourag'd his Enemies to come on more fiercely than before; yet he quickly return'd again to the Charge to incourage his Men, and lifting up his Eyes to Heaven, with Tears trickling down his Face, he pray'd unto God, that he would no longer ſuffer the Miniſters of his Wrath to triumph over his People, as likewiſe for the poor Priſoners, doubtfully betwixt fear and hope expecting the Event of the Battel. At the ſame time there was a moſt cruel fight between the Foot of each Army, but the Chriſtians at laſt breaking in upon the Enemy, made ſuch a ſlaughter of them, that none but a few Horſe eſcaped them, which yet were purſued by the *Grecks* to the Entrance into the *Cherſoneſus*, with a Deſign to coop them up together; the Emperor at the ſame time ſending out five Gallies to the *Helleſpont* to keep any Succours from coming to them out of *Aſia*. While theſe things were in agitation, 2000 choice Horſe came to the Aid of *Philes* out of *Servia*, and the Poteſtate of *Pera* with eight Gallies more arrived in the *Helleſpont*; ſo that the *Turks* being hemmed in on all ſides by Sea and Land, *Philes* came and incamped about the Town and Trenches wherein the *Turks* lay, planting his Battery againſt the Caſtle, wherewith he greatly annoy'd the ſame, and made a great Slaughter of the *Turks* and their Horſes, not only by day but night alſo. So that ſeeing now there was nothing but Death ſtared them in the face, which way ſoever they looked, they reſolved to adventure their Lives by endeavouring to break thro the *Greeks*; but finding them at their firſt ſallying, ready to receive them, they return'd again to the Place; yet not ſo diſcouraged, as not to attempt the ſame thing upon the *Servians*, tho with the like ill ſucceſs: So that now beginning utterly to deſpair, they caſt their Arms away about Midnight, and with their Boſoms and Pockets full of Mony, ran down

Turks overthrown by Philes.

to the Sea-ſide towards the Gallies, with a Deſign to ſurrender themſelves to the *Genoeſe* that were in them, hoping to expect better quarter from them than the others whom they had ſo much injured: But the Night proving dark and miſty, and the Moon giving no Light, many of them unawares came to the *Greek* Gallies, and there from the Frying-pan fell into the fire; for being firſt eas'd of their Mony, they were then miſerably ſlain by them. But the *Genoeſe* did not kill all their Priſoners, ſave only ſuch as had brought the moſt Mony along with them, leſt if afterwards they came to diſcover the ſame, the *Greeks* ſhould come and ſearch after it; the reſt they put into chains, ſome of whom they ſent to the Emperor, but kept others for their own Priſoners. Thus ended the Affairs of the *Turks* in *Europe* with the utter ruin of them; but the time is haſtening when they ſhall come and take a more ſure footing, to which the declining of the *Greek* Empire contributed very much: the Reaſons whereof we ſhall very briefly touch upon before we come to cloſe this Chapter, and bring *Othoman* the great Founder of the *Turkiſh* Empire and Greatneſs to his Grave.

The Troubles of the Greek *Empire.*

We have already noted the great Evil introduc'd into the Empire by the Innovation and Change of their antient Religion and Ceremonies by *Michael Paleologus*, and ſpoken of the Viciſſitudes in his Son *Andronicus* his Reign, who had his Son *Michael* for Colleague in the Empire; which *Michael* having two Sons, *viz. Andronicus*, afterwards Emperor, and *Manuel* ſirnamed the *Deſpot*, the Grandfather old *Andronicus*, doted very much upon his eldeſt Grandſon, who grew to be a wild Spark, and much addicted to Women, which was the occaſion of the Death of his Brother *Manuel*: for being jealous that he had ſome Rival in one of his Miſtreſs's Affection, whom he order'd to be watch'd one night by certain Ruffians for that purpoſe, and the *Deſpot* happening to paſs that way in ſearch after his Brother, was ſet upon by them; whom, before they knew him, they mortally wounded. Neither did his Extravagancies reſt here, but by the ſubtle Wit of a great Man called *Syrgianes* he was egg'd on to raiſe a Rebellion againſt his Grandfather, and aſpire to the Imperial Dignity; and notwithſtanding all the grave Premonitions of his Grandfather,

and

and mutual Promiſes of Protection and Obedience that paſſed between them, yet the Grandſon *Andronicus* and his wicked Counſellors at laſt broke out into open Rebellion againſt the Emperor, *Thrace* revolting to the Prince; inſomuch that the old Emperor was forced to agree to divide the Empire between them. But *Syrgianes*, not rewarded as he thought according to his Merit, and who was the firſt that adviſed him to the Revolt, coming to deſert and fight againſt him, as alſo his Uncle *Conſtantine* the *Deſpot*, he found himſelf reduced to great ſtraits; yet having the artifice to make moſt People believe his Grandfather's Death, there was a Tumult raiſed thereupon in *Theſſalonich*, where the *Deſpot* then was, and his Perſon ſeiz'd and deliver'd up to his Nephew, who kept him priſoner as long as he lived. This made the Emperor very penſive and melancholy, who in one of thoſe moods ſeeks for Counſel from the Pſalter, where in the firſt Verſe he lit on was, *Dum Cœleſtis diſſociat Reges, nive conſperguntur in Salmon*; that is, when the Almighty ſcatter'd Kings for their ſakes, then were they as white as Snow in *Salmon*: which he applied to himſelf, as if thoſe Troubles, and whatever elſe had happen'd in them, proceeded from the Divine Will, tho for cauſes to him unknown. However, there was another Agreement patch'd up between them, whereby *Andronicus* was aſſumed Collegue by his Grandfather, tho the Cares and Ornament were left to the old Emperor: yet this and the ſeemingly ſubſequent ones did not laſt long. So that to ſum up the matter in as few words as may be only neceſſary, *Theſſalonica* was ſurrender'd to the young Emperor, and ſome time afterwards *Conſtantinople* betray'd into his hands; and being ſtill therein more puſh'd on by the wicked Patriarch *Niphon*, who told him that if he deſired to reign without fear, he muſt not give his Honour to another, but take even all the Ornaments of Empire from the old Man, caſt Hair-Cloth upon him, and ſo clap him faſt in Priſon, or thruſt him into Exile; he reſolved his Grandfather ſhould no longer retain the Name of Emperor, but keep his Chamber, with the pitiful Maintenance of 10000 Ducats a year: where with Sorrow and Age he quickly grew blind, and ſoon after was forced to take the Habit of a Monk upon him, and change his

Name to *Anthony*; and ſome time after died in obſcurity.

But to return again to the *Turkiſh* Affairs in *Aſia*; to ſay nothing more in particular concerning the Succeſſors of Sultan *Aladin*, who along the River *Meander* encroached very faſt on the *Greek* Empire, but in fine became themſelves, together with the ſaid Empire, a Prey to the *Ottomans*, of which in its proper place; we ſhall reaſſume where we left off with *Othoman* himſelf, who all this while that the old Emperor *Andronicus* was infeſted as aforeſaid, had done all he could to enlarge his Dominions every way; and the Gariſons left by him in the two late built Caſtles already mentioned near unto *Pruſa*, under the command of the two valiant Generals *Actemur* and *Balabanzuch*, having now continued there ſome years, had by blocking up the Paſſes, and ravaging the Country, brought the Place to that diſtreſs, that many died there of Famine, while the reſt of the Citizens having no hopes of Relief, capitulated with *Orchanes* (for *Othoman* was then ill of the Gout) that they might have their Lives, and liberty to depart whither they pleaſed, with as much as they could carry on their backs; which moſt Authors agree was faithfully performed on the part of the *Turks*. And ſo *Pruſa*, one of the greateſt Cities in that part of *Aſia*, fell into the hands of the *Turks*, in the Year of our Lord 1327. and was afterwards by *Orchanes* made the Royal Reſidence of the *Ottoman* Kings.

Pruſa *yielded to the* Turks. 1327.

Othoman's *Death.* 1328.

And now to cloſe with this famous *Turk*'s Reign, and the Chapter together: About this time, or ſoon after, *Othoman* died in the 28th Year of his Reign, at the Age of 69, *An.* 1328. and lies buried at *Pruſa*; where his Tomb is to be ſeen at this day in a certain Chappel of an old Monaſtery in the Caſtle, ſtanding in the midſt of the City, covered with a Mantle of green Camlet, and a little Tulipant or *Turkiſh* Hat (ſuch as he us'd to wear) lying over his head, different from what the *Turks* wear now, eſpecially the better ſort of them, the ſame being ſo large, that they can ſcarcely come in at the door with them. Beſides which, there is another Monument of his to be ſeen at *Sugata*, hard by the Sepulchre of his Father *Ertogrul*, there erected by his Son in memory of him, which has given ſome occaſion

caſion to report that he was buried there; tho the *Turks* themſelves generally ſuppoſe the true Monument wherein he was interred, to be at *Pruſa*, as aforeſaid.

As for his Character, he was a wiſe, politick, valiant and fortunate Prince, but full of Diſſimulation, and exceeding ambitious; not raſh in his Enterprizes, and yet very reſolute; what he undertook he commonly effected: He was bountiful to all, but eſpecially to his Soldiery and the Poor, whom he often fed and clothed with his own hands. Of a poor Lordſhip he left a large Kingdom, having conquered a great part of the leſſer *Aſia*; and is juſtly eſteemed the firſt Founder of the great *Turkiſh* Kingdom and Empire, from whom their Kings and Emperors have ever ſince been called the *Ottoman* Kings and Emperors, as being lineally deſcended from him; and the *Turks* themſelves *Oſmandæ*, or the Subjects of *Othoman* or *Oſman*, as he is commonly call'd by them. *His Character.*

				A. D.	R.
Christian Princes, Co-temporaries with *Othoman.*	Emperors	Of the East.	*Andronicus Paleologus* the elder	1282.	43.
			Andronicus Paleologus the younger	1325.	29.
		Of the West.	*Albert* of *Austria*	1298.	10.
			Henry of *Lucelbourg*	1308.	6.
			Lewis IV. of *Bavaria*	1314.	32.
	Kings	Of *England.*	*Edward* I.	1272.	34.
			Edward II.	1307.	20.
			Edward III.	1327.	50.
		Of *France.*	*Philip* the Fair	1286.	25.
			Lewis	1314.	2.
			Philip the Long	1316.	5.
			Charles the Fair	1321.	7.
		Of *Scotland.*	*John Baliol*	1292.	
			Robert Bruce	1306.	24.
	Popes of *Rome.*		*Boniface* VIII.	1295.	8.
			Benedict XI.	1304.	2.
			Clement V.	1306.	11.
			John XXII.	1317.	18.

CHAP.

CHAP. II.

The Life of Orchanes, *or* Urchan, *ſecond King of the* Turks.

AFTER the Deceaſe of *Othoman*, his Sons *Orchanes* and *Aladin* ſummoned the States of the Country together, to deliberate about the Succeſſion, and Diviſion of *Othoman*'s Treaſure: but as for the laſt, they found little or none left, only great Herds of Cattle for Houſhold Proviſion. Hereupon *Orchanes* ask'd *Aladin*, what his opinion was about the diſpoſal of what his Father had left? To which the other making anſwer, That firſt it was moſt neceſſary to ſettle a King in his Father's room, for the Defence of the Kingdom, and that for other things they belong'd to *Orchanes* in right of Succeſſion; but that for himſelf, he laid no claim at all: this his Modeſty was mightily extoll'd by all the old Counſellors, and ſo *Orchanes* was peaceably ſet upon the Throne; who would have made *Aladin* the Preſident of his Council, which the other would by no means accept; and only deſiring the Lordſhip of *Fadore* in *Tekences* Country, he there led a private and peaceable Life. Orchanes *and* Aladin.

In the mean time, the Chriſtian Princes laying hold of the opportunity of *Othoman*'s Death, took *Nice*, with divers other Forts and Caſtles from the *Turks*; particularly the Caſtle of *Tzuprichiſar* upon the *Sangarius*, which ſtopped the *Turks* Paſſage that way into *Bithynia*. However, they did not long remain in the poſſeſſion thereof; for *Orchanes* by a cunning Stratagem quickly recover'd, it by ſending divers Soldiers in diſguiſe like Merchants into the Place, who ſeizing the Gates, ſlew the Gariſon, and ſo made the Place their own. He alſo diſtreſſed *Nice* very much for want of Proviſion, to the relief whereof came the young Emperor *Andronicus* with a numerous, but no well-diſciplin'd Army; and advancing as far as *Philocrene* in *Bithynia*, where he underſtood *Orchanes* had ſeized on the narrow Paſſes, he encamped there that night; but very *Chriſtians take* Nice.

ry early the next morning seeing divers Companies of the *Turks* descending from the Mountains, he drew out in order of Battel; and having spent all the Forenoon in a kind of light and tumultuary skirmishing, *Orchanes* then perceiving the Christians weary, came down with his whole Force, and a hideous Noise, between whom and the Emperor ensued a terrible Fight till the approach of Night; but the Christians at length gave way, many of them being slain and wounded, and the Emperor himself was wounded in the Foot with an Arrow. But the greater Misfortune was still to follow; for *Orchanes*, who had made proof of the Valour of the Christians, left 300 Horse to attend their motion that night, and himself with the rest of the Army went to intercept them in their march, if they advanc'd farther: But the Emperor that Evening going to *Philocrene* to have his Wound dresst, the whole Army fled for fear out of their Camp, and by endeavouring to throng into that Town, abundance of them were slain; and the three hundred *Turks* next morning had not only a brave, but unexpected Booty of their Camp, which 200 of them plunder'd, while the rest pursued and slew abundance of the Christians: which Misfortune so discourag'd the Emperor, that he returned to *Constantinople*, leaving the *Turks* to seize upon many maritime Towns along the Coast of *Bithynia*, to take the City of *Nice* by a Stratagem, the plundering whereof *Orchanes* gave to his Soldiers; and also by *Cunger Alpes* conquered the Country of *Mudrum* or *Madrin* in *Phrygia*, and *Bolli* in *Paphlagonia*; and by his old Commander *Accecozza* subdu'd *Candara*, and *Ermein*, a Country adjacent to Mount *Herminius*.

Surprized by the Turks.

It happened about this time, as the Governour of *Scamandria*, a Town not far from antient *Troy*, was engaged in the burying of his Son in the Country, that *Accecozza* lying in ambush, took the Commander and his Castle, and sent him prisoner before *Abydus*, and offer'd to set him at liberty, if they would surrender the Castle to him; but otherwise to kill him before their faces: But the Garison refusing, the Governour was at length ransomed, leaving *Accecozza* to be continually tormented with the Garison of *Abydus*. But a strange Accident at length happen'd, that brought it into the hands of the *Turks*, which was briefly

briefly thus: The Governour's fair Daughter happening one night to dream that she fell into a miry Ditch, from whence a fine young Gentleman help'd her out and cleaned her, it ran very much in her head; and the *Turks* in the mean time coming to lay siege to the Place, she from a high Turret happening to see among them one *Abdurachman*, her heart gave her presently he was the Man that helped her: and so watching an opportunity of his approach, she dropt down a Letter ty'd to a Stone before him, discovering her Passion, and promising to deliver up the Castle, if the *Turks* would raise the Siege, and *Abdurachman* himself, with a few in his company, would privately return to the Castle, and follow her Directions. *Accecozza* after mature Deliberation agrees to this, which made the Garison, seeing themselves now free, drink lustily for joy, while *Abdurachman* and his Men by the Lady's means being convey'd to the Castle, and directed to the Porter's Lodg, there slew him; and going directly to the Captain's Lodging, took him prisoner, who with his fair Daughter he presented to *Orchanes* then at *Neapolis*, who right glad of the News, bestow'd her and most of the Booty upon him, and they say his Posterity still remains among the *Turks*. Some time after this *Solyman* and *Amurath*, the Sons of *Orchanes*, being made Governours of the Countries and Provinces hereabouts, the first of them raised a great Army, with a Design to besiege *Nicomedia* then govern'd by a Lady that was kin to the Emperor *Andronicus*; who not thinking her self sufficiently provided to sustain a Siege, articled to surrender the Place, upon condition, that she and as many Citizens as would, might depart in safety with their Goods: and then *Solyman* takes the Government of the Place upon him, presently converted the Christian Churches to *Mahometan* Mosques, and the greatest of all into a College called after *Orchanes* his Name. About this time also the Sultan commanded his Soldiers to wear white Caps, which the Janizaries still use; neither did they use to cut or shave their Beards in those days, but have learnt it since of the *Italians*.

Abydus *betray'd to the* Turks.

Nicomedia *deliver'd to the* Turks.

Things being in this posture with the *Ottomans*, *Orchanes* removes his Court to *Nice*, where among other things he erected two fair Abbeys, in one of which he served

ſerved Strangers and the Poor with his own hands the firſt Dinner, and was the firſt Founder of theſe kind of Laws among the *Turks*: But not unmindful in the mean time of War and Conqueſt, whilſt his Son *Solyman*, who was an excellent Prince both in Peace and War, took ſeveral Towns in the Neighbourhood of *Nicomedia*; *Orchanes* himſelf invaded the Country of *Caraſina*, at the requeſt of *Turſon-Beg*, the Son of *Dharſis* King of that Country: in which Expedition, chiefly intended by him againſt his elder Brother, *Turſon* was ſlain; and the Brother being taken Priſoner, *Orchanes* poſſeſt himſelf of the whole Country, of which he made his Son *Solyman* Prince; and this was a mighty Augmentation to the *Ottoman* Kingdom.

Orchanes *invades and poſſeſſes himſelf of* Caraſina.

But not ſatiated with his Conqueſts in *Aſia*, he frequently caſt an amorous Eye upon the delightful Soil of *Europe*, from which he was now ſeparated only by the narrow *Helleſpont*: and one day communicating his Deſires to his Son *Solyman*, he undertook to attempt ſome part of it; and ſo going on a time to the Sea-ſide, where for a time he ſtood muſing, as if he had ſome vaſt Deſign in project, *Ezes-Beg*, one of his Commanders, interrupting him, ſaid, *My Lord, what ſtrange thing is it that thus overwhelms your Thoughts?* To which he made anſwer, *Truly I was thinking how it were poſſible for me to paſs over the* Helleſpont *into* Europe, *to view the Country, and ſo return undiſcover'd. If that be all*, ſaid *Ezes* and *Fazil-Beg*, Men of great Valour, *we two will do it, God willing.* In order to which they ſhortly after made a little Bark or rather Raff, wherein by night they croſs'd the *Helleſpont* to *Europe*-ſide, near to a Caſtle called *Zemenic* or *Zembenic*, but in *Greek Coiridocuſtron* or *Hogs Caſtle*, not far from *Seſtus*; where taking a *Greek* Priſoner, whom they found to be a ſenſible Fellow, they brought him back with them to *Solyman*, who by kind uſage learn'd of him how the ſaid Caſtle might be ſurpriſed: in order to which, with 80 choſen Men, he paſſed over with his Guide, and coming directly before the Caſtle, by the means of a great high Dunghil adjoining, he eaſily got into the Caſtle, and maſter'd the Gariſon, being moſt of them then out at Harveſt-work in the Country. Incourag'd with this Succeſs, he brought more Men quickly

Turks *ſettle in* Europe.

quickly over, and diſpatch'd *Ezes-Beg* along the Coaſt to burn all the Shipping of the Chriſtians he could meet, leſt they ſhould therewith interrupt his Paſſage over the Strait; ſo that in a few days he had tranſported 2000 good Soldiers into *Europe*, whom he kept under good Diſcipline, and allowed by no means to injure the Chriſtians, who began to be well pleaſed with the *Turks* Company.

This was the firſt real footing of the *Turks* in *Europe*, which did not end here; for *Solyman*, to aſſure one Conqueſt by another, quickly maſter'd the Caſtle of *Maito*, or *Maditus*, both which he ſtrongly gariſoned. After which the *Turks* came over in great numbers to dwell in the *Cherſoneſus*, in whoſe room *Solyman* ſent ſeveral Chriſtians among the *Turks* into *Aſia*; but ſo ſtrangely ſtupid and ſupine were the *Greeks*, that inſtead of applying a timely Remedy againſt this incroaching Evil, they fooliſhly extenuated their Loſs, ſaying it was but a Hogſty: Whereas *Solyman* on the other hand, to purſue his good Fortune, had an eye upon *Callipolis* a pleaſant City, diſtant about 22 Miles from *Zembenic*; which the Governour being aware of, he drew ſome Force together to oppoſe him, but being overthrown by the *Turks*, the City of *Callipolis* with its Caſtle proved the Reward of the Victory, which they ſoon after took by force in the year 1358. But this ſo little affected the fooliſh *Greeks*, that they jeſtingly ſaid, The *Turks* had taken but a Pottle of Wine from them: yet this jeſting ſhall coſt them dear, as you'll find in the Series of this Hiſtory. *Progreſs there.* 1358.

Now *Solyman* having made this proſperous Entrance into *Europe*, acquainted his Father with all that happened, and deſir'd a farther Reinforcement. *Orchanes* mightily pleas'd with the News, ſent all the *Saracens* who were lately come into the Country of *Caraſina*, over into *Europe*; who ſettled themſelves about *Callipolis*, and did the *Turks* great Service in their Wars there: during which, *Calo Johannes*, Governour of a ſmall Caſtle called *Cangere*, not far from *Callipolis*, being continually infeſted with the *Turks* under *Ezes-Beg*, he laid hold of all Advantages to ſurprize them, and at times ſlew divers of them; which troubled *Solyman* very much, who underſtanding by his Spies, that the Governour was gone out upon ſome Expedi-

tion,

tion, he preſently inveſted the Place ſo on all ſides, that the Governour could by no means return but he muſt fall into his hands; which he did accordingly, by whom his Men were ſlain, and himſelf brought Priſoner before the Caſtle, had his Head chopt off; which made the Caſtle preſently ſurrender, and for the future proved a great Annoyance to the Chriſtians. And thus in fine, *Solyman* in the ſpace of one year, from ſo inconſiderable a Beginning, poſſeſt himſelf of divers Towns and Caſtles, with the adjacent Countries in *Europe:* Tho this Warlike *Turk* did not long live to purſue and enjoy it, for he was ſo bruiſed with a Fall off his Horſe, as he was hawking in the Fields of *Bolayre* on *Europe*-ſide, that he died ſoon after. Neither did his Father *Orchanes*, who was then ſick, long ſurvive the ſorrowful News, but died within two Months after at the Age of fourſcore, when he had reigned 31 years, *An. Dom.* 1359. And this is atteſted by *Leunclavius* out of the Chronicles of the *Turks*, whoſe Authority is beſt in this caſe, againſt thoſe who would have him to be ſlain in a Battel againſt the *Tartars*. *Orchanes* was a wiſe, courteous and bountiful Prince, more ingenious than his Father in deviſing Engines of War; he built ſeveral Places for Religious Worſhip, was very exact in the Adminiſtration of Juſtice, and to his great Conqueſts in *Aſia*, was the firſt Prince of this Race that ſet faſt footing in *Europe*, tho ſome attribute it to his Son *Amurath*. He was a mortal Enemy to the Chriſtians, and died ſo.

Orchanes *his Death and Character.*

1359.

Chriſtian

				A.D.	R.
Christian Princes, Co-temporaries with *Orchanes*.	Emperors	Of the East.	*Andronicus Paleologus* the younger.	1325.	29.
			John Paleologus.	1354.	3.
		Of the West.	*Lewis* IV. of *Bavaria.*	1314.	32.
			Charles IV. Son to *John* King of *Bohemia*	1346.	10.
	Kings	Of *England.*	*Edward* III.	1327.	50.
		Of *France.*	*Philip* of *Valois*	1328.	22.
			John Valois	1350.	14.
		Of *Scotland.*	*Robert Bruce*	1306.	24.
			David Bruce	1341.	
	Bishops of *Rome.*		*John* XXII.	1317.	18.
			Benedict XII.	1335.	7.
			Clement VI.	1342.	13.
			Innocent VI.	1354.	10.

CHAP. III.

The Life of Amurath *the First, King of the* Turks.

Amurath *succeeds* Orchanes, *and his Actions.*

Amurath the younger Son of *Orchanes* succeeded his Father in the Kingdom, who in the beginning of his Reign having drawn a great Army together at *Prusa*, with a Design to invade the Christians in *Thrace*, he was diverted by a Confederacy of *Mahometan* Princes in *Asia* against him, whom in a year's time he brought to reason: and then pursuing his Expedition, with his Tutor *Lala Schahin*, who was a wise Man, and whose Counsel he followed in all his weighty Affairs, he took the Castles of *Beuntum*, *Tzurulus*, and many other Places in *Romania* or *Rumilia*, as the *Turks* now call it, as his Generals did some Forts on the *Hebrus* or *Meritza*; and after the defeating of the Governour of *Didymotiches*, took the Place, as *Lala Schahin*, *Amurath*'s Tutor, defeated the Christians near *Adrianople*; who thereupon, for fear of abiding *Amurath*'s coming, fled secretly out of the City by night to *Ænus*, and so the Place fell into the *Turkish* hands, *Anno* 1362. But the taking of *Didymotiches* and *Adrianople* is otherwise related by some *Turkish* Authors, and seems to be more particular and agreeable to Truth: For they say that *Amurath* in the beginning of his Reign having made peace with the Christians of *Thrace*, the Governour of *Didymotiches* designing to add considerably to the Fortifications of the Place, entertain'd all Masons and others fit for his purpose to carry on the work; which *Amurath* understanding, he privately sent 200 lusty Workmen out of *Asia* to offer their Service to the Governour, who was dissuaded by some of the wiser Citizens from entertaining them, but to no purpose, tho he took care in the night to lodg them without the City Walls. Which being understood by *Amurath*, he sent the valiant Commander *Chasis Ilbeg* with thirty good Soldiers disguis'd like Labourers to go and seek work at *Didymotiches*, and to endeavour to surprize the

Didymotiches *surpriz'd by the* Turks. 1362.

the City; where being entertain'd, they appear'd very diligent at their work, and from whence (being lodg'd without as the other *Turks* were) *Chasis* by night secretly went and told *Amurath* he might surprize one of the Gates of the City, and take it, if so be he suddenly placed a sufficient number of *Turks* in Ambush near it, to join with him and the other Labourers, as occasion served. To this *Amurath* agreeing, *Chasis* went back, and breaking the Matter open to the *Turkish* Workmen, instructed them what to do; in pursuance to which, next day at dinner-time the *Turks* and Labourers quarrell'd amongst themselves, and shammingly running to one of the City Gates, some of them took up the Warders Arms, as if they had been to defend themselves against their Fellows; but instead of that turning upon the Warders, who were but few, they quickly slew them, and so opening the Gate let in the *Turks*, who put the chiefest of the Citizens to the Sword, but spared the meaner sort. *Rhadestum* also was surprized by *Amurath*'s order in the time of peace; and when Complaint was made, and Reparation required, he laid the fault upon others, but utterly refused to restore the Places; saying, It was against the Law of his Prophet: and this occasion'd new Wars between them, which were managed with various Fortunes, and ended in a treacherous Peace.

For *Amurath* being very desirous to become master of *Adrianople*, contrived to make *Chasis Ilbeg*, under pretence of hard usage from this Tyrant his Master, fly to *Adrianople*; and having in his company some other dissembling Fugitives, he frequently sally'd out with them, and skirmished so with the *Turks*, that it pleased the Governour, with whom he grew into great favour; and being joined by many other *Turks*, under pretence of Discontent, he then privately writ to *Amurath* that he would deliver *Adrianople* to him at such a time, if he would be ready to send him present Succours: Which being agreed on, *Chasis* by break of day went to one of the Gates of the City with ten of his Followers, making as if he was going abroad to hunt according to his usual manner; but the Gate was no sooner opened than that he with his Followers furiously fell upon and slew the Warders, and possessed themselves of the Gate, till a greater Force from without

Adrianople *taken by the* Turks.

out came to their aſſiſtance, who entring the City, after a cruel fight for all that day, took the place, which they have held to this day. *Amurath* made it his Royal Reſidence, from whence he quickly ſent *Lala Schahin* to invade the Country about *Philippopolis*; which he, together with that of *Zagora*, and the Territory of *Ipſale*, ſoon reduc'd under the Sultan's power.

About this time *Amurath* by the advice of *Cara-Ruſtenes*, a Doctor of the *Mahometan* Law, and *Zinderlu Chelil* then Chief Juſtice, ordered that every fifth Captive of the Chriſtians, being about fifteen years old, ſhould be for the uſe of the Sultan; and if the number were under five, then he was to be paid 25 Aſpers for every Head: whereby great numbers of Chriſtian Youths were brought to Court, who were diſtributed amongſt the *Turkiſh* Husbandmen in *Aſia*, there to learn their Language, Religion and Manners; and where after they had been brought up at hard Labour for two or three years, they were ſent for to Court, and the better ſort ordered to attend the Prince's Perſon, and ſerve him in his Wars, and ſo came to be called *Janizaries*, i. e. new Soldiers: They were mightily increaſed afterwards under *Amurath* the ſecond. But of them more hereafter.

Amurath having gone and ſpent ſome time in *Aſia*, after the taking of *Adrianople*, and hearing there the Chriſtians of *Servia* and *Bulgaria* had brought a great Army together in order to beſiege it, he directed his March thither, took *Boga*, which was ſoon after recovered and raſed by the Chriſtians, tho re-edified about the year 1365. by the *Turks* again; but his Generals in the mean time underſtanding there was a Mutiny in the Chriſtian Army, they took the advantage of it, and falling upon them, made ſuch a ſlaughter amongſt them, that the Place where they fell, not far from *Jermia*, is called *Zirf-Zindugi*, i. e. the *Servians* Overthrow, to this day. They ſent the fifth part of the Spoil, and ſeveral of the Chriſtians Heads to *Amurath* in *Aſia*, who was ready with a great Army to come over to *Callipolis*, but now for the preſent returned to *Pruſa*, being in the year 1366. when he circumciſed with great Triumph his two Sons *Bajazet* and *Jacup*, built divers Moſques and Monaſteries, and was courted into Alliance with *Germean Ogli* a great *Ma-*

1365.

1366.

hometan

hometan Prince in *Aſia*, by taking his Daughter *Halun* for a Wife to his Son *Bajazet*; with which he had for a Portion divers Cities and Territories, and amongſt others the City of *Cataie*, where the *Turkiſh* Emperor's Vice-Roy reſides at this day. The Marriage was celebrated with the Preſence of moſt of the Nobility, and divers foreign Embaſſadors, who all made large Preſents to the Sultan; but all of them came ſhort of the Lord *Eurenoſes*, who preſented *Amurath* with a hundred goodly Boys and as many Girls, and a hundred beautiful Maidens, all Chriſtians, with many Gold and Silver Veſſels, and precious Stones; all which the Emperor beſtow'd upon the foreign Miniſters. Bajazet's *Marriage.*

At this Marriage, *Chuſen-Beg* Prince of *Amiſum* in *Galatia*, by his Ambaſſador ſold his Territory to *Amurath*; and then the Sultan leaving the Government of his Dominions in *Aſia* to his Son *Bajazet*, and *Temurtaſes* a valiant and experienced Commander, march'd with a great Power into *Europe*, took *Magalgara* and *Phrere*. Then marching into *Servia*, he laid ſiege to *Niſſa*, the *Deſpot*'s Capital City, which quickly fell into his hands; upon which he granted Peace to the *Deſpot*, and leaving his Country, with much difficulty took the great City of *Apollonia* near Mount *Athos*: then departing for *Adrianople*, left *Eurenoſes* on the *Marches*, who took in *Berrhea*, and divers other places; while *Lala-Schahin* won *Zichne* and *Seres* on the Confines of *Macedonia*, and made this laſt the place of his Reſidence. In the mean while *Amurath* being inform'd that *Aladin* his Son-in-law invaded his Territories in *Aſia* with Fire and Sword, he acquainted his Council and Nobility therewith; and having ſet his Affairs in order in *Europe*, he paſſed over into *Aſia*, and in the Spring of the Year 1387. levy'd a great Army againſt *Aladin* the King of *Caramania*, and his Confederates; who preſuming upon his ſtrength, ſent to *Amurath* an Embaſſador to acquaint him, that he was not inferiour to him in Power, but yet was willing to make peace upon honourable terms. But *Amurath* told him, his Maſter was a perjured Prince, on whom he would take ſharp Revenge for the Outrages done, and therefore muſt expect nothing but War from him, and ſo deſir'd he might be ready to meet him. Hereupon *Aladin*, notwithſtanding the Aſſurance given him by his Amurath's *Conqueſts in* Europe. 1387. *In* Caramania.

Confederates, yet apprehenſive of the great danger that might enſue from that War, ſent another Embaſſy to *Amurath* with reaſonable Conditions of Peace: to which the Sultan anſwer'd, *That if* Aladin *had done that a month ſooner, perhaps it might have been accepted, but now he muſt take his chance of the War*; *and whereas* (continued he) *he has contemptuouſly call'd me Herdſman, if he be not ſuch an one, let him meet me in the field, and try his Valour with me.* But the Embaſſador anſwering, *That his Maſter made not that Offer out of any fear or diſtruſt of his Power, and no doubt but he would find it ſo:* the Sultan was ſo nettled, that he bid him in a great paſſion be gone, and tell his Maſter, *If he were ſuch a ſtout Man as he pretended, he ſhould ſhew himſelf ſo in the field, where he doubted not but to chaſtiſe him according to his deſerts.* Now the Embaſſador upon his return told *Aladin* every thing that paſſed between him and the Sultan; and upon his asking him what Force he might have, and the other's replying, About 70000; he did not a little rejoice, ſaying, *Surely when* Amurath *ſhall ſee our Army, he will not dare to give us battel.* In the mean time *Amurath* kept on his March (in which he ſhew'd his Bounty to the People) till he came to the great Plains of *Caramania*, named the *French* Plains, becauſe the Chriſtians, call'd moſtly *Francs* by the *Turks*, encamp'd great Armies there formerly, as they went to recover *Jeruſalem*; and *Aladin* was within one day's march of him, where they reſted that night: but next morning having diſpoſed of all things for Battel, both Armies drew out, and with a prodigious noiſe of Trumpets, Drums, claſhing of Armour, *&c.* fell on with incredible Fury, till at length *Bajazet* the Sultan's eldeſt Son, who commanded the left Wing, brake in upon the Enemies Battel with that violence, that for ever after he was ſirnamed *Gilderun*, or the Lightning; and being follow'd by others, there enſued a moſt terrible and doubtful Fight with the loſs of many thouſands. At length the Confederates being not able any longer to ſuſtain *Bajazet*'s Charges, began to flag, and *Aladin* thought it beſt now to haſten to *Iconium* his ſtrong City, where he was ſoon beſieg'd by *Amurath*, who forbad his Soldiers to do the Country any harm upon pain of Death; which the *Servians* under his Command tranſgreſſing,

occa-

occaſion'd that War which was fatal to *Bajazet* and their own Prince, of which by and by. Now *Aladin* finding himſelf in danger on every ſide, had no way left, but to importune his Wife, *Amurath*'s Daughter, to go to her Father to intercede for him; which ſhe did ſo effectually, that he pardon'd him for her ſake, reſtor'd him to his Dominions, and made him many Preſents beſides, which he was not worthy of. However, this Victory brought *Amurath* this advantage, that the *Mahometan* Princes of the *Selzuccian* Family in *Aſia*, were forced to make their ſubmiſſion to him; and the Sultan in his return having taken *Deſpotolis*, broke up his Camp at *Catäie*, and thence returned to *Pruſa* in triumph.

But here to purſue what was hinted before concerning the *Servians* Puniſhment, and its Event; thoſe of them who return'd home from *Caramania*, repreſented very much the Cruelty and Injuſtice of *Amurath* towards them to the *Deſpot*, particularly their General or *Vayvod*, who told him how diſhonourable it had been for him to make ſuch a Peace with that miſcreant *Turk* as he had, and urged him with all the Arguments he could to break with *Amurath*: which prevailed ſo far upon *Lazarus* the *Deſpot*, that he ſecretly ſent an Embaſſador with Inſtructions to the King of *Boſnia* for Aid; who firſt chid him for his making a League ſo raſhly with that *Turkiſh* Tyrant, and then having appointed a place of Interview, they concluded their Articles of Confederacy. While this was in agitation, the Commander of the Caſtle of *Alexandria* in *Boſnia*, who was a Chriſtian, yet tributary to the *Turk*, pretending under colour of Friendſhip to give *Amurath* a full account of the ſtate of *Boſnia*, and to excite him all he could to invade it; the Sultan order'd his Tutor *Lala-Schahin* to join the Commander aforeſaid, and enter into *Boſnia* with an Army of 20000 Men: which he did accordingly, and with ſeeming good ſucceſs, till finding little oppoſition, he divided his Army into ſeveral Bodies to ravage all the Country; while the King of *Boſnia*, being advertiſed of all by the Captain, laid divers Ambuſhes for the *Turks*, who loſt not only all their Booty, but moſt of them their Lives, ſcarce five thouſand of them eſcaping.

Turks *ſlain in* Boſnia.

Amurath (who in the mean time had married the Emperor of *Conſtantinople*'s Daughter at *Neapolis*) hear-

Amurath *married to the Emperor of* Conſtantinople's *Daughter.*

ing of his Loſs in *Boſnia*, and the Revolt of the *Deſpot* of *Servia*, ſent *Alis* Baſſa into all parts of his Dominions to raiſe an Army; which was done with great expedition, and to whoſe aid came divers *Mahometan* Princes: neither were the Chriſtian tributary Princes forgotten, of whom only two came, *viz.* *Caſtendil* and *Seratzil*; but *Salmenus* Prince of *Bulgaria*, and the Prince of *Varna* refus'd: which much troubled the Sultan, who ſent *Alis* Baſſa with 3000 Men to ſpoil *Bulgaria*, where he took many ſtrong Towns and Caſtles; while *Amurath* having ſettled all things in *Aſia*, came now the third time with an Army into *Europe*, and was joined at *Callipolis* with a great Reinforcement under his Son *Bajazet*; and being come to *Alcide*, *Alis* Baſſa, who was return'd out of *Bulgaria*, gave him there an account of all things that had happen'd. Now the Prince of *Bulgaria* finding his Country already in a great meaſure ruin'd, and like to be more ſo, he took a Winding-Sheet about his Neck, and proſtrating himſelf before *Amurath* at *Calcide*, craving pardon, he offer'd to deliver *Siliſtria* the Capital of his Country to him, which the other accepted: but when *Alis* Baſſa came to take poſſeſſion, *Salmenus* repenting what he had done, refuſed him admittance; which ſo incenſed *Amurath*, that he order'd the Baſſa to ravage the Country with Fire and Sword, which ſtruck ſuch a Terror into the People, that many places were voluntarily yielded to him: and ſo going on, he laid ſiege to *Nicopolis*, the ſtrongeſt City of *Bulgaria* upon the *Danube*, whither *Salmenus* was fled for fear; who finding himſelf unable to reſiſt, went with a Winding-Sheet about his Neck, and his Son along with him, and proſtrating himſelf before the Baſſa, craved pardon; who taking pity on him, eaſily granted it.

Conquers Bulgaria.

Expedition to Servia.

Amurath bending all his thoughts now upon the Conqueſt of *Servia*, the *Deſpot* was not ignorant of it; and therefore by the aſſiſtance of divers Chriſtian Princes having got together a vaſt Army, he ſent one *Demetrius* a moſt notable Captain, and Terror to the *Turks*, to beſiege the Caſtle of *Sarkive* lately taken by *Alis* Baſſa from the *Bulgarians*, and an Annoyance to the *Deſpot*'s Territories; but he thought fit to raſe it. But now the two great Armies being come near one another about the Plains of *Caſſova*, the Sultan, after having

having reſted that night, next morning put his Army into Battel-Array, placing his Son *Bajazet* with *Eurenoſes*, &c. in the right Wing, his youngeſt Son *Jacup*, with *Zarutze* Baſſa in the Left, and himſelf commanded the Main Body: while *Lazarus* on his part gave the charge of the Right Wing to *Vulcus* Prince of *Macedonia* his Son-in-law, of the Left to the King of *Boſnia*, and the Main Battel he commanded in perſon. The Armies on both ſides were vaſtly numerous, that of *Lazarus*, according to the *Turkiſh* Hiſtorians (I know not how truly) being computed to be 500000 Men, and the *Turks* about half the number. Now to begin this great Battel, *Amurath* had drawn a thouſand of his beſt Men, under the command of *Malcozzens*, out of his Right Wing, and the like from the Left under *Muſtapha*; which were placed on both ſides the Army, as he thought beſt. Now the Sultan being told by *Eurenoſes*, a Man of great Experience, that the Chriſtians were moſtly well arm'd, and ſhouldring cloſe, could hardly be penetrated; but if in joining the Battel he would a little retreat, the following Chriſtians would thereby loſe their cloſe ſtanding, and make way for the *Turks* to break them: hereupon the Sultan commanded the Archers to give the firſt Charge, which they did with great Reſolution, when the *Turkiſh* Army giving ground a little, and the ſame being perceived by the Chriſtians, they attack'd the *Turkiſh* Left Wing, and after a cruel Fight routed them. But *Bajazet* renew'd the Battel with ſuch fury, that the *Turks* began now to turn again upon their Enemies, and oblig'd the Chriſtians, who thought they had already got the Victory, to begin a great Battel, to the loſs of many thouſands on each ſide, and with ſuch a noiſe and dreadful confuſion, that the *Turkiſh* Hiſtorians, to expreſs the Terror of the Day, vainly ſay, the Angels of Heaven amazed at that hideous Noiſe, for that time forgot the heavenly Hymns wherewith they always glorify'd God. About Noon the *Turks* Fortune prevailing, the Chriſtians fled, and were purſued with great ſlaughter; in which Battel *Lazarus* fell himſelf, tho his Death be variouſly reported. And *Amurath* after his great Victory taking a view of the Slain, which lay piled in great heaps in the field, a Chriſtian Soldier much wounded and bloody, ſeeing him,

Defeats the Chriſtians in a great Battel.

him, roſe up in a ſtaggering manner, and making towards him, fell down divers times; but at length coming near the Sultan, as if he would have the honour to kiſs his Feet, he ſuddenly ſtabb'd him into the Belly with a Dagger, which he conceal'd under his Coat, of which Wound he died; and the Soldier, whoſe Name was *Miles Coblewitz*, and deſerves to be eterniz'd, was preſently after in *Bajazet*'s preſence cut in pieces. Whereupon the *Turkiſh* Cuſtom ever after has been, when any Embaſſador or Stranger comes to kiſs the Sultan's Hand, or to approach near his Perſon, as it were for Honour's ſake, to be led by the Arms into his preſence between two of the great Courtiers, who ſo entangle him, that they are ſure he can do no hurt.

Slain. 1390.

His Character.

This *Amurath* was more ſuperſtitious than any of his Predeceſſors, a Prince of great Courage, and fortunate; he greatly enlarg'd his Kingdom in *Aſia* by Sword, Marriage and Purchaſe. He made uſe of the Diſcord of the *Grecian* Princes to his own advantage, ſubdued a great part of *Thrace* and the adjacent Territories, won a great part of *Bulgaria*, entred *Servia*, *Boſnia*, and *Macedon*; was liberal, but withal ſevere, both beloved and feared by his Subjects, a Man of few Words, and a deep Diſſembler. He was ſlain at the Age of 68, after he had reign'd 39 years, in 1390. His Corps was royally bury'd at *Pruſa*, and upon his Tomb lies a Soldier's Cloak, with a little *Turkiſh* Tuliphant; and near the Tomb are three Lances, with as many Horſetails at the end of them. There is a Caſtle, with a Tomb, erected in remembrance of him, in the Plains of *Caſſova*, where he was ſlain.

				A.D.	R.
Christian Princes, Cotemporaries with *Amurath* I.	Emperors	Of the East.	*John Paleologus*	1354.	30.
			Andronicus Paleologus	1384.	3.
			Emanuel Paleologus	1387.	30.
		Of the West.	*Charles* IV.	1346.	32.
			Wenceslaus, Son to *Charles* King of *Bohemia*.	1378.	22.
	Kings	Of *England*.	*Edward* III.	1327.	50.
			Richard II.	1377.	23.
		Of *France*.	*John Valois*	1350.	14.
			Charles V.	1364.	16.
			Charles VI. sirnamed the Well-beloved	1381.	42.
		Of *Scotland*.	*David Bruce*	1341.	29.
			Robert Stewart	1370.	
	Popes of *Rome*.		*Innocent* VI.	1354.	10.
			Urban V.	1364.	8.
			Gregory II.	1372.	7.
			Urban VI.	1378.	11.

CHAP.

CHAP. IV.

The Life of Bajazet *the First, King of the* Turks.

Bajazet's *Wars and Successes in* Servia, *&c.*

BAjazet, call'd *Baiasit* by the *Turks*, succeeded his Father in his Dominions; after whose Death he immediately strangled his younger Brother *Jacup*, which became afterwards a political, but barbarous Custom among the *Turks*: and in the very first Year of his Reign besieg'd *Cratova* in *Servia*, to which the Silver Mines (not the least Cause of the War) belong'd; which was surrender'd to him by the Christians, on condition of Life, and liberty to depart where they pleased: but he barbarously broke his word with them, who were all slain by his Order. He also took *Uscupia*, with several other places thereabouts. Now the Complaints of the *Servians* induced *Sigismund* King of *Hungary* to send an Embassador to *Bajazet*, to desire him to desist from invading his Confederates; but without any good effect: for he over-ran most of the Country this year, and the next took the City of *Widin*, with many other Strong-holds in that Country, while *Eurenoses* his Lord-Lieutenant of the Marches in *Europe*, took *Sitros* in *Thessaly*; and *Ferises-Beg* passing the *Danube* (after the taking of *Widin*) grievously ravaged *Walachia*, from whence he return'd with a great Booty, as *Jegides* Bassa did the same in the Kingdom of *Bosnia*.

Philadelphia *besieged by, and surrendred to him.*

But to leave *Europe* for a moment, we are to observe that *Philadelphia* in *Lydia* being at this time the only City in the Lesser *Asia* yet held by the Christians in the midst of the *Mahometan* Princes, *Bajazet* resolv'd to lay siege to it; and thinking to win the Citizens to a Surrendry, by strictly commanding his Soldiers to meddle with nothing that belong'd to them, when he found his Expectations disappointed, he gave them the quite contrary Orders, and pushing on the Siege with great vigour, the Citizens, not willing to abide the utmost Extremity, gave it up. Now during this Siege *Aidin Ogli*, a *Mahometan* Prince of *Caria*,

Caria, ſubmitted himſelf to *Bajazet*, as his Vaſſal; ſoon after which the Sultan conquer'd the Country of *Saruchania*, and then took *Menteſia* or *Myndos* in *Caria*, whoſe Prince would not abide his coming. And whereas the young King of *Caramania* had invaded *Mahomet*'s Dominions in *Aſia*, while he was abſent in *Europe*, he took *Cæſarea* and other Places from him; who was now content to make a Peace with the Sultan without reparation for his loſs. Some time after hearing the *Vayvod* of *Walachia* ravaged the Territories belonging to him in *Servia* and *Bulgaria*, notwithſtanding he was moleſted in *Aſia* by the Prince of *Menteſia*, who but lately fled from his preſence, he paſſed with a great Army into *Europe*, entred and ravaged *Walachia* in a miſerable manner, and overthrew the *Vayvod* in the Field, who gladly ſued for and obtain'd a Peace of the Sultan, upon payment of an annual Tribute to him. Then he turn'd his Arms againſt *Theſſaly*, deſtroying the Country as far as *Theſſalonica*; in which Expedition he took *Theapolis* in *Greece*, and *Joannina* in *Ætolia*, and ſo returning to *Aſia*, winter'd there.

Bajazet in the beginning of the Spring being on his way to invade *Hungary*, and happening to take a Spy going from the *Greek* Emperor to *Hungary* with an account of the Sultan's March, he was eaſily hereupon perſuaded by *Termurtaſes* his Lieutenant in *Europe*, to lay ſiege to *Conſtantinople*; which he did ſoon after both by Sea and Land, and the ſame continued, according to moſt Hiſtories, for eight years. In the mean while the Emperor *Emanuel* ſolliciting the Chriſtian Princes for Relief, *Sigiſmund* King of *Hungary*, aſſiſted with a great Army of *French* and others, to the number of 130000, under the command of *John* Count of *Nevers*, fell into the *Turkiſh* Dominions, recover'd *Widin* and other places; then laid ſiege to *Nicopolis*, which coming to *Bajazet*'s ears, he quits the ſiege of *Conſtantinople*, and with a brave Army march'd to the relief of *Nicopolis*: upon whoſe approach, *Sigiſmund* leaving a ſufficient number of Troops to continue the Siege, he drew out the reſt to meet him. *Bajazet* advertiſed hereof, divided his Army into two parts, and made ſhew only of one half. Upon this the Chriſtians divided their Army alſo, with a deſign to hem in the *Turks*,

Conſtantinople *beſieg'd by* Bajazet.

Turks, than whom they ſaw they were more numerous, and ſo they join'd battel. The *French* deſiring to make the firſt Onſet, the Action was ſo deſperate, that many thouſands fell in a ſhort time; till *Bajazet* with the other half ſuddenly appearing, and falling on, greatly amazed the *French*, who ſeeing no remedy, yet ſtood ſtoutly to it, being ſtill in hopes to be reliev'd by the *Hungarians*; who ſeeing the *French* Horſe run back without their Riders (who now fought on foot) and thinking them quite overthrown, fled in great confuſion, and the *Turks* made a terrible ſlaughter, beſides taking as many Priſoners (it was thought) as they were themſelves in number. *Sigiſmund* (like another *Xerxes*) had the good luck to get over the *Danube* in a little Boat, and after 18 months wandring up and down, to his own Country. The Count of *Nevers* was taken priſoner with 300 Officers, derided by *Bajazet*, and all of them put to death before his face, except five, whom the Sultan gave him leave to pick out from amongſt them; and being ſent priſoners to *Pruſa*, they were afterward ranſomed for 20000 Ducats.

Battel of Nicopolis.

1396. This Battel was fought in the Year 1396, wherein there were 20000 Chriſtians ſlain, and 60000 *Turks*.

Hereupon *Bajazet* beſieges *Conſtantinople* anew for two years, which is ſuppoſed to make up the eight; but being ſued to by *Emanuel* for a Peace, and hearing that *Tamerlane* the *Tartar* deſign'd to invade his Territories, he agreed to it, upon condition there ſhould be a Street aſſign'd the *Turks* to dwell in in *Conſtantinople*, with a free Exerciſe of their Religion and Laws; and further, that the Emperor ſhould pay the Sultan an annual Tribute of 10000 Ducats: but this did not hold long.

Bajazet having about this time married *Deſpina*, Daughter to *Lazarus* late Deſpot of *Servia*, and Siſter to *Stephen* then reigning, and enlarged the Boundaries of his Dominions very much, as before noted; yet Corruptions crept in, and ſome of his Judges having perverted Juſtice, and taken Bribes, he was ſo enraged againſt them, that no body durſt intercede for their Pardon: but his *Ethiopian* Jeſter being promiſed a good Reward, if he could find a way to appeaſe the Sultan's Diſpleaſure, he came one day in very rich Attire into his preſence, and counterfeited much Gravity; which the Sultan admiring, asked him the reaſon. The

Jeſter,

Jeſter anſwered, he had a requeſt to him. *What is it*, ſaid the Sultan? *Why*, reply'd he, *I would fain go Embaſſador to the Emperor of* Conſtantinople. *What to do*, ſaid *Bajazet*? *To beg of the Emperor* (anſwered the Jeſter) 40 *or* 50 *of his old Monks and Fryars, to bring them along with me hither to Court. And what then*, ſaid *Bajazet*? *I would put them*, ſaid the other, *in the room of the old doting Judges I hear you are about to put to death. Why*, cry'd the Sultan, *I can put others of my own People in their places. True*, ſaid the Jeſter, *they may ſerve for grave Looks well enough, and ſo would the old Monks; but they are not ſo learned in the Law as thoſe under your diſpleaſure. If they be learned*, ſaid the Sultan, *why do they, what is contrary to their Learning, pervert Juſtice, and take Bribes? There is a reaſon for that too*, ſaid the Jeſter. *What reaſon*, quoth the Emperor? The Jeſter pointing to *Alis* Baſſa, anſwered, *He that ſtands there can tell that better than I.* Hereupon the Baſſa being commanded to ſpeak, he ſaid, the Judges had not ſufficient Salaries allow'd, which enforced them to do what they did. And this made the Sultan not only pardon them, but remedy that defect for the future by better Allowances. The Sultan alſo not long after being enraged with ſome of his military Officers, whom he deſign'd to execute, and who were brought into his preſence, the Jeſter ſteps out, and deſired him to ſhew them no favour, calling them Villains, Traitors, and what not; inſomuch that the Sultan thinking he had ſome great Crime to lay to their charge, asked him why he exclaimed ſo? *Why*, ſaid he, *becauſe the Rogues are good for nothing, and they ſay* Tamerlane *with a great Army is coming againſt us. If you'll but take a Colours in your hand, and I go with a Drum before you, we ſhall make ſuch a terrible March, and dreadful Shew, as to have no need of theſe Fellows and their Soldiers in the Field to get the Victory over our Enemies.* The Emperor hereupon conſidering the drift of the words, thought fit to pardon them, when they leaſt expected it.

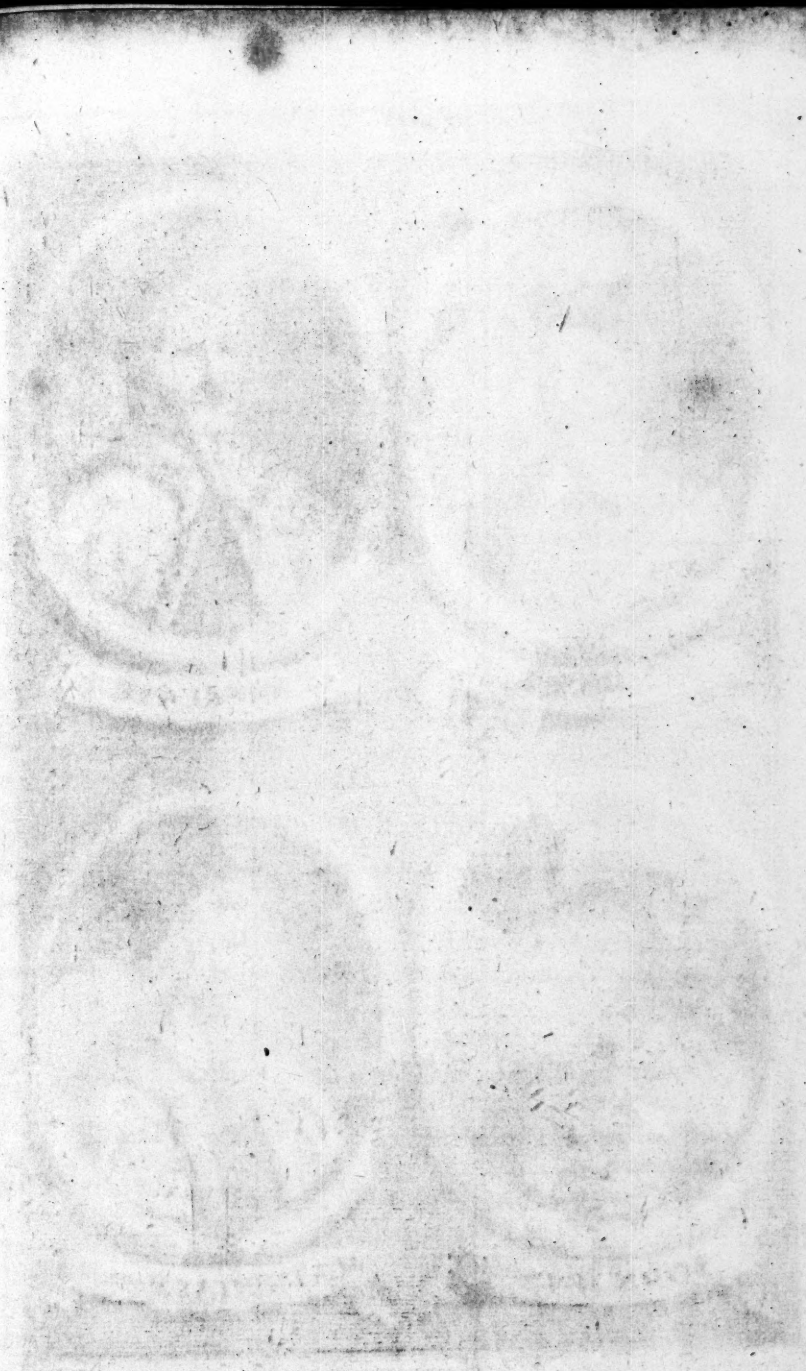
But to return to the Sultan's Wars again: The Vayvod of *Walachia* having given aid to King *Sigiſmund* in the late War, *Bajazet* marches into his Country; while *Termurtaſes*, who was his Lieutenant at *Amyra* in *Aſia*, in his abſence was ſurprized by *Aladin* the Sultan's

tan's Nephew, the young King of *Caramania*, and laid in Bonds by him; but hearing of *Bajazet*'s return to *Pruſa*, and fearing his Reſentment, he not only courteouſly ſet him at liberty, but ſent an Embaſſador alſo to the Sultan to beg his pardon: but he refuſing him audience, falls into his Nephew's Country with a great Army, fights and takes him and his two Sons priſoners; and delivering *Aladin* to *Termurtaſes*, his Enemy, to do what he pleaſed with him, he cauſed him to be hang'd: for which the Sultan ſeem'd very ſorry; but purſuing his Victory, takes *Iconium*, and all *Aladin*'s Kingdom. About which time *Amaſia*, the Capital City of *Cappadocia*, was by its Prince, who was too weak to defend it againſt the Prince of *Sebaſtia*, deliver'd up to *Bajazet*, who forthwith directed his March toward *Sebaſtia*, and had the Place ſurrender'd to him; with which great Conqueſts he returned victorious to *Pruſa*, where he wintred: during which he built a magnificent *Mahometan* Temple there, and what with his Abſtemiouſneſs and Conqueſts, he very much engaged his People's Affections to him, and made all the Kings and Princes round him ſtand in awe of him.

Amaſia ſurrendred to Bajazet.

Alſo Sebaſtia.

It happened about this time, that *Achmetes* King of *Bagdat*, with *Joſeph Niger* King of *Colchis*, being diſpoſſeſs'd of their Countries by *Tamerlane* and his *Tartars*, fled to *Bajazet*'s Court; the firſt of whom ſoon after by *Bajazet*'s aid recover'd *Eiracum*, part of his Inheritance. The other accompany'd *Bajazet* againſt the Sultan of *Egypt*, againſt whom he prevailed much; while on the other ſide divers miſerable and diſcontented Princes, oppreſs'd by the *Turkiſh* Sultan, happen'd to meet together in *Tamerlane*'s Court at *Samarchand*, where every one, in as pathetick Terms as he could, ſet forth his Grievance to that mighty Prince, and excited him all they could to revenge their Wrongs: but *Tamerlane*, tho he delighted in nothing more than relieving the Diſtreſſed, and chaſtizing the Proud, would do nothing againſt *Bajazet*, till he had firſt ſent an Embaſſy to him upon the Complaints made. But *Bajazet* diſdaining the Preſents ſent him, uſing the Embaſſador contemptuouſly, and reviling *Tamerlane* himſelf, with calling him the Husband of a Whore, if he met him not in the Field, and the like oppro-




SCANDERBEG.
TAMERLANE.
IOHN Hunniades.
MATTHIAS Hunniades.

opprobrious Language; this was ſo ill reſented by *Tamerlane*, and ſo aggravated to him by *Axalla* his chief Counſellor, and a Chriſtian of the *Genoeſe* Race, born at *Capha*, who uſed ſo many Arguments to excite him to a War againſt *Bajazet*, that he at length reſolv'd upon it.

But before we go any farther, it will not be amiſs to give ſome ſhort account of this *Tamerlane* and his Family, who was commonly in the Eaſt called, *The Wrath of God, and Terror of the World.* Many Hiſtorians make him to have been no more than a Shepherd in his Youth; a thing very incredible, tho it were ever ſo well atteſted: but the truth is, he was born at *Samarchand*, the chief City of the *Zagatian Tartars*, upon the *Japartes*, being the Son of *Zain Cham*, or, as others will, *Og* Prince of thoſe People, and of the Country of *Sachethi*, ſometime a part of *Parthia*, third in deſcent from the famous *Zingis*. Now his Father *Og* being a Prince of a peaceable Diſpoſition, and well ſtricken in years, deliver'd up to him the Government of his Kingdom at the Age of fifteen; aſſigning *Odmar* and *Ali*, two of his moſt faithful Counſellors, to aſſiſt him therein. His firſt Eſſay in War, and proof of his Valour was againſt the Emperor of *Muſcovy*, whom he overthrew in a great Battel; by which and his other Actions he grew ſo famous, that his Father's Brother, the Great Cham of *Tartary*, being now grown old, and having but an only Daughter, gave her in marriage to *Tamerlane*, and withal proclaim'd him Heir apparent to his Empire: during whoſe Life-time he beat down the *Chineſes* Wall, overthrew their Army with a mighty ſlaughter, and took their King priſoner, whom he afterwards ſet at liberty, and aſſign'd him half his Dominions. Tamerlane's Deſcent.

Thus far briefly concerning *Tamerlane* before he engaged in the War againſt *Bajazet*, which we are now returning to. But not to enter upon large Digreſſions how he aſſembled his Army, and from whence; it's ſufficient to ſay, that being reſolved by *Axalla*'s Advice and others to invade the *Ottoman* Kingdom by the way of *Georgia* and *Trepezond*, he advanced at length as far as *Bachichich*, where he ſtaid eight days to refreſh his Army; and making a general Muſter of them, he found there of all Nations, according to moſt Au-

thors, 400000 Horſe and 600000 Foot; or according to others, 300000 Horſe and 500000 Foot; to whom he gave there a general Pay, and as his manner was, made a Speech to them, informing them what orders they were to keep, that ſo they might obſerve the ſame. And here *Axalla*, whom he had not ſeen for eight days, as leading the Van of the Army, came to him with the News that *Bajazet* had raiſed his Siege of *Conſtantinople* to come and defend his new Conqueſts in *Aſia*, and was certainly reſolved to come to a battel with him: hereupon he rejoiced inwardly, and in his march onwards received all the Cities that ſubmitted to him, very favourably; while thoſe that ſtood out were treated with utmoſt ſeverity, eſpecially the great and ſtrong City of *Sebaſtia*, who cutting off ſome of the Forlorn of his Army, and then in contempt of him ſetting her Gates wide open, he ſent out ſome *Tartarian* Horſe thither, with ſtrict orders for them either to take the place by the time he came, or that he ſhould find the Gates ſhut up againſt him. The *Turks* in Gariſon ſeeing the ſaid Horſe, ſallied out confidently againſt them; but were ſo roughly handled, that they retreated with ſuch precipitation, as to ſhut their Gates againſt thoſe in the Rear, who were there ſlain. Shortly after came *Tamerlane* with the whole Army, and having inveſted the City for ſeven days without any ſhew of Violence (the Gariſon thinking he deſign'd to diſtreſs it with a long ſiege) on the eighth the Walls and Towers, in many places undermined, ſuddenly fell down; which ſo frightned the *Turks*, that they preſently ſurrender'd, in hopes to have their Lives: but the *Turks* report, all the People of the City were buried alive in deep Pits made for that purpoſe, and the City utterly raſed to the ground, only the Governour was ſaved, and ſent to tell his Maſter *Bajazet* the News; who asking him which of the two Armies he thought biggeſt or ſtrongeſt (for *Bajazet* had now 300000 Men with him, or, as others ſay, 300000 Horſe and 200000 Foot) and the Governour anſwering, he believed that of *Tamerlane* was the greater, ſeeing he was Commander of larger Territories; *Bajazet* very angrily reply'd, *Certainly the ſight of the* Tartar *has ſo frightned this Coward, that he thinks every Enemy two.* But the *Latin* Hiſtorians ſay *Tamerlane* put all in

in *Sebaſtia* to the ſword, and amongſt others *Erthrogrulan*, or *Orthobules*, *Bajazet*'s eldeſt Son, periſh'd; which made *Bajazet*, as he march'd and heard a Shepherd merrily tuning his Pipe as he kept his Flock, ſighingly ſay, *O happy Shepherd, that hadſt neither* Orthobules *nor* Sebaſtia *to loſe!* Tho the *Turks* themſelves ſay that *Orthobules* himſelf was loſt ſix years after in the War againſt *Caſi Burchaniden*. The reſt of the Cities, forewarn'd by the Fate of *Sebaſtia*, ſurrender'd to *Tamerlane* as he march'd along; whom he uſed very kindly, eſpecially the Chriſtians, whom he ſet at liberty in reſpect to *Emanuel* the *Greek* Emperor: but he had not march'd far in the *Turkiſh* Dominion, when he was advertiſed that *Bajazet* with a great Army was advancing towards him; which information was given him by *Cheruſon* Prince of *Ciarcan*, whom *Axalla*, who commanded the Van, had ſent out on purpoſe for Intelligence; who having ſurprized *Sennas*, came there to learn the true ſtate of the *Turkiſh* Army, then at *Tataia*. *Tamerlane* hereupon ſent for *Axalla* to conſult with him about the place where he deſigned to fight; who not miſliking it, adviſed him alſo to keep *Sennas* as long as he could, but to order it to be ſet on fire upon the near approach of the Enemy; who, as they march'd ſtill on, thinking to ſurprize the *Tartars* therein, were wholly diſappointed. Now the Prince of *Ciarcan* dividing his Forces into two parts, commanded the firſt, as ſoon as ever they perceived the Enemy purſue a hundred Horſe of his that fled from before them diſorderly on purpoſe, that they ſhould receive them, and ſo retire all together; while he in the mean time ſtood cloſe in a Valley under the Covert of a Wood, with the reſt of the Troops; where having ſuffer'd 2000 of the Enemy's Vanguard of Horſe to go by him, he fell upon their Rear, while the others that retreated before, turn'd back upon the *Turks*: ſo that being hemmed in between both, they almoſt all ſold their Lives as dear as they could, and the Priſoners were made a Preſent to *Tamerlane*; amongſt whom was the Baſſa of *Natolia* who commanded the Troops, of whom *Tamerlane* asking what made *Bajazet* his Maſter to contemn him and his Army ſo much? he anſwer'd, *That his Lord was the Sun upon Earth, who could endure no Equal*; *and he was the*

Sebaſtia and other places ſurrender'd to Tamerlane.

more aſtoniſh'd to ſee that he would undertake ſo dangerous an Expedition, to obſtruct the Fortune of his Lord, in whoſe favour the Heavens (ſaid he) *bended themſelves to further his Grandure, and unto whom all the World ſubjected it ſelf.* At this inſolent Anſwer *Tamerlane* rejoiced, that he was ſent from Heaven to puniſh his Raſhneſs, and teach him that the Proud were hated of God, whoſe Promiſe was *to pluck down the Mighty, and exalt the Humble: As for thy ſelf* (ſaid he) *thou haſt already felt the Valour of my* Parthian *Horſe, thy Maſter I have already cauſed to raiſe the ſiege of* Conſtantinople, *and to come to look to his own Affairs in Aſia.* And going on, he asked him, if his Maſter was reſolved to give him battel: the Baſſa reply'd, *There's nothing more certain; and I would to God I might acknowledg your Grandure, by giving me leave to aſſiſt my Lord in that Battel. Go thy ways then* (ſaid *Tamerlane*) *and tell thy Lord that thou haſt ſeen me, and that he ſhall find me on horſeback in the Fight, with a green Banner diſplay'd before me.* The Baſſa hereupon teſtifying his great Acknowledgments, return'd to *Bajazet*, and gave a faithful relation to him of all that was ſaid and done by him; who anſwer'd, *He would ſhortly make trial, and hoped before the March were ended to make him acknowledg his Folly.* Next day the two Armies incamped within a League of each other; and that night after *Tamerlane* had paſſed thro the Camp, he retired to his Tent, and there ſent for *Axalla* and other great Officers to conſult with them about the Order of Battel he deſigned to fight next day; which being over, he was no ſooner mounted on horſeback, but News came that the Enemy march'd on, and came to take their ground for the Battel. Hereupon *Tamerlane* cauſed 3000 Horſe to advance, and begin skirmiſhing with the *Turks*, whilſt himſelf follow'd to put all his Troops in ſuch places as he foreſaw were moſt for his advantage. And now ſeeing the Janizaries march in a ſquare Battel in the Center, and two great Squadrons of Horſe in Front, which ſeem'd to be 30000 in number, and another that advanced to cover the Battalion of the Janizaries; he liked their order, and turning to *Axalla*, ſaid, *I had thought this day to have fought on foot, but I ſee now I muſt do it on horſeback, to encourage my Soldiers to break the great Battalion of our Ene-*

Enemies. And telling him farther how he would have his Troops advance, and every Man aſſigned his Poſt, the *Turkiſh* Army in the mean time came bravely on towards him; whoſe Men moved not at all from the place they had pitch'd on for the Battel, ſaving ſome *Scythian*, *Parthian*, and *Muſcovite* light Horſe, who hotly skirmiſhed between the two Armies. Now *Tamerlane* had notice by a Spy, that *Bajazet* having before given orders for the marſhalling of his Army, was on foot himſelf in the midſt of 30000 Janizaries, he had an incomparable Body of Horſe alſo that amounted to 110000, all old Soldiers, beſides 30000 *Mamalukes* ſent him from the Sultan of *Egypt*, all good Horſe, and 30000 Foot: ſo that his Army marching all in front in the form of a Half-moon (but not ſo cloſe as *Tamerlane*'s) ſeemed almoſt as great as his. The *Turks* gave the firſt Charge upon the young Prince of *Ciarcan*, who commanded 40000 Men, and was almoſt wholly overthrown by them, and himſelf, valiantly fighting, ſlain in the Action; about which time *Axalla* fell on the *Turks* with the Van of the Army, one of whoſe Wings he beat and cut to pieces; and being joined by his Footmen, faced the Janizaries, who fought with incredible Reſolution: ſo that *Tamerlane* at length perceiving his Men give ground, he ſent 20000 Horſe to aſſiſt them, and at the ſame time charged himſelf, and made the Enemy give way. His Footmen alſo commanded by the Prince of *Tanais* he order'd to fall upon the Janizaries, wherein *Bajazet* was in Perſon; who having in his Army a great many mercenary *Tartars*, call'd *Deſtenſes*, and other Men raiſed out of the poor exiled *Mahometan* Princes Countries, in whoſe Quarrel and the *Greek* Emperor's *Tamerlane* had chiefly engaged in this War; theſe ſeeing ſome of their Friends and natural Princes in *Tamerlane*'s Army, in the heat of the Battel revolted to *Tamerlane*: notwithſtanding which, *Bajazet* maintain'd the Fight very gallantly, and nothing but the Numbers of the Enemy could wreſt the Victory out of his hand; but at laſt his Men giving way, and himſelf wounded, but now mounted on horſeback to endeavour to make his Eſcape, he fell into *Axalla*'s hands, to whom he ſurrender'd himſelf, ſuppoſing him to have been *Tamerlane* in Perſon: his Son *Aluſa* alſo and

The great Battel between Tamerlane and Bajazet.

Turks overthrown.

Bajazet taken priſoner.

divers other Commanders were taken priſoners, and among others *George* Deſpot of *Servia*, who, notwithſtanding his misfortune, had that day acquired the Reputation of a great Commander. He was courteouſly received by *Tamerlane*, but withal reproved that he had fought for *Bajazet*, and not for him, who was come to favour the Cauſe of a Chriſtian Emperor and poor oppreſſed Princes, ſuch as the Deſpot was; who boldly anſwer'd, *That it was not indeed according to his Duty, but the Proſperity of* Bajazet, *to whom all the World ſeemed to bow; and that his own Safety had cauſed him, tho againſt his will, to take his part.* Hereupon *Tamerlane* excuſed him, and gave him liberty to depart when he pleaſed.

This great and bloody Battel was fought in the Year 1397. not far from Mount *Stella* (where *Mithridates* King of *Pontus* was ſometime overthrown by *Pompey* the Great) the ſame having laſted from ſeven in the Morning till four in the Afternoon, where the number of the ſlain has been variouſly computed; the *Turks* themſelves reporting that *Bajazet* loſt there his noble Son *Muſtapha*, with 200000 Men, and *Tamerlane* not many leſs: but others do not make ſo much of it, and allow only that 60000 *Turks* fell there, and about 20000 of *Tamerlane*'s Army. 1397.

Bajazet's Pride.

Bajazet himſelf being afterwards brought before *Tamerlane* as a Priſoner, and courteouſly receiv'd by him, never ſhew'd any ſigns of Submiſſion; but according to the Pride of his Nature, and without regard to his preſent Condition, return'd preſumptuous Anſwers to all the Queſtions he put to him: wherewith *Tamerlane* being moved, told him it was in his power to take away his Life; the other anſwer'd no more but, *Do it, for that Loſs ſhould be his greateſt Happineſs.* After which, *Tamerlane* demanding of him, what made him ſo proud as to pretend to ſubdue ſo noble a Prince as the *Greek* Emperor, he anſwer'd, *The ſame thing that hath moved thee to invade me; I mean, a Deſire of Glory and Sovereignty. But why then,* ſaid *Tamerlane, art thou ſo cruel to them whom thou haſt conquered, without reſpect either to Age or Sex? That I did* (reply'd he) *to ſtrike a greater Terror into my Enemies. And what wouldſt thou have done with me* (ſaid *Tamerlane*) *had it been my fortune to have fallen into thy hands, as*

thou

thou art in mine? I would (ſaid *Bajazet*) *have incloſed thee in an Iron Cage, and ſo in triumph have carried thee up and down my Dominions. Even ſo* (ſaid *Tamerlane*) *ſhalt thou be ſerved.* And then ordering him to be taken away, he turn'd about to his Followers, and ſaid, *Behold a proud and cruel Man! he deſerves to be chaſtiſed accordingly, and made an Example to all the World, of the juſt Diſpleaſure of God againſt him.* They ſaid it was three days before *Bajazet* could be pacified, being as a deſperate Man ſeeking after Death, and calling for it; neither did *Tamerlane* after he had once ſpoke with him, at all afterwards courteouſly uſe him, but according to the Judgment he had pronounced upon him from his own mouth, cauſed him to be ſhackled in golden Fetters and Chains, then ſhut up in an Iron Cage made like a Grate, that he might be ſeen every way, and ſo carried him up and down as he paſſed thro *Aſia*, to be ſcorn'd and derided of the People; and the more to diſgrace him, he uſed him upon Feſtival Days for a Footſtool to tread upon when he mounted his Horſe, and at other times ſcornfully fed him like a Dog, with Crumbs fallen from his Table: all which *Tamerlane* did not ſo much out of hatred to the Man, as to manifeſt the juſt Judgment of God againſt the Proud.

But to return: The Succeſs of this great Battel was attended with the ſurrendring of *Pruſa* to *Axalu*, *Tamerlane*'s General, and other Conqueſts (tho the *Turks* in this common Calamity of their Country, not to be wanting to themſelves, ſet up *Solyman*, *Bajazet*'s eldeſt Son, in his room) and *Tamerlane*'s receiving Embaſſadors from the *Greek* Emperor *Emanuel*, with a Tender of ſubmitting his Empire to him, which the other generouſly refuſed: however he went afterwards privately to *Conſtantinople* (after the *Greek* Emperor had firſt viſited him at *Pruſa*) to ſee that fine City, wherewith he was mightily pleaſed, and gave it great Commendations.

The Year being now well ſpent, and Winter drawing on, *Tamerlane* diſtributed his Army into ſeveral of the Provinces of the leſſer *Aſia*, ſtill expecting when ſome of *Bajazet*'s Sons, or others, would make their application to him for his Liberty, but none came; ſome fearing *Tamerlane*'s Indignation, and others no

leſs dreading the fierce Nature of *Bajazet* himſelf, who when once got looſe was like enough (as ſome thought) to be ſecretly reveng'd on all thoſe who forſook him in the late Battel, and therefore never made Interceſſion for him. Whereupon *Tamerlane* paſſing by him one day, ſaid, *I wonder none of thy Sons or Friends either come to ſee thee, or intercede for thee; thou muſt certainly have deſerved ill at their hands, as thou haſt done of others: But doſt thou think, if I ſhould ſet thee at liberty, that they would receive thee again as their Lord and Sovereign, or not?* To whom *Bajazet* boldly anſwer'd, *Were I at liberty, thou ſhouldſt quickly ſee that I want neither Courage nor Power to revenge all my Wrongs, and make thoſe diſobedient and forgetful Perſons to know their Duty better.*

Now *Tamerlane* remembring how the Sultan of *Egypt* gave great aid to *Bajazet* againſt him, he reſolved to take revenge on him, and overthrew him in a great Battel near *Aleppo*; and not only ſo, but whilſt himſelf went to viſit *Jeruſalem*, his Army under *Axalla* marched into *Egypt*, laid ſiege to *Damiata*, and took it: and proceeding yet farther, *Tamerlane* being now come in Perſon, he laid ſiege to *Grand Caire* it ſelf, took it; and ſoon after having *Alexandria* alſo delivered up to *Axalla* for his uſe, he, after this long Expedition and Fatigue, deſirous to ſee his native Country, to which the Importunity of his Wife did not a little contribute, having ſet things in order, return'd home to *Samarchand*, the famous place of his Nativity, and glorious Seat of his Empire: while the proud and unfortunate *Bajazet* having lain two years in a miſerable ſtate, moſtly ſhut up in an Iron Cage, as aforeſaid, like ſome ravenous wild Beaſt, could at length find no better way to end his hated Life, than to beat out his own Brains againſt the Iron Bars of the Grate wherein he was incloſed, and ſo miſerably periſh'd in the Year 1399. tho there were various reports concerning the manner of his Death, ſome ſaying he died of an Ague, others that he poiſon'd himſelf; but the *Turks* affirm he was ſet at liberty by *Tamerlane*, being before poiſon'd by him, whereof he died three days after; which is not at all likely.

1399.

Bajazet's Death.

His Character. *Bajazet* (as well as his great Adverſary and Conqueror) was a Prince that was wiſe, hardy, induſtrious, reſo-

reſolute, and very skilful in martial Affairs; but his excellent Qualifications were much obſcur'd by his cholerick and froward Nature, which made him exceed both in Cruelty and Pride; being alſo of a more penurious nature than his Predeceſſors, and ſo was more fear'd than loved of his Soldiers. He uſed commonly to ſay, his Treaſures were his Childrens Meat, and not his Soldiers Pay, wherewith he was reproach'd by a common Soldier, when he raged to ſee himſelf forſaken in the great Battel againſt *Tamerlane*, ſaying, he did not run away, but went to ſeek his Pay, wherewith to provide his Children Bread. But to conclude with him, he was in this however more fortunate than *Tamerlane*, that his Territories have continued under the ſubjection of his Poſterity by lineal Deſcent from him to this day, with great Increaſe of Glory to many of them; whereas *Tamerlane* dividing his Empire between his Sons, the ſame was ſoon rent in ſunder by Ambition and Civil Diſcord; and not long after, together with his Poſterity, rooted out by *Uſun-Caſſanes* King of *Perſia*, had a final period put to it.

				A. D.	R.
Christian Princes, Cotemporaries with *Bajazet* I.	Emperors	Of the East.	*Emanuel Paleologus*	1387.	30.
		Of the West.	*Wenceslaus* Son of *Charles* King of *Bohemia*	1378.	22.
			Rupert Duke of *Bavaria*	1400.	10.
	Kings	Of *England.*	*Richard* II.	1377.	23.
			Henry IV.	1399.	12.
		Of *France.*	*Charles* VI. sirnamed the Well-beloved	1381.	42.
		Of *Scotland.*	*John Stewart*, otherwise call'd *Robert* III.	1390.	16.
	Popes of *Rome.*		*Urban* VI.	1380.	11.
			Boniface IX.	1390.	14.

BOOK




MAHOMET I.
AMURATH II.
MAHOMET II.
BAIAZET II.

BOOK III.

CHAP. I.

The Life of Mahomet *the First, King of the* Turks.

WE ſhall not enter upon a Detail of the Diverſity of Opinions concerning the Succeſſors of *Bajazet*; but come firſt to the Enumeration of his Iſſue, and then follow the beſt Authority in relation to the Settlement of the *Turkiſh* Affairs, and by whom effected. *Bajazet*, after the manner of the *Turks*, having laid up the hope of his Poſterity in the common Treaſure-houſe of Nature, rather than the Body of one lawful Wife, had by his Wives and Concubines 7 Sons; *Erthogrul* or *Orchobules*, *Emer-Solyman*, *Muſtapha-Zelebi*, *Iſa-Zelebi*, *Muſa-Zelebi*, Sultan *Mahomet*, and *Caſan-Zelebi*. Now of theſe *Solyman* was by *Alis* Baſha, Preſident of *Bajazet*'s Council, and other Officers, convey'd out of the Battel againſt *Tamerlane*, and ſaluted Sultan at *Adrianople*, while *Mahomet* fled out of the ſame Battel to *Amaſia* in *Cappadocia*, where he was Governour in his Father's time, at whoſe death he was but fifteen years old: but being a Perſon of much Reſolution and Conſtancy beyond his years, he notwithſtanding the preſſure of *Tamerlane*'s Generals upon him, ſtill ſtruggled with Fortune, and endeavoured all he could to prevent their ravaging of his Country, and routed *Cara-Jahia*,

Bajazet's *Poſterity.*

Maho-met's *great Actions.*

a

a near Kinſman of Prince *Iſendiar* of *Caſtamona*: But finding that *Cara-Duletſchat*, one of the *Tartarian* Princes, with an Army of 20000 Men, was marching to ſpoil his Country, it being given him by *Tamerlane*, he was mightily ſurprized; but being informed by a Spy, that his Enemy lay careleſly at *Ægiolus* in *Galatia*, while his Men were ſcatter'd here and there to pillage the Country, he fell ſuddenly upon him, routed his Troops, and ſlew him in the Conflict: He alſo ſoon after routed the Troops of the *Tartar* Prince *Cubad Ogli*, who laid ſiege to *Cæſarea* in *Cappadocia*, and thereby eſcaped the endangering the Loſs of his Country. Neither did *Inalogli*, another of *Tamerlane*'s Generals, who had enter'd *Cappadocia*, fare better than *Cubad*, whom he overthrew, as well as others of the *Tartar* Commanders: and particularly hearing that one *Meſites*, a *Turk*, had fortify'd himſelf in the Ruins of *Sebaſtia*, and ravaged the adjacent Country, he ſent one of his Baſſas againſt him, who brought him priſoner to *Bajazet*, by whom he was ſentenced to die; but finding the Man to be of invincible Courage, and a Contemner of Death, he pardoned him, from whom ever after he received great and faithful Services. Theſe things being told *Tamerlane* of *Mahomet*, he much extolled the Valour of a Stripling, and told *Bajazet* he was deſirous to ſee him; and if he found that true which was related of him, he would beſtow one of his Daughters in marriage upon him; and obliging *Bajazet* (tho with reluctancy) to write to him, he ſent *Hozza Mahomet*, one of his Counſellors, with *Bajazet*'s Letters and rich Preſents of his own, Embaſſador to him to invite him to come. Upon which *Mahomet*, notwithſtanding the diſſuaſive Arguments of his Friends, reſolved to go; but being way-laid in the Marſhes of *Pontus*, by *Cara Jahia* above-mention'd (whom yet he overthrew) and hearing alſo that *Alis Beg*, a great Lord in thoſe Countries, deſign'd to intercept him, *Mahomet* ſurprized and routed him likewiſe. He thereupon in a handſom Speech excuſed his proceeding any farther to *Tamerlane*'s Embaſſador, and ſent *Sophis Bajazet*, ſometime his Schoolmaſter, Embaſſador to *Tamerlane* and his Father, farther to excuſe his not coming; in whom *Tamerlane* took ſo much pleaſure, that he would never after part with him.

But

But *Mahomet* not long after, being delivered of the greateſt danger he apprehended, by the departure of *Tamerlane* (as already mentioned) who left him the Corps of his Father to bury, and ſet his elder Brother *Muſa* at liberty, he reſolved to go to *Pruſa* in *Bithynia*, where his Brother *Iſa* then reigned; yet underſtanding that *Iſa* had poſſeſt the Straits of Mount *Horminius*, he went about by the way of *Palæo-Caſtron*, where the valiant Commander *Eine-Beg*, Sub-Baſſa, then was, who entertained him joyfully. Thence moving to *Ulabad*, *Iſa* and his Army encamped on the other ſide of the Town ready to oppoſe him: here by the perſuaſion of *Eine*, Sub-Baſſa, *Mahomet*, by a Letter, offers his Brother the Provinces of *Aidinia*, *Saruchania*, *Germeania*, *Charaſia*, *Caramania*, and the adjacent Countries; ſo that he might have *Pruſa*, and the Provinces about it. But *Iſa*, who was an elder Brother, knowing theſe to be, in a manner, but Titles, diſdained the Offer, and ſo they came to a Battel, wherein *Mahomet*'s fortune prevailing, *Iſa*, after he had ſlain *Eine* Sub-Baſſa with his own hands, and done all that a brave Man could in the Action, at laſt fled over to *Europe*, for protection of the *Greek* Emperor *Emanuel*; while *Mahomet* marched his Army to *Pruſa*, where he was joyfully received, and from whence he went to *Nice* and *Theapolis*, and met with the like Entertainment; and having received the Submiſſion of *Saruchania* and *Aidinia*, with the neighbouring People, he ſolemnly buried his Father's Body at *Pruſa*, where he ſhewed great Liberality to the People.

Now *Solyman*, *Mahomet*'s eldeſt Brother, who all this while reigned at *Adrianople*, hearing of *Mahomet*'s Action, and how he had dealt with his Brother *Iſa*, adviſed with his Council about making an Expedition into *Aſia*, to call his Brother to an account for it; but they diſſuaded him from going in perſon, and adviſed him to make *Iſa* General of the Army, wherein (they ſaid) it was likely one of the Brothers might fall, and ſo he would have one Competitor leſs for the Kingdom: which he agreeing to, *Iſa* was ſent for, who paſſing over the *Helleſpont* with his Army, quickly poſſeſt himſelf of all *Lydia*, and as he went was joyfully received every where, and wintered at *Deſpotopolis*, during which many ſeemingly kind Letters and Preſents paſſed

passed between him and *Mahomet*, but all was Dissimulation: for *Isa* in the Spring marched to *Prusa*, and there shewing *Mahomet*'s kind Letters to the Citizens, he desired they would surrender him the Castle, as their Sovereign; but they refusing, he laid the City in ashes: of which *Mahomet* being informed, he march'd presently at the Head of his Army in ten days from *Amasia* to *Prusa*, and in a great Battel overthrew *Isa* and all his Forces, who fled to the Prince of *Isfendar*'s City, who received him very kindly, and whom he persuaded to engage in his Quarrel, but to ill purpose; for he was overthrown a third time by *Mahomet*, from whence he fled to the Prince of *Smyrna*, by whose assistance, together with that of the Princes of *Aidinia*, *Saruchania* and *Mentesia*, having got an Army of twenty thousand Men together, *Mahomet*, to be beforehand with him, enters the Prince of *Smyrna*'s Country with all his Power, and such celerity, that he surprized his Enemies, and after a long and bloody Fight, obtained a signal Victory: which made *Isa*, tired with his evil Fortune, flee into *Carumania*, where he ended his days in that Obscurity, that none can tell how he died. In the mean while *Mahomet* received the Submission of the Prince of *Smyrna*, and punished the other Confederates of *Isa*, by despoiling them for the most part of their Dominions, and then returned to the rebuilding of *Prusa*.

Prusa burnt by Isa.

Isa's Flight and obscure Death.

From *Prusa*, *Mahomet* went to *Ancyra*; and hearing some time after, that his Brother *Solyman* with a potent Army was come over the *Hellespont* to fight him, he was advised by his wisest Counsellors to retire for the present farther off to the Heart of his Kingdom, to temporize and wait Opportunities, rather than commit all to the hazard of one Battel. Wherefore he withdrew to *Amasia*, while *Solyman* was honourably received at *Prusa* by the Citizens as their Sovereign; but *Jacup-Beg* stood upon his guard, and would by no means surrender the Castle to him. Upon this *Solyman* laid close siege to it, of which the Governour having certify'd *Mahomet*, and begging speedy relief, he returned the same Messenger to him with an Answer, promising he would be shortly with him; but the Letter being intercepted by *Alis* Bassa, *Solyman*'s chief Counsellor, he presently wrote another Letter in *Mahomet*'s

homet's Name to the Governour, commending him for the Service he had done; yet seeing he could not poſſibly relieve him in time, he order'd him to make the beſt Terms he could for himſelf and the Gariſon, which he did accordingly; whereat *Mahomet*, who was come within a day's march of *Pruſa*, was mightily concern'd, and retired thereupon to *Amaſia*. There underſtanding ſome time after by a Spy, that *Solyman* had diſperſed his Army and led a voluptuous Life (as was uſual with him) at *Pruſa*, he advanc'd in all haſte as far as the River *Sangarius*; but being there diſcovered by *Solyman* Sub-Baſſa, he preſently advertiſed his Maſter *Solyman* of it, who upon the firſt News would baſely have fled into *Europe*, had he not been diſſuaded by *Alis* Baſſa, who advis'd him to poſſeſs himſelf of the Straits of *Neapolis*, till he could draw his Troops together. This being done accordingly, *Mahomet* ſeveral times attempted to force his way very boldly, but could not prevail. In the mean while *Alis* Baſſa, a very cunning Man, ſent a truſty Servant of his own with a Letter to *Mahomet*, to advertiſe him, that moſt of his Nobility and Officers had conſpired to betray him to *Solyman*, the undoubted Heir of *Bajazet*, to atone for their own Crimes; which he diſcovered (he ſaid) to him with great Proteſtations of Love and Kindneſs, as being one that had a long time eaten Bread and Salt (as the *Turks* are wont to ſay) in his Father's Court. This made *Mahomet* ſome days very uneaſy, but a near Servant of his, happening at that time to fly to the Enemy, made him the more ſuſpect the matter, and ſo he thought beſt to return to *Amaſia*. While he was there, and that *Solyman* was getting a great Army together againſt him and the King of *Caramania* his Ally, his Brother *Muſa* (who had been ſince his Enlargement all the while with *Mahomet*) told him one day, if he thought fit he would go to the Prince of *Caſtamona* and *Pontus*, and get ſhipping of him to be tranſported by the way of the *Euxine* Sea into *Europe*; where he did not doubt but to make great Innovations in *Solyman*'s Kingdom now he was abſent, who thereupon muſt of neceſſity leave *Aſia* entirely to *Mahomet*, to ſave the other; and if he ſhould have the fortune to gain any thing, he promiſed faithfully

Pruſa *taken by* Solyman.

fully to hold the ſame of *Mahomet* as of his Lord and Sovereign.

Muſa *goes to* Europe.

Mahomet being pleaſed with the Propoſal, agreed to it, whereupon *Muſa* departs for *Iſfendar*; and going from thence to give the King of *Caramania* a Viſit, it happened that *Mark* or *Merxes* Prince of *Walachia*, having his Country ravaged by *Solyman*, writ to him, promiſing to beſtow his Daughter and Heireſs in Marriage upon him, if he would come over and revenge the Wrong done him by *Solyman*; which he readily did by the way of the *Euxine*: which wrought ſuch an effect upon the Peoples Minds, that ſome time after he was received at *Adrianople* in *Solyman*'s abſence for their Sultan. This brought *Solyman* quickly over into *Europe* with a good Army, upon whoſe approach many of *Muſa*'s Officers forſaking him, he thought it beſt to fly to the Woods for refuge, and to leave *Solyman* to repoſſeſs himſelf of his Kingdom in *Europe*: But for that of *Aſia*, he was no ſooner gone, than *Pruſa*, and in a manner all other Places and Countries, were delivered up to *Mahomet* again, and ſo all things as it were brought to the ſame ſtate as before.

Received as Sultan at Adrianople.

Solyman *recovers it.*

But *Muſa* being aſſiſted by the Prince of *Walachia*, having got once more an Army together, drew near to *Solyman*'s Camp, who at that time was wallowing in Riotouſneſs and Exceſs; inſomuch that when news was brought of the Enemies approach, he not only beat the Meſſenger, but when *Chaſis Eurenoſes* an old Commander told him, that *Muſa* was come ſo near, that the Vanguard skirmiſhed with his Men; he ſaid, *Good Tutor do not trouble me more, my Brother* Muſa *dares not come ſo nigh me; if I do but hold up my Cap, he is gone.* And ſoon after having cauſed the Beard of *Chaſan* Aga of the *Janizaries*, who boldly expoſtulated with him about the matter, to be cut off, it ſo enraged the Aga, that he openly declared for *Muſa* in the preſence of the *Janizaries*, many of whom preſently went over to *Muſa* along with him; beſides divers others of *Solyman*'s Army, who revolted at the ſame time: which ſo diſcouraged *Solyman*, that he preſently fled with two Noblemen only towards *Conſtantinople*; but being deceived in the Night by a Country Clown, their Guide, he brought them in the Morning to a Village not far from the Place from whence they had firſt ſet out, where

where the two Noblemen were preſently ſlain, and *Solyman* being delivered up to the hands of *Muſa*, was forthwith ſtrangled by his orders: ſo that now of all the Brothers, there were none left but *Muſa* and *Mahomet*, who muſt alſo try their fortune. Solyman *ſtrangled.*

Muſa poſſeſſing himſelf now of *Solyman*'s Kingdom in *Europe*, began to diſplace divers Officers, and to be cruel to many; ſo that even *Chaſis Eurenoſes* that old famous Commander, to eſcape his hands, was forced to feign himſelf blind, and ſo keep from Court: and proceeding to demand Tribute of his neighbouring Chriſtian Princes, and even of the *Greek* Emperor *Emanuel Paleologus*, the Meſſenger *Ibrahim* Baſſa preſently gave *Mahomet* notice of his Brother's indiſcreet Government, and afterwards at his requeſt went over to him into *Aſia*; where *Mahomet* after having concluded a ſolemn League with the Emperor *Emanuel*, that they would never injure one another, and that if *Mahomet* ſhould happen to get the *Turkiſh* Kingdom in *Europe*, he ſhould always honour and reverence the Emperor as his particular Friend, but if he ſhould happen to be diſtreſſed by *Muſa*, that he and his Army ſhould be tranſported by the Emperor into *Aſia*, he ſoon after with his Army paſſed over the *Thracian Boſphorus*. He had not marched far but he was ſtopt by his Brother at a place called *Intzuge*, when *Michael Ogli* Baſſa of *Romania*, and ſome others revolted to *Mahomet* upon ſome diſcontent; which ſo diſcourag'd the other Troops of *Muſa*, that many of them preſently fled and were purſued by *Mahomet*'s Men: but 7000 *Janizaries* ſtanding faſt by *Muſa*, gave *Mahomet* ſuch rude Repulſes, that at length himſelf in his turn was forced to give way to their Fury, and fly to *Conſtantinople* but with 200 Men only, and thence into *Aſia*, leaving the Field, his Baggage, and the reſt of his Soldiers, now return'd from the Chaſe, to *Muſa*'s Mercy, who diſarmed them only, but ſpared their Lives. However *Mahomet* had ſomewhat better luck in *Aſia*, where he made the Prince of *Smyrna* who brake into *Aidinia* to ſubmit to him; yet ſtomaching his Overthrow in *Europe*, he raiſed another compleat Army, and being joined by Prince *Dulgader*, *Ogli*'s Son, and *Mahomet*'s Brother-in-law, whom and his Nobles he rarely feaſted and preſented with rich Garments, he then communicated his Mahomet *routed by* Muſa.

Intentions of going over once more into *Europe*, to endeavour to recover his Father's Dominions on that ſide, or there end his days: ſaying, for their Incouragement, that all the Spoil and Prey ſhould be his Followers; but for himſelf, one Horſe, one Sword, and one Horſeman's Mace ſhould content him. He ſoon after was wafted over the *Boſphorus* with all his Troops into *Europe*, where he was received very kindly by the old Emperor *Emanuel*, who aſſiſted him with ſome Troops of his own, that afterwards did the *Turk* great Service. Not long after this he received a Letter from *Chaſis Eurenoſes* aforementioned, adviſing him to be circumſpect in his march, and not make too much haſte to fight; and withal that he ſhould endeavour to get *Jegides* Baſſa, *Baran-Beg* and *Sinan-Beg* to forſake his Brother, in whom conſiſted *Muſa*'s chief Strength.

Adrianople *beſieg'd by* Mahomet.

He then marched on, and advancing to *Adrianople*, he inveſted and ſummoned the place to ſurrender; and being anſwered, they could not then do it, but if he would go and try his fortune in the Field with his Brother, who ſhould be the Commander of it, they would then be very ready to follow his good fortune if he got the Victory, and ſurrender to him; he contented himſelf therewith, raiſed the Siege, and marched towards *Zagora*, and thence at laſt to *Sophia*, where *Muſa* (too weak to encounter him) made a ſhew divers times of deſcending from the Mountains with his Army to give him battel, but durſt not. He thereupon marched to *Sarkive*, where he received a Letter ſign'd by the three Officers before named, *viz. Jegides* and the reſt, adviſing him ſpeedily to draw near them with his Army, and they would join him; which they did accordingly at the *Morava*, and old *Eurenoſes* came alſo, as did the Prince of *Smyrna*'s Son revolt from *Muſa*, with which and ſome Aid out of *Servia*, *Mahomet* had a very ſtrong Army. *Muſa* in the mean time finding himſelf daily deſerted, but having ſtill 7000 good Soldiers with him, with theſe at laſt he valiantly attack'd his Brother's Army, but finding them oppreſs'd with Multitudes, he courted Death in the midſt of his Enemies. Here *Bajazet* Baſſa, *Mahomet*'s Lieutenant-General, endeavouring to hem him in, and take him alive, he brake thro them and fled; but his Horſe being hoxed by his own Man *Garutzos*, he fell and was taken

taken priſoner: and being led bound through the Army (a ſad inſtance of the Viciſſitude of human things) he was ſoon after ſtrangled by *Mahomet*'s order, who ſeeing his dead Body, ſhed a few Crocodile Tears over it.. Muſa *ſtrangled.*

Mahomet after *Muſa*'s Death being freed from all Competitors, took upon him the Government of the *Turkiſh* Kingdom as well in *Europe* as in *Aſia*; and here the *Turkiſh* Hiſtories begin *Mahomet*'s Reign, accounting the troubleſome times from *Bajazet*'s Captivity to *Muſa*'s Death, a time of Anarchy, wherein the whole Kingdom was not at any time poſſeſt by any one of *Bajazet*'s Sons. However he was not at peace in *Aſia* all this while: for the King of *Caramania* taking the advantage of his Troubles, invaded his Territories in *Aſia*, and burnt the City of *Pruſa*; but while he was beſieging the Caſtle, which was valiantly defended by *Eivaſes* Baſſa, it happen'd that *Muſa*'s Corps that was ſent to *Pruſa* to be buried, being honourably attended on the way by many People, the King fearing it to have been *Mahomet*'s Army, forthwith raiſed the Siege and marched off: which made the *Turks* jeſtingly ſay, *If the King of* Caramania *ran away for fear of the dead Body of the* Ottoman *King, what would he have done if he had come againſt him alive?* 1415. Pruſa *burnt by the* Caramanian *King.*

Now *Orchanes*, *Solyman*'s Son (yet a Stripling) having lived at *Conſtantinople* ever ſince his Father's death, about this time departed thence becauſe of the League between the Emperor and *Mahomet*, with a deſign to have gone into *Walachia*; but ſome *Turkiſh* Volunteers lighting on him by the way, and underſtanding he was *Solyman*'s Son, they reſorted to him in great numbers, and offered their Service to him. Theſe *Mahomet* quickly diſperſed, and *Orchanes* being betray'd to him by his Tutor *Zaganos*, he order'd his Eyes to be put out, and ſent him to *Pruſa*, where he lived upon an honourable Maintenance all his days.

Now *Mahomet* remembring how the King of *Caramania* had invaded his Country in *Aſia* during his abſence, he in his turn fell into his, took *Aſpropolis*, *Deſpotopolis*, *Hierapolis*, and beſieged *Iconium*, which becauſe of the Rains that fell, he was forced to quit for that time, and granted the *Caramanians* Peace; who violating the ſame ſoon after (while *Mahomet* was ab- 1416.

ſent in *Pontus*) he returned, routed the King, and took both him and his Son *Muſtapha* Priſoners, who got their Liberty by ſurrendring up many ſtrong Cities and Caſtles to his hands. This being done, he went over into *Europe*, ravaged the Country of *Walachia*, which brought that Prince to pay him tribute, and to ſend his Son to ſerve him in his Court. About this time alſo *Iſfendiar* Prince of *Caſtamonia*, reſerving to himſelf *Caſtamonia* and a ſmall part more of his Dominions, gave the reſt to *Mahomet*, on condition he would reſtore no part of it to his Son *Caſſumes*; who having a long time ſerved in *Mahomet*'s Court, could not be perſuaded to return again to his Father; but *Mahomet* made him ſome amends with large Poſſeſſions within his own Kingdoms.

Bedredin's *Rebellion.* About this time one *Bedredin*, who had followed *Muſa*'s Party, and after his Death had been ſent to *Nice* in *Aſia*, as to a Place of Exile by *Mahomet*, being deſirous of Innovation, plotted with one *Burgluzes* his Steward to preach up ſome new religious Doctrine; the laſt of which having acted his part well in *Caria* for a time, the other made the beſt of his way into *Walachia*, where he ſet up for ſome great Devotee, and by that means had many Followers, and being alſo joined by his Steward, he began to ſhew himſelf to the World with diſplayed Banners: For the repreſſing of which, *Mahomet* ſent ſome Troops againſt him, between whom enſued a bloody Battel, where *Burgluzes* was ſlain, and the other ſome time after taken Priſoner; whom *Mahomet* cauſed fairly to be hanged in the Market-place of *Serras*, before a Tavern-door, and ſo the matter ended. After this, *Mahomet* very much beautify'd *Adrianople* with a great *Mahometan* Moſque, ſtately Palace, ſumptuous Abbey, and another Moſque; and alſo gave great Sums of Mony yearly to be paid at *Medina* and *Meccha*, for the relief of poor Pilgrims travelling from remote Countries to *Mahomet*'s Sepulchre at *Medina*, or his Temple at *Meccha*.

Hang'd.

Mahomet's *Death.* *Mahomet* not long after fell ſick at *Adrianople*, and finding himſelf in danger of Death, by his laſt Will and Teſtament appointed his eldeſt Son *Amurath* to ſucceed him, and ſent *Elvan-Beg* a great Favourite to *Amaſia*, to require him with all ſpeed to come to *Adrianople*; but finding Death approaching, and that he

he could not poſſibly live till his arrival, he gave his Baſſas ſtrict charge to conceal his Death till he came, for fear of any Tumult; and ſo having ſet all things in order, he departed this Life about the Year 1422. after a Reign of ſeventeen years, including the ten years next after his Father's Captivity, wherein the *Turkiſh* Kingdom was ſo diſtracted by his ambitious Sons, as we have already related, and ſo need not recapitulate.

Upon his death the three great Baſſas *Eivaſes*, *Bajazet*, and *Ibrahim*, call'd a Divan or Council for War, as if *Mahomet* had been alive; wherein they pretended he had reſolved upon a War with the Prince of *Smyrna*, and that 'twas his pleaſure the Janizaries ſhould forthwith paſs over into *Aſia* to the Caſtle of *Baga*: to which end Preſs-Mony was preſently given them, and a Letter directed to the Vice-Roy of *Anatolia* to draw an Army together about *Baga*. In the mean time the Baſſas ſat daily in Council, and the Sultan's Phyſicians, to countenance the matter, were commanded to go continually to and fro with their Potions and Receipts, and Letters were ſent by Poſt to *Elvanbeg* about the ſpeedy diſpatch of the Affairs he was ſent about into *Aſia*. But for all this Diſſimulation, the Penſioners and other Guards of Soldiers, who were wont to be near the Sultan's Perſon, and ſome of them in the Privy-Chamber, began to ſuſpect the matter, and told the Baſſas they wondred the Sultan in ſo long a time had never ſhew'd himſelf as he uſed to do. They were anſwered, *The Sultan had been dangerouſly ill, and yet but a little recovered, and therefore the Phyſicians would not ſuffer him to look abroad, or take the Air, for fear of a Relapſe.* Then ſaid the Penſioners, *We'll go our ſelves and ſee him:* and with that were ready to force their way in, but *Eivaſes* deſired them for the preſent not to trouble him, for he had taken Phyſick; but next day he ſaid they would deſire the Sultan to ſhew himſelf to them, wherewith they reſted then ſatisfied. Now there was among the Sultan's Phyſicians one named *Georgiron*, a *Perſian*, a Man of a ſharp Invention; who to deceive the Penſioners, deviſed that the Sultan's dead Body ſhould be apparell'd in large Royal Robes, and led betwixt two Men into a high open Gallery, and being there ſet, ſhould have a Body ſo cunningly placed behind him under his large Robes,

His Death concealed.

as not to be perceiv'd; who ſhould move his Hands to his Head, as if he would ſtroke his Face or Beard, according to his cuſtom. This being done accordingly, and his Head wrapped up with Cloths for fear of his catching cold, the Phyſicians ſuddenly came in, in a great rage, and asked the Baſſas what they meant by bringing the Sultan into the open Air to kill him; ſaying, *We have with a great deal of pains in a long time a little recovered him, and will you thus fooliſhly caſt him down again? Pardon us, good Doctor* (ſaid *Eivaſes*) *for theſe Gentlemen* (pointing to the Penſioners) *were ſo importunate to ſee his Majeſty, that to ſatisfy their deſire he was pleaſed to be led out of his Chamber, by which, we hope, he'll receive no harm.* This Stratagem took effectually, for his Death was thus concealed for 41 days, till *Amurath*'s arrival.

This *Mahomet* was a wiſe and valiant Prince, exceeding bountiful, and may juſtly be accounted the Reſtorer of the *Turkiſh* Kingdom; for he not only recovered what *Tamerlane* had taken away in *Aſia*, but at length got poſſeſſion of the reſt in *Europe*, and ſo left to his Son *Amurath* an intire Kingdom in its former Greatneſs, tho not ſo much augmented by him. His Body was buried in a fair Tomb of artificial Stone in a Chappel at the Eaſt-ſide of *Pruſa*, where we leave him at his reſt.

Chriſtian

			A. D.	R.
Christian Princes, Cotemporaries with *Mahomet* I.	Emperors	Of the East.	*Emanuel Paleologus* —— ——	1387.	30.
		Of the West.	*Rupert* Duke of *Bavaria* ——	1400.	10.
			Sigismond King of *Hungary* ——	1411.	28.
	Kings	Of *England*.	*Henry* IV. ——	1399.	13.
			Henry V. ——	1413.	9.
		Of *France*.	*Charles* VI. sirnamed the Well-beloved ——	1381.	42.
		Of *Scotland*.	*John Stewart*, otherwise call'd *Robert* —— ——	1390.	16.
			James the First ——	1424.	13.
	Popes of *Rome*.		*Boniface* IX. ——	1391.	14.
			Innocent VIII. —	1405.	2.
			Gregory XII. ——	1407.	2.
			Alexander V. —	1410.	1.
			John XXII. ——	1411.	5.
			Martin V. ——	1417.	13.

CHAP. II.

The Life of Amurath *the Second, King of the* Turks.

The counterfeit Mustapha.

THIS Prince was no sooner advanced to his Father's Throne, but Troubles began to arise on every side; but more particularly, a certain obscure Fellow at *Thessalonica*, taking upon him the Name and Person of *Mustapha*, *Bajazet*'s Son, who had been slain many years before in the Battel of Mount *Stella*, went from thence to *Vardarium*, and set so good a grace upon the matter, that not only the Vulgar, but Persons of Quality, such as the Prince of *Smyrna*'s Son, with the Sons of old *Eurenoses* Bassa, repaired to him as to their rightful Sovereign; and so passing to *Serre* and *Adrianople*, (*Amurath* being then at *Prusa*) he was there received as if he had been that noble Prince *Mustapha*, whom he feign'd to be: so that in a short time he was honoured as a King in all parts of the *Turkish* Empire in *Europe*; wherein he seem'd to be the more confirm'd, by the Soldiers deserting of *Bajazet* Bassa, whom *Amurath* had sent against him, who with his Brother, for the safety of his Life, was glad to yield himself to *Mustapha*. After which he levied a great Army to make war upon *Amurath* in *Asia*, and in his March put *Bajazet* Bassa to death, out of a jealousy he had of his revolting from him: then passing over at *Callipolis* into *Asia*, *Amurath* aware of his coming made all necessary Preparations to oppose him; to which end he sent for *Mahomet Beg*, sirnamed *Michael Ogli*, who in *Musa*'s Reign was Vice-Roy in *Europe*, and therefore a Person well known to most of the principal Men in *Mustapha*'s Army, whom he design'd to make use of to draw them over to his Party. Then after he had obtain'd the Blessing of an *Emir* (one of the false Prophets of *Mahomet*'s Posterity) with much ado he march'd on with his Army, in fear enough till he came to the River *Ulibad*, where having intelligence of *Mustapha*'s approach, he order'd the Bridg over that River to

to be broke down, and encamp'd by the ſide thereof, nothing parting the two Armies but the River; where *Michael Ogli* calling aloud to divers of *Muſtapha*'s great Officers and old Soldiers, they were overjoy'd to ſee him whom they ſuppoſed to have been dead many years; and entering into a diſcourſe with them, quickly perſuaded them that their *Muſtapha* was but a Counterfeit, ſince he aſſured them *Bajazet*'s Son had died in the Bed of Honour two and twenty years before at Mount *Stella* againſt *Tamerlane*. This ſo wrought upon divers of them, that they ſwam over the River to *Amurath*, while *Eivaſes* Baſſa in the mean time, to terrify *Muſtapha*, writ him a Letter, to inform him that *Amurath* deſign'd the night following to paſs over the River with his Army; at which time (he ſaid) ſeveral of his principal Officers had promis'd, in order to ſave themſelves, to deliver up *Muſtapha* into his hands: and *Eivaſes* actually in the dead of the night paſſing over the River in the ſame place he had nominated in his Letter, with ſome Troops of Horſe, and that with ſuch a noiſe and tumult, as if the whole Army had been there; *Muſtapha* without any more to do fled in great haſte from his Camp, and having with a great Sum of Mony obtained Paſſage over the River *Baga*, he the third day after landed at *Callipolis*, leaving his Army to ſubmit themſelves to *Amurath*. Muſtapha *flies.*

Now *Amurath* thinking to purſue *Muſtapha* into *Europe*, found the Shipping by *Muſtapha*'s order all on the other ſide; ſo that having hired a great *Genoeſe* Ship for 4000 Ducats, he got his Army tranſported: before whom *Muſtapha* fled to *Adrianople*, and thence to *Riſul-Agatzer-Genitze*, where he was taken, and hang'd at *Adrianople*. It happen'd during theſe late Broils, that divers of the Rebels *Aſapi* or common Soldiers, whom *Muſtapha* for a greater ſhew had dreſs'd and arm'd like the Janizaries, fell into the hands of the true Janizaries, who uſing them with all the deſpite and indignity imaginable, one of the Janizaries among the reſt being hungry, brought two of them into a Cook's Shop, and offered to ſell them for a little Victuals, which the Cook refuſed, as having no occaſion for ſuch Fellows; wherewith the Janizary was ſo enrag'd, that he ſwore a great Oath he would preſently cut off their Heads, and give them him for nothing, if he would *The* Aſapi *who.*

would not buy them: which he had certainly done, had not the Cook offer'd him a Sheep's Head for them both; which the Janizary accepted, ſaying, he had really given for them more than they were worth. But to return.

Conſtantinople *beſieged in vain by* Amurath.

Amurath underſtanding that the late Rebellion by *Muſtapha* was countenanced by the *Greeks* and *Greek* Emperor, he laid cloſe ſiege to the City of *Conſtantinople*; but after many deſperate Aſſaults being not able to carry it, he gave over the Enterprize, yet would not grant the Emperor the Peace he ſued for: which made the other bethink himſelf of ſome way to moleſt his Government; and this he did by getting the King of *Caramania* to countenance another *Muſtapha* (ſirnamed *Catzug* or *Little*) *Amurath*'s younger Brother, to raiſe Commotions in his Dominions. To which end being ſtrengthen'd with his Friend's Forces, he did during his Brother's abſence in *Europe* enter into his Dominions in *Aſia*, and laid ſiege to *Nice*, which was at length ſurrender'd to him. But *Amurath* having corrupted *Ilras Beg*, the young Prince's Tutor, to betray him, he march'd with great celerity from *Adrianople*, and in nine days time arrived at *Nice*, which he enter'd without reſiſtance, and had *Muſtapha* deliver'd into his hands; who becauſe he would not ſpill one drop of the ſacred *Othoman*'s Blood (as the *Turks* call it) commanded the Executioner to ſtrangle him preſently with a Bow-ſtring.

Muſtapha *betray'd and ſtrangled.*

Whilſt *Amurath* was thus buſy in ſuppreſſing domeſtick Rebellions, *Mahamethes* King of *Caramania* beſieg'd *Attalia*, a great City in *Pamphylia*, for ſix months together; at which ſiege he was unfortunately ſlain with a great Shot, which made his Son *Ibrahim* riſe from before it, and return home. At the ſame time alſo the Prince of *Walachia* paſſing over the *Danube*, ravaged the *Turkiſh* Territories about *Siliſtria*, but afterwards was forced to become tributary to *Amurath*: his Lieutenant alſo in *Aidinia* was much moleſted by the Prince of *Smyrna*, which made him order the Vice-Roy of *Anatolia* to call him to an account for it; and being both himſelf and his Son unfortunately taken priſoners by him, they were baſely murder'd by *Jaxubeg*, contrary to the Faith of the Vice-Roy: after whoſe death the Prince's Territories were all united to the *Turkiſh* Kingdom.

But

But *Amurath* ſtill thoughtful of the Encouragement given by the *Greeks* to the Rebels aforeſaid, with a great Army ravaged *Macedonia*, and laid ſiege to the famous City of *Theſſalonica*, which he batter'd very much, and for the encouragement of the Soldiery, promiſed to give them all the Plunder; which ſo encourag'd them, eſpecially the Janizaries, that they carried it by Aſſault. But tho the *Venetian* Soldiers eſcaped to their Gallies, the reſt with the Citizens were uſed with the greateſt Barbarity imaginable; and this Calamity happen'd to them and their City in the Year 1432. Soon after he ſubdued alſo all the Country of *Ætolia*; and the other *Grecian* Princes of *Athens*, *Phocis*, *Boetia*, and all the reſt of *Greece* to the Straits of *Corinth*, were now glad to ſubmit to his barbarous Yoke, and become his Tributaries, under which Thraldom they continue moſtly to this day.

Theſſalonica *taken by* Amurath.

At this time among the diſtreſſed Princes of *Macedon* and *Greece*, one *John Caſtriot* reign'd in *Epirus*, who finding the *Turk* prevail mightily againſt his Neighbours, to obtain a Peace was glad to deliver to *Amurath* his four Sons for Hoſtages, whom he promiſed to uſe kindly; but he falſified his Faith, and cauſed them to be circumciſed after the *Turkiſh* manner, and to be inſtructed in that Superſtition, to the great grief of their Parents: and afterwards when he underſtood their Father was dead, he poiſon'd the three elder Brothers, and then ſeized upon *Croia* the Capital City of *Epirus*, with the reſt of his Territories, as if it had all by good right devolved to him. But *George* the youngeſt, whom the *Turks* call'd *Scanderbeg*, or Lord *Alexander*, he always entirely loved, as ſome thought, more paſſionately than he ſhould have loved a Boy, and cauſed him to be inſtructed in all Feats of Arms, wherein he excelled all his Equals in *Amurath*'s Court, and ſo riſing gradually, came at laſt to be great *Sangiack*, or Governour of a Province; and *Amurath* many times appointed him to be General of his Armies, wherein he always behav'd himſelf incomparably well, till he had an opportunity to recover his Native Country, and ſhake off the *Turkiſh* Slavery. But of him more hereafter.

We ſhall return now to *Amurath*, who ſoon after this brought the Prince of *Servia* to become his Tributary,

butary, and impoſed other hard Conditions upon him; and finding the King of *Caramania* during his abſence had invaded his Territories in *Aſia*, he brought him to ſubmit to what Conditions he pleaſed, ſubdued the Countries of *Saruchania*, *Menteſia*, and other Provinces, and made the Prince of *Caſtamona* become tributary to him; and thence returning, ravaged *Hungary* once and again with his Army, who were mightily inrich'd with the Spoils thereof. And underſtanding that his Father-in-law the Prince of *Servia* had been the chief Inſtrument to make a Confederacy between the *Hungarians* and King of *Caramania*, he ſent for him to come to *Adrianople*; which the other refuſing, and fortifying all the places he could, eſpecially *Semendria* his Capital City, with all expedition *Amurath*, contrary to his Faith, invades his Country and ſubdues it: But returning to *Adrianople*, and hearing the Prince of *Servia* with the *Hungarians* were making head againſt him, and that the two young *Servian* Princes *Gregory* and *Stephen* (now in his cuſtody) held intelligence with their Father, he threw them into Priſon, and order'd their Eyes to be burnt out with a Braſs Baſon made red hot for that purpoſe.

Amurath *invades* Servia, *and ſubdues it.*

About this time *Albert* Archduke of *Auſtria*, who had married the Daughter of *Sigiſmond* the Emperor, whom he ſucceeded in the Empire and Kingdom of *Hungary*, dying, as he was making great Preparations againſt the *Turks*; the *Hungarian* Nobility, eſpecially *John Hunniades*, not thinking Queen *Elizabeth*'s Authority ſufficient for the Government of the Kingdom at that time, propoſed a Match between her and *Vladiſlaus* King of *Poland*, which was agreed to by both Parties: but before the Conſummation thereof, the Queen happening to be deliver'd of a Son, whom ſhe named *Vladiſlaus* alſo, ſhe then began to decline the Match, which occaſion'd a ſort of a Civil War in that Country, ſome eſpouſing her and the young King's Intereſt, while others vigorouſly adhered to the King of *Poland*; in the midſt of which, *Amurath* thought it a fair opportunity to invade *Hungary*. To this end, he laid ſiege to the ſtrong City of *Belgrade*, which he very vigorouſly aſſaulted by Land and Water, raiſing of Mounts and otherwiſe, but was as vigorouſly repulſed by *John Vranius* a *Florentine*, who was Gover-

Belgrade *beſieg'd by the* Turks.

nour,

nour, who with frequent Sallies and continued Shot ſlew the *Turks* in great numbers. Upon which *Vladiſlaus*, tho much diſtracted with the Queen and her Faction, ſent an Embaſſy to *Amurath*, declaring to him, that foraſmuch as he had offer'd by his Embaſſadors to join in League with him, before he came out of *Poland*, it had made ſo deep an impreſſion upon his Mind, that he would not take up Arms againſt him, tho in his own juſt defence, before he had offer'd him reaſonable Conditions of Peace; wherefore if he would deſiſt from invading *Hungary*, and raiſe his ſiege, they ſhould afterwards eaſily agree upon the deſired Peace, in concluding of which he ſhould not find *Vladiſlaus* inferiour to himſelf in any Princely Civility. *Amurath* hereupon order'd the Embaſſadors to withdraw to *Semendria* for a while, till he had fully conſider'd of their Demands, whilſt he in the mean time by ſhooting Arrows with Letters tied to them, and other ways, endeavour'd all he could to ſeduce the Citizens and Soldiers to a Surrender: but finding all would not do, he endeavours by a long Speech to his Soldiers ſo to animate their Minds to another Aſſault, as if nothing now could ſtand before them, but that the place muſt infallibly fall into his hands. In order to which, early the next morning he commanded an Aſſault to be given at a great Breach he had made in the Wall by a continual Battery; which the Soldiers, eſpecially the Janizaries under *Hali* Baſſa, did with great Courage, and valiantly winning the ſame, enter'd the City with aſſured hopes of Victory: but they were moſt gallantly beat out again by the Chriſtians, of whom in their Retreat many were ſlain, and the reſt flying out at the Breach, were either ſlain or burnt to death in the Town-ditch with Wild-fire, whereof the Beſieged had caſt a great quantity on the *Turks* at the Breach, which catching the Faggots, Hurdles, and other combuſtible matter, over which the *Turks* ſuddenly paſſed the Ditch, did ſo terribly burn, that the Janizaries who had enter'd the Breach, in their being beaten back were either conſumed in that fiery Lake, or elſe ſuffocated with Smoak. In this Aſſault *Amurath* is computed to have loſt 8000 of his beſt Men, beſides 7000 more overwhelm'd or cruſh'd to death in the Mines by the Countermines of the Chriſtians. As for

Belgrade *valiantly defended by the Chriſtians.*

for the other *Turks* who aſſaulted the City by Water, they had as bad or rather worſe ſucceſs; many of them being ſunk with the great Shot, and others burnt, and ſo firing one another, whilſt many run aground and were loſt.

Amurath diſcouraged herewith raiſed the Siege, after he had given an inſolent Anſwer to *Uladiſlaus*'s Embaſſadors, of whom he firſt demanded part of *Raſcia* and *Belgrade* before he would enter upon a Negotiation of Peace, and left his Nephew *Iſa-beg* at *Uſchul* to moleſt the King of *Boſnia*, who was glad to ſue to *Amurath* for Peace, which was promiſed him for an annual Tribute of 25000 Ducats. In the mean time, *Uladiſlaus* newly elected King of *Hungary*, made that famous Commander *John Hunniades* his Vayvod in *Tranſylvania*. The Deſcent of this Great Man is controverted by Authors, ſome making him of a very noble, and others of as mean an Extract; however it were, he did great Services to the Chriſtian Commonwealth, and while in this ſtation of Vayvod, recovered *Tranſylvania* out of the *Turks* hands in the firſt place: and having the great Captain *Iſa* before-mention'd for his Neighbour and Cotemporary, who ravaged the Country all about *Belgrade*, and endeavoured all the ways he could to intercept *Hunniades*; this he underſtanding, and grieved that *Iſa* did the Country ſo much miſchief, he privately raiſed a ſtrong Body of Horſe and Foot, and with his Companion *Nicholas Vilach* having paſs'd the *Danube*, encamp'd between *Belgrade* and *Semendria*; which *Iſa-beg* no ſooner underſtood, but he march'd towards him with a good Army in order of Battel, and found *Hunniades* ready to receive him; who in both the Wings had placed light Horſe, and his Men of Arms behind with ſome Croſs-bows on horſe-back; in the Center were his armed Men, with his Archers and others, all well ſupported with Men at Arms; and in the Rear were placed alſo a ſtrong Battalion of brave Foot. The Signal being given, they fell on with great fury, and at the firſt Charge *Hunniades*'s Battalion was forc'd to give way by the *Turks*; but coming to the Men at Arms, their Fury was repreſs'd, and there enſued a terrible Fight, wherein many fell on both ſides, but more of the *Turks*; who truſting to their Agility of Body, were not able to endure

Hunniades *beats the* Turks.

endure the Shock of the Men at Arms, ſo that they were overthrown in Heaps, and miſerably ſlain. This *Iſa* obſerving, and that the *Hungarians* fought courageouſly, as Men almoſt in poſſeſſion of an aſſured Victory, he fled to *Sinderovia*, and his Men followed; but were purſued cloſe all the way, and moſt of them ſlain or taken priſoners.

Hunniades was mightily extoll'd for his Victory and Succeſs by *Vladiſlaus* and the whole Country; but not long after he obtain'd a far greater in *Tranſylvania*: for *Amurath* grieved at his Loſſes, ſent a Baſſa, call'd *Meſites*, a Man of great Wiſdom, Experience and Valour, ſuddenly with a puiſſant Army by the way of *Walachia Tranſalpine*, to invade *Tranſylvania*; who paſſing the *Danube* from *Servia*, ſuddenly entred *Hunniades* his Country, ſparing neither Age, Sex, nor any thing elſe that came in his way. But *Hunniades* finding he he was not for the preſent in a condition to oppoſe him, fled to *Alba Julia*, to his old Friend *George Lepe*, Biſhop of that City, where while he was raiſing a tumultuary Army, the Enemy approached them with all their Booty and Priſoners; which ſo grieved *Hunniades* and the old Biſhop to ſee, that tho they were not comparable to the *Turks* in ſtrength, yet chuſing rather to die honourably in the defence of their Country, than to ſee the utter Deſolation of it, they advanced unadviſedly againſt their Enemy, and fell quickly into ſuch an Ambuſh of Horſe and Foot, that they were like to be beſet on every ſide, and the beſt ſhift they could make was to fly back with all ſpeed into the City, which they providentially did with little loſs. Now the Biſhop being thrown by his Horſe as he was about to take a neighbouring River, was trodden upon by him, and ſlain by the Enemy, who now deſtroyed all the Country with Fire and Sword that was yet unſpoiled: But while the Baſſa in great Pride was returning full of Spoil, *Hunniades*, who all this while was buſy to get a tumultuary Army together, and had perſuaded the *Szekheli* to take up Arms with him in defence of their Wives and Children, laid wait for a proper Place and Opportunity to fall upon the Baſſa, who being told that he was with a great Power following, and now near at hand; it's ſaid he ſhould proudly anſwer the Meſſenger, Let him come, and

Hunniades flies.

Surprized by the Turks

with

with the Spoil of himself enrich the Victory. This being told *Hunniades* by one *John* that was his Spy, and that the Bassa had given a strict charge throughout his Army, that they should above all things in the beginning of the Battle attack the Person of *Hunniades*; for which end he had appointed some of his best Soldiers, to whom he gave certain Signs whereby they might know both him and his Horse: there was one *Simon Kenrene*, a valiant Gentleman, who took upon him on this occasion willingly to personate *Hunniades*, and for that purpose was attended with some Troops of choice Horse. In the mean time *Hunniades* thought of all the ways he could to attack the Enemy; and finding a proper Opportunity, he fell with that Fury and Suddenness upon them, that they had not time to draw into order of Battle, but were glad to fight confusedly as they could, and even with great Obstinacy on both sides; during which some of the best Troops of the *Turks* espying the Counterfeit *Hunniades*, advanced upon him and his Followers with great Fury, between whom ensued a bloody Battel, insomuch as if in that very Place was to have been try'd the whole Fortune of the Day. But the *Turks* at last prevailing, after they had killed those that were about him, at length slew him also; yet for all this, the brave *Hunniades* being still alive, he rode up and down his Army to encourage his Men, sometimes with new Supplies encouraging those that were overcharg'd and ready to fly, another time with chearful Words stopping those who had already turned their backs, and every where performing the Part both of a great General and a valiant Soldier, as the Necessity of Time and Place did require. Now in the Heat of this Battel, which inclined yet to neither side, the *Transylvanian* Prisoners in the *Turkish* Camp, with unanimous Consent brake their Bonds, and taking up such Arms as came next to hand, fell upon their Keepers, and slew a great many of them; by the breaking out of which Prisoners the *Turks* beginning to be out of hope of Victory, began to give way, and at length fled outright, being followed by the *Hungarians* with a most terrible Execution: in which Chase, *Mesites* himself and his Son were both slain, and the Pursuit continued four days longer, even to the Top of the *Alps*. The *Turks* lost 20000 Men in this Action,

Hunniades *his great Victory over the* Turks.

Action, and the *Hungarians* about 3000; beſides all the Booty, Tents, Baggage and Priſoners of the former, fell into the *Hungarians* hands, who celebrated the Victory with Thankſgivings to God, and great Acclamations of Joy: and *Hunniades* ſent a large Cart drawn by ten Horſes, laden with *Turks* Heads and Standards to King *Uladiſlaus* and the Deſpot of *Servia* as a Preſent, who incouraged *Hunniades* mightily in the Proſecution of his great Enterprize, whoſe Fame began already to ſpread it ſelf every where throughout *Europe*.

Now this Overthrow, and eſpecially the Revolt of *Moldavia* and *Walachia*, troubled the Sultan at *Adrianople* very much; to revenge which, he ſent an Army under *Shech Abedin* Baſſa an Eunuch, but good Commander, into *Walachia*, there to do all the Miſchief he could, as alſo in *Moldavia*, and afterwards to break into *Tranſylvania*. Accordingly the Baſſa paſſing the *Danube* with 80000 Men, whereof 4000 were *Janizaries*, entred *Walachia* with all Fury, and dividing his Army into two Bodies, ravaged the Country every where, burnt their Towns and Villages, and ſpared neither Age nor Sex, tho the People for the moſt part were retired to the Mountains and ſtrong Holds. From *Walachia* the *Turks* paſſed over the Mountains into *Tranſylvania*, where *Hunniades* with an Army of 15000 choice Soldiers was ready to encounter him; but tho the number was very diſproportionate, and that the *Turk* knew this very well, yet he thought it not beſt to engage *Hunniades* in one front, for fear of confounding ſo great a Multitude, but to divide his Army into Battalions, and ſo to fight by degrees, and in good order, whereby to make the beſt of his Men; or if he could not do that, then with his Multitude to hem in the Chriſtians. *Hunniades* on the other ſide commanded his Soldiers above all things to keep their order, and by no means to ſuffer themſelves to be divided by the Enemy; and next day being advanced to a place called *Vaſcape*, both Armies by break of day began to diſlodg. There *Hunniades* by a notable Speech to his Soldiers, encouraged them from the Motives of their Religion, Preſervation of their Wives, Children, and their All, to ſtand ſtoutly to it; while the Baſſa on his part did no leſs to his Men, whom he exhorted

Walachia ravag'd by the Turks.

to be mindful of their former Victories, the Valour of their Anceſtors, Weakneſs of the Enemy, and the like; and in ſhort told them, that having overcome *Hunniades*, (whom he confeſs'd was the only valiant Chriſtian Commander he had met with) nothing thence after ſhould be able to ſtand in their way, or obſtruct their farther Conqueſt. Then having ſet his Battel in order, and *Hunniades* done the like, having caſt his Men in the Front into the form of a Wedg, and the Signal being given, they fell furiouſly to it on both ſides. The *Turks* truſting to the Multitude of their nimble light Horſe, fiercely with their light Staves and crooked Scimiters fell upon the Chriſtians light Horſe, wherein many fell on both ſides; tho the Wedg-Battel the *Turks* could not break, but received great Damage from them. In the mean time the light Horſe in the Wings fought courageouſly, and with a like hope; but the *Turks* being more numerous and better skilled that way, forced them to retreat to the Men at Arms. Here the Fortune of the *Turks* began to ſtop, and both Parties terribly engaged; but the *Turks* light Horſe ſuffered very much, ſo that the *Turks* now in both the Wings began to faint: yet the Janizaries and ſome light Horſe fetching a compaſs, and hemming in the Men at Arms that made up the main Battel of the Chriſtians, fell on furiouſly, cut off their Horſes Legs with their Scimiters, and there made a terrible Slaughter of the Riders, who returned the ſame Deſtruction upon the Janizaries, wherein, in ſhort, moſt of them were ſlain. All which the Baſſa obſerving, and thinking to tire out the Chriſtians, he charged them with a freſh Body of Men from the Rear, and ordered them to hem in the Enemy, with a vain Boaſt that it would be the laſt Battel the *Hungarians* would ever fight.

Hunniades *overthrows the* Turks.

Hunniades on the other ſide ſuffering his Men to be partly environed by the *Turks*, cunningly cauſed the Waggoners, with the armed Carts and Waggons, to thruſt on behind the Enemy, who renewed the Battel with great fury; but finding the right Wing hemm'd in with the Waggons, and themſelves ſeverely aſſaulted with Shot, Darts, and other miſſive Inſtruments from thence, they firſt began to faint, then to fly, tho to no purpoſe, for they were ſo encloſed that they periſhed every Man of them; while thoſe in the left Wing

Wing made the beſt of their way to eſcape, and the *Hungarians* to purſue them: ſo that of this great Army of the *Turks*, what with one and another thing, ſcarce one half returned over the *Danube*. The Priſoners were 5000, the Standards a hundred, but the Spoil incredible; ſo that every one was enriched in *Hunniades*'s Army, who when he had given thanks to God, the Giver of Victories, and hung up ſome of the *Turkiſh* Colours at *Vaſcape* where this famous Battel was fought, he afterwards went to *Buda*, to preſent *Uladiſlaus* with the Enſigns, part of the Spoil, and to declare unto him the Particulars of the Victory.

Now *Uladiſlaus* being not ignorant how much this late Overthrow was reſented by *Amurath*, who would not fail to ſeek Revenge upon the Chriſtians for it; he aſſembled the States of his Kingdom, to whom he propoſed the Danger they were in from the invading *Turks*, and excited them to make all due Proviſion for their own Security, and to oppoſe the Enemy: who were not a little diſpoſed thereunto alſo by the notable Speech of *Julian*, Cardinal of St. *Angelo*, the Pope's Legate, and the miſerable Supplications and Tears of the Deſpot of *Servia*, who ſet forth unto them the Cruelty of the *Turks* in moſt pathetick Terms, and told them, they were divided from the *Turks* but by the *Save*, which might oftentimes be waded over in Summer-time, and was hard frozen in Winter, and ſo to be paſſed over; that the Country beyond the *Danube* lay all open to them, and that himſelf who was ſometime the rich King of *Servia*, was forced to fly firſt to *Raguſa*, and thence into *Hungary*, from which the barbarous King now demanded Tribute, that he might have a Pretence to invade it. Having ſaid this, and much more to the ſame purpoſe, he with Tears trickling down his aged Face, deſired the King, and all of them, not to let ſlip that fair Opportunity, and neither by Cowardice nor Negligence, to break off the Courſe of their good Fortune and Victory; beſides he promiſed a great Sum of Mony himſelf towards defraying the Charges of the War, and offer'd them great Supplies both of Men and Mony alſo from divers other Chriſtian Princes. Upon all which they reſolved the King ſhould engage in Perſon in that War, fell to raiſing of Troops, and ſent Embaſſadors to the Emperor and

other Princes, to ſeek their Aid againſt the common Enemy; who moſtly excuſed themſelves, tho divers Perſons out of *France* and *Germany* came voluntarily and ingaged in that War. Hereupon the King on the firſt of *May* ſeetting out from *Buda*, marched on till he came in ſight of *Bulgaria*, and at a Place called *Cobis*, over againſt *Sinderovia*, paſſed the *Danube* with his Army, which was now grown very great, and ſo came directly to *Sophia* in the Frontiers of *Bulgaria*, which he eaſily took, and burnt, as he did all the adjacent Towns and Villages, to the terrour of the reſt; and ſending five hundred Men over the *Morava* for Intelligence, they hapning to take four of the *Turkiſh* Scouts, underſtood there were 2000 *Turks* near, who being not able to encounter them, they precipitated their Retreat, ſo that many of them were drowned in the River: But the *Turks* obſerving a great Body of Horſe on the other ſide on the Top of a Hill, where the King was a hunting, they retreated. The King paſſed the River next day, and underſtanding by his Scouts, that the *Turks* had laid ſome Ambuſhes hard by for him, *Hunniades* was ſent next night with 10000 choice Horſe to ſurprize them, and being by his Spies brought very near them, in the firſt Watch of the Night, the Moon by chance, as favouring his Attempts, then began to ſhine, which gave him the Opportunity to ſee how they lay, and to enter their Camp by the way they were moſt likely to fly if they ſhould be routed. The *Turks* buried in Sleep and Security, being thus ſuddenly, and with a mighty Noiſe and Outcry ſet upon, had much ado to prepare themſelves to fight; and at the firſt Encounter they did rather make a ſtir than fight. But when they heard that *Hunniades* was there, they preſently fled, and were every where miſerably ſlain by themſelves and the Enemy, who held them in chaſe all that night, and when day came, the Remnant of them run the ſame Fate as the reſt; ſo that there periſhed in this Action 30000 *Turks*, beſides 4000 made priſoners, with a great many Colours, and all the Booty of the Camp. *Hunniades*, after this Victory, was received by the King and Deſpot with extraordinary Honours, and his Name celebrated every where for the moſt famous Captain in the World.

Sophia *taken by* Uladiſlaus.

Hunniades *kills* 30000 Turks.

Hun-

Hunniades, to whom the Command of the Army was given, after this marched on, and took all ſuch Towns in *Bulgaria* as ſtood in their way, which by reaſon of their Religion, being Chriſtians, and Language, which was like the *Poliſh*, were eaſily yielded to *Hunniades*: but being come to Mount *Hæmus*, in order to enter into *Thrace*, and the Winter Weather now come, they learned by their Spies that the Paſſages over it were cloſed up with great Stones, Timber, and the like things, ſo ſtrongly as not eaſily to be forced; wherefore *Hunniades* upon *Chriſtmas*-Eve, came to the other, by which the River *Saltria* runs, which he found likewiſe ſhut. So that the Army being diſcouraged herewith, as alſo with the Hunger and Cold they ſuſtained, had certainly broke up and retired, had not *Hunniades* by many Arguments kept them in their Duty, or at leaſt ſome ſort of Suſpenſe, till it happen'd that News was brought them by the Scouts, of the *Turks* Approach, whom *Hunniades* with ſome Horſe made to retire eight ſeveral times, that he encounter'd them: but in retiring back from the impregnable Mountain, the King (who was there in perſon) with the greateſt part of the Army, went before, being followed by *Hunniades* and the Deſpot a good Day's March; which encouraged the *Turks* to come down from the Mountains, under the Command of *Carambey* Baſſa of *Romania*, a Man of great Courage, and ambitious of Honour, and follow the Chriſtians at the heels, till they came to Mount *Canobiza*, part of *Hæmus*: where *Hunniades* and the Deſpot ſeeing they muſt come to a Battel, notwithſtanding they were much inferiour in number to the Enemy by reaſon of the King's Abſence with the other Troops, they prepared for it as well as they could, and valiantly received the Charge of the *Turks*, who fought moſt deſperately, as did the Chriſtians alſo on the other ſide, eſpecially the *Poliſh* Men at Arms, and the *Hungarian* light Horſe; and *Carambey* the *Turkiſh* General, to do him juſtice, did more than could well be expected from Man that terrible Day, till at length being deceived by the Snow, he fell into a Bog, wherein his Horſe ſtuck, and where he was taken by a common Soldier, as were alſo divers other great Men, and the *Turks* utterly routed. *Hunniades* ſeeing *Carambey*

led bound by the Soldier, inſtead of 10 Ducats the Fellow asked for him, gave him 400, and ſo ſent him to his Tent, whither the Deſpot coming that night, and ſeeing ſo brave a Man ſtanding by the Fire-ſide amongſt the reſt, he asked him ſeveral Queſtions in *Turkiſh*; and ſo gueſſing what he was, he asked *Hunniades* how he would ranſom him? who ſaid, he coſt him 400 Ducats, but that he valued him at 40000, which the Deſpot offer'd to pay him. Thus ended this famous Battel, that was ſtill render'd the more remarkable by the Revolt of *Scanderbeg* from the *Turks*, which contributed to the Overthrow of the Infidels: But of him more preſently.

Scanderbeg *revolts from the* Turks.

The Chriſtians fluſh'd with the Succeſs of this Victory, would needs attempt the Paſſage of Mount *Hæmus*; but they found it an inſuperable Difficulty, and therefore were forced to retire: and the Army being at the ſame time pinched ſeverely with Hunger and Cold, they thought it the moſt adviſable courſe to march home. But the *Turks* continually moleſted their Retreat, till being come into a thick Wood full of Incumbrances, their Rear was fiercely charged by the Infidels; which raiſed a Tumult in the reſt of the Army, and was the occaſion of the loſs of ſome Men in the Bogs and queachy places they fell into there, as well as by the Enemy. But the King with the Army at length arriv'd at *Belgrade*, and thence went to *Buda*, being receiv'd every where with great Acclamations of Joy for the famous Actions done by them; and where at preſent we ſhall leave them, and give ſome account of the famous *Scanderbeg*, whoſe Birth and Flight we have already mention'd, but now ſhall come to the particulars of the latter, which are worth obſerving.

Scanderbeg in the Confuſion of the late Battel having before communicated to ſome of his truſty Friends, and eſpecially his Nephew *Ameſa*, his Brother *Repoſius*'s Son, his deſign to revolt, had his eye continually upon the Baſſa's principal Secretary, whom he with his Friends cloſely follow'd, as he fled from the Slaughter; and when he found his opportunity, ſlew all the *Turks* about him, and ſeizing the Secretary, forced him to write a counterfeit Letter, as from the Baſſa to the Governour of *Croia*, commanding him in the Sultan's Name to deliver the City and Gariſon to *Scanderbeg*, who

who was to ſucceed him; and when he had ſo done, ſlew him. After which being attended by about 3000 *Epirot* Soldiers, who were ready to follow his Fortune, and loved the Liberty of their Country, he march'd with incredible celerity into the upper Country of *Dibra* in the Borders of *Epirus*, about 70 Miles from *Croia*; where ſtaying but one day, he went from thence with 300 Perſons only, as if they had been his Domeſticks, for *Croia*; and in the mean time order'd the reſt to march by by-ways, till they came as near *Croia* as poſſible unperceiv'd. But when himſelf was come near the City, he ſent *Ameſa* with two Servants only before, to notify his arrival to the Governour; and acted his part ſo well, that the Governour left *Croia* next day, and all his Family, and ſet out towards *Adrianople*, leaving *Scanderbeg* in poſſeſſion of the Place, who in the dead of the Night following, found a way to bring the Soldiers of *Dibra* into the City: and for the ſpeedy Suppreſſion of the *Turkiſh* Gariſon, he with the reſt ſet upon the *Turks* that were on the guard, and ſlew them; and afterwards diſpatched the reſt in their Houſes and Quarters, wherein he was aſſiſted by the Chriſtian Citizens: ſo that in a few hours time there were none of them left alive, but ſuch as were willing to turn Chriſtians. This done, *Scanderbeg* preſently ſent *Ameſa* to *Dibra*, and other Meſſengers into all parts of *Epirus* to diſperſe the News, which made the whole Country up in Arms without delay, when they ſlew all the *Turks* they met with; and in that Fury the late Governour of *Croia*, and all his Retinue, were ſet upon by the way, and ſlain.

Scanderbeg *poſſeſſes himſelf of* Croia.

This done, *Scanderbeg*'s next buſineſs was to remove the *Turkiſh* Gariſons put by *Amurath* into every ſtrong City; and having in a ſhort time got an Army of 12000 Men together, he march'd from *Croia* to *Petrella*, about 25 miles diſtance from each other: which Place, tho ſtrong by Nature, and well provided every way, yet he ſending a cunning Fellow, and one of his Followers out of *Hungary*, to the Town, he told his tale ſo well, by repreſenting to them the late Loſſes of the *Turks*, and of their being unthoughtful at preſent of relieving them, and made ſuch Propoſals to them from *Scanderbeg*, that the Governour deliver'd it up to him.

Petrella *deliver'd to* Scanderbeg.

him. So that *Scanderbeg*, to follow his good fortune, march'd in such haste for *Petra Alba*, as if the City had been running away from him; and he had scarcely well encamp'd about it, but the Governour terrified with the Fortune of *Croia*, gave it up on the same terms as were granted *Petrella* (which was the safe departure of the Garison) and the same were exactly performed. Thence he directed his march to *Stelluſa*, a strong City of *Æmathia*, 50 miles distant from *Croia*, pleasantly situated on the top of a Hill; and having encamped before it the first night, he next morning sent in a Messenger with an Offer of the same terms as the other places had; which the greatest part of the Garison accepted, who forc'd the Governour and the rest of the *Turks* to a Surrendry; but fearing to return to *Amurath*, some of them staid with *Scanderbeg*, and turn'd Christians. This made all the weaker Places in the Kingdom quickly surrender; only *Sfetigrade*, or the *Holy City*, situate in the upper Country of *Dibra*, on the top of a high Hill, stood out, tho the kind Offers to the Garison by *Scanderbeg*, made many of them hesitate; and even the Governour himself, who turning from *Scanderbeg*'s Messenger, and in great perplexity telling the Citizens and Soldiers, *Worthy Men and valiant Soldiers, what is your pleasure, or what answer shall we make to these our Enemies Demands?* A rough Soldier there present, brandishing his naked Sword in his right Hand, answered, *Nothing was to less purpose than with premeditated words to seek to terrify valiant Minds with the Fortune of* Croia, Stelluſa, *&c. For as the Faces of Men differed, so also did their Minds and Dispositions; every Man directed his own Actions: They had not prescribed Laws to the Garisons of* Petrella *and* Stelluſa, *neither were they to prescribe any to them. Brave Minds disdained to imitate other Men in their honest Actions, much less in their Cowardice. Let* Scanderbeg *go on, and kill the Governour of* Stelluſa, *and our Fellow-Soldiers before our Faces; did they think that they should die in their Bodies?* &c. Then turning himself to the Messenger, he said, *Carry back to thy Master this Answer from a common Soldier, That if he seeks to impose these Conditions upon us, let him once more make bare that Arm of his, which Men of Courage fear not as much as he thinks: He may perhaps force, but he shall*

Petra Alba *yielded.*

ſhall never perſuade us to them; *neither do we find thy Maſter* Scanderbeg *to be the Man he has been repreſented, ſince he keeps the Governour of* Stelluſa *in Bonds, and unjuſtly threatens him with Death.* This Anſwer being brought to *Scanderbeg*, he ſmilingly ſaid, *Undoubtedly he is a valiant Soldier, if his Deeds be anſwerable to his Words*; *but if my Force fail me not, I'll make him happy amongſt the Ghoſts of the Gariſon of* Stelluſa: whom, with the Governour, he put to death before their faces, tho to no purpoſe; for the Place held it out reſolutely, and *Scanderbeg* retired to *Croia*, after he had in a little more than a month recovered the reſt of *Epirus*.

He ſome time after ravaged *Macedonia*, and grew ſo formidable, that *Alis* Baſſa, with an Army of 40000 Men, was ſent againſt him, and to ſubdue *Epirus*; which *Scanderbeg* was not ignorant of, and therefore provided ſeaſonably for the ſame. However, tho he might have drawn a vaſt Army together from his own Country and Allies, he only with 8000 Horſe and 7000 Foot march'd and encamp'd near a Wood in the lower Country of *Dibra*; and having placed *Gnee Muſachee* and *Ameſa*, with 3000 Men in ambuſh, *Scanderbeg* next morning drew his Army in Battalia, poſting *Tanuſius* in the left Wing with 1500 Horſe, and as many Foot, and *Moſes* in the right with the like number, while himſelf commanded the main Battel, and *Uranocontes*, a famous Commander, the Rear. Now the *Turks*, after having charged *Scanderbeg* with a ſmall Body of Horſe, retired, in hopes to diſorder his Battel; but he took better precaution. Then they joined Battel in earneſt, when *Muſachee* and *Ameſa* iſſuing out of the Wood, fell upon the *Turks* Rear, which put them very hard to it, and they *Scanderbeg* at the ſame time, till *Uranocontes* bringing on freſh Troops out of the Rear, made ſuch ſlaughter of the *Turks*, as forced them to retire; and the Chriſtians purſued them ſo fiercely, that 22000 of them fell that day, beſides 2000 Priſoners, with 24 Standards; whereas the Chriſtians loſt not above 120 Men. Hereupon *Scanderbeg* ravaged *Macedonia* again, while *Alis* Baſſa had much ado to ſave his Head from the Reſentment of old *Amurath*; who diſcontented with this and the other Overthrow given him by *Huniades*, would have kill'd himſelf, had not *Cali* Baſſa inter-

The Battel between Alis *Baſſa and* Scanderbeg.

Turks *overthrown*

interpoſed, who adviſed him to make a Peace with *Uladiſlaus*, which was concluded for ten years, upon very honourable Terms to the Chriſtians: for *Amurath* was obliged by it to withdraw his Forces from *Servia*, and reſtore his two Sons to the Deſpot, to lay no claim to *Moldavia*, nor part of *Bulgaria*, not to moleſt *Hungary*, and to pay 40000 Ducats for *Carembey*'s Ranſom. After which, *Amurath* turn'd his Forces againſt the King of *Caramania*, to revenge the Injuries done him by that Prince, while he was engaged in the *Hungarian* War; and having brought him to ſue for Peace, and promiſe a yearly Tribute, he granted him Peace: which was not ſo much a Satisfaction to *Amurath*, as the Death of his eldeſt Son *Aladin* in this War, by a Fall from his Horſe as he was hunting, was a Mortification to him. And now *Amurath* being wearied with the Toils and Diſappointments of Empire, reſign'd up his Dominions to his Son *Mahomet* then about 15 years old; and appointing *Cali* Baſſa to be his Guardian, and one *Choſroe* a learned Perſon to be his Counſellor with the other, he retired with *Hamze-Beg*, a Nobleman he moſt eſteem'd, to *Magneſia*, and there ſpent the remainder of his days in a kind of ſolitary monaſtick Life. In the mean time divers great Princes, as well *Mahometans* as Chriſtians, knowing what diſſervice the late League concluded between *Uladiſlaus* and *Amurath* would be to them if the ſame continued, they uſed their utmoſt efforts to induce the King to violate the ſame, and by their Embaſſadors and otherwiſe, laid many cunning Arguments down to compaſs it; wherein none appear'd more active and prevalent than Cardinal *Julian* the Pope's Legate, who in a long ſophiſtical Speech endeavour'd to convince the King and the *Hungarians* that it was their Duty, as well as Intereſt, to be guilty of Breach of Faith in this caſe: and having at length brought them over to a compliance, abſolved them (another Popiſh Trick) in the Pope's Name from the Oath they had given, and Promiſe they had made. And even *Hunniades*, and the Deſpot, who were the principal Authors of the late Peace, unfortunately were drawn in to give their conſent thereunto; notwithſtanding the *Turk* (who had heard of theſe Proceedings) did every thing that might be expected from a juſt Prince

Amurath's Retirement.

Breach of Faith in the Chriſtians.

in

in reference to the fulfilling of his Covenant. And now *Vladiſlaus* writes to *Scanderbeg* King of *Epirus* to excite him to come and join his Forces with him againſt the common Enemy; which the other, as knowing how adapt the opportunity was, promiſed to do by the general conſent of the *Albanian* Princes his Confederates, and to join him in convenient time with 30000 good Soldiers; and in order thereunto being upon his march, as far as the Borders of *Servia*, he found the Paſſes of that rough Country ſtopt up by *George* the Deſpot, who being but lately reſtored unto his Kingdom by *Vladiſlaus*, had not chang'd his mind, and treacherouſly clave to the *Turk* his Son-in-law, and *Scanderbeg* had no other courſe left than to force his way thro. But in the mean time *Vladiſlaus*, prick'd forward by the continual Sollicitations of *Julian*, having drawn together a great Army out of *Poland* and *Hungary*, paſſed the *Danube* in the beginning of *November*, and entring into *Bulgaria*, came to *Nicopolis* the Capital City, whoſe Suburbs he burnt: at what time *Dracula*, Vayvod of *Walachia*, a Man of great Experience in martial Affairs, deſired him, conſidering the ſmallneſs of his number, to retreat, ſaying he had ſufficiently learnt by his own Loſſes the Power of the *Turkiſh* Sultan, who was frequently wont to carry more Men with him into the field a hunting or hawking, than were in the King's Camp: But his and moſt of the other great Commanders Counſels, who ſided with him, were all by the Cardinal put by, who talk'd of mighty things to the King, and miſrepreſented *Dracula*'s Advice to him at a ſtrange manner; who tho very ſenſible thereof, yet he generouſly left his Son with a Body of 4000 choice Horſe to ſerve him, and at his departure preſented him with two luſty young Men as Guides, and with two Horſes of incredible ſwiftneſs: then with Tears in his Eyes ſaid, *Take this ſmall Gift in good part, as a poor Refuge to flee unto, if your Fortune happen to fail you, which I tremble to think on; I pray God they be given in vain, ſo they ſhall if my Prayers may prevail: yet if Neceſſity ſhall force you to uſe them, you ſhall find them ſerviceable in time of need.*

Vladiſlaus marching on towards *Thrace*, took divers places by the way, of all which *Amurath* being advertiſed, and apprehenſive of the danger, he was per-

perſuaded to leave his Retirement; but coming to the *Helleſpont*, and finding his Paſſage ſtopt by the *Venetians* and Pope's Gallies, he went to the *Thracian Boſphorus*, and got over with his whole Army, as ſome ſaid, by the help of the *Genoeſe* Merchants; and ſo joining with his *European* Troops, march'd on for ſeven days, till he came within four miles of *Varna*, a City pleaſantly ſituated upon the *Euxine* in *Bulgaria*, which a little before the Chriſtians had taken, with other places, and were now here encamp'd, but ſo far (even the forwardeſt of them before for the Expedition) now diſcourag'd with the approach of the *Turks*, that they were for nothing ſo much as retreating: which they had done, had not *Hunniades* uſed his Arguments, and ſaid, it was not for the King's Honour, firſt to invade his Enemies Dominions, and preſently to turn his back upon the report of his approach. The drawing up of the Army was committed to the Skill of *Hunniades*, who with great judgment ſecured one ſide of it with a Moraſs, and the other with Carriages, and a ſteep Hill in the Rear; ſo that the Chriſtians, who were inferiour in number, could not be hemm'd in by the Enemy, and charg'd no way but in front. At laſt the two Armies engaged, and with great Courage and various Fortune maintain'd the Fight on both ſides a long time, till the Earth was ſtain'd with the Blood of the ſlain. At length the Victory began to incline to the Chriſtians, for *Hunniades* with his *Tranſylvanian* and *Walachian* Horſe routed both the Wings of the *Turks*; ſo that *Amurath* himſelf was ſo diſcouraged, that he would have fled out of the main Battel, had not a common Soldier ſtopt and reprov'd him for his Cowardice: but the Chriſtians diſorderly purſuing the Chaſe, left their Flank open to the *Turks*, ſo that they were not gone far before they were ſtoutly attack'd by a great part of the *Turkiſh* Army, placed for that purpoſe in an adjacent Valley; in which Action *Leſco* a famous *Hungarian* Commander, with the Biſhops of *Waradin* and *Agria*, and many others were loſt. Then the Cardinal, with ſome of the beſt Commanders, retreating towards their former Poſt, were ſharply attack'd by the *Turks*, but reliev'd by the King and *Hunniades*, who forc'd them to retreat, and even be ready to fly; which *Amurath* obſerving with great Concern

The great Battel of Varna.

of

of Mind, and ſeeing the Picture of the Crucifix in the Colours of the Chriſtian Volunteers, he pull'd out of his Boſom the late League, and holding it in his hand with his Eyes lift up to Heaven, he ſaid, *Behold, thou crucified Chriſt! this is the League thy Chriſtians in thy Name made with me, which they have unjuſtly violated: Now if thou art a God, as they ſay thou art, and as we dream, revenge the Wrong now done unto thy Name and me, and ſhew thy Power unto thy prejudiced People, who in their Actions deny thee their God.* The Janizaries, who all this while ſtood faſt with their old Sultan as his laſt Refuge, came now in; between whom and the Chriſtians there began a moſt cruel and terrible Fight, inſomuch that the Victory continued doubtful a long time, till at length the *Turks* began to give way in that part of the Battel where the King and *Hunniades* fought, but in the left Wing they ſo prevailed over the Chriſtians, that they were even ready to have fled; and here *Uladiſlaus* with more Courage than Caution breaking in upon the Janizaries, was ſo hemmed in by them, and oppreſs'd by the multitude, that he was ſlain, and his Head preſented to *Amurath*, who preſently ordered it to be put upon the point of a Lance, and Proclamation made that it was the Head of the Chriſtian King; and the ſame was afterwards carried thro the Cities of *Macedon* and *Greece*, as a Trophy of the *Turks* Victory. *Hunniades* after he had in vain attempted bravely to reſcue the King's Body, with much difficulty made the beſt of his way thro thick Woods and over Mountains for the *Danube*, with a ſmall Body of *Walachian* Horſe into that Country; and was there, according to ſome Authors, taken priſoner by *Dracula* Prince of that Country, on whom he was afterwards reveng'd. *Julian* the Cardinal, Author of that perfidious War, miſerably periſh'd alſo of his Wounds upon his Retreat, and ſo did a great many of the Soldiers, who were ſlain by the Enemy, others drown'd or ſtarv'd with Hunger or Cold, and many more made Slaves: but as for the real number loſt on both ſides, the ſame is not certain, tho this they agree in, that of the Chriſtian Army, which was but ſmall, ſcarce a third eſcaped, and that the *Turks* Loſs was really greater, it amounting to 30000 Men; which is the more probable, for *Amurath* being asked why he was not

Amurath's *Prayer to Chriſt.*

Uladiſlaus *ſlain.*

not merrier after ſo great a Victory, anſwer'd, *That he deſired not to win many ſuch at ſo dear a rate:* yet in memorial thereof he erected a Pillar in the place where the King was ſlain, with an Inſcription of all that was then done; which (as ſome ſay) is ſtill in being. And thus terminated that great Battel of *Varna*, which was fought *Novemb* 10. 1444.

Amurath *reſigns again, then reaſſumes his Kingdom.*

Amurath returning from *Varna* to *Adrianople*, reſigns his Dominions a ſecond time to *Mahomet*, and retired to *Magneſia*, as before; but in a little time growing weary of Solitude, or elſe ſollicited thereunto by *Cali* Baſſa, and other great Men, he return'd to *Adrianople* again, and re-aſſumed the Government, to the great mortification of his Son *Mahomet*. In the mean time *Scanderbeg*, who was ſtill ſticking in the Borders of *Servia*, when he heard of the Misfortune of *Uladiſlaus*, and his Expedition, return'd to *Epirus*, but firſt brake into and ravag'd ſome part of the *Deſpot*'s Country, and then facilitated the return of divers *Hungarians* and *Polanders*, who repaired to him for Aſſiſtance in that kind; of all which *Amurath* having notice, as alſo of the great Injuries done by him in *Macedonia*, and the Frontiers of his Dominions bordering upon *Epirus*, yet being ſtill in dread of the *Hungarians*, and himſelf clogged with Age and deſirous of Reſt, and at the ſame time ſenſible of the Unfitneſs of *Mahomet* his Son for Government, and to cope with the perpetual good fortune of *Scanderbeg*, and Malice of *Hunniades*, he thought it beſt to turn all his Forces upon him: but to try firſt whether he could draw him into ſome diſhonourable Peace for a time, that he might afterwards at his leiſure the better oppreſs him, he writ to him a Letter full of grievous Threatnings, and ſome feigned Courteſies; but *Scanderbeg*, after he had firſt deeply ſounded the Meſſenger concerning his Maſter's real Intentions towards him, and ſhew'd him all his Camp with the ſtrength thereof, to intimate he was no ways afraid of his Maſter's Greatneſs, complain'd grievouſly of *Amurath*'s Cruelty and Perfidy towards his Father, Brethren, and himſelf: then writ him a ſutable Anſwer, and ſo full of Reſolution, that the Sultan much wonder'd at it in ſo ſmall a Prince; and often ſtroaking his white Beard, as his manner was when he was thorowly angry, he with a diſſembled Cheerfulneſs of Counte-

nance

nance ſaid, *Thou deſireſt, wicked Man, thou deſireſt the Title of ſome honourable Death; we will give it thee, believe us, we will give it thee, believe us; we our ſelves will be preſent at the burying of our Foſter Child, and in Perſon, tho uninvited, honour the funeral Solemnity of the great King of* Epirus; *that thou ſhalt never complain againſt the damned Ghoſts, that thou didſt die a baſe obſcure kind of Death.* But not being under Circumſtances at that time to turn his whole Power upon *Epirus*, he ſent *Teriſes* one of his Commanders with 9000 choice Horſe, to keep *Scanderbeg* in Action; and this was ſo expeditiouſly done, that it was thought he muſt have been in the heart of *Epirus*, before *Scanderbeg* could have notice of his march: but herein they were miſtaken, for *Scanderbeg* was ready, and having placed 1500 Foot in ambuſh upon the craggy Mountains leading into the Vale of the *Movea*, thro which the *Turks* muſt paſs into *Epirus*, with 2000 Horſe alſo in a convenient Poſt, *Teriſes* deſcending from the high Mountains, was fiercely ſet upon by the ſaid Foot, and the *Turkiſh* Horſe being of little uſe there, they were ſlain like a Deer encloſed in a Toil, 760 taken priſoners, while *Teriſes* himſelf with the reſt fled, crying out as they went, *Better ſome ſaved than all loſt*; and were purſued by *Scanderbeg* into *Macedonia*.

Amurath's paſſionate Speech againſt Scanderbeg.

Amurath concern'd at this Overthrow, preſently ſent *Muſtapha*, a politick and bold Commander, with a new Supply of 6000 Men to take the Command of *Teriſes* upon him, charging him to deſtroy the Frontiers of *Epirus* and no more; who thereupon entring the Valley of *Movea*, there intrench'd himſelf upon the Aſcent of an Hill, and ſet Spies on the tops of all the high Mountains adjacent; then retaining 400 Horſe with himſelf to keep his Camp, he ſent the reſt of his Army, which was about 9000 more, to ravage the Country; but upon a Signal given to retreat upon pain of death to the Camp. The *Turks* made great havock accordingly in that great and pleaſant Vale, till at length *Scanderbeg* drawing near with 4000 Horſe and 1000 Foot, was inform'd of all the Enemy did by an *Epirote* Soldier, that after being ſorely wounded made his eſcape from the *Turks*; and ſo finding there was no Policy to be uſed againſt ſo wary an Enemy as *Muſtapha*, reſolv'd to vanquiſh him by main force. Then attacking

tacking him ſuddenly in his Trenches, before his Soldiers could come to the Camp, where a few of them who had heard the Signal came quickly with *Scanderbeg*'s Soldiers at their heels, by whom many of the *Turks* were ſlain at their entrance, and their Camp now ſtormed with utmoſt reſolution; *Muſtapha* thereupon, ſeeing his Soldiers put to the worſt, and that his Camp was not long to be defended, took horſe, and fled by the Port that was fartheſt from the Enemy; whoſe Example was follow'd by the reſt of the Soldiers as well as they could, but there were 5000 of them ſlain in the Action, and 300 taken priſoners; whereas *Scanderbeg* loſt not above 20 Horſe, and 50 Foot. The other diſperſed *Turks* hearing the tumult in the Camp, fled alſo, and many of them were ſlain. *Muſtapha* returning to *Amurath*, extoll'd *Scanderbeg*, and perſuaded the Sultan it was requiſite to ſend a much greater Power againſt him, or none at all; ſaying, that to ſend ſuch ſmall Armies, was but to afford matter for the advancement of his Glory, and the Infamy of the *Turks*; and to uſe Policy againſt him the Maſter of Policy, was but mere folly: but *Amurath* not being pleaſed with *Scanderbeg*'s Praiſes, commanded *Muſtapha* only for the preſent to recruit his Army for the defence of his Frontiers towards *Epirus*, but upon no occaſion whatever to engage in a Battel againſt *Scanderbeg*.

Scanderbeg *overthrows the* Turks.

But now we muſt leave the Affairs of *Epirus* in this ſtate, and obſerve ſomewhat concerning the Condition of the *Greeks* in *Peloponneſus* at this time, before we paſs into *Hungary* again. The *Grecians* therefore of the *Morea* having about this time fortified the *Iſthmus* of *Corinth* from Sea to Sea, with a Wall which they call'd *Hexamilum*, ſtrengthen'd with five ſtrong Caſtles, and deep Ditches; they not only now began to deny the payment of their annual Tribute to the *Turks*, but to invade ſuch Princes of *Achaia* their Neighbours as were willing to remain Tributaries: among whom, *Nicetas* Prince of *Athens*, and *Turacan* Governour of *Theſſaly* for *Amurath*, ceaſed not by continual Complaints to incenſe him againſt them; who thereupon with his Army came to *Achaia*, and thence to the *Iſthmus*, where having batter'd their Wall with great fury for four days, and made it aſſaultable, he march'd through with his Army, ravaging the Country in a terrible manner,

manner, and took ſuch a number of Priſoners, that they were ſold among the *Turks* at a very mean rate: and here *Amurath* for his pleaſure cruelly ſacrificed 600 Chriſtian Priſoners to the helliſh Ghoſt of his dead Father *Mahomet*; and then having brought them to be tributary, in his return he took the two famous Cities of *Patras* and *Sycione*. And thus ended the Year 1445. with the Liberty of the *Greeks* in *Peloponneſus*: as the next was very remarkable for the Nativity of *Bajazet* the Son of *Mahomet*, who afterwards for a long time govern'd the *Turkiſh* Empire at *Conſtantinople* with great Glory; of which more in the next Chapter. 1445.

The Affairs of the Hungarians.

Now we repair to the *Hungarians*, who after the loſs of their King at the fatal Battel of *Varna*, in a general Aſſembly of the States, choſe *Ladiſlaus*, the poſthumous Son of *Albert*, to be their King; but by reaſon of his Minority, and the Neceſſity of the Times, they made the famous *Hunniades* Protector of the Kingdom, who diſpoſed the Civil Affairs of the Commonwealth, and adminiſtred them with the utmoſt Prudence, Exactneſs, and Impartiality. But underſtanding by his Spies how old *Amurath* was raiſing a great Army in *Europe* and *Aſia* (as the common fame went) for the Invaſion of *Hungary*, he advanced in the Year of our Lord 1448, and the fourth of his Regency, accompanied with moſt of the *Hungarian* Nobility, and the Vayvod of *Walachia*, with 22000 choice Soldiers, into *Servia*, and invited the Deſpot to join with him in his Adventure; who being a Man of no Religion, and better affected towards the *Turk*, pretended many Excuſes, which ſo angred *Hunniades*, that he threatned with his own hands to be reveng'd on him, and to give away his Kingdom to a worthier Perſon, in caſe he return'd victorious: and ſo paſſing through his Kingdom, all through an Enemy's Country, he came to *Bulgaria*, the Deſpot in the mean time advertiſing the Sultan of every day's march he made, who according to his Counſel ſuffer'd *Hunniades* to enter a great way into his Country, and coming two or three days march behind him, ſo ſtopt the Paſſage that he could not poſſibly retreat without fighting. Both Armies being now come into the Plains of *Caſſova*, which is about twenty miles in length, and five in breadth, incloſed on all ſides with pleaſant Mountains in the form of an Amphi-

theater, it was obſerv'd that an old Woman, who dwelt in one of the Villages, ſhould cry with a loud Voice, *O how much I now fear the hard fortune of the Hungarians!* Almoſt in the midſt of the Plain there was a ſmall Hill, and beyond that a Tower built like a Pyramid in memory of *Amurath* I. ſlain there; which *Amurath* was afraid *Hunniades* would poſſeſs himſelf of, and ſo prove very ominous to the *Turks*, who for that reaſon haſtned the Battel. Now *Hunniades* being come to the ſaid Hill, encamp'd there, expecting *Scanderbeg* to join him every minute, as was ſaid, according to appointment, and for that reaſon declined fighting as long as he could; but being at length forced to it for want of Water and other Neceſſaries, tho ſo very much unequal to the *Turks* in number, their Army being computed at 80000 Men, and having animated his Soldiers by a notable Speech to overcome or die, while *Amurath* did the like on his part, about nine in the morning on St. *Luke*'s day the *Turks* advanc'd towards him. *Hunniades* had from the Hill where he lay ſent down both the Wings of the Army, and had in the front on both ſides before them extended ſome Troops of light Horſe to begin the Skirmiſh. In the midſt between both he had placed *Zechel* his Siſter's Son, with a ſtrong ſquare Battel of Men at Arms; and ſuch as he had kept upon the Hill for Reſerves, he barricaded with his Waggons. The Soldiers on both ſides came quickly to a cloſe Fight, which continued about three hours, when the *Turks* Battel was worſted by *Benedict Loſonicus*, who commanded the Right Wing, ſo likewiſe in the Left by *Stephen Bamffu*; but they were quickly reinforced by *Amurath* with freſh Men, ſo that the Chriſtian light Horſe, before wearied, were forced to retreat to the Men at Arms, who eaſily repulſed the greateſt Aſſaults of the *Turks*. *Hunniades* in the mean time with his Artillery from the Hill did the *Turks* great injury, which made *Amurath* draw cloſe to the Hill to ſave his Men; and this being perceived by *Hunniades*, he came down and ſent new Supplies to both the Wings, and was every where preſent where there was occaſion, gave all neceſſary orders, and perform'd the part of a good General and Soldier at the ſame time; which made the Battel grow terribly fierce, while *Amurath* was

The great Battel of Caſſova *between* Hunniades *and* Amurath *for three days.*

was not wanting on his part to ſupply all defects with freſh Troops, in hopes at length to tire out the Chriſtians; wherein he was not miſtaken, for one Battalion of the *Hungarians* was often forced to weary four or five of the *Turks* before they could be relieved, they came on ſo faſt. But after all, the *Turkiſh* Army was that day put to the worſt every where, tho the Fight ended with the night; each Army retiring within their Trenches, with reſolution to renew the Battel next day, till the Victory was determined by dint of Sword: which no ſooner appear'd, but they fell to it with freſh vigour again, tho the *Hungarians* fought not with that Strength and Courage as before, having been all of them engag'd and ſpent the firſt day, whereas there were 40000 *Turks* who fought not at all, or but very lightly: ſo that notwithſtanding *Hunniades* did all he could by his own Example, fair Words, and engaging Arguments, to rouze their Spirits, and to act the Men more than ever, and that the *Hungarians*, to give them their due, did freſh wonders againſt the Infidels, yet they had the worſt of it next day; but the third and moſt fatal day they were utterly diſcomfited, after a moſt notable Reſiſtance, and that *Zechel* and a great many of their great Commanders had gallantly loſt their Lives, and alſo their Enſigns. Which *Amurath* obſerving, he came on again with freſh Troops, and clear'd the field of them; and all they had in their Camp became a Prey to the greedy *Turks*, whom the Waggoners and wounded Soldiers there manfully reſiſted as long as they had any ſhot left, but at length were ſlain every Mother's Son. But tho this bloody Victory fell to the *Turks*, it coſt them much dearer than the Chriſtians, having loſt, according to the leaſt Computation, 34000 for 8000 of the other; but the Relation given by the *Turks* themſelves made the loſs of the Chriſtians to be 17000, and their own 40000. Moſt of the *Hungarian* Nobility fell here; ſome of the Chriſtians made their eſcape thro *Illyria*, but few thro *Servia*; neither had the Noble *Hunniades* much better fortune than the reſt, for having by uncouth and unpaſſable ways travelled three days without any ſuſtenance, and the fourth tiring his Horſe who caſt him off, he fell into the hands of two notorious Robbers, who in ſtripping him, finding a fine Gold Crucifix about

The Chriſtians diſcomfited.

Number of the ſlain.

his Neck, they quarrell'd which ſhould have it; which gave him an opportunity to kill one of them with his own Sword, and to put the other to flight. Then travelling on in a ſtarving condition, next day he met with a ſturdy Shepherd, who hearing of the Defeat, roved up and down for Booty; but being amazed with the Majeſty of *Hunniades*, and mute for a while, he at laſt bluntly asked him what he was, while the other for God's ſake begged ſomewhat of him to eat; who compaſſionating his hard fortune, gave him ſome Bread and Watter, with a few Onions, in his Cottage: and *Hunniades* would frequently after ſay, he never fared better nor more daintily in his Life than here. Thus refreſh'd, he was conducted by the Shepherd to *Sinderovia*, where he was order'd to be impriſoned by the Deſpot, but afterwards releaſed by reſtoring to the Deſpot ſuch ſtrong Towns in *Raſcia* and *Servia*, as the *Hungarians* had detained from the Deſpot, when his Kingdom was reſtored to him by *Uladiſlaus*; but he reveng'd himſelf on the Deſpot ſhortly after, by taking all that the Deſpot had in *Hungary* from him, and making him ſue for Peace.

Hunniades *taken priſoner.*

1449. However the Year following *Amurath* being inform'd how the Deſpot had ſet *Hunniades* at liberty, he was mightily incens'd againſt him, and ſent an Army to invade his Territories, who deſtroy'd his Country with Fire and Sword: He had recourſe to *Hunniades* for ſuccour, who ſo ſuddenly came in perſon to his aſſiſtance againſt the *Turks*, that being terrify'd with the ſight of his Colours, they preſently fled, and were purſued with a great ſlaughter; ſo that none of them could have eſcaped, had not the night approach'd to ſhelter them. After this Victory *Hunniades* entred *Bulgaria*, burnt *Budina* the Capital of that Country down to the ground, and thence return'd in Triumph home; where we leave him for this time, and ſee the Fate of the *Turks* elſewhere.

Now all the while that *Amurath* was moleſted thus by *Hunniades* and the *Hungarians*, *Muſtapha* lying ſtill on the Borders of *Macedonia*, as *Amurath* had commanded; there happen'd a Quarrel between the *Venetians* and *Scanderbeg*, about the Inheritance of *Lech Zachary*, a Nobleman of *Epirus*, which the *Venetians* claim'd; ſo that at laſt they fought a great Battel at the

the River *Drine*, where the *Venetians* were worſted, which *Muſtapha* obſerving, and being deſirous to retrieve his Honour againſt *Scanderbeg*, he ſollicited his Maſter to give him leave to enter into the Country, aſſuring him in a manner beforehand of the Victory. This being at length granted him, he march'd with a brave Army into *Epirus*, hoping to end the War in one Battel, of which *Scanderbeg* (who then beſieg'd *Dayna* againſt the *Venetians)* no ſooner heard, but he order'd the few Troops he had on the Frontiers to protract time; and ſelecting out of his Army 500 Horſe and 1500 Foot, all old Soldiers, he march'd to the place where his Gariſons were intrench'd in the upper Country of *Dibra*, leaving *Amaſa* in the mean time to carry on the Siege. *Muſtapha*, who was ſpoiling and burning the Country, ſince he could not draw the ſaid Troops to fight out of their Trenches, being inform'd of his Arrival by his Scouts, he quickly drew his Army together, and encamp'd at *Oronoche* within two miles of *Scanderbeg*, whoſe ſmall Army conſiſted of 4000 Horſe and 2000 Foot; whereof leaving 300 to guard the Trenches, he drew out with the reſt to fight *Muſtapha*. But while both Armies were expecting the Signal, one *Caraguſa* gallantly arm'd, coming out of the *Turkiſh* Army into the midſt of the Plain between both Armies, challeng'd aloud any Chriſtian to come out and fight him ſingly: upon which, *Paul Maneſſi*, a valiant Man in *Scanderbeg*'s Army, importuned him to let him accept the Challenge, which being granted, he preſently mounted and rode up to the *Turkiſh* Challenger; and after they had exchang'd a few words concerning the Terms of the Combat, in reſpect to the Conqueror, which was confirm'd by the Generals of both Armies, they ran with great fury at one another, and *Caraguſa* was by *Maneſſi* at the firſt encounter ſtruck thro the Head, and ſlain; who carry'd his Head and Armour to the Chriſtians Camp, as a Trophy of his Victory: which ſo encourag'd the Chriſtian Soldiers, that *Scanderbeg* advanc'd againſt the Enemy forthwith, whom he forc'd to retreat at the firſt Encounter. But the Example and Valour of *Muſtapha*, who valiantly charg'd the Chriſtians, quickly brought the *Turks* to renew the Battel, who ſtood it for a time, but giving way at laſt, *Muſtapha* and twelve

Battel betwixt Scanderbeg *and* Muſtapha.

twelve of his chief Officers were taken priſoners, and few of the common Soldiers eſcaped, ſo that they computed 10000 *Turks* were ſlain that day, and fifteen Enſigns taken, to 300 Chriſtians, beſides all their Tents and Baggage. After which, *Scanderbeg* made a Ravage in *Macedonia*, from whence he return'd to the Siege of *Dayna*, and not long after made Peace with the *Venetians*.

Some time after *Amurath* having redeem'd *Muſtapha* and the other Officers for 25000 Ducats, which *Scanderbeg* diſtributed amongſt his Soldiers, and ſoon after made another Inroad to *Macedonia*, where he ſpoiled the Country, ſo as he thought he had not left ſo much behind, as would have relieved the *Turks* Army for one day; the Sultan reſolved to ſend no more Baſſas againſt him, but to go with a Royal Army in Perſon, which he had levied out of all parts of his Dominions, but kept his deſign covert: which made all the Chriſtian Princes round begin to look about them, but *Scanderbeg* quickly perceiv'd the true deſign was againſt him; wherefore out of all the multitude he gather'd together at *Croia*, he choſe only 10000 old Soldiers, and put 1300 Men in Gariſon at *Croia*, beſides which the Citizens were thorowly furniſh'd with Arms and all other Conveniencies for the defence of the Place, of which the brave *Uranocontes* was Governour, while the reſt of the uſeleſs People of all Ranks and Sexes, were order'd to withdraw to places of ſafety; which was done with ſad Lamentations and Outcries, moſt of them retiring into the Territories of *Venice*. And then *Scanderbeg* march'd with his Army towards *Dibra*, before which he was join'd by *Moſes* with a Body of brave Horſe from *Sfetigrade* a ſtrong City of *Dibra*, when he had provided for its neceſſary defence againſt *Amurath*, who was likely to attack it the firſt of any; but ſoon after *Scanderbeg* went thither himſelf, and made a Speech to the Gariſon and People, to encourage them to make the utmoſt defence againſt the Enemy: after which he viſited the other Cities of *Epirus*, and finding all things put into a good poſture of defence, he return'd to his Army then near *Croia*.

Amurath in the mean time having got an Army of 150000 Men together at *Adrianople*, ſent 40000 Light Horſe before him to *Sfetigrade*; whereupon *Scanderbeg* with 4000 Horſe and 1000 Foot marched directly thitherward,

therward, and going privately out to ſee in what poſ- Scander-
ture the Enemy lay encamped, he in the night drew beg's *noble*
his Army under the Covert of the Woods and Vallies *Stratagem.*
as near as might be; then ſent *Moſes* and *Maſachi* his Nephew with 30 of his beſt Horſe, accoutred as if they had been but common Soldiers, but well mounted, driving before them ſome Horſes laden with Corn by a by-way, as if they had deſigned to have got privately into the City: which the *Turkiſh* Scouts diſcovering and purſuing, *Moſes* fled at firſt; but ſeeing their number, turned and ſlew five of them, purſuing the reſt into their Camp. Upon which the *Turkiſh* General ſent 4000 Horſe to purſue the Victuallers, who were decoyed by *Moſes*, pretty near *Scanderbeg*'s Army, who preſently fell upon and ſlew 2000 of them, beſides the taking of 1000 of their Horſes, with the loſs only of 22 Chriſtians. About eight days after came *Amurath* with all his Army, in the beginning of *May*, *Anno* 1449. before *Sfetigrade*, who after he had reſted a little, and well conſider'd the Strength of the Place, ſent in a Meſſenger to deſire to ſpeak with *Perlot* the Governour, and that privately by himſelf: at which the Governour laugh'd ſaying, *It's likely indeed to be a great Secret, that you would have kept not only from the hearing of my Soldiers, but from the very Light of the Day, ſince you have choſen the Night for it; but I have not learnt of my Seniors to hear any Meſſage from my Enemies by night, nor at any other time out of the hearing of the Soldiers in Gariſon, to whom* Scanderbeg *has committed the Defence of the Place, and I the Safety of my Perſon: you muſt therefore at this time pardon me, and to-morrow, if your Maſter pleaſe, I'll hear you at large.* Accordingly (tho *Amurath* diſſembled his Reſentment) the ſame Meſſenger came next day with a grave Baſſa, a Native of *Epirus*, who with three Soldiers and two Attendants, was received by the Governour's Command at one of the Gates into the City, and brought to St. *Mary*'s Church, where he uſed all the Artifice imaginable to induce the Governour and the Auditors to yield the Place to *Amurath*; promiſing the Governour ſhould be honourably preferred, and the Soldiers have 300000 Aſpers divided among them, and be at liberty to go where they pleaſed. To whom *Perlot* anſwered, *If he had not ſpoke to reſolute Men*

Perlot's *Answer to the Bassa.*

devoted to the Defence of their Liberty, perhaps it had been something; and they might, if they had been afraid of the Sultan and his Threats, or been weary of Scanderbeg's *Government, peradventure have given ear to him: But since they had no reason to prefer a Stranger before their Liege Lord, an Enemy before a Friend, a* Turk *before a Christian; let his Master go on, let him by force terrify them, pull down their Walls and make them humble themselves and sue for Peace. That it would be the greatest Dishonour for them basely to accept of the Terms offered, before any Assault given, any Blood spilt, any Soldier groan under a Wound, any Stone shaken in the Wall, or any small Breach made: But the Sultan had better raise his Siege and return home, there to live quietly without any farther Losses from the resolute Defenders of their Liberties. For his part he was resolved never to violate his Faith to his Prince, and he thought it a sufficient Reward and Honour, either living to defend the City, or dying to leave his guiltless Soul at liberty, or Carcase among the dead Bodies of worthy Soldiers, when he should find a way into a better Place.* *Amurath* enraged with that Answer, batter'd the Place with great fury, and having made a breach, gave a most terrible Assault to it with the *Asapi*, a sort of Soldiers whom the *Turks* least value: but as they crawled up the steep Rock whereon the City was built, they were miserably beaten down by the Garison with huge Stones and great Pieces of Timber, and slain; others were tumbled down from their Scaling-Ladders, and some from the very Battlements to which they had reached, whilst those at a remoter distance were slain with Shot from the Walls, wherewith they were mightily discouraged. But the Bassas forcing them on again, the Assaults were renewed, yet not with such Courage as before, tho with less Slaughter; and this made the enraged *Amurath* send *Feri* Bassa, a valiant Commander, with 3000 choice Men to renew the Fight: who, notwithstanding the Besieg'd's Shot, brought up his Men to the very Walls of the City, and had like to have entred the Place, had not the Governour with a fresh Supply repulsed him. Upon which *Amurath* sounded a Retreat to his Camp; but at length the Captain of the Janizaries perceiving the remoter part of the City from their Camp to be more slenderly guarded, because it seemed impregna-

Sferigrade *assaulted by the* Turks.

ble,

ble, he attempted with *Amurath*'s leave to enter by night that way: but the watchful Governour (who had notice of it) repairing thither in great ſilence, with a good part of the Gariſon, let the *Turks* climb up to the Top of the Rock, but ſo rudely handled them when they were juſt ready to enter, that moſt of them were ſhot or miſerably batter'd to death with their Fall. In the mean time *Scanderbeg* continually moleſted the *Turks* in one Quarter or another; and at this time, being the latter end of *June*, was come within 8 Miles of *Amurath*'s Army; and finding by his Spies, the *Turks* lay in great ſecurity, as apprehenſive of no danger, he ſuddenly in the Night attacked one quarter of the *Turkiſh* Camp, ſlew 2000 of them, filled all Places of the Camp with fear and tumult, and carried away along with him 230 Horſe, with 7 *Turkiſh* Standards, with the Loſs only of 42 Men. *Amurath* mightily diſturbed at theſe things, appointed *Feri* Baſſa with 12000 Horſe and 1000 Foot to obſerve *Scanderbeg*, while himſelf carryed on the Siege of the City, which he aſſaulted with Archers and ſmall Shot, who delivered their Arrows and Bullets on the Tops of the Walls, like a Shower of Hail, to terrify the ordinary Soldiers, then deſperately ſcaled the Walls; and the Aſſault was very terrible in divers Places, at one eſpecially near the great Gate, where the *Turks* on a ſudden, with Ladders, Timber, and Planks clapt together cloſe unto the Tower, raiſed a wooden one, as high as the Wall, from whence the *Turks* annoyed the Chriſtians very much, and prevailed ſo far as to plant *Amurath*'s Colours upon the Wall. But the Governour haſtning with freſh Supplies thither, repulſed the *Turks*, took the Enſign, and burnt the *Turkiſh* wooden Tower with Wildfire thrown from the Walls. *Scanderbeg* during this Aſſault approached with 9000 Men, to diſturb the *Turks* in it; but being oppoſed by *Feri* Baſſa, he retired a little on purpoſe to draw him further off from the Camp, and then forthwith engaged him: But the Baſſa knowing the Smallneſs of his Number, ſent 4000 Horſe about to fall in the Rear of him, and ſo hem him in, that he ſhould not be able to eſcape; which *Scand-* perceiving, he left *Moſes* in the main Battle, and with 2000 Horſe, not only routed them, but ſlew *Feri* Baſſa, fighting hand to hand with him. Then returning to the

Scanderbeg *defeats and kills* Feri *Baſſa.*

the Battel, quickly put the whole Army to the rout, which becauſe of the Nearneſs of their Camp, he durſt not far purſue. *Amurath* being informed of his Loſs, was exceeding melancholy and commanded ſome Pieces of Cannon to be planted on that ſide of his Camp that was moſt in danger from the Enemy; and ſending more Troops to thoſe that were before under the command of *Feri* Baſſa, commanded them not to ſtir out of their Trenches. However he himſelf continu'd the Aſſault of the City all that day to no purpoſe, inſomuch that for ſome days after he lay in his Camp more like a Prince beſieged than beſieging a City, for none ſtir'd out of it: But *Scanderbeg* rightly miſtruſted he was brewing ſome Miſchief all this while; and ſo he was indeed, for he ſent an Ambaſſador into the City with ſuch liberal Offers and Promiſes, that he did not doubt but to work ſome way or other for his purpoſe thereby. Among others, one of the Gariſon was really won to his Intereſts by his large Promiſes, and the firſt Eſſay he made to ſerve the Infidel was a very odd one, and briefly thus: All the Gariſon of *Sfetigrade* were of the upper Country of *Dibra*, and Men of great reſolution, but exceeding ſuperſtitious, making nice Diſtinction between one kind of Meat and another, accounting ſome clean and ſome unclean. Now there was but one great Well in the City, which ſerved all the People plentifully with Water, into which the Traitor threw a dead Dog in the night; and the ſame being obſerved in the morning, the Noiſe thereof quickly flew all over the City, that the Well was poiſoned, ſo that the Gariſon could by no means be perſuaded to drink of the Water, but were for burning, fighting their Way thro, or ſurrendring the City to the Enemy; which made the Governour uſe all the Arguments imaginable to appeaſe them, and to convince them of their Superſtition, did himſelf, in the ſight of them all, drink a great draught of the Water, and the Citizens followed his Example, but ſtill the Soldiers continued obſtinate. The Governour reſolved to ſurrender the Place upon condition the Soldiers might depart with their Arms, and as many of the Citizens ſtay as they pleaſed. *Amurath* right glad hereof, eaſily agreed to the Terms, and was punctual in the execution of them, notwithſtanding his cruel

The Well of Sfetigrade *pretended to be poiſoned by a Traitor.*

Son

Son *Mahomet* would have perſuaded him to murder the Gariſon as they paſſed through the *Turkiſh* Camp; but he was anſwered, That he that was deſirous to be great among Men, muſt either indeed be faithful in his Word and Promiſe, or at leaſt ſeem to be ſo, thereby to gain the Affections of the People, who naturally abhor a cruel and faithleſs Prince. The Traitor remained ſtill in the City, and was rewarded with 3 rich Suits of Clothes, 50000 Aſpers, and a yearly Penſion of 2000 Ducats allowed him; but he did not long enjoy them, for he was ſuddenly gone and never after ſeen or heard of, being (as was ſuppoſed) ſecretly made away by *Amurath*'s order, who could not but deteſt ſuch a Traitor, tho his Treachery had been ſerviceable to him. *Amurath* repaired the Walls, and raiſing his Camp *September* the 1ſt, left *Epirus*, having loſt 30000 Men at this Siege; but he was ſo moleſted by *Scanderbeg* in his March, that he was glad to leave the Vice-Roy of *Romania* with 30000 Men to obſerve him, while himſelf with the reſt of the Army might get off with the more Safety. The *Turks* had no ſooner left the Country, but *Scanderbeg* beſieged *Sfetigrade* with 18000 Men for a Month, tho in vain; ſo that breaking up from before it, he made it his buſineſs the reſt of the Winter to furniſh his Cities and Fortreſſes with all Neceſſaries, as expecting a terrible Storm in the Spring, when *Amurath* ſent *Selabias* a 1450.
politick Commander to inveſt *Croia* with 40000 Horſe and with the main Army (which was vaſtly numerous) came himſelf before it; into which he ſent two Meſſengers with Conditions of Surrendry, but they were admitted no further than the Gates, where their Offers were ſcornfully rejected. Wherefore he cauſed ten Pieces of Cannon to be forthwith caſt, having brought Metal along with him for that purpoſe; which being done, he ſeverely battered the City towards the Plain of *Tyrana* with ſix of them, while the other four were imployed againſt the Gate, in which two Places only, the City was ſubject to Battery. This being continued for four days, and a great part of the Wall beaten down, the *Turks* ſhewed themſelves exceeding forward to ſtorm it, eſpecially the young Prince *Mahomet*, who promiſed, beſides his Father's Rewards, to give 100000 Aſpers to him that ſhould

Croia *batter'd by the* Turks.

ſhould firſt plant the *Turkiſh* Colours upon the Wall. In the mean time the brave Governour *Vranocontes* went up and down every where amongſt the Soldiers, ſhook them by the hand, and did all he could by encouraging Speeches to perſuade them to uſe the utmoſt Reſolution in the defence of the City, and order'd the Breaches to be repaired as well as they could over night; when next morning *Amurath* commanded the Aſſault to be given on both the Breaches: but by the time it was begun, a ſudden Alarm was raiſed throughout the *Turkiſh* Camp; for *Scanderbeg* with 5000 brave Men had ſuddenly broke into one part of the great Camp, and at the firſt encounter ſlew 600 *Turks*, whoſe Tents they were now ranſacking; and this made the *Turks* more faint in their attacking of the Breaches. In the mean time *Amurath* ſent back 4000 Men into the Camp for its greater Security, ſaying, nothing could be too ſure againſt that wild Beaſt, meaning *Scanderbeg*; who in the heat of that Skirmiſh engaging too far among the *Turks*, was forced gallantly to fight his way through, and retire into the Mountains, from whence he came: And this was look'd upon to be the greateſt overſight that *Scanderbeg* committed in all his Wars. However, when the *Turks* heard of *Scanderbeg*'s retiring, they puſh'd on the Aſſault with a much greater fury; where their Men, eſpecially their common Soldiers, whom they little value, and therefore drive on again and again upon inevitable Dangers, as was done here by young Prince *Mahomet*, ſuffered extremely: ſo that at length *Amurath* being doubtful whether it were better for that time to ſound a Retreat, or ſend a Reinforcement to the Aſſault; yet enraged at the loſs of ſo many Men, he ſent ſome Companies of better Soldiers to encourage the other, and give a freſh Aſſault, againſt whom *Vranocontes* oppoſed freſh Men alſo, who behaved themſelves ſo well, that the *Turks* at laſt were glad to give over, who in the two Aſſaults loſt 8000 Men, but with little damage to the Beſieged.

Croia *aſſaulted.*

Mahomet *in deceiving* Scanderbeg, *deceives himſelf.*

Of all the *Turkiſh* Commanders, young Prince *Mahomet* above any was grieved at this Repulſe, and impatient of Revenge; wherefore underſtanding that *Scanderbeg* lay intrench'd upon Mount *Tumeniſt*, he drew moſt of the beſt Soldiers into that quarter of the Camp

Camp that lay next to *Scanderbeg*, with a full deſign, that if he ſhould again adventure to attack the *Turkiſh* Camp there, he might have a much warmer reception than before, and find it hard to eſcape; all which being made known to *Scanderbeg* by ſome Deſerters, as alſo how the Camp lay, he left *Moſes* with 500 Men where he was, with orders at ſuch an hour in the night that he ſhould attack *Mahomet*'s Quarters, to raiſe a Tumult, and then ſpeedily retire; while *Scanderbeg* with 8000 Men fetching a round thro by-ways, ſhould come to the farther ſide of *Turkiſh* Camp. *Moſes* perform'd his part ſo well, that all the *Turkiſh* Camp was in an alarm; and the Soldiers, as *Mahomet* had order'd, haſtening to the place where they heard that great Tumult, *Scanderbeg* unexpectedly brake into the Camp on the other ſide, and made ſuch a terrible Deſtruction of the Infidels, that the Loſs before under the Walls of *Croia* was now forgot, as inconſiderable in compariſon of this.

Amurath hereupon fortified his Camp; but becauſe he could not in that hot Seaſon ſo cloſely encamp his Army, but that ſome part of it muſt have been in the ſame danger as before from *Scanderbeg*'s Attempts, he order'd *Sebatius* with 16000 Men to wait the motions of *Scanderbeg*, then batter'd the City with his great Cannon again, intending once more another Aſſault: But perceiving his Men much diſpirited with their ill Succeſs, he did all he could to encourage them to it with comfortable words; and ſo early next morning they went on without regard of danger to the very Gates of the City, to break them down: but few or none of them return'd alive from thence, and thoſe that were farther off were ſorely galled with the beſieged's Shot; and notwithſtanding the new Supplies the Sultan continually ſent, yet being at laſt weary with the great ſlaughter of his Men, he gave over the Aſſault, and now fell to mining, while they continually alarm'd the Gariſon with Feints, who perceiv'd not his ſecret working; but 400 of the Gariſon making a Sally, drove ſeveral of the *Turks* back to their Camp: yet the Governour perceiving that method would do them no good, he forbore it for the future, contrary to *Amurath*'s Expectations, who would not have failed to have made his advantage of it. In the mean time

Scander-

Scanderbeg having had a new Supply of Men, divided his Army into three parts, under *Moſes*, *Tanuſie*, and himſelf, with which he aſſaulted the *Turkiſh* Camp in the night, and ſlew a great many of the Enemy; which ſo incenſed the *Turks*, that *Amurath* ſent 12000 of his beſt Troops, whereof 7000 were Horſe, to attack *Scanderbeg* in the Receſſes of the Mountains, whither he had retired; who drilling them on till *Moſes* and *Tanuſie* drew near, he then attack'd them on all ſides, and made a great ſlaughter among them, beſides divers Priſoners. *Amurath* more and more diſcouraged with his Loſſes, and finding his Mine, by reaſon of the hardneſs of the Rock, ineffectual, thought to tempt the Governour of *Croia* with his Preſents ſent him by one of his Baſſas, ſeemingly at firſt as the pure Reward of his Valour and great Merit, and attended with a cunning Speech from the Baſſa, who expected ſome great Motions to have riſen in the minds of the Soldiers upon it: But when he perceiv'd the contrary effect, and that they appear'd remote enough from being terrify'd with *Amurath*'s Power and Arms, he deſired to talk with the Governour alone; which being granted him, the cunning Baſſa began to deliver his more ſecret Meſſage to him, which *Uranocontes* no ſooner underſtood, but before he could tell his tale out, he commanded him to depart, ſtrictly charging him, that neither he nor any other for the future ſhould adventure to come from his Maſter into the City about any ſuch diſhonourable matter; for if they did, he would cauſe their Hands, Noſes, and Ears to be cut off, and ſo ſend them diſmembred back, inſtead of an Anſwer. This Anſwer and Rejection of the Preſents enraged *Amurath* to that degree, that he immediately gave orders for a freſh Aſſault next day, which yet ſucceeded with greater loſs to him than before; and this made him very melancholy, to tear his hoary Beard and Locks, and complain of his hard fortune, that he had liv'd ſo long to ſee thoſe days of diſgrace, wherein all his former Glory and triumphant Victories were obſcured by one pitiful Town of *Epirus*: and all the comfortable Speeches of his Baſſas could not divert him, but that he fell ſick upon it. Beſides, the Rejection of his Propoſals of Peace to *Scanderbeg*, whereby he deſired only the Payment of a yearly Tribute of 10000 Ducats,

Uranocontes *rejects* Amurath's *Preſents.*

Ducats, did but increaſe his Diſtemper; and finding at laſt he could not long ſurvive, he grievouſly complain'd to his Baſſas, as he lay upon his Pallet in his Pavilion, that the Deſtinies had ſo blemiſh'd the former courſe of his Life with ſuch an obſcure Death, that he who had ſo often repreſs'd the Fury of the *Hungarians*, and almoſt brought the Pride of the *Greeks* to nought, ſhould now be forced to give up the Ghoſt under the Walls of an obſcure Caſtle (meaning *Croia*) and that in the ſight of his contemptible Enemy. Then turning to his Son *Mahomet*, he earneſtly recommended him to the Faithfulneſs of his Baſſas, and gave him many grave Counſels, ſometimes in ſecret, and ſometimes in the hearing of others; and for his laſt Speech and Admonition to him, he required, *That his Example might be a warning to him never to contemn his Enemy, tho never ſo weak; and that he had more particularly repented of one thing, and ſhould do after his Death, (if poſſible) that he had been ſo fooliſh as to cheriſh in his boſom that domeſtick and neglected Enemy, whereby he diſgraced himſelf, and for ever blemiſhed the Honour of the* Ottoman *Kings, whilſt he obſcurely died under the Walls of* Croia. *The Traitor ſhould have been oppreſs'd, when by great Treachery he firſt recovered his wicked Kingdom; before the Minds of the People were confirmed to him, then it had been eaſy utterly to extinguiſh him and his Name. The evil Fortune of* Alis *Baſſa was the beginning of his good one, neither ſhould the ſuceeding Generals have been ſent againſt him. He had often thought, but could ſcarce believe he ſhould ever have received ſuch diſgrace by that means, together with the ignominious renting of his Kingdom, if he had not experienced it to his loſs and grief. He had entred* Epirus *with* 130000 *Men, but upon a review his Son would find the number much diminiſh'd: The Fields could not contain his Troops; but there were many empty Tents, and many Horſes without Riders. As for himſelf, the Deſtinies had devoted his Spirits to* Epirus, *as fatal to him; but why ſhould he impute to himſelf thoſe Impediments and Chances of Fortune? The Seeds of Miſchief in* Epirus *firſt began when the* Hungarians *and Chriſtian Princes took up Arms againſt him, when he fought with them, not for Dominion, but for the whole ſtate of his Kingdom, as the Battels of* Varna *and* Caſſova *witneſſed. But you* (ſpeaking more directly to his Son) *how*

Amurath's *laſt Speech to* Mahomet.

how or in what manner you are to wage war against him, expect no directions from me, who have been guilty of mismanagement my self in all those matters. Fortune never deceived my Endeavours more than in this; but perhaps thou, my Son, mayst prove a more happy Warrior against him, and for so many Honours already given me, the Destinies have reserv'd the Triumph of Epirus *for thee. Wherefore, my Son, thou shalt receive this Scepter from me, and these Royal Ensigns; but above all I'll leave thee this Enemy, charging thee not to let my Death go unrevenged: It's all I charge thee with for so great and stately a Patrimony as thou art to receive from me; it's the only Sacrifice that my old departing Ghost desires of thee.*

Soon after he grew speechless, and gave up the Ghost, about the middle of Autumn, in the Year 1450. at the age of 85, and reigned 28 (or according to others 30) years. This Prince, whilst he liv'd, was wonderfully belov'd of his Subjects, and after his Death no less lamented by them. He was more constant to his Word than any of his Predecessors; by nature melancholy and sad, and accounted rather politick than valiant, yet was indeed both. A great Dissembler, and painful in travel, but froward and testy above measure, which many imputed to his great Age. He had Issue six Sons, *Achmetes*, *Aladin*, *Mahomet*, *Hasan* or *Chasan*, *Orchan*, and *Achmetes* the younger, by some call'd *Calepinus*; three of whom died before him, but the two youngest were by his Son and Successor *Mahomet*, their unnatural Brother, even in their Infancy most cruelly murder'd, as you'll find more particularly inserted in the beginning of his Life contain'd in the next Chapter.

Amurath's Character.

His Children.

				A.D.	R.
Christian Princes, Cotemporaries with *Amurath* II.	Emperors	Of the East.	*John Paleologus*	1421.	24.
			Constantine Paleologus	1444.	8.
		Of the West.	*Sigismond* King of *Hungary*	1411.	28.
			Albert II. King of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*	1438.	2.
			Frederick III. Arch-Duke of *Austria*	1440.	54.
	Kings	Of *England.*	*Henry* V.	1413.	9.
			Henry VI.	1422.	39.
		Of *France.*	*Charles* VI.	1381.	42.
			Charles VII.	1423.	38.
		Of *Scotland.*	*James* I.	1424.	13.
			James II.	1436.	29.
	Popes of *Rome.*		*Martin* V.	1417.	13.
			Eugenius IV.	1431.	16.
			Nicholas V.	1447.	8.

CHAP. III.

The Life of Mahomet II. *ſirnamed the Great, Firſt Emperor of the* Turks.

1450. Mahomet *his Cruelty to his Brethren.*

THIS *Mahomet*, who ſucceeded his Father in the *Turkiſh* Kingdom about the age of 21, being in his Childhood bred a Chriſtian by his Mother, the Deſpot of *Servia*'s Daughter, there were ſome hopes that he would now declare himſelf ſo, but in vain: neither, to ſay the truth of him, did he value either the one or the other Religion, being a mere Atheiſt, and uſher'd in his Reign by forgetting the Laws of Nature; and would preſently in perſon have gone and murder'd his younger Brother but 18 months old, begotten on the Daughter of *Sponderbius*, had not *Moſes*, one of his Baſſas, diverted him from it; tho thereupon he charg'd him with the execution of his Intentions, which he effected by pouring Water down the Child's Throat, and ſo choak'd him. This ſo enraged the Mother, that nothing would appeaſe her, but to have *Moſes* deliver'd up bound to her; which was no ſooner done, but ſhe preſently ſtabb'd him in the Breaſt with a Knife (crying in vain upon his ungrateful Maſter for help) and making a hole in his right ſide, by peacemeal cut out his Liver, and threw it to be eaten by the Dogs. *Mahomet* alſo at the ſame time cauſed his other Brother, committed by his Father to the cuſtody of *Cali* Baſſa, and now by him betray'd into his hands, to be murder'd.

Mahomet *reforms the Government.*

Mahomet preſently after began a new Form of Government, by abrogating the old Laws and Cuſtoms, and publiſhing new, better ſuted and commodious to himſelf, impoſing alſo new Taxes and Subſidies upon his Subjects, never before heard of. Then he call'd all the Officers in the Kingdom to an account, ſome of whom he put to death, ſeized the Goods of others; ſome he fined, and gave way for many falſe Accuſations againſt his great Baſſas, thereby to have them in his power; and finding the number of his Faulco-

ners

ners and Huntſmen too many, there being 7000 of the firſt, and not many leſs of the other, he ſaid, he would not be ſo much a Fool as to maintain ſuch a multitude of them to attend upon ſo mere a Vanity; wherefore from thenceforward he reduced them to five hundred Faulconers, and a hundred Huntſmen, making Soldiers of the reſt. At the ſame time he made a League with the Emperor of *Conſtantinople*, and other Chriſtian Princes about him; but while he was thus imploy'd, *Ibrahim* King of *Caramania* with Fire and Sword in- 1451.
vaded his Dominions in *Aſia*, which made *Mahomet* Mahomet
diſplace *Iſa* his Lieutenant there, and ſubſtitute *Iſaac* *goes againſt*
Baſſa in his room, on whom ſoon after he beſtow'd *the King*
the fair Daughter of *Sponderbius*, one of his Father's *of* Cara-
Wives, in Marriage. This Baſſa paſſing over into *Aſia*, mania.
raiſed a great Army, and being follow'd by *Mahomet* in perſon with a greater from *Europe*, he enter'd *Caramania*; which ſo frightned the King, that he ſued for and obtained a Peace. Having at *Pruſa* wiſely appeaſed the Inſolency of the Janizaries, who demanded a Donative of him, he a few days after cauſed *Doganes* their Aga to be ſhamefully whipt in his preſence, then diſcharg'd, and *Muſtapha* put in his room, and uſed the other Officers with like ſeverity; after which, by his Lieutenant *Iſaac* he poſſeſs'd himſelf of the Country of *Menteſia*, and annex'd it to his Empire. This done, and *Mahomet* not daring to return to *Europe* over the 1452.
Helleſpont, becauſe of the Chriſtian Fleet that attended his coming, he got over the *Thracian Boſphorus*; and on *Europe* ſide, not above three miles from *Conſtantinople*, built a huge ſtrong Caſtle call'd *Genichicar* by the *Turks*, and repairing the other on the oppoſite ſhore, ſtopt the Paſſage of that Strait as he pleaſed: and being withal ambitious by nature, he began to project the final Overthrow of the *Greek* Empire, by beſieging of *Conſtantinople*, and for that purpoſe raiſed a great Army, but what his deſign was no body knew; yet *Conſtantine* the Eighth, then Emperor of *Conſtantinople*, being ſomewhat apprehenſive of the danger, ſent for Aid to the Chriſtian Princes, but with little ſucceſs.

In the mean time *Mahomet* having drawn together an Army of 300000 Men out of all parts, on the ninth of *April* 1453. encamp'd before *Conſtantinople*; where- 1453.

with he fill'd all the main Land before the City, from the *Bosphorus* to the place where the same Sea compassing in the City on two parts, and running far into the Land betwixt *Constantinople* and *Pera*, forms a goodly Haven between them. Now his *Asiatick* Troops he posted to the right towards the *Bosphorus*, his *Europeans* on the left towards the Haven, and he himself lay with 15000 Janizaries and other Troops between both, against the heart of the City. On the farther side of the Haven also by *Pera*, he placed *Zoganus* with another part of the Army, at what time *Pantologes* his Admiral came before the City with a Fleet of 30 Gallies and 200 other small Ships full of *Turkish* Archers, fitter for shew than service. But the Emperor, for the defence of the Haven and City, placed a strong Chain across it from the City to *Pera*, within which he orderly placed his strong Fleet, consisting chiefly of seven great *Genoese*, with three Gallies, two Galliots of *Venice*, three of *Candia*, and a few from *Chios*; all which happen'd to be there by way of Trade, but were made good use of upon this occasion.

The Siege of Constantinople *by the* Turks.

The Sultan having posted his Troops as aforesaid, he first cast up great Trenches as near the City-Walls as he could, and in divers places raised Mounts as high as the Walls; then he planted a Battery against the Gate *Calegaria*, whereof one Cannon was brought from *Adrianople* with 150 Yoke of Oxen, and carried a Bullet of a hundred pound weight, made of hard black Stone brought from the *Euxine* Sea. The Christians were very sparing of their shot upon the *Turks*, but where they fired they did good execution, and the Breach made by this Gate they repaired quickly, and made stronger than before; in which work they were wholly directed by *Justinianus* the *Genoese*, the Emperor's General in the place: but for all this diligence in the Besieged, the Sultan continued his battering with great fury, and at the same time set his Miners at work, who therein were altogether directed by some Christians in his Army; whereby one of the strong Towers of the City, and part of the Walls, were quickly undermined: but the same having been happily suspected by one *John Grandis*, a *German* Officer, and others of great experience, he caused a Countermine to be made, and so render'd their design of none effect.

Which

Which *Mahomet* perceiving, he remov'd his Battery, and planted it againſt a Tower call'd *Baclatina*, near the *Roman* Gate, which at length was beaten down, and fill'd up the Ditch before the outer Wall; tho the Beſieged with great Courage made up the Breach again, and the *Turks* at the ſame time erected high Timber Towers, covered with raw Hides to defend the ſame from Fire, out of which they fired and ſlew many of the Chriſtians upon the Walls in making good that Breach. But *Mahomet* obſerving the Valour of the Beſieged, openly ſaid, *It was neither the Skill nor Courage of the* Greeks, *but of the* Franks, *that defended the City.*

The *Turks* finding the Reſolution of the Chriſtians in the defence of the place by Land, *Zoganus* Baſſa deviſed a way how to attack them by Sea; to which end he brought ſeventy of the leſſer Ships and Galliots, with all their Sails on board (to the admiration of the Spectators) up a great Hill and ſo by dry Land, out of the *Boſphorus* behind *Pera*, for the ſpace of eight miles, into the Haven of *Conſtantinople*, whereat the Chriſtians were much diſmay'd; however they attempted to burn theſe Ships at their launching, but in vain. So that *Mahomet* being thus poſſeſs'd of the Haven, ſoon after cauſed a wonderful Bridg to be made quite over it, from *Zoganus*'s Camp at *Pera* to the Walls of *Conſtantinople*, whereby to attack the City that way. In the mean while three *Genoeſe* Ships from *Chios*, and one of the Emperor's laden with Corn from *Sicily*, came to *Conſtantinople*, between whom and the *Turkiſh* Fleet enſued a moſt terrible Fight for a long time; but neither the Rage of the Sultan, who rid to the Sea-ſide to encourage them, nor the Concern of the whole *Turkiſh* Army, could keep the *Turks* from being beat by the more skilful Chriſtians, in which Action ſome have amounted their loſs to near 10000 Men. The Chriſtians loſt one of their Ships, but the other were carried ſafe into *Conſtantinople*; and *Mahomet* reſented that Loſs ſo much, that he diſgraced *Pantologes* his Admiral for it.

Turkiſh Ships brought over Land.

A notable Fight between the Chriſtians and Turks.

However, the Siege was carried on with great briskneſs; but a Rumour being ſpread abroad in the *Turkiſh* Camp, that there were great Armies out of *Hungary* and *Italy* coming to relieve the place, the Soldiers be-

gan to murmur very much, which made *Mahomet* enter into a Conſultation with his three great Counſellors, whether he were beſt to raiſe the Siege or no. *Cali* Baſſa was for it by all means, but *Zoganus* and the other as much oppoſed it; to whoſe Opinion the Sultan inclining, Tueſday *May* 29. was appointed for a general Aſſault. In the mean while the Sultan offers the Emperor intolerable Conditions of Peace. The *Turks* three days before kept a ſolemn Faſt (according to their uſual cuſtom) till night, and at the ſame time *Mahomet* by Proclamation promiſed the Plunder of the place to his Soldiers; but *Cali* Baſſa being grieved that his Adverſaries Counſel prevailed before his, he gave the Emperor notice of the Day appointed for the general Aſſault, and of the Preparations made for it. The good Emperor, tho much perplex'd with the Murmurs and Diſloyalty of the Citizens, who cauſeleſly complained for want of Bread, and refuſed to come to the Walls; as alſo with the mercenary *Greek* Soldiers, for the daily payment of whom he was glad to convert the Church-Plate and Jewels into Mony; yet having firſt commended himſelf and City to the Protection of the Almighty, he ſet all things in order for the defence of it.

Conſtantinople *aſſaulted by the* Turks.

A little before day, the *Turks* approached the Walls and began the Aſſault, being oppoſed from the Walls with Shot and Stones as thick as Hail, whereby were ſlain a vaſt number of them; tho theſe were the ordinary Soldiers, whom the Sultan valued not. But when day-light appear'd, *Mahomet* gave the ſignal for the general Aſſault; whereby the City was in an inſtant moſt furiouſly attack'd on every ſide, and the *Turks* deliver'd their Arrows and Shot upon the Beſieged ſo thick, that they darken'd the Light of the Day, while others courageouſly mounting their Scaling-Ladders, came to handy-blows with the Chriſtians upon the Walls. But the Chriſtians with no leſs Courage withſtood the *Turkiſh* Fury, and ſo overwhelmed them with Stones, pieces of Timber, Shot, Darts, Arrows, and the like, that the *Turks* were diſmay'd and ready to retire; but the Sultan now ordering the Janizaries and beſt Soldiers to the Attack, and promiſing Mountains of Gold to the Brave, and threatning the Puſillanimous with the terribleſt Death, the Conflict grew more

more fierce than ever: and *Justinianus* happening to be ſorely wounded in the Arm, and withdrawing from his Charge, the diſcouraged Soldiers fled after him by the *Roman* Gate into the City; among whom the Emperor himſelf thronging to ſave his Life, miſerably ended his days there, together with the *Greek* Empire. The *Turks* hereupon without any more ado entred the Breach of the outer Wall; and ſo by the ſame Gate that was open'd for *Juſtinianus*, and a Breach they had made before with their great Guns, enter'd the City, and cutting to pieces all that lay before them, without any farther reſiſtance became maſters of that moſt Famous and Imperial City, tho a great many Chriſtians upon this occaſion parted with their Lives very dear: But many thouſands of Men, Women and Children periſhed, while others flying for refuge to the famous Church of St. *Sophia*, were there barbarouſly ſlain, and the rich Ornaments of the place rifled in a moment. Vaſt and incredible was the Booty which the *Turks* got in this rich and populous City, every common Soldier being preſently made very rich; inſomuch that 'tis become a Proverb amongſt them at this day, if any one grows ſuddenly rich, to ſay, he has been at the ſacking of *Conſtantinople*. This was a ſad Calamity upon that poor City, whoſe Inhabitants were made Captives like Droves of Cattel; and a lamentable thing it muſt be, to ſee fine Ladies, Gentlewomen, beautiful and other goodly Perſonages, become the miſerable Slaves of ſuch baſe and contemptible Raſcals, by whom they were in a few days diſperſed into a remote Country, never to be releaſed but by Death, or to ſee one another more. *Taken.*

The Soldiers being all retir'd into their Camp, and entring the City in triumph, the Sultan feaſts his Baſſas and great Officers, when being ſurcharg'd with Meat and Drink, he cauſed divers Chriſtian Captives to be put to death before his face; and this he daily uſed till he had deſtroy'd all the *Greek* Nobility and principal Citizens, among whom alſo divers *Venetian* and *Genoeſe* Merchants likewiſe periſh'd. But more particularly one *John Leontares* or *Notaras*, great Chancellor of *Conſtantinople*, and in great eſteem with the Emperor, being ask'd by the Sultan why he did not perſuade his Maſter to ſue for a Peace, or give up the City upon *Mahomet ſolemnizes his Feaſts at* Conſtantinople *with the Blood of the* Grecian *Nobility.*

Terms, rather than abide the utmoſt Extremity; he ſaid, his Maſter had been encouraged by the *Venetians* and Citizens of *Pera* to hold out, as alſo by ſome great Men about his own Perſon; then taking *Cali* Baſſa's Letter out of his boſom, gave it to *Mahomet*, in hopes of favour from him: but when he had ſaid what he could, his eldeſt Son was ſlain before his face, and the other reſerved for the Luſt of the Tyrant, and then his own Head was ſtruck off, with the reſt that were appointed for that day's Sacrifice. But out of this general Calamity *Juſtinianus* made his eſcape, fled to *Pera*, and thence to *Chios*, where he ſoon died; and *Iſidorus* the Cardinal and Pope's Legate had alſo the good fortune to eſcape. Thus fell *Conſtantinople* into the *Turks* hands, after holding the Title and State of an Imperial Chriſtian City for the ſpace of 1121 Years, on the 29*th* of *May* 1453. Soon after *Pera*, otherwiſe call'd *Galata*, ſubmitted it ſelf to *Mahomet*, but was moſt miſerably uſed by him for all that, tho its Calamity did not riſe ſo high as that of poor *Conſtantinople*, which may juſtly be accounted the greateſt that ever happen'd to any Chriſtian City in the World.

Pera yielded to the Turk.

As for *Cali* Baſſa, *Mahomet* for a long time before now bore an ill-will towards him; but happening one day as he was walking in the Court to ſee a Fox of the Baſſa's tied in a Chain, after he had a while earneſtly looked on him, he ſuddenly ſaid, *Alas poor Beaſt, haſt thou no Mony to give thy Maſter to ſet thee at liberty?* This was taken notice of by the Courtiers, and look'd upon to be ominous to the Baſſa; who to get himſelf out of the way for a ſeaſon, more than for any Devotion, took upon him to go in Pilgrimage to viſit *Mahomet*'s Temple at *Meccha*: but *Mahomet* perceiving his diſtruſt, pretended to know it, and comforted him with good words, and aſſured him, whatever fooliſh People might ſay, of his Favour; and to put him out of ſuſpicion, continually ſent him rich Preſents, and heap'd new Honours upon him. But now coming fully to know his Treaſon, he was apprehended, and after he had been cruelly tormented to confeſs where his Treaſure was, he was put to death at *Adrianople* in his extreme old Age; for whom his Friends and Servants went into Mourning, whereat the Sultan being offended, ſtrictly forbad it.

Cali *Baſſa put to death.*

Mahomet

Mahomet becoming, as aforeſaid, Lord of *Conſtantinople*, he there reſolv'd to fix the Seat of his Empire, and by great Privileges and Immunities invited People from all parts, and of all Religions, (which he tolerated) to come and inhabit there; and having order'd all things to his deſire, he there took upon him the Name and Title of an Emperor. Now it happen'd among the many beautiful Priſoners made at the taking of *Conſtantinople*, that there was one *Irene* amongſt the reſt, a moſt beautiful *Greek* Woman, preſented to the Sultan; with whoſe Perfections, after the Toils of his buſineſs were once over, he was ſo ſmitten, that the very Government of his Empire ſeem'd to be little regarded by him in compariſon of her: At which his Subjects in general were diſcontented, but more particularly the Janizaries, and other Soldiers of the Court began to murmur, and at length openly ſaid, It would be well if he were diſpoſſeſs'd, and one of his Sons ſet up in his ſtead. And indeed the Diſcontent was ſo general, that the Baſſas began to be apprehenſive of danger; but who durſt tell the Sultan of it? Now among others there was one *Muſtapha* Baſſa at Court, who had done the Sultan good ſervice, (having been brought up with him alſo from a Child) and was greatly favour'd by him; who being moved with the danger that threatned him, and laying hold of a convenient opportunity, after he had firſt made an humble Apology for his Boldneſs, told him his own pretty roundly, and the danger that muſt inevitably attend his courſe of Living and manner of Government. But when he had done, he fell down at his feet, to expect his heavy Doom from his Sovereign, who all this while with great Attention and many a ſtern Look hearkned to his Speech, well knowing it to be true, and that he had but diſcharg'd his Duty in what he did; yet the Beauty of the fair *Greek* had made ſuch an impreſſion upon his mind, that he was almoſt diſtracted between both. But at length ſeriouſly weighing the Dangers that threatned his Government if he ſhould any longer follow thoſe his pleaſures, he ſaid to the Baſſa, ſtill proſtrate at his feet, 'Tho thou haſt unreverendly ſpoken, 'as a Slave preſuming to enter into the greateſt Se-'crets of thy Maſter (not without offence to be thought 'upon once by thee) and therefore juſtly deſerveſt to 'die,

Mahomet *firſt Emperor of the* Turks.

A remarkable Story of the Sultan's Love to Irene, *and the conſequence of it.*

'die, yet since thou hast been brought up with me 'from thy Infancy, and hast been always faithful, I'll 'pardon thee this time, and to-morrow before Sun-set 'will make known to thee and others of the like opi- 'nion, whether I am able to bridle my Affections or 'no: In the mean time, order all the Bassas and prin- 'cipal Commanders of my Army, to come together 'to-morrow, to know my further pleasure; wherein 'do not fail.' The Sultan after this went to solace himself with *Irene* for that night and next day: after dinner he commanded she should be dress'd in the most gorgeous Apparel imaginable; and all his Bassas and other great Men being now come into the great Hall, not knowing the meaning of it, the Sultan entred in with the fair *Greek* in his hand, upon which all of them stood amazed at her incomparable Beauty; and furiously looking round about him, said, 'I find you are 'much discontented, and that you all murmur and 'grudg, for that I being overcome by my Affection to 'this fair Creature, cannot withdraw my self from her 'presence: but I would fain know which of you is so 'temperate, if he had so rare and precious, so lovely 'and fair a thing in his possession, would not be thrice 'advised, before he would part with the same? Say 'what you think; upon the Word of a Prince, I give 'you free leave so to do.' To which they unanimously answering, That he had greater reason so to spend his time with her, than any Man had to find fault with it, he rejoin'd; 'Well, now I'll give you to under- 'stand, how far you have been mistaken in me, and 'that there is no earthly thing can so blind my Senses, 'as not to see and understand what belongs to my high 'Station and Calling: Yea, I would that you should 'all know, that the Honour and Conquests of the '*Ottoman* Kings, and my noble Progenitors, is so fixed 'in my heart, with such a desire in my self to exceed 'the same, that nothing but Death is able to put it out 'of my remembrance.' This said, he presently with one of his hands catching the fair *Greek* by the hair of the head, and drawing his Falchion with the other, at one blow struck off her head, to the great terror of them all; and then added, 'Now by this you may 'judg, whether your Emperor is able to bridle his Af- 'fections or not:' and soon after caused great Prepara-

tions

tions to be made for the Conqueſt of *Peloponneſus*, and the Siege of *Belgrade*.

Now at the ſame time that the *Turks* took *Conſtantinople*, *Thomas* and *Demetrius Paleologi*, the late Emperor *Conſtantine*'s Brothers, govern'd a great part of *Peloponneſus*; who being terrified with the diſaſtrous Fortunes of their Brother, and having at the ſame time the *Albanians* up in Arms againſt them, thought it their beſt way to ſue to *Mahomet* for Peace, and offer to become Tributaries to him; which the Sultan accepted, and aſſiſted them to ſuppreſs the *Albanians*: and having thus continued Tributaries for ſome years, but at laſt hearing that the Chriſtian Princes of the Weſt were making great Preparations againſt the *Turks*, they at length refus'd the Payment of the Tribute. Upon which *Mahomet* with a puiſſant Army laid ſiege to *Corinth*, and then entring and carrying all before him in *Peloponneſus*, he forc'd one of the Princes to fly to *Mantinia*, and the other to *Epidaurus*, now *Raguſa*; to whom, upon their Supplications, he granted Peace again, on condition that all the places he had taken, ſhould remain his own, as alſo that *Patras* with the adjacent Country ſhould be deliver'd up to him, and for the reſt they ſhould pay him an annual Tribute. After this, *Mahomet* in his return took *Athens*: but about three years after the Peace, underſtanding that the Chriſtian Princes had confederated againſt him, with a deſign to expel him out of *Greece*, he thought it now high time, and much for the good of his Empire, to exterminate the ſmall Remains of the *Greek* Empire in *Peloponneſus*; and becauſe the two Brothers *Thomas* and *Demetrius*, were at that time at variance, and paid him not the promiſed Tribute, he came with a great Army to *Corinth*, where *Arſanes* a Nobleman of great authority in that Country, whoſe Siſter *Demetrius* had married, came to him from the Prince attended with many Followers, on purpoſe to aſſiſt him againſt Prince *Thomas*: but *Mahomet* coming to *Tegea*, cauſed *Arſanes* and all his Followers to be ſeized and impriſoned. Hereupon *Demetrius* fled to *Sparta*, which *Mahomet* beſieged in a few days; but the poor Prince conſidering his evil Circumſtances, went out and humbly ſubmitted himſelf to the Sultan, who receiv'd him courteouſly, and inſtead of *Sparta* promiſed him other 1454.

Lands

Lands and Poſſeſſions of like value; however he kept him priſoner till the War was ended. After the receiving of *Sparta*, he beſieged *Caſtria*, which he took; and becauſe he had loſt many of his Janizaries before it, he put all the Soldiers to the ſword, and cut the Captains to pieces. Then he took *Leontarium*, antiently call'd *Megalopolis*, and the City of *Cordicea*; where he not only put all the Inhabitants to the ſword, but kill'd the very Cattel alſo. The People of *Saluarium* in *Arcadia* to the number of 10000 he made all Slaves: moſt part of *Achaia* and *Elis* was ſubdued by *Zoganus* Baſſa. Then he laid ſiege in perſon to *Salmenica*, which at length for want of Water was ſurrender'd to him; but the Caſtle was for a whole year valiantly defended by Prince *Thomas*, of whom afterwards *Mahomet* gave this Commendation, That in the Country of *Peloponneſus* he had found many Slaves, but never a Man but him: however the Prince at laſt got off by Sea to *Italy*. Thus *Mahomet* made an intire Conqueſt of *Peloponneſus*, except ſuch places near the Sea-Coaſts as the *Venetians* held; then return'd in triumph to *Conſtantinople*, where he took the fair Daughter of Prince *Demetrius* to Wife, and gave the Father the City of *Ænum*, with the Cuſtoms ariſing from Salt made there. *Servia* alſo became a *Turkiſh* Province in this Sultan's Reign; for *Lazarus*, the Son of the faithleſs old Deſpot *George*, dying, and leaving a Widow and three young Sons behind him, ſhe put her ſelf with them under the Protection of the *Hungarians*, whereby ſhe ſupported her ſelf in the Government for ſome time: but at laſt the People ſeeing but ſmall ſecurity in that manner of Government, and weary of the Injuries daily receiv'd of the *Turks*, yielded themſelves and their Country wholly to *Mahomet*.

Peloponneſus *ſubdued by the* Turks.

Servia *yielded to the* Turks.

Now *Mahomet* by the continued Courſe of his Victories being ſo elevated in Mind, as to think no Prince able to withſtand his Power, and remembring the great oppoſition made by the *Hungarians* againſt the *Turkiſh* Princes his Predeceſſors; he reſolv'd to fall upon them, as a thing he had indeed deſired from the very beginning of his Reign: wherefore he raiſed an Army of 150000 Men, and having firſt ſent 200 Ships and Gallies from *Widin* up the *Danube* to *Belgrade*, to prevent its receiving any Relief by that River or the

Belgrade *beſieged.*

the *Save*, he then march'd and inveſted it by Land with all his Forces, and at the very beginning made a moſt fierce Aſſault upon it; but finding that would not do, he proceeded more warily in his buſineſs, he went to work with his Batteries, with which he level'd part of the Wall, which the Beſieged ſpeedily repair'd with great induſtry. In the mean time *Hunniades*, that brave *Hungarian* General, ſent a Fleet of Ships and Gallies laden with warlike Stores down the *Danube* from *Buda*; which engaging the *Turkiſh* Fleet, took twenty of them, and run the reſt aground near the Sultan's Camp, who preſently order'd them to be ſet on fire, leſt they ſhould fall into the Enemies hands. However the *Hungarians* by this means open'd a way for the relief of the City, ſo that *Hunniades* with 5000 good Soldiers, and *Capiſtranus* a Minorite Friar (by whoſe perſuaſion 40000 Voluntier Chriſtians out of *Germany* and other parts were come to that War) enter'd into the City that way. At the ſame time *Mahomet* being reſolutely bent upon taking the place, had made all things ready for a general Aſſault, when *Carazias* Baſſa his Lieutenant in *Europe*, and the beſt Soldier he had, being ſlain with a Cannon-Ball from the Town, he took it as a bad Omen to him: however he would proſecute his deſign, and ſo early next morning commanded the Aſſault to be given, and his Janizaries quickly entred the City at the Breach and in other places, reckoning now all to be their own; but *Hunniades* having ſtrongly reinforced the places as before mention'd, had order'd the Beſieged to retire upon the approach of the Janizaries, till they had them in the toil, and then upon a ſignal given, they ſuddenly turn'd about, and fiercely as well as unexpectedly charg'd the *Turks*, while *Hunniades* at the ſame time iſſuing out with his Men on every ſide, ſlew moſt of the Enemy, and made ſome priſoners: and preſently upon it making a Sally, beat the *Turks* from their Batteries, and took their Cannon (they in vain endeavouring to recover them again) and turn'd them upon themſelves. Now in this hurry of Action a great part of the Chriſtian Army that lay on the other ſide of the *Danube*, being ſpeedily tranſported over, and joining *Hunniades*, they attack'd the *Turks* in their Trenches, as if they would preſently enter their Camp; which proud *Mahomet* diſ-

Turks *repulſed at* Belgrade.

disdaining, he drew out of his Trenches, and beat the Christians back even to the Cannon, from whence he was repulsed again to his Trenches with great slaughter; however the Victory hovering with indifferent Wings over the one and the other side, continued doubtful till the Day was almost spent. Here *Mahomet*, as he was performing the Part of a Soldier as well as a General, received a Wound under the left Pap, and was carried dead into his Tent; but coming again to himself, and ruminating upon his Loss by Water and Land, he silently marched off in the night for fear of being pursued by the Enemy, after he had lost at the Siege 40000 of his best Soldiers: And indeed his Loss was so great, that whenever he had occasion to speak of it after, he would shake his Head and sigh deeply, and wish many times he had never seen that City. This Victory was obtained over the *Turks*, *August* the 6th, 1456. to the great Benefit and Glory of the Christian Arms; but the ever-famous and renowned *Hunniades* died of the Hurt he had received in this Battel, tho others say of the Plague that now raged in *Hungary*.

Some time after *Mahomet*, who was desirous to establish his Empire in the Deep as well as on dry Land, besieged *Rhodes*; but the Pope's and *Genoese* Ships scoured the Seas, and not only recovered *Lemnos*, and divers other small Islands from him, but defeated the
1461. *Turks* near *Rhodes*. And now *Mahomet* having received an Embassage with rich Presents from *Usan Cassan* King of *Persia*, who lately got that Kingdom into his Power from the Posterity of *Tamerlane*, and who insisted that the Empire of *Trapezond* of right belonged to him after the Death of *David Comnenus* the Emperor, since he had married the Daughter of *Calo Johannes*, and that the Sultan should not molest him therein; otherwise it was in his choice to draw upon himself the heavy Displeasure of a most mighty Enemy: *Mahomet* angrily dismist the Embassadors with this short Answer, *That he would be in* Alia *himself e'er long, to teach* Usan Cassanes *what to request of a greater Man than himself.* And so having prepared a great Fleet for the *Ægean* Islands, now under the protection of the *Venetians*, he changed suddenly his mind, and sailing into the *Euxine* Sea, landed and besieged

Sinope

Sinope the chief City of *Paphlagonia*, for no other reason, but because *Iſmael* its *Mahometan* Prince was in league with *Uſan Caſſan* King of *Perſia*. *Iſmael*, tho well provided, yet thinking himſelf too weak to endure a Siege, offered to give up the City to *Mahomet*, with the reſt of his Dominions, upon condition he might have the City *Philippopolis* in *Thrace*, with the adjacent Country in lieu of it; which the Sultan agreed to, and ſo put an end to that Principality. From *Sinope* the Emperor goes and lays ſiege to the famous City of *Trapezond* for thirty days together, which *David* offered to give up unto him, upon condition he ſhould take his Daughter to Wife, and deliver to him ſome other Province, as might be ſufficient for the ſupport of his State and Quality. At laſt it was agreed between them, that the Emperor, upon the faith of the *Turkiſh* Sultan for his ſafe return, ſhould meet him in Perſon without the City, to endeavour to accommodate Matters between them; but the faithleſs *Turk* broke his word, and ſeizing the Emperor, the Place was quickly given up to him: and indeed in a few Months time all that Empire fell into his hands. After which returning to *Conſtantinople*, he ſent the Emperor *David* and his Children Priſoners to *Adrianople*, but ſome time after put him to death, and all his Sons and Kinſmen, except *George* the youngeſt, who at his firſt coming to *Adrianople* turned *Mahometan*.

Mahomet *takes* Sinope.

Trapezond *yielded to* Mahomet.

1461.

Mahomet, the year following, which was 1462. underſtanding that *Wladus* Prince of *Walachia* his Tributary had reſolved to caſt off his Obedience, and join in league with the *Hungarians*, he endeavoured to ſurprize him by his chief Secretary, who decoyed him along till *Chemazes* Baſſa fell upon him with a Body of *Turks*, and killed ſeveral of the Prince's Men: But the Prince, contrary to the Baſſa's Expectation, being always attended with a ſtrong Guard, after a hard Conflict worſted the Baſſa, and took him, the Secretary and the reſt that ſurvived, priſoners; and having cut off their Hands and Feet, impaled them alive, but the Baſſa and Secretary he hanged on a Gibbet much higher than the reſt. This done, the Prince fell in and ravaged the *Turkiſh* Territories, all which together enraged *Mahomet* to the higheſt degree of Revenge; who having

Mahomet *invades* Walachia.

having got a great Fleet in the *Euxine*, as well as a brave Army by Land, in concert with the Prince of *Podolia*, invades *Walachia*, where he found his Admiral and the *Podolian* had already burnt *Prailaba*, the greateſt Town of Trade in *Walachia*, and was beſieging *Cebium*, which yet he was forced to raiſe, and ſo the *Podolian* returned home. In the mean time, *Mahomet* ravaged the Country far and near, drove away the Cattel, but could take but few Priſoners, all the People being retired, out of his way, to the Woods and Faſtneſſes; while the Prince with what Army he had flew up and down the Country, but durſt not ſhew himſelf to the Sultan, who not valuing ſo weak an Enemy, however intrenched himſelf in his Camp. *Wladus* being informed of this by his Spies, in the night-time furiouſly attacked that Quarter of the *Turkiſh* Camp where the *Aſiaticks* lay, and ſlew many of them in their Tents, while the reſt fled to the *European* Soldiers for refuge, and were followed by the Prince at the heels; who entring into that Quarter alſo, ſo alarmed the *Turks*, that they were even ready to fly, and had actually done it, had it not been for *Mahomet* Baſſa, a Man of great Experience in Military Affairs, who perſuaded the Sultan to make general proclamation through the Camp, that no Man, upon pain of death, ſhould forſake his Station. Upon this *Wladus* retreats, but not without the Loſs of 1000 Men taken priſoners and ſlain; as alſo ſome time after of 2000 more ſlain by *Amares*. But *Mahomet* finding it to no purpoſe to ſtay any longer in *Walachia*, he left *Haly-Beg* with an Army behind him, and *Dracula*, *Wladus*'s younger Brother, and *Mahomet*'s *Ganymede*, with him; who, when any of the *Walachians* came to the *Turkiſh* Camp to ranſom their Friends, fell into diſcourſe with them about the great Power of the *Turkiſh* Emperor, and cunningly imputed to the diſorderly Government of his cruel Brother, all the Miſeries they ſuſtained; aſſuring them of a ſpeedy redreſs, if they would forſake his Brother, and accept of him as their Sovereign. This being communicated by them to others, they, in a little time, made a general Revolt, and actually ſet up *Dracula* in his Brother's room, who fled into *Tranſylvania*, and afterwards was impriſoned for ten years together at *Belgrade*; from whence at laſt, being

ing ſet at liberty, he went and died honourably in Battel againſt the *Turks*, his antient Enemies. Wladus *his Death.*

But to return to *Mahomet:* When he was come out of *Walachia* to *Conſtantinople*, he ſent the ſame Fleet he had in the *Euxine*, to take in the Iſlands of the *Egean* Sea, while the Sultan himſelf, with a ſmall Army, paſt over into *Aſia*, and came by land to *Poſſidium*, a City of *Ionia* over againſt *Mitylene*; from whence he embark'd for that Iſland, which he preſently overrun, and took all the Inhabitants priſoners, who were afterwards ſold like Flocks of Sheep at *Conſtantinople*. Then he beſieged the Prince of the Country in *Mitylene*, which after he had battered for 27 Days, the Prince agreed to a Surrender of that and the whole Iſland to *Mahomet*, upon condition he gave him an Equivalent in any other Place: which *Mahomet* agreed to, tho he broke his Faith afterwards; for upon his arrival at *Conſtantinople* he made the Prince *Nicolaus* and his Couſin *Lucius* cloſe priſoners, and ſome time after, notwithſtanding their Shew of turning *Mahometans*, and enlargement thereupon, put them to death. Mitylene *yielded to the* Turks.

Some time after this, the King of *Boſnia* refuſing to pay *Mahomet* the uſual Tribute, he marched with a ſtrong Army into his Country, and beſieged *Dorobiza*, which he took; and dividing the People into three Parts, one he gave for Slaves to his Soldiers, another he ſent to *Conſtantinople*, and the third he left to inhabit the City. After this he took *Jazica*, and the King's Brother and Siſter priſoners in it, with moſt of the Nobility of the Kingdom, whom he ſent, as it were in triumph, to *Conſtantinople*; but *Mahomet* underſtanding the King retired to the remoteſt part of his Kingdom, he ſent *Mahomet* Baſſa with his *European* Soldiers to purſue him, who at length made him ſurrender *Clyſſa* and himſelf up, on condition of being honourably uſed: and ſoon after the whole Kingdom ſubmitted to the Sultan, which he reduced into the Form of a Province. 1464.

But here we are to ſtop a little, and not continually ſpeak of Conqueſts, and the Reduction of Chriſtian Kingdoms into *Turkiſh* Provinces, but to reaſſume the noble Deeds, and almoſt incredible Actions of the Ever-famous *Scanderbeg* againſt the Infidels. We left his Hiſtory with the Death of Sultan *Amurath*, under the

Walls of *Croia*, and *Mahomet*'s retiring to *Constantinople*, who offered *Scanderbeg* Peace if he would agree to pay him annual Tribute: he ſcornfully rejected the ſame, which made *Mahomet* quickly after ſend *Ameſa*, one of his beſt Commanders, with 12000 Horſe into *Epirus* to be revenged on him. *Scanderbeg* being informed of their approach by his Spies, lay in ambuſh with 6000 Men upon Mount *Modriſſa*, which as the *Turks* were about to paſs by night, and with difficulty enough had got to the top of it, *Scanderbeg* ſuddenly charged them with his Foot, and made a great ſlaughter of them, and drove them down the Mountain apace, where they were fiercely attack'd by *Scanderbeg* on one ſide, and his Nephew, called *Ameſa*, on the other; who before the *Turks* arrival had poſted themſelves and their Horſe in moſt advantageous Places: ſo that the *Turks* being hardly put to it every way, were overthrown or put to flight, having loſt 7000 Men, beſides their General *Ameſa*, with many Officers and others taken priſoners. *Ameſa* deſired he might ſend a Meſſage to the Sultan, to acquaint him how matters ſtood, and that he was alive, which was eaſily granted: but the News was very grievous to the Sultan, and put him to ſuch a rage, that he would not ranſom *Ameſa* and his Fellow-Priſoners; but being afterwards better adviſed, he agreed to it, and all the Mony *Scanderbeg* divided amongſt his Soldiers.

Scanderbeg takes Ameſa priſoner.

However *Mahomet*'s ulcerated Mind being ſtill bent upon Revenge, and having promiſed great Advancements to him, whoſe fortune it ſhould be to overcome *Scanderbeg*; one *Debreas*, a forward and courageous Commander, was, upon his Application to the Sultan and Promiſe of mighty things, ſent the year following with 14000 Horſe to *Epirus*. But *Scanderbeg* unwilling he ſhould enter his Country, came upon him with 6000 choice Horſe, as he lay ſecurely at *Pologus*; but hapning to be deſcryed by the Light of the Moon, tho the Suddenneſs of his approach very much diſmayed the *Turks*, yet *Debreas*, mindful of his Promiſe to his Maſter, encouraged ſome of his light Horſe to ſuſtain the Charge, till he might draw up his Army in order of Battel. Between them and the Chriſtians there hapned a very hot Skirmiſh at firſt, but at laſt *Moſes* and *Ameſa* having put thoſe *Turks* to flight, *Scanderbeg*

beg brought on his whole Power, and fell with new fury upon the *Turks*, who ſuſtained the Charge with manly Reſolution, till *Muſachius*, with ſome Troops of brave Men drawn out of *Scanderbeg*'s left Wing, brake the *Turkiſh* Ranks in flank, which *Debreas* by his Courage and Example endeavoured to retrieve; who while he was thus occupied, and abſent from the Front, the ſame was furiouſly charged by *Scanderbeg*, and the *Turks* were now ready to turn their backs, when *Debreas* haſtned to the Place in moſt danger, and did all he could to reſtore the Battel, and preſſing in among the foremoſt, was ſingly encounter'd by *Scanderbeg*, and ſlain, beſides 4120, and ſome Priſoners: but few of the Chriſtians fell upon this occaſion, among whom *Scanderbeg* diſtributed the Spoil of the Enemy, and particularly gave *Debreas*'s Horſe and Armour to *Moſes*, and to *Muſachius* a Priſoner, who by his Mein ſeemed to be a Man of Quality; and agreeing with his Owner upon a Ranſom of 200 Ducats, preſently took the Mony out of a little Bag he had ſecretly kept about him, and made him a tender of it. *Muſachius* receiving the Mony, told the *Turk* he muſt provide another Ranſom, becauſe that Mony was his own before by the Law of Arms, whereas the *Turk* inſiſted upon the Agreement; ſo that the Controverſy being brought before *Scanderbeg*, and he having fully heard both ſides, he ſmilingly ſaid, they both contended for what was of right his, and neither of theirs: For the Priſoner and the Mony were both mine (ſaid he) at the firſt taking of him, ſince which I have given you *Muſachius* the Priſoner, which I knew, but not the Mony, which I knew not; neither doth the concealing of it, make it to be yours, ſaid he to the *Turk*, who had by Law of Arms loſt your ſelf, together with all that you had about you. At length he determined the Matter, that *Muſachius* ſhould have the Mony agreed on, and the *Turk* his Liberty.

Scanderbeg *kills* Debreas, *and routs the* Turks.

Now *Mahomet* being heartily grieved with the ill Succeſs of *Debreas*, and, as it were, diſcouraged to carry on any more War openly againſt *Scanderbeg*, he deviſed ſome other way to deal with him: And knowing, if he could corrupt *Moſes*, a Man mightily in favour with *Scanderbeg*, and of great Authority, he ſhould gain a great Step; he writes to the Gover-

nour of *Sfetigrade*, to tempt him the beſt way he could, who finding at length a cunning-headed Fellow, and a Chriſtian, who dwelt in that Town, fit for his purpoſe, and winning him by Gifts and Promiſes wholly to his Intereſt, he went upon his errand to *Moſes* aforeſaid; whom he mightily extoll'd at firſt, and by degrees inſinuating to him how much he was favour'd by the *Turkiſh* Emperor, he was mightily pleaſed therewith: and the hope he conceived of his having one day the Kingdom of *Epirus* for himſelf, began to work new thoughts in him. But tho he did neither in word nor mein make any ſign of his liking or diſliking the Propoſal, yet the Meſſenger went away ſatisfied of his ſecret Conſent; after whoſe departure *Moſes*'s Mirth was turned into Melancholy, and the uſual Cheerfulneſs of his Countenance much abated. But the Meſſenger returning again with great Preſents, as might well beſeem the Grand Signior, it was ſaid he received none but the worſt of them, which was the very Treaſon it ſelf; which ſoon after, according to the opportunity, began to work: For *Scanderbeg* coming to *Dibra*, and conſulting with *Moſes* about laying ſiege to *Sfetigrade*, he diſſuaded him from it, by telling him he had receiv'd late intelligence of the Place's being extraordinarily provided, and perſuaded him to beſiege *Belgrade* in the Confines of *Epirus*, and gave him hopes of better ſucceſs on that ſide. For which end *Scanderbeg* having firſt ſent to *Alphonſo* King of *Naples* for aid, he made all the Preparation he could for the ſaid Siege, wherein he deſigned alſo to have uſed the Service of *Moſes*; but his traitorous Heart began to frame divers Excuſes for it. However, the requeſted Aid, and more coming from *Naples*, he now inveſted *Belgrade* with an Army of 14000 good Soldiers, and ſo diſtreſſed the Place, that the *Turks* promiſed, in caſe they were not relieved within ſixteen days, to ſurrender it.

Moſes corrupted by the Turks.

Scanderbeg beſieges Belgrade.

But the news of this Siege coming to *Mahomet*, as he was ready to go over into *Aſia* againſt the Emperor of *Trapezond*, he ſent *Sebalias* Baſſa with 40000 Horſe to relieve it; promiſing him great Rewards, if he could bring *Scanderbeg* dead or alive to him. This Baſſa, who was a very wary Commander, corrupted *Scanderbeg*'s Scouts, ſo that no Signal was given in the Camp of the Enemy's approach; ſo that *Sebalias* had the opportunity

portunity to fall upon that part of *Scanderbeg*'s Army which lay in the Plains before they were aware of it: But how much ſoever unprepared and terrified they were, *Muſachius* drew his Men into ſuch order, as the ſhortneſs of the time and the Enemies approach would admit of, and reſolutely receiv'd their Charge, as a Man deſirous beforehand to revenge his own Death. At length ſeeing his Men ſlain in whole heaps, he bravely attempted to break thro the Enemy, and to get to *Scanderbeg* upon the Mountains; but being hemm'd in on all ſides, he fought ſo deſperately, as aſtoniſh'd all his Enemies, and there at laſt with all his Men was ſlain. *Tanuſius* on the other ſide, after he had made divers brave Attempts to reſcue his Couſin, and finding it would not poſſibly do, exhorted all that ſurviv'd to fly; but they were moſt of them ſlain in the purſuit. *Scanderbeg* would have come down from the Mountain to endeavour to relieve them, but he was by his Officers diſſuaded from an Attempt that unavoidably muſt have been attended with diſaſtrous Conſequences: yet obſerving at laſt that moſt of the *Turks* follow'd the Chaſe, and that few were left in the great Plain, except ſuch as rifled the Dead, he came down ſuddenly upon them with 4000 Men, and preſently ſlew all the *Turks* he met with; and then fell upon and cut off many in the Rear of the *Turkiſh* Army, which made the Baſſa turn about, and fight; and after a ſharp Skirmiſh begun, fearing in that diſorderly way of fighting to have the Victory wrung out of his hands, he cauſed a Retreat to be ſounded, that he might in better order encounter his dangerous Enemy; who on his part having drawn together the remainder of his Army, fell furiouſly upon the *Turks*, and ſlew *Ackmat* and *Barach*, two valiant *Turkiſh* Soldiers (who had in *Mahomet*'s preſence ſwore to be *Scanderbeg*'s death) with his own hands, beſides many *Turks* that fell in the Action. But night coming on, the *Turks* retired to a Mountain near the City, and *Scanderbeg* to another two miles off, from whence he march'd in the night to *Epirus*, and well ſecured the Paſſes as he went, for fear leſt proud of his Victory, the Baſſa ſhould break into his Country. This was the only and greateſt Overthrow that *Scanderbeg* had hitherto receiv'd of the *Turks*; wherein he loſt 2000 Horſe and 3000 Foot, moſt of

Muſachius *ſlain, and the* Epirots *put to flight.*

Scanderbeg *beaten flies by night to* Epirus.

them *Italians*, with his Tents and Artillery, and about 80 taken prisoners: but the Victory was not cheap to the *Turks*, of whom 3000 fell in the Battel.

Sebalias next day perceiving *Scanderbeg* was gone, cut off the Hands and Feet of such of the Christians as he found breathing among the Dead, as also the Head of *Musachius* and others, which he caused to be flay'd, and stuff'd with Chaff, and so carried as the vain Trophies of his Victory to *Constantinople*; whither he return'd in great triumph, and at his entry caused the Captives to be led in Chains before him, after whom were carried the Colours taken from the Christians, with the aforesaid Heads on Lances, and after them the Spoil. Last of all came *Sebalias* himself with his Soldiers, and none was spoken of but *Sebalias*, his Praises being in every man's mouth, since he was the only Man that did shew that *Scanderbeg* was to be overcome. Some of the Slaves were afterwards sold, and some barbarously impaled.

Moses *revolts to the* Turks.

But as one Misfortune seldom comes without another, as soon as ever the Traitor *Moses* heard of this Defeat of *Scanderbeg*, he attempted (as he had before projected) to corrupt the Christian Soldiers to revolt with him to the *Turks*; but finding none, save a few of the baser sort, willing to hearken to him, he fled with them by night to *Sfetigrade*, and thence to *Constantinople*, where he was honourably entertained by *Mahomet*. This being understood by *Scanderbeg*, he was in amaze at it; but after a little consideration, he said no more, but that he could easily have *Moses* excused, for that he was carried away with the violence of such a Fortune as might have alienated the mind of a very constant Man; neither would he hear his Friends use any reproachful Speech concerning him. However he immediately entred *Dibra* with his Nephew *Amesa*, but could find none there Accomplices to *Moses*; who in the mean time sollicited *Mahomet* to proceed in his War against *Scanderbeg*, and promised to do great matters therein, even to the spending of his Life in the Service: who finding him really alienated from *Scanderbeg*, in the Spring sent him with 15000 Horse of his own chusing, to invade *Epirus*. *Scanderbeg* by his Spies being advertised of his Approach, as also what Strength he had, stood not now upon palling against

one

one who had been a long time privy to all his Stratagems; but while both Armies were ranged in order of Battel, and ready to engage, a Meſſenger came from the *Turkiſh* Camp, to challenge any ſingle Chriſtian to fight with a *Turk* before the general Battel did begin. Hereupon *Zacharias Groppa*, a valiant Gentleman, requeſted of *Scanderbeg* that he might be the Perſon to fight the *Turk*, whoſe name was *Ahemaze*; and the ſame being granted, and drawing ſomewhat near one another, bravely armed and mounted, the *Turk* call'd aloud to him, ſaying, it would be time enough for him to haſten to his Death, and therefore required firſt to talk to him; and when he had learnt of him both his Name and Place, he propoſed the ſame Conditions for the Combat as *Maneſſi* had derided long before. In ſhort, it was agreed between them, that each of them ſhould try his own fortune without any other's help, and that the Conqueror ſhould have full power over the Body and Spoil of him that was vanquiſhed. Then withdrawing a little, they firſt broke their Lances, and were both overthrown; then fell to it on foot with their Scimiters, and after a great many hard Blows and Hurts, both their Swords were at laſt beaten out of their hands: then they grappled and ſtruggled ſo long a time, till *Zacharias* foiling the *Turk*, thruſt his Dagger above his Gorget into his Throat, and ſlew him, and return'd with his Head and Spoils to the Chriſtian Army. Upon which preſently comes *Moſes* to the ſame place, challenging *Scanderbeg* to fight him in a ſingle Combat; but upon the other's offering it, declin'd it. After which the Signal being given, the two Armies furiouſly engag'd, where *Scanderbeg* charging the Van of the *Turks*, made them recoil; which *Moſes* perceiving, reliev'd them with new Supplies: however, the *Epirots* fluſh'd with the beginning of their good fortune, prevailed ſtill, and after a great ſlaughter came to their main Body, where *Moſes* had plac'd the beſt Soldiers, who fought with exceeding great Courage; and *Moſes* warily obſerving in what part of the Battel *Scanderbeg* himſelf was, bent his Forces againſt him on purpoſe, with a deſign, if poſſible, to kill him, which he was very like to do: for a brave *Turkiſh* Soldier by chance encountring with *Scanderbeg*, ſtruck him backward upon his Horſe with that

force, that the *Turks* gave a great ſhout, as thinking him really ſlain; but he preſently recovering himſelf, aſſaulted the ſame *Turk* afreſh, and ſlew him. Now a great part of the *Turkiſh* Army being already overthrown by *Scanderbeg*'s Wings, divers of whom fix'd the Heads of the *Turks* upon their Spears in token of Victory, and joining themſelves with *Scanderbeg* againſt the main Battel of the *Turks*, they all fled, notwithſtanding all the Efforts of *Moſes* to the contrary, who with 4000 Men only, the poor Remains of ſo great an Army, had much ado to eſcape, the reſt to the number of 11000 being ſlain, but not paſt 100 of the Chriſtians. *Moſes* hereupon returning to *Conſtantinople*, was contemned of every body, and even of the Sultan himſelf, who would have put him to death, had not ſome of the great Baſſas interceded for him, and alledged, none would ever for the future revolt to *Mahomet*, if he ſerved him ſo. However, he lived in a very mean Condition, and full of ſad and melancholy Thoughts for his Treaſon againſt his Prince; but at length he determin'd to flee to his Mercy, and ſafely arriving at *Dibra*, the Gariſon ſeeing their old Governour in ſo miſerable and ſad a ſtate, took pity on him, and received and carried him to *Scanderbeg*, who not only pardon'd him, but reſtored him to all his Poſſeſſions and Commands, ordering by open Proclamation, that no Man ſhould either publickly or privately ſpeak of his having offended at all.

Moſes defeated by Scanderbeg.

Is pardoned by him.

Some time after *Mahomet* having recourſe to the ſame Artifice, tempted *Ameſa*, *Scanderbeg*'s Nephew, to revolt from him, with the promiſe of the Kingdom of *Epirus*, which he thought would more alienate the Minds of the *Epirots* from *Scanderbeg* than *Moſes*. Now at his firſt coming to *Conſtantinople* with his Wife and Children, he did not fill *Mahomet*'s ears with great Promiſes and vain Commendations of himſelf, as *Moſes* had done; but only excuſed his own Revolt, labouring to perſuade the Sultan, that he had for juſt Cauſes left his Uncle, having been wrong'd by him divers ways, and had now a deſire moſt faithfully to ſerve him; which pleaſed *Mahomet* very well, who for the preſent appointed him honourable Maintenance. But upon the approach of the Spring calling a Council together about invading *Epirus*, *Ameſa*'s was liked the beſt of any;

Ameſa revolts to the Turks.

any: in purſuance of which, *Iſaac* the great Baſſa of *Conſtantinople*, with an Army of 50000 Men, and *Ameſa* with him, having the charge of 5000 Horſe, was to be proclaim'd by the Baſſa King of *Epirus*, that the People might ſee the Sultan's Diſpleaſure was particularly againſt the Perſon of *Scanderbeg*, and not the Nation. *Scanderbeg*, who was well aware of the great Preparations againſt him, ſummon'd his great Officers together at *Dibra*, where the Tempeſt was firſt to be expected, and there declared to them at large the greatneſs of the danger, and what he thought of it himſelf. This done, he muſter'd up his Troops in all parts, and all things were readily convey'd out of the Country into ſtrong Towns, and other places of Refuge.

By this time *Iſaac* Baſſa and *Ameſa* were come into *Epirus*, the former being moſtly directed in his march by the other. *Scanderbeg* alſo had his Army ready, but he lay himſelf only with 6000 Horſe, ſeeming as if he deſigned with them only to give the *Turks* battel; but as ſoon as the Baſſa came in ſight, he fled, not as uſually into the Woods and Mountains, but directly towards *Lyſſa* a *Venetian* Town upon the Seaſide, as if he had quite deſpair'd of keeping *Epirus*; and the *Turks* being confirm'd in that opinion by the account given by ſome Troops of Horſe the Baſſa ſent after him, and for intelligence, they began to triumph and rejoice mightily. The Baſſa hereupon removed farther into the Country, contrary to the Opinion of *Ameſa*, and during this march proclaim'd *Ameſa* in *Mahomet*'s Name, with the great applauſe of the whole Army, King of *Epirus*; and on the third day, in the hot Month of *July*, coming to the Plains of *Æmathia*, he there encamp'd that night. In the mean time *Scanderbeg* with a ſmall Body of Horſe getting to the top of the high Hills, from whence he could well diſcover the Plains of *Æmathia*, poſted *Pejeus Emanuel* with ſome Men, who was to give him conſtant Signals of the Motion of the Enemy, himſelf returning at midnight to his Camp in the Borders of his Kingdom towards *Lyſſa*; and ſo marching by by-ways all night, he came undiſcovered, and encamp'd as near the Mountains where his Scouts lay as poſſibly he could. Then as for the Baſſa, he on his part being deſirous to get as far as into the Country as he could, advanced early

next

next morning as far as the famous Plains of *Pharsalia*, where the Fate of the *Roman* Republick was many Ages before decided between those mighty Heroes *Cæsar* and *Pompey*. Here the *Turks* finding some straggling Cattel, roved up and down the Country for Booty, and at night carelesly incamp'd without any watch, as thinking all secure now, and the whole Country their own; while *Scanderbeg* lying on the other side of the Mountains, and perceiving by his Spies which way the Enemy lay, he secretly march'd and encamp'd at the foot of Mount *Tumenist* that night; not far from which the Bassa advanced and encamped also next morning with half of the Army, the other being sent with *Amesa* to destroy the Country, who return'd about noon with his Soldiers sufficiently weary'd with Travel and the Heat of the Day, and now solaced themselves carelesly under Trees in the Fields with such Provision as they got, Sleep, or some kind of Disport or other. Neither was that part of the Army under the Bassa more careful than these, all of them thinking *Scanderbeg* was far enough, and no danger from him; whereas he viewing all Passes, placing in his Army more Drums, Trumpets, and other warlike Instruments than usual, on purpose to terrify the Enemy, and appointing every Man to his Post, advanced himself with 4000 Horse, and as many Foot, up Mount *Tumenist*, from whence he could plainly view the Enemies Camp, the chief of whom were now consulting whether they had best march to *Croia* or no: But *Scanderbeg* did not give them leisure long to do so, but determining first to oppress the *Turkish* Scouts, he came down first from the Mountain with a few Horse himself, while the rest of his Army follow'd; and suddenly falling upon the Scouts, slew all of them but one, who, as a Man almost frightned out of his wits, fled to and alarm'd the *Turkish* Camp with the approach of the Enemy, when they least dreamt of it: but *Scanderbeg* following the Scout at the heels, broke in presently among the unarmed *Turks*, and making a great slaughter of them, fill'd all the Camp with sudden Fear and Tumult. *Amesa*, who at the first noise got immediately to his Charge, with his half-arm'd Soldiers, was the first that made head against *Scanderbeg*. The Bassa also did all he could to arm and marshal his Men; but in the mean while the Sol-

Turks Camp buried in Security.

Soldiers that lay in ambuſh in the Woods coming down from the Mountains with horrible Shouts, and Noiſe of warlike Inſtruments, ſo frighted the *Turks*, that they would have fled outright, had not *Ameſa*, who was acquainted with his Uncle's Stratagems, perſuaded them to ſtand ſtoutly to it, and they would do well enough; ſaying, the noiſe of ſo many warlike Inſtruments was but the bare Shifts and Devices of the Enemy to cover their own Weakneſs. The Baſſa alſo did all he could to come to *Ameſa*'s aid; but as he was ſetting forward, he was ſo briskly encountred on one ſide by *Moſes* with his Horſe, and on the other by *Tanuſius* and *Emanuel* with the Foot, that he was forced with great loſs to retreat again to his Trenches. However *Ameſa* did all that a brave Man could do to maintain the Charge againſt his Uncle: but the *Turks* at length were forced to turn their backs and fly, whom *Scanderbeg* ceaſed not to purſue, till they were quite out of *Epirus*. As for the number of the *Turks* ſlain, the leaſt Account reckons 20000, ſome 30000, and no more but 60 Chriſtians. The Spoil was very great, and the Priſoners of note were *Ameſa* and a *Sangiack*, with which *Scanderbeg* entred in triumph into *Croia*; from whence *Ameſa* was ſent to *Alphonſo* King of *Naples*, to be kept priſoner there, where having remain'd a year in durance, and *Scanderbeg* hearing of *Alphonſo*'s Death, he deſired his Son *Ferdinand* to ſend *Ameſa* to him, whom he pardon'd and reſtor'd again to his Favour. But *Ameſa* remembring what Pledges of his Loyalty (I mean, his Wife and Children) he had left at *Conſtantinople*, he importuned his Uncle to give him leave to go thither, to endeavour to procure their Liberty, but ſo as if he were fled by night from *Croia*, out of diſpleaſure to him, and reſpect he ſtill retain'd for *Mahomet*: which was granted him accordingly; and being ſafely arrived at *Conſtantinople*, he ſhortly after died there, being poiſoned, as was thought, by *Mahomet*'s command.

A notable Victory of the Chriſtians over the Turks.

Mahomet at length weary of the ſucceſsleſs Wars of *Epirus*, and being otherwiſe engaged againſt the *Venetians*, and fearing greater Enemies, but at the ſame time diſdaining to ſue to *Scanderbeg* for a Peace, cunningly dealt with ſuch as were ſent to redeem the *Turkiſh* Priſoners, to perſuade him to ſeek it, which the other

Peace with Scanderbeg.

other refuſed: But *Mahomet* ſtrictly ordering thoſe whom he appointed for the defence of the Frontiers by no means to enter into *Epirus*, the *Epirots* thereby enjoy'd the Fruits of Peace, tho none were concluded for the ſpace of two years; and the remembrance of old Injuries wearing out with time, at length a Peace for a year was agreed on: which was no ſooner expired, and things going well with *Mahomet*, but he or-

His Actions againſt the Turks.

der'd *Sinan* with an Army of 20000 Men to enter *Epirus*; but the ſame was quickly defeated, and moſt of them ſlain by *Scanderbeg*, who alſo vanquiſh'd another Army of 30000 Men under *Aſam-beg*, whom he took priſoner. *Juſſun-beg*, with 18000 Men, who came next, fared much alike; upon which *Caraza-beg*, an old Commander, requeſted *Mahomet* he might have leave to try his fortune againſt his old Acquaintance *Scanderbeg*, aſſuring him of better Succeſs than before: and having obtain'd his Conſent, *Caraza* with 40000 Men march'd towards *Epirus*; which *Scanderbeg* hearing, he drew together a greater Army than uſual, and ſending 2000 Men privately into the Enemies Country to lie in ambuſh, they defeated 4000 Horſe, the Van of the *Turks* Army, and ſlew a great many of them; of which the General was ſo aſhamed, that but for his Honour's ſake he would have gone no farther: But being got into *Epirus*, he was ſuddenly attack'd by *Scanderbeg*, before he could well put his Men in order of Battel, tho a great Shower of Rain falling, prevented the Action; and the Rain continuing for three days, during which *Scanderbeg* was continually infeſting the *Turkiſh* Camp, the old General thought fit to return home.

Now *Mahomet* perceiving *Scanderbeg* was not to be ſubdued with ſuch Forces as he was then at leiſure to ſend againſt him, try'd what he could do with him by fair means and ſhew of Friendſhip; in order to which, he ſent an Embaſſador to him with rich Preſents and a Letter, wherein he intitled himſelf, *Sultan* Mahomet, *Lord and Emperor of the Eaſt and Weſt, and of all parts of the World*; and directed the ſame unto *Scanderbeg* Prince of *Albania* and *Epirus*. In this Letter, after a Commemoration of former Friendſhip, and a Deſire of his Company for a time, he declared himſelf ready to enter into a perpetual League with *Scanderbeg*, and left the reſt to be tranſacted by his Embaſſador

Muſtapha

Muſtapha with him. *Scanderbeg*, who in his Anſwer ſtiled himſelf the Soldier of Chriſt, *George Caſtriot*, otherwiſe call'd *Scanderbeg*, Prince of the *Albanians* and *Epirots*, to *Mahomet* Prince of the *Turks*, excuſed himſelf handſomly from not coming to him for that time, but promiſed the ſame at a more convenient opportunity; which *Mahomet* in another Letter allow'd of, and promiſed a ſincere and inviolable Peace with him, which was thereupon concluded and ſolemnly proclaim'd in both Kingdoms, and the ſame continued for ſome time; which gives us a little leiſure to ſee how the *Turkiſh* Affairs ſtood in reſpect to other Neighbours. 1461. *Peace between Scanderbeg and Mahomet.*

Now a little before the Concluſion of the aforeſaid Peace, a War broke out between the *Venetians* and *Turks*: for *Mahomet*, after he had ſubverted the Empire of *Conſtantinople*, and ſubdued the *Morea*, began by his Lieutenant to diſturb the *Venetians*, who had then divers ſtrong Places in *Peloponneſus* on the Sea-Coaſts. And *Joſhua*, *Mahomet*'s Lieutenant in this Country, having by the Treachery of a *Greek* Prieſt ſurpriz'd *Argos*, and *Omares* having ravaged the Country about *Lepanto*, entred farther into the *Venetian* Territories about *Modon* and *Coron*. The Senate of *Venice*, after long Conſultation and Debate, and being more particularly moved thereunto by the notable Speech of *Victor Capella*, reſolved without delay to make war upon the *Turks*, and to ſend their Embaſſadors to divers Chriſtian Princes for aid. *Bertholdus Eſte* they ſent with an Army into the *Morea*, who quickly recovered *Argos*, and marching with 15000 Men to the *Iſthmus* of *Corinth*, *Aloviſus Lauretanus*, Admiral of *Venice*, met him there; and uniting their Forces, in 15 days fortify'd all that Strait from Sea to Sea with a Rampier and double Ditch five miles long, wherein they imploy'd 30000 Men; after which they laid ſiege to *Corinth*, where the General was unfortunately ſlain at the ſecond Aſſault. However *Betinus Calcinatius*, his Succeſſor, continu'd it; but hearing that *Mahomet* was coming with a great Army in perſon to raiſe the ſiege, and deſtroy their new Works at the *Iſthmus*, they retir'd for the defence of the latter; yet not thinking themſelves able to withſtand 80000 Men, they drew off to *Neapolis* to defend the Sea-Coaſt, which *Mahomet* ſoon after aſſaulted in vain: but departing thence, *War between the Venetians and Turks.*

he

he wasted the Country about *Modon* and *Coron*, tho he had no better success in attacking the City of *Iuncum* than at *Neapolis*; so that Winter approaching, he returned to *Constantinople*, after whose departure the *Venetians* ravaged all that part of *Arcadia* that was subject to the *Turks*; and their Admiral had the Isle of *Lemnos* delivered to him by the famous Pirate *Cominius*, who had surprized it from the *Turks*, and was soon after succeeded in his Command by the noble *Venetian*, *Ursatus Justinianus*; who while he was scouring the *Egean* Sea with 32 great Gallies, *Andreas Dandalus* rashly engaging the *Turkish* Horse between *Mantynia* and *Pytheme*, he was with 1500 more overthrown and slain: nay, the Sea-General *Ursatus* had worse success with his Siege of *Mitylene* in *Lesbos*, where in two Assaults he lost five thousand Men, and soon after died in the *Morea* for sorrow, being succeeded by *Jacobus Lauretanus* in his Command.

Now the *Venetians* considering the great Power of the *Turkish* Emperor, very much sollicited Pope *Pius* the Second for Aid against him; who procured them great Supplies from *Germany*, *France*, *Spain*, and other Countries, besides abundance of Volunteers from all parts of *Christendom*: And the Senate at the same time endeavour'd to persuade *Scanderbeg* to renounce his League with the Sultan, and join with them against him; which *Mahomet* being apprehensive of, and fearing lest he should be made General of all the Christian Arms against him, he writ to him a Letter complaining of some Inroads made lately into his Territories, in breach of the Peace, by the *Epirots*, at the instigation of the *Venetians* his mortal Enemies; which yet he declared he was ready to pass by, if *Scanderbeg* would renew the League with him: But *Scanderbeg*'s Answer suting little with his Design and Request, he saw there was no other way left than seriously to prepare for War. And indeed *Scanderbeg* having receiv'd a Letter at this time from the Pope, that he, accompany'd with the Christian Princes, would speedily come over to *Epirus* with a strong Army to join his Troops against the common Enemy of Christianity; and being exhorted by him to declare War against the *Turks*, he without any more ado broke with his Forces into, and ravag'd and

Scanderbeg renews the War against the Turks.

and deſtroyed the *Turk*'s Country every where, and then returned with great Booty.

Mahomet, to repreſs the Fury of *Scanderbeg*, ſent *Seremet* Baſſa with 14000 Men to lie on the Borders of *Epirus*; who poſting himſelf at the City of *Ocrida* in *Macedonia*, and *Scanderbeg* by his Scouts underſtanding how he lay, he ſent 12000 Men to lie in ambuſh near that Place: and upon break of day ſent out 500 Horſe towards the Enemy, under the Command of *Picus Emanuel* and *Peter Angelus*, to draw him, if they could, into the Field; but with Orders, if the Enemy drew not out, to retire with ſmall Reſiſtance, and ſo decoy them to the Place where his Army lay; which hapned accordingly: ſo that the *Turks* being attacked on every ſide, here loſt 10000 Men, and the Treaſurer of the Army, with twelve more of Quality were taken priſoners, but preſently ranſomed for 40000 Ducats. *Scanderbeg* hereupon returns to *Epirus* in expectation of the Arrival of the Chriſtian Army; but the Death of Pope *Pius* at *Amana*, as he was ready to be tranſported with them, forthwith diſperſed the Army, to the great Grief of the Chriſtians, and Joy of the *Turks*. However, the *Venetians*, who had now made *Victor Capella* their Captain-General, went on with the War, and in the Iſle of *Eubœa* in a ſhort time took *Aulis*, as alſo *Lirſum* in the Gulph of *Theſſalonica*, with the Iſle of *Himber*; then landing his Men at *Pyræum*, ſurpriz'd *Athens*, from whence he carried all the People priſoners with the Booty to *Eubœa*, where being informed that *Patras* in the *Morea* would by the Chriſtian Inhabitants be delivered up to him, he landed 4000 Foot, under *Barbarinus* in the Gulph of *Patras*, and 200 Horſe, who coming diſorderly within a Mile of the City, the *Turkiſh* Gariſon fell upon and routed them with their Horſe; in which Action *Barbarinus* was ſlain, and *Ragius* the Commander of the Horſe taken and empal'd, and ſcarce a thouſand of the Men eſcaped to the Gallies alive: with which loſs, and that ſuſtained in his ſecond Attempt upon *Patras*, *Victor* was ſo concerned, that he ſoon after died ſuddenly in *Eubœa*.

10000 Turks *ſlain*,

1464.

The *Venetians* diſcouraged with this Loſs, ſollicited *Matthias Corvinus* King of *Hungary*, to come in to their Aſſiſtance: this *Matthias* was a younger Son of the famous *Hunniades*, who upon the Death of *Ladiſlaus*, was,

was, for the respect bore to his Father (tho he were then himself a Prisoner at *Prague*) by a military Election chosen King of *Hungary*, and became a far greater Terror to the *Turks* than ever the famous *Hunniades* was: And so now accepting of the Proposals of the *Venetians*, and taking into his Protection all their Territories between the *Rhetian Alps* and the *Adriatick*, he early in the Spring passed the *Danube* with a great Army at *Belgrade*; and rasing the Forts which the *Turks* had built there, enter'd *Servia*, which he miserably ravaged, and returned with vast Booty, and 20000 Prisoners. But of him and his farther Actions against the Infidels, we shall have occasion to treat more hereafter.

We must return now to *Scanderbeg* again, against whom *Mahomet*, grieved for the late Overthrow of *Seremet*, sent *Balabanus Badera*, a valiant Commander, with 15000 Horse, and 3000 Foot. This *Balabanus* was an *Epirot* born, but bred a *Mahometan* from his youth among the *Turks*, and the first that mounted the Walls of *Constantinople* at the taking of that City by *Mahomet*; who as soon as he came down to *Alchria*, a Town on the Frontiers of *Epirus*, sent divers rich Presents to *Scanderbeg*, making a shew as if he meant nothing but Peace with him: but *Scanderbeg* penetrating his Designs, by way of derision, sent him a Spade, Mattock, and the like Instruments of Husbandry, willing him to use them and follow his Father's Trade, but leave the Conduct of Armies to Men of more Skill and Quality; which he resented very much, and understanding that *Scanderbeg* lay with a small Power upon the Frontiers, he attempted to surprize him; but finding he was discovered, he encamped within two Miles of *Scanderbeg*, who had then 4000 Horse, and 15000 Foot, which lay in the pleasant Vale of *Valchal*, while *Balabanus* encamped near a rough woody Hill that enclosed part of that Vally. *Scanderbeg* supposing an Engagement would ensue, charged his Men, if the Enemy retired or fled, to pursue them no farther than the Straits of the Hill, for fear of Ambushes, and then retired himself with his Army to the Brow of an Hill behind him; which *Balabanus* taking for a Flight, hastily came forward towards him, between whom was fought a great and doubtful Battel, for a long

Battel between Balabanus *and* Scanderbeg.

long time, but the *Turks* at laſt were routed; yet ſome of *Scanderbeg*'s beſt Officers, forgetful of the Straits he had forewarned them of, unadviſedly purſu'd the Enemy thither, where being beſet on every ſide, after they had deſperately fought a long time, they were taken and forthwith ſent to *Conſtantinople*: amongſt whom was the famous *Moſes Golenus* already ſo often mentioned, *Muſachius*, *Giuiza*, *Perlatus*, and others, all fit for Generals; and for whoſe Freedom *Scanderbeg* diſpatched an Embaſſador to *Mahomet*: but he would neither allow them to be exchanged nor ranſomed; but after having uſed them with all the deſpight he could, cauſed them all, by little and little, to be flea'd alive, in which miſerable Torment they lived fifteen days and then died.

Moſes and others flea'd alive by Mahomet.

Balabanus was highly extolled and preſented with rich Gifts by *Mahomet*, whom he endeavoured ſtill to oblige by his good Services. Wherefore finding his Stratagem of making Preſents to *Scanderbeg*, and deluding him with the Pretenſions of Peace, would not do, he had recourſe to other Arts; and having corrupted his Scouts, he ſuddenly in the night had oppreſt *Scanderbeg* in his Camp at *Oronycheum*, if he himſelf, who was ever upon the watch, had not in the dead of the Night perceived the coming of the Enemy afar off, by the Noiſe of their Horſes, and thereupon with wonderful Celerity put his Army in order to receive them; and ſo engaging with the *Turks*, after a great Fight, ſlew moſt of them, *Balabanus* with the remainder hardly eſcaping: However, *Mahomet* continued him ſtill in the Command, and ſo ſent him 14000 Horſe, and 3000 Foot, wherewith to invade *Epirus*; and the more to encourage him, promiſed to make him King of that Country if he would ſubdue it. *Balabanus* finding his Artifices would not do, after he had lain three Months at *Alchria*, reſolved to adventure, by plain force, to overthrow *Scanderbeg*: in purſuance of which, he marched to the great Plains of *Sfetigrade*, where *Scanderbeg* with 8000 Horſe, and 1500 Foot, diſdained not to meet him, tho he were twice his Number. Here the *Epirots* fought more like raging Lions than Men; and *Scanderbeg* perform'd more in this Action than could ever have been expected from himſelf: but while he was fighting in the midſt

Scanderbeg defeats Balabanus.

of his Enemies, his Horſe hapned to be ſlain under him, and falling down with him, ſorely bruiſed one of his Arms, and the *Turks* at the ſame time flocked about to kill him; but his own Soldiers quickly reſcued him, ſo that encountring preſently with *Suliman* a great *Turkiſh* Commander, and killing him, the *Turks* diſcouraged, preſently fled, of whom few eſcaped in the Purſuit with *Balabanus*, to carry the News home.

Balabanus, now thrice beaten by *Scanderbeg*, returned to *Conſtantinople*, where he was ſharply reprehended by *Mahomet*: but ſtaying till his fury was over, he then told the Sultan it was in vain to ſend ſuch ſmall Armies to *Epirus*, but he ſhould ſend at the ſame time two valiant Commanders with a ſtrong Army divided between them, who at the ſame time entring *Epirus* might ravage the Country, and hem *Scanderbeg* in between them. *Mahomet*, pleaſed with the Advice, appointed *Balabanus* to be the Man to put it in execution, who got together an Army of 40000 brave Men, and choſe *Jacup Arnauth*, otherwiſe *James* the *Epirot*, becauſe he was a Native of *Epirus*, to be his Companion. *Balabanus* taking the nigheſt way thro *Macedonia*, came firſt to *Epirus* with 20000 Horſe, and 4000 Foot, and encamped in the Valley of *Valchal*; againſt whom *Scanderbeg*, who had his Spies at work, had got an Army of 8000 Horſe, and 4000 Foot, all choice Men, and hearing of his arrival, ſent three Spies (whereof one was *Balabanus*'s Kinſman, tho *Scanderbeg* did not know it) for Intelligence, who all three, after they had viewed *Balabanus*'s Army, went over to him, to whom they diſcovered all they knew of *Scanderbeg*; who ſuppoſing they had been taken by the Enemy, went out himſelf with five luſty Soldiers, and had like to have been ſurprized by ſome *Turkiſh* Horſe that lay in ambuſh, from whom they fled with utmoſt haſte: but four of his Men failing to leap over a great Tree that lay croſs the way, were forced to turn back and fight with their Purſuers, by whom they were ſlain. In the mean time *Scanderbeg* encouraged his Men to engage, and having divided his Army into four Partitions, under the Command of *Tanuſius*, *Zacharias Groppa*, *Peius Emanuel*, and himſelf; and ſending ſome Companies of Harquebuſiers and Archers

Archers before to provoke the Enemy to Battel, he advanced with the reſt of the Army towards them, but *Balabanus* not ſtirring with his Army from his Tents, *Scanderbeg* by continual Skirmiſhes dared him to put out to fight; and braving him in his Trenches as if he would have fallen upon him there, the *Turks* were ready to mutiny againſt their General becauſe he would not lead them forth to the Battel: who perceiving his Fellow did not come, and that the *Turks* were enraged to fight, he drew out of his Trenches and engaged, himſelf at the head of the left Wing, where there was a fierce Encounter between him and *Scanderbeg*, who being ſtrengthned with the old Gariſon of *Croia*, forced the *Turks* to give ground, yet in good order, ſo that the Victory remain'd yet doubtful; when *Scanderbeg* with ſome Troops out of the right Wing, where there was the leaſt occaſion for them, defetching a compaſs fell upon the Enemy's Flank, and withdrawing again, with great celerity charg'd the Rear of the *Turks* left Wing; ſo that being attack'd in Front and Rear, there was a great ſlaughter made of them. *Balabanus* with great Courage ſtood the Battel as long as there were any hopes, and then fled with ſome few Followers, the reſt of the Army being for the moſt part ſlain or taken priſoners.

Scanderbeg *defeats* Balabanus *again.*

Scanderbeg had ſcarce time to breathe, when his Siſter, then at *Petrella*, diſpatched him News of *Jacup Arnauth*'s coming by the way of *Belgrade* into *Epirus* with 16000 Horſe, and that he then lay encamp'd in the Plains of *Tyranna* the leſs. At which *Scanderbeg*'s Soldiers, to whom he communicated the ſame, were not at all diſmay'd, but were ready to march on preſently; and in a ſhort time they came to the place where the Enemy lay, who thereupon removed his Camp to the corner of the Plain near a little Hill for his greater ſecurity, while *Scanderbeg* encamp'd his Army on the ground *Jacup* had left, and reſted there a whole day. But next morning to terrify his Enemies, who had not yet heard of the Defeat of *Balabanus*, he cauſed divers *Turks* Heads, who were ſlain in the late Battel, to be thrown before the Enemies Trenches, and alſo divers of the Priſoners to be ſhew'd them; which *Jacup* ſeeing, ſaid in deſpair, *I ſee the evil fortune of* Mahomet. Immediately after *Scanderbeg* ſent 500 Horſe out to

Jacup *ſlain by* Scanderbeg, *and his Army routed.*

skirmiſh with the *Turks*, commanding them as ſoon as they had charg'd to retire. *Jacup* did not decline the Battel, which was fierce enough, tho of no long continuance: for *Scanderbeg* perceiving in what part of the Army he was, bent his greateſt force that way, and ſingling him out, ſlew him with his own hands; upon which the *Turks* fled, and in their flight were moſt of them ſlain or taken, and the Stragglers every where knock'd on the head by the Country People, inſomuch that the *Turks* loſt in the two Battels 24000 ſlain, and 6000 Priſoners, and *Scanderbeg* about 1000; who with his Soldiers were ſo weary of the Slaughter, that when it was told him next day that *Balabanus* was fled with one Cornet of Horſe only, and might, if purſued, eaſily be overtaken, ſaid, *O let ſome of our Enemies live, to relate their own Slaughter, and our Victory!*

Mahomet *beſieges* Croia.

While theſe things were in agitation, *Mahomet* had hired two *Turks* to aſſaſſinate *Scanderbeg*, who were baptized and pretended to become Chriſtians, the better to cover their Villany; but happening to fall out one with another, and ſomething dropping from them that gave ſuſpicion of their Deſign, they upon ſtrict examination confeſs'd it, and were executed. In the mean time *Mahomet* enraged at the Loſſes of his Commanders, with an Army of 200000 Men reſolves to invade *Epirus* in perſon, which *Scanderbeg* was not ignorant of, and provided for; but by the time he had ſet all things in order, his old Friend *Balabanus* with 80000 Horſe had enter'd *Epirus*, and was ſoon after follow'd by *Mahomet* himſelf with the reſt of the Army, who at his firſt appearance ſummon'd *Croia* to ſurrender upon honourable Conditions; but the Governour returning him no Anſwer but Cannon-balls, he planted his Batteries, and caſt more Cannon before the place: But fearing to be diſgraced here, as his Father was before him, he left *Balabanus* with 23000 Men, and eight good Officers more with 7000 Men apiece here, and in his return to *Conſtantinople* took ſome ſmall Forts from *Scanderbeg*; and corrupting the Governour of *Chidna*, where 3000 of *Scanderbeg*'s Men lay, the ſame was delivered to him, who, contrary to his Faith, put Man, Woman, and Child to the ſword. In the mean time *Scanderbeg* diſdaining to have his Capital City beſieged by *Balabanus*, ſometime one of the baſeſt of his Father's Subjects,

Subjects, and yet being unable to relieve it, ſent to the *Venetians* and others for Aid. Then going himſelf privately to *Rome*, to *Paul* the Second, upon the ſame account, he could obtain nothing from him; but upon his Return to *Epirus*, finding the Aids which ſome Chriſtian Princes had promiſed were ready, but eſpecially from the *Venetians*, he had in a few days an Army of 13400 good Soldiers, with whom he march'd towards *Croia*. But underſtanding by the way, that *Ionima* was within a day's march coming with a new Supply to his Brother *Balabanus*, he ſuddenly ſurprized him, routed his Men, and took himſelf and his Brother *Hedar* priſoners, whom he ſhew'd next day to *Balabanus* in bonds; then by plain force drove the *Turks* from Mount *Cruma*, their greateſt Poſt, and neareſt *Croia*. Upon this the City rejecting *Balabanus*'s large Propoſals to it for a Surrendry, he coming on with freſh Troops againſt ſome of the Gariſon that ſallied out upon him, was ſhot by *George Alexius* quite thro the Neck, of which Wound he died; whereat the *Turks* were ſo diſcouraged, that they ſilently retired to the Plains of *Tyranna* eight miles from *Croia*, and *Scanderbeg* next day poſſeſs'd himſelf of their Tents and Proviſions, ſending at the ſame time ſome Soldiers to poſſeſs the Straits thro which the *Turks* muſt march: who being now in great diſtreſs, offered to deliver to *Scanderbeg* their Horſes and Arms, ſo they might depart in ſafety; but he anſwering, That as they came into his Country without his command, ſo they ſhould not with his leave depart thence, they reſolv'd to fight their way thro the Straits; which after much loſs they effected, to the great diſcontent of the common Soldiers againſt *Scanderbeg*.

Mahomet, much diſcontented with theſe Loſſes, the following Spring with a mighty Army came once more in perſon into *Epirus*, and there having rebuilt the City of *Valmes*, and ſtrongly gariſon'd the ſame, he thence march'd to *Durazzo* on the Sea-ſide, belonging to the *Venetians*, which he thought to have ſurprized; but miſtaking his mark, he was forced in ſome time to riſe from before it: from whence he march'd and laid ſiege to *Croia*, where he offer'd the Citizens great Privileges if they would preſently yield, and as ſevere Threatnings if they refuſed, which they

Mahomet *fails to take* Croia *a ſecond time.*

actually did; and he finding at length he could do no good againſt the place, in deſpite to *Scanderbeg* went and raſed to the ground a new City call'd *Chiuril*, newly begun to be built by him: and having afterwards received Loſſes by the Mountaineers, he return'd home very melancholy and diſcontented. But what *Mahomet* and all his Generals could not do, for the taking away the Life of the Great *Scanderbeg*, Nature now is haſtning to effect for them: for *Scanderbeg*, after all theſe Troubles, viewing the State of his Kingdom, went at laſt to *Lyſſa*, a City of the *Venetians*, there to confer with the *Venetian* Legate, and other Confederate Princes, more particularly how they might take the City of *Valmes* (which was a great Annoyance to *Epirus*) from the *Turks*; and here falling ſick of a Fever, and perceiving his End near, he recommended his Wife and Son to the protection of the Republick of *Venice*; and having commended his Soul to the hands of Almighty God, departed in peace, *January* 17. in the Year 1466. when he had lived about 63 years, and of them reign'd 24. His Body was buried in the Cathedral of St. *Nicholas* at *Lyſſa*, and there reſted till about nine years after, when the *Turks* coming to the Siege of *Scodra*, took *Lyſſa* in the way, and with great devotion dug up his Bones, reckoning it ſome part of their Happineſs, if they might but ſee and touch them; and ſuch as could get any part of them, ſet them either in Silver or Gold, and hung them about their necks, or wore them on their Bodies, out of a vain Perſuaſion that they ſhould partake of ſome good fortune, as *Scanderbeg* himſelf had whilſt he lived.

Scanderbeg's *Death.* 1466.

King Matthias *conquers* Boſnia.

And now having follow'd the Great *Scanderbeg* to the end of his Race, we return to the famous *Matthias* King of *Hungary* already mention'd; who by Land, as well as the *Venetians* by Sea, for moſt of the time thoſe Wars laſted between *Mahomet* and *Scanderbeg*, kept the *Turks* in play. *Matthias*, according to his Promiſe to the *Venetians*, entring into *Boſnia*, never left till he took *Jaziga* the Capital City, and the whole Kingdom out of the hands of the *Turks*, which City the *Turks* afterwards endeavour'd to recover in vain from him; who, after their being forced to raiſe the Siege, he follow'd into *Servia*, and took part of that Country from them alſo: by which Actions his Name became as dreadful

dreadful to the *Turks*, as that of his Father the valiant *Hunniades*. And while *Matthias* was thus ſucceſsful on one ſide againſt the Infidels, the *Venetians*, and their Captain-General *Canalis*, burnt divers Towns and Villages about the Bay of *Salonichi*, fortify'd *Legoſticium* in the Gulph of *Patras*, and ſurprized *Ænus* at the mouth of the River *Hebrus*, from whence *Canalis* return'd to *Eubœa* with a thouſand Captives: And the *Venetians* at the ſame time aſſiſting *Nicholas Duchaine* againſt his Brother *Alexias*, then at variance about the Principality of *Zadrima*, gave the *Turks* a great Overthrow near the River *Drino* in *Epirus*.

Mahomet not a little offended with the Miſchiefs done him by the *Venetians*, and finding that the Iſle of *Eubœa*, otherwiſe call'd *Negropont*, was their uſual place of Retreat, he reſolv'd to lay ſiege to *Chalcide*, or *Negropont*, the Capital City of it, well knowing the ſtate of the whole Iſland muſt follow the Fortune of it: to which end he ſent thither a Fleet of 300 Gallies well appointed under *Mahomet* the Great Baſſa; and ſoon after following him with a moſt numerous Army, at his firſt landing took and raſed *Stora* and *Baſilicon*: and having made a Bridg of Boats over the Strait, between the Iſland and *Achaia*, for a better Communication with the main Land, he ſoon after raiſed his Batteries againſt *Negropont*; wherein he was aſſiſted by the Treachery of *Thomas* of *Leghorn*, who gave him information of the weakeſt places in the Wall, for which (being diſcover'd) he was fairly hanged. The Siege was continued for 30 days, till the *Venetian* Admiral came at length in ſight of the City; at whoſe ſight *Mahomet*, for fear he ſhould cut off his Communication from the main Land by breaking his Bridges, was inclined (as was ſaid) to raiſe the Siege; but the other baſely ſlipping the opportunity, the *Turks* puſh'd on the Siege with great fury, and in the laſt Aſſault they made, which laſted a whole Day and a Night, after they had been twice beaten out of the Breaches, they at length carry'd the Place with the ſlaughter of all that were in it, and even of the Governour and a few more (who had fled to the Caſtle) contrary to their Faith; but the Governour's Daughter, a moſt beautiful Virgin, being one of the number, ſhe was ſaved, and preſented as a Mirror of Beauty to *Mahomet*,

1470.

Mahomet *takes* Negropont. 1472.

met, who with great constancy refusing to gratify his brutish Lust, he commanded her at last to be slain. The taking of this Island, which happen'd in the Year
1472. 1472. was not only a great loss to the *Venetians*, but indeed to all Christendom, and the Republick not long after endeavour'd to have surpriz'd it in vain.

Negropont thus lost, the *Venetians* made *Peter Mocenigo* their Captain-General, and not only entred into a Confederacy with Pope *Sixtus* the Fourth, *Ferdinand* King of *Naples*, *Lewis* King of *Cyprus*, and the Grand Master of *Rhodes*, against the *Turks*; but sent *Canterinus Zeno* their Embassador to *Usun Cassanes* King of *Persia*, with large Presents, to induce him to make war upon *Mahomet*, which the latter endeavour'd to obviate by an Embassy also. In the mean time Captain-General *Mocenigo* with the Fleet, arrived at and ravaged *Lesbos*, then spoiled the Country about *Pergamus* in the lesser *Asia*. Afterwards landing at *Cnidos*, he took a great Booty; then joining with 17 Gallies of King *Ferdinand* near *Peloponnesus*, after they had refresh'd themselves at *Modon*, they landed in *Asia*, routed the Country *Turks*, and pillaged the Coast for four days. Thence sailing to *Halicarnassus*, took wonderful Spoil, where they were join'd by 20 of the Pope's Gallies, and two from *Rhodes*; with which they sail'd to *Samos*, and from thence landing at *Attalia*, the Capital of *Pamphylia*, burnt its Suburbs, after they had pillaged what they thought fit, and laid siege to the City; but not being in a condition to take it, they destroyed the Sea-Coast of *Pamphylia*, and so returned to *Rhodes*, where they met with the King of *Persia*'s Embassador sent to the Pope and *Venetians* for great Guns by his Master, he having now entred into a League with the Christian Princes against the *Turks*. From *Rhodes* the Fleet sail'd and landed in *Caria*, from whence they return'd with great Spoil to *Naxos*; and while *Ferdinand*'s Gallies return'd home, *Mocenigo* with the Legate sailing back into *Asia*, took the famous City of *Smyrna*, which they plundered and fired, and so Winter drawing on, they return'd home likewise. *Mocenigo* next year return'd to the Coast of
1473. *Asia*, and assisting *Cassambet* Prince of *Cilicia* (who with his Brother *Pyramet*, now with *Usun Cassanes*, had been unjustly dispossess'd by the *Turks*) with some Troops,

Troops, they recover'd *Sichinum*, *Corycus*, and *Seleucia* at last, whereby the Prince was reinstated in his Dominions: and having harassed the Country of *Lycia*, he return'd to the *Morea*, where we leave him to be succeeded by *Tridanus Grittus*, and come a little to observe the War between the *Turks* and *Persians*, the last now siding and in league with the Christians, as before noted.

Usun Cassanes having dispossess'd the last of *Tamerlane*'s Family of the Kingdom of *Persia*, and being married to the Daughter of *Calo-Johannes* late Emperor of *Trapezond*, by whom he had a Right now to that Empire, (kept unjustly from him by *Mahomet*) as also a Daughter named *Martha*, the Mother of *Hysmael Sophy*, of whom hereafter: he as well at the request of the Christian Princes, as to vindicate his own Claim, made war upon *Mahomet*, who sent *Amurath* the Bassa of *Romania*, with some Forces, to join those under his Son *Mustapha* in *Asia*, who coming to a Battel with the *Persian*, were overthrown by him with the loss of the said Bassa and 30000 *Turks*; which ill news being brought to *Mahomet*, he increased his Army to 320000 Men, to whom *Usun* was not inferiour. Now these two mighty Princes drawing near each other by the Mountains of *Armenia*, the *Turks* lost one of the great Bassas with 40000 Men at the first Encounter; which made the Sultan fortify his Camp with a Trench, Carriages, and Artillery, and the *Persians* flush'd with Success, to come boldly on and attack them there: but their Horse terrified with the unaccustomed thundering of the Cannon, fell into confusion, which *Mahomet* perceiving, fell in with his Horse, and after an obstinate, tho disorderly resistance, put them to the rout, and took their Tents. But after all, the *Persians* loss was not computed at above half the loss of the *Turks*, tho the latter had the honour of the Field. But while the Christians were in expectation what the Event of these Wars between the two *Mahometans* would be, there was a sudden Peace concluded between them, and *Mahomet* left at liberty to prosecute his Designs against themselves, which we are just a going to relate.

1474. *Engagements between the* Turks *and* Persians.

Mahomet well knowing that *Albania* and *Epirus* stood in his way to *Italy*, which he look'd upon with an amorous eye, he sent an Army of 80000 Men under

1475.

the

the Command of *Solyman* Baſſa, an Eunuch, to beſiege *Scodra* or *Scutari*, a ſtrong Town belonging to the Republick of *Venice*, which was attack'd and defended with equal Bravery for a long time. The news whereof coming to *Matthias* King of *Hungary*, in league with the *Venetians*, he did ſo ravage the *Turkiſh* Dominions adjacent to him, that *Mahomet* was glad to call the Baſſa home from before *Scutari* to defend his own Frontiers, after he had lain three months there, and loſt 14000 Men; and being ſent into *Walachia*, he was ſo entangled in the Woods and Fens by *Stephen* the Vayvod, that he loſt his whole Army, and had much ado to eſcape himſelf.

Turks *take* Caffa, *&c.* However, to divert himſelf for theſe Loſſes, *Mahomet* fitted out a great Fleet, with a deſign to have ſurprized *Candia*; but being diſappointed in that, *Geduces Achmetes* his Admiral then ſailed into the *Euxine* Sea, and laid ſiege to *Caffa* in *Taurica Cherſoneſus*, at that time belonging to the *Genoeſe*, who by *Mahomet*'s taking of *Conſtantinople* and ſtrong Forts built there, being not able to relieve it (tho one Captain with his Company march'd above two thouſand miles over-land to the aſſiſtance of it) it was ſurrender'd on Articles, which the *Turks* made no conſcience of keeping; and with it all *Taurica Cherſoneſus* fell into the *Turks* hands, and the *Precopian* and *Deſtenſian Tartars* ſubmitted to become Tributaries to the *Turks*, to whom they have done great ſervice to this day.

1477. But whatever Wars *Mahomet* carry'd on elſewhere, he was never unmindful of getting all *Epirus* and *Albania* into his own hands, which he gain'd by degrees; and about this time his Army lay at the Siege of *Croia*, when the *Venetians*, under whoſe protection it was, ſent the noble *Franciſco Contareni* with an Army to relieve it, who meeting with the *Turks* in the Plains of *Tyranna*, after a ſharp diſpute routed them: and now thinking themſelves ſecure of the Victory, were ſoon after overthrown themſelves, while their Men were hunting after Plunder, wherein they loſt 1000 Men, and *Contareni* their General amongſt the reſt. After this the *Turks* not only made divers Incurſions into the Countries of *Dalmatia*, *Hiſtria*, and *Carniola*, but having routed ſome *Venetian* Troops at the River *Sontium*, ravaged the Province of *Friuli* at their pleaſure.

The

The ſame Spoil they alſo committed the following year in the Mountains towards *Germany*. 1478.

In the mean time *Mahomet* remembring the ſhameful Repulſe he had receiv'd about four years before at *Scutari*, reſolv'd once more to attempt it with all his Power; and firſt he ſent *Aly-beg* with 80000 Soldiers call'd *Achanzii* towards it: which the Governour of the Place underſtanding, he took all neceſſary precaution for the defence of the Place, while the *Turks* in their march, and wherever they came, burnt and deſtroy'd all; and *May* 14. came to the Suburbs of the City, being join'd by the way by 7000 Horſe under *Scanderbeg* Governour of *Boſnia*, and one *Malcotius*. When they had lain about ten days before the City, they were join'd by *Taut Gaiola* the great Baſſa of *Conſtantinople*, with 25000 Men, and above 12000 Camels moſtly laden with Metals for Guns, which they went about to caſt preſently, and in the mean time cauſed a great wooden Bridg to be made over the River. *June* 13. *Muſtapha Beglerbeg* of *Aſia* came with 30000 Soldiers from thence to the Siege, perſonable Men, tho not accounted ſo good Soldiers as the *Europeans*; it being a common Saying among the *Turks*, that the Men of *Europe*, and the Horſes of *Aſia* did the beſt Service. However, *Muſtapha*, to try the Courage of his Men, promiſed a Reward to any one that durſt go and touch the Walls of the City; two of which attempting it, they were both ſlain. *June* 15. 5600 Janizaries came into the Camp; after which they ſummon'd the City to a Surrendry, which they poſitively refuſed, tho the news of the delivering up of *Croia* after a year's Siege, for lack of Proviſion, to the *Turks*, was no ſmall mortification to the Gariſon and Citizens. *June* 22. the *Turks* mounted two great Pieces of Cannon on the top of the Hill where the Baſſa lay, with which they continued to batter the Town for four days, and then planted a third at the foot of the ſame Hill, and next day a fourth about the middle of it, larger than any of the reſt, carrying a Shot of ſix hundred and fifty pound weight; and in this time came 8000 *Turkiſh* Soldiers, call'd *Aſapi*, to the Camp. *July* 2. *Mahomet* arriv'd with his whole Power before the Place, where, after he had view'd the Situation of it, it's reported he ſhould ſay, *O what a fair and ſtately*

1479.

Scutari *beſieged by the* Turks.

Croia *ſurrender'd to the* Turks.

Place

Place hath the Eagle chosen out for her self to build her Nest, and hatch her young ones in! Then having assigned every body his Post, it was computed his Army amounted in all to 350000 Men. In the mean while the Battery was still continued, and *July* 5. they mounted two great Cannon more, and others the succeeding days, as they saw occasion; wherewith they annoy'd the Place, as they did also with their short Mortar-Pieces, that cast huge Stones of incredible weight. So that *Mahomet* at length having beaten down a great part of the Wall, and nothing now left but simple Repairs, he order'd the Breaches to be assaulted; but he did not find the matter so easy as he expected: for tho the *Turks* made the Attack with great Bravery, yet the Christians made such an obstinate resistance, that he was forced to give it over, and come to his Batteries again. And then renewing the Assault twice after one another, and meeting with no better success, he encouraged his Soldiers by a notable Speech to go on the fourth time; and the same was begun by break of day, *July* 22. Now the *Turks* under the Covert of the Night having convey'd themselves as near the Walls as they could, upon the Signal given from the Bassa's Mount, suddenly ran to the Breaches as thick as Bees, between whom and the Besieged ensued a most desperate and bloody Fight: But the *Turks* at last pitched one of their Standards on the top of the Rampier, at which *Mahomet* greatly rejoiced, as thinking now the City was won; but the Christians sending a new Reinforcement thither, beat the Enemy quite off. Which sudden Alteration being perceiv'd by *Mahomet*, he in a great fury commanded his Cannon to play afresh upon the Breach, and his Bassas to bring the Soldiers again to the Assault, which was renew'd with greater fury and destruction than before; but of the *Turks* there fell 20 to one of the Christians, who particularly thro certain Loop-holes hewn out of the main Rock, with their Shot made whole Lanes thro the Infidels, tho the *Turks* at last prevail'd, and pitch'd their Standard upon the Rampier a second time. But the Reserves of the Besieged from the Market-place, who were ready for all Events, fell on them with so much Courage, that they beat them quite off, in despite of their imperious Commanders, and without any

any ſign of Retreat haſten'd to their Camp, after they had loſt in this Aſſault 12000 Men to 400 of the Chriſtians.

However, the Sultan being obſtinate to carry the Place, appointed on the firſt appearance of the new Moon (which the *Turks* worſhip with great Devotion) another general Aſſault; which no ſooner began to ſhew her ſelf, but the *Mahometan* Prieſts going about the Army, gave the Soldiers notice of it by ſinging a Song, in manner of a Proceſſion, which was anſwer'd by the whole Army with a ſhort Reſpond, but with a moſt terrible Noiſe; and at the ſame time bowing to the ground, ſaluted the Moon with much Superſtition. This was a ſufficient Signal for the Chriſtians to be ready prepared for them, who preſently began to attack the City round, and with wonderful Agility and Courage mounted the Rampier at the great Gate, and in a trice ſet up one of their Standards upon it; but the noble *Moneta*, who headed the Beſieged, tho he were wounded divers times, moſt valiantly beat them off again. Which *Mahomet* obſerving, he cauſed a Tire of Guns to be diſcharg'd upon the Chriſtians that maintain'd the Breach, and perceiving the ſame did good execution, he encouraged his Men to go on afreſh; but the valiant *Moneta* bravely maintain'd the Poſt till freſh Supplies came. Now the Sultan from the Mount ſeeing the invincible Courage of the Beſieged, reſolv'd to draw all his Forces to the great Gate for another Aſſault, where they pitch'd their Standards on the Rampier once more; where after long and deſperate fighting, a great Cry ran ſuddenly thro the City, that every Man without exception ſhould repair to the Breach, which was done with great cheerfulneſs; and after deſperate fighting with various fortune, and the ſame frequently renew'd, the *Turks* at laſt were quite beaten off. Now *Mahomet* began to repent, and wiſh he had never heard of the Name of *Scutari*, and in his frantick Fury blaſphemed God, moſt wickedly ſaying, That it were enough for him to have a care of heavenly Things, and not to croſs him in his worldly Actions. And indeed he was ſo outrageous and melancholy, that for a time he would admit of no Man into his preſence; but his Paſſion being pretty well over after two days, upon the third he call'd a general Council of his

his Commanders together, and plainly told them he was resolv'd upon another Assault: but they all cried with one accord against it, saying, the Loss was already immense, and it were better for them to kill one another, or else for himself to kill them one by one, than to expose them so shamefully to be butcher'd by the Christians; and among others *Achmetes* Bassa, who was a Man of great Authority and Experience, endeavoured to calm the Sultan's mind, and with substantial Reasons to persuade him to desist from his intended purpose, and take a surer Course, which was to block up the place, and so starve it out; and in the mean time besiege the other weaker Cities of the *Venetians*, which were, as it were, the Limbs of *Scodra*.

Mahomet, in pursuance to this wholesom Advice, sent the Bassa of *Constantinople* to take in *Zabiache*, a Town situate upon the Lake *Scutari*, while the Bassa of *Asia* took *Drivasta*; from whence 300 of the People were carried, and cruelly slain before *Scutari*. After which the Bassa of *Constantinople* possess'd himself of *Lyssa*, which the Citizens had deserted and fired; and then *Mahomet*, leaving *Achmetes* to take care of the Siege of *Scodra* with 40000 Men, return'd to *Constantinople*, cursing and banning by the way all the Country of *Epirus*, all the Inhabitants therein, their Corn, Cattel, or whatever was fruitful; but above all, the City of *Scodra*.

Scodra *yielded to the* Turks.

In the mean time the *Venetians* seeing things go to wreck with them, sent *Benedict Trivisano* to *Constantinople*; who managed matters so well, that at length he concluded a Peace with the Sultan, on condition that the Republick should give up *Scodra*, the Isle of *Lemnos*, and the strong Castle of *Tenarus* in the *Morea*, to the *Turks*, besides paying them yearly 8000 Ducats, for which they were to traffick freely to the *Euxine*, and other parts of his Dominions: and as for the Citizens of *Scodra*, they were left to their choice to go or stay; but they chusing the latter, the City was given up to the *Turks*, and the long Wars ended between them and the *Venetians*, in the Year 1478.

1480. *Mahomet* now at peace with the *Venetians*, sent *Achmetes* with his Fleet against *Leonard*. Prince of *Neritus*,

Neritus, *Zacynthus*, and *Cephalonia*, whose Countries he quickly took from him; but his Army of 100000 Men sent about the same time into *Transylvania* under *Alis-beg*, and others, did not succeed so well against the *Hungarians* at *Alba Julia*, where in a great bloody Battel they were overthrown by them. But neither Successes nor Disappointments could make *Mahomet*'s mind at rest, who now longed to be Master of the Isle of *Rhodes*, and advising with his Counsellors, some were for, and others against the Expedition; yet he pursuing the Dictates of his ambitious Mind, and Solicitation of *Antonius Meligalus* a fugitive Knight, resolved upon it: and all things being ready, he appointed *Mesites Paleologus*, a near Kinsman of the last Emperor of *Constantinople*, to be his General in this Expedition, who with 80000 Men sail'd towards it; in which Passage *Meligalus* falling sick, the *Turkish* Seamen threw him over-board, and so he was drowned. *Peter Damboise*, a *Frenchman*, was now Grand-Master, who being not ignorant of these great Preparations against him, made sutable provision for the defence of *Rhodes*, and was assisted therein by many valiant Gentlemen that repair'd thither from all parts of Christendom; while *Paleologus* being conducted by another false traitorous Knight named *Demetrius*, landed safely on the Island, *June* 22. not far from the City, and sent *Demetrius* with some Horse and Foot to view the Ground, where he might best pitch his Camp; who being known by the Grand Master's Brother, he sallied upon him, slew and wounded most of his Men, while the Traitor having his Horse slain under him, was trodden to death by the Horses. The Bassa at his first coming took a great Orchard, which the Grand Master had strongly intrenched, where by the advice of *George Trapaine*, a Fugitive of *Rhodes*, and now Master of his Ordnance, he began to batter St. *Nicholas* Tower: But however it were, *Trapaine* not long after fled into *Rhodes*, and discovered to the Great Master all the Secrets of the *Turkish* Camp; who lost 800 Men in an Assault upon the said Tower, besides a multitude wounded. Hereupon the Bassa directed his Artillery against the Walls of the City, while the Great Master raised such Rampiers and Coun-

Turks *besiege* Rhodes.

Countermures before the Breach, that the Baſſa would by no means venture to enter it.

While theſe things were in agitation, *Cali* Baſſa was ſent by *Mahomet* to ſee how the Siege went on; and upon his arrival in the *Turkiſh* Camp gave out that *Mahomet* himſelf was coming with 100000 Men and 150 pieces of Cannon: which greatly terrified the Beſieged, eſpecially the *Spaniards*, who began to be mutinous, and to whom the Grand Maſter ſaid, he doubted not but to defend the City againſt the greateſt Power of the *Turks*, without the help of ſuch baſe-minded Cowards. In the mean time the Baſſa thinking if he could but take off the Grand Maſter, it would much facilitate his work, did by the means of one *Bythius* an *Epirot* endeavour to engage *Marius Philelphus*, late Secretary to the Grand Maſter, but then out of favour, to poiſon him; but when *Philelphus* had got a full Information of the Deſign, he preſently diſcovered it to *Damboiſe*, and ſo *Pythius* and *Janus*, who firſt ſet him on work, were both executed, and *Philelphus* received again into the Grand Maſter's favour.

But the Baſſa concern'd at the Diſappointment, making a Bridg over a ſhort Arm of the Sea, the better to attack St. *Nicholas* Tower; a brave *Engliſhman*, call'd *Gervaſe Rogers*, found a way in the night to cut the Cables and break it, for which he was highly commended and rewarded by the Grand Maſter. But the Baſſa framed a new Bridg, and battered the Tower both by Sea and Land; yet that Bridg was alſo broken by the Cannon of the place, and the *Turks* loſt above 2500 Men in the Aſſault they made upon it. Hereupon the Baſſa tempted the Grand Maſter with honourable Preferments and great Promiſes to ſurrender; but his Anſwer was, *That he would not willingly in his ſafe eſtate uſe the Counſel of his Enemy, neither in his greateſt diſtreſs refuſe cheerfully to yield his Life to Almighty God, to whom he owed it; and that with far better Inclination than to ſurrender the City, tho they bore never ſo ſpecious a Shew of Honour and Intereſt.* The reſolute Anſwer of the Grand Maſter, and his utter Refuſal of paying Tribute, made the Baſſa plant more Batteries, and ply the City from them with great fury, till at length they had made a fair Breach in the Wall;

Wall; which the *Turks* preſently aſſaulted, but were gallantly beaten off, as 500 of thoſe that by Scaling-Ladders got into the City in another place were all ſlain: and the whole Loſs amounted to about 5000 Men. The Grand Maſter receiv'd five Wounds in this Aſſault, of which he was cured; and the *Turks* were ſo diſcouraged therewith, and with the Rumour that the Chriſtian Princes were coming to the Relief of *Rhodes*, that they raiſed the Siege, and *Auguſt* 17. left the Iſland. *The Siege raiſed.*

But tho *Mahomet* might have been diſcouraged with the ill Succeſs of this Siege, yet he would be ſtill for other Adventures; and therefore having a mind to make an entrance into *Italy*, he embark'd a great Army at *Vallona*, a maritime Town in the Borders of *Macedonia*, under the command of *Achmetes* Baſſa. He landed in *Apulia* near *Otranto*, where he ravaged the Country all along the Sea-Coaſt; then took *Otranto* the Key of that part of *Italy*, which he cauſed to be ſtrongly fortified, and victualled for 18 months; then went to *Conſtantinople*, with a deſign to return in the Spring to proſecute his Deſigns in thoſe parts. But happily it fell out, while the Ruin of *Italy* was contriving, that the King of *Caramania*, aided by thoſe of *Perſia* and *Egypt*, had overthrown *Bajazet*, *Mahomet*'s Son, in a great Battel, and ſlain moſt of his Army; which made *Mahomet* and *Achmetes* march with a great Power to *Bithynia* againſt him: where falling ſick near a place call'd *Geiviſin*, he died in three days, being indeed ſuppoſed to have been poiſoned, after he had lived 52 Years, and reigned 31, *Anno Dom.* 1481. 1481. Otranto *taken by the* Turks. Mahomet's *Death.*

He was of Stature but low, and nothing anſwerable to the Height of his Mind, ſquare ſet, ſtrong limbed, in his Youth inferiour to none in Strength in his Father's Court, but *Scanderbeg*; his Complexion, *Tartar*-like, ſallow and melancholy; his Looks ſtern, his Eyes piercing, hollow, and a little ſunk in his Head; his Noſe ſo high and crooked, that it almoſt touch'd his upper Lip: he was of a ſharp Wit, learned, as amongſt that Nation, eſpecially in Aſtronomy, and could ſpeak *Greek*, *Latin*, *Arabick*, *Chaldee* and *Perſian*. He delighted much in Hiſtory, eſpecially the Lives of *Alexander* and *Ceſar*; he was very courageous *His Character.*

and fortunate, a ſevere Puniſher of Injuſtice: Men that excelled in any Quality he much favoured; Theft he puniſhed with great ſeverity. But he had many Vices; for he was irreligious, moſt perfidious, very ambitious, and much delighting in Blood, inſomuch that 'tis probably conjectured he had been the death of 800000 Men. Craft, Covetouſneſs, and Diſſimulation, were accounted tolerable Vices in him: in his Love no Aſſurance, his leaſt Diſpleaſure was Death; ſo that he lived feared of all Men, and died lamented of none. He had Iſſue three Sons; *Muſtapha*, of whoſe Death we have given an account before; *Bajazet*, and *Gemes* or *Zemes*: which two conteſting for the Empire, gave the *Italians* opportunity to recover *Otranto* out of the *Turkiſh* hands.

Otranto *recovered.*

Chriſtian

				A. D.	R.
Christian Princes, Cotemporaries with *Mahomet* II.	Emperors	Of the East.	*Conſtantine Paleologus*, laſt Chriſtian Emperor of *Conſtantinople*.	1444.	8.
		Of the Weſt.	*Frederick* III. Arch-Duke of *Auſtria*	1440.	54.
	Kings	Of *England*.	*Henry* VI.	1422.	39.
			Edward IV.	1460.	22.
		Of *France*.	*Charles* VII.	1423.	38.
			Lewis XI.	1461.	22.
		Of *Scotland*.	*James* II.	1436.	29.
			James III.	1460.	29.
	Popes of *Rome*.		*Nicholas* V.	1447.	8.
			Calixtus III.	1455.	3.
			Pius II.	1458.	6.
			Paul II.	1464.	7.
			Xiſtus IV.	1471.	13.

CHAP. IV.

The Life of Bajazet *the Second, Emperor of the* Turks.

Diſſenſion about the Succeſſion.

UPON the death of *Mahomet* ſome of the Baſſas were for ſetting up *Bajazet* the elder, and ſome were for *Zemes* the younger Brother; in which Broils the proud Janizaries ſlew *Mahometes* one of the four great Baſſas, a great Man, and committed Inſolencies againſt the Jews and Chriſtians: while the other three Baſſas, *Iſaac*, *Meſithes* and *Achmetes*, returning from the taking of *Otranto* to appeaſe the Tumults, ſet up *Corcutus*, one of *Bajazet*'s youngeſt Sons, for Emperor; in whoſe Name the ſaid Baſſas diſpoſed of every thing, without regarding *Bajazet* or *Zemes*, both then abſent, the one at *Amaſia*, and the other at *Iconium*: but they hearing of their Father's Death, haſted to *Conſtantinople* with all ſpeed; and *Bajazet*, as being neareſt, coming firſt, he ſo far prevailed by Complaints, Gifts and great Promiſes, as to be ſet up in his Son's room, who freely reſigned to him, by whom he was made Governour of *Lycia*, *Caria*, and *Ionia*. In the mean time *Zemes* took divers places in the leſſer *Aſia*, and coming to *Bithynia*, poſſeſs'd himſelf of *Pruſa*; upon which *Bajazet*, apprehenſive of the Danger, with an Army came to *Neapolis* in *Natolia*, where *Zemes* lay incamp'd, and here made the famous Baſſa *Achmetes* General of his Army, to the great ſatisfaction of them all; who came and incamp'd as near *Zemes* as he could, and ſo lay for the ſpace of ten days, during which many ſharp Skirmiſhes paſt between them with various fortune, till at laſt they came to a general Battel, where *Zemes* by the Conduct of *Achmetes* was overthrown: who flying to *Iconium*, and fearing his Brother, after ſome days cauſed all his Wealth to be pack'd up, and with his Mother, one Son and Daughter, fled into *Syria*, then under the Dominion of the Sultan of *Egypt*; and after he had been for ſome time at *Jeruſalem*, went into *Egypt*, and was by divers Men of Qualit

Bajazet goes againſt Zemes.

Zemes routed.

Quality ſent to him from the Sultan, conducted in great ſtate to *Grand Caire*, where he acquainted the Sultan with his Diſtreſſes, the reaſon of his coming thither, and deſired Relief from him. *Caytbeius* the Sultan comforted him under his Misfortunes; and promiſing to do what in him lay to reconcile him to his Brother, and to perſuade him that he might be received into ſome part of his Kingdom, he ſent an honourable Embaſſy to *Bajazet* for that purpoſe. *Zemes* in the mean while with the Sultan's leave travelled for Devotion-ſake to *Meccha* and *Medina*; but finding upon his return that *Bajazet* had rejected his Requeſt, he bent all his thoughts to diſturb him and his Empire, tho it were but with little benefit to himſelf. In the mean time a Meſſenger comes to him from the King of *Caramania* (now living poorly in *Armenia*) with an Offer to join with him, and take up Arms againſt his Brother: hereupon *Zemes* leaving *Egypt*, and meeting with the King upon the Borders of the leſſer *Aſia*, they enter'd jointly into *Caramania*, and incamp'd between *Iconium* and *Larenda*. Neither was *Bajazet* all this while idle, but ſending part of his Army before under *Achmetes* into *Aſia*, he follow'd himſelf with the reſt; but a Rumour being ſpread in his march, that his chief Officers had conſpired againſt him, and that many Soldiers upon his joining of Battel would forſake him, he immediately cauſed vaſt Sums of Mony to be diſtributed amongſt the Officers and Soldiers; and then drawing near to *Iconium*, he made a ſemblance by Letters and Meſſengers, as if he were deſirous to accommodate matters, but ſecretly ſent and ſecured all the Straits and Paſſages, ſo that it ſhould be impoſſible for them to retire back into *Syria*: But *Zemes* perceiving his Brother's drift, retired in time to the Straits of Mount *Amanus*, and there perſuading the King of *Caramania* to give place to Neceſſity, and reſerve himſelf for a better fortune, he disbanded his Army, and with a few Followers went to the Sea-Coaſt of *Cilicia*, where he might hire a Ship and get away by Sea; ſending in the mean time a Meſſenger to the Grand Maſter of *Rhodes*, to deſire he might be received into his Iſland as a place of Refuge, who preſently ſent Gallies to fetch him off, but he had for fear gone on board the Ship he had hired; from whence he ſhot a Letter aſhore tied to an Arrow, directed

Zemes's Letter to Bajazet.

directed to his Brother *Bajazet*, importing that he fled to the Christians the mortal Enemies of the *Ottoman* Family for the hatred of his Religion or Nation, being forced thereunto by his Enemies, and dangerous Practices against him, even in his extreme Misery, but firmly hoping that the time would come when he the Author of so much Wrong, or his Children, should receive their just Reward: upon the reading of which, it was said *Bajazet* was so distracted in mind, that for some days he would speak to no body. *Zemes* being come to *Rhodes*, in a full Assembly set forth his Grievances at large, and hoped he might receive some Succour and Relief from them, of which he would never be unmindful, in case he had the good Fortune to obtain the Empire by their Help. The Grand Master comforted him as well as he could: And here at present we shall leave him in his pensive and melancholy humour; for it was observed he was never merry but when in the Grand Master's Company, who afterwards entred into an Agreement with *Bajazet*, that in consideration of his honourable usage, he should pay to the Grand Master 30000 Ducats.

He flies to Rhodes.

But to return to the more immediate Affairs of *Bajazet* at home; it happened, while *Achmetes* the Great Bassa was absent from Court, that *Isaac* an antient Bassa, whose Daughter *Achmetes* her Husband, upon suspicion of Incontinency, had put away from him, finding the Emperor's Mind discontented with some Mismanagement in the late War, which he seemed to level at *Achmetes*, he represented *Achmetes*'s Interest in the Janizaries to be so great, and himself so dangerous a Man, that it was resolved to secure his Person, and cut him off upon his return to Court. In order to which being invited to a Supper by *Bajazet*, and mistrusting nothing, the Emperor and the Company drank Wine plentifully; and causing his other Guests to be apparelled in rich Robes of delightful Colours, a Gown of black Velvet was put upon *Achmetes*, which among the *Turks* may be called the Mantle of Death; and upon which *Achmetes* seeing it in vain to intreat for Mercy, burst forth and said, *Oh Cathpegli!* that is, Thou Son of a Whore, seeing thou intendest so much Cruelty, why didst not thou put it in execution before thou didst force me to drink this impure and forbidden Wine?

Achmetes *seized.*

Wine? Then ſitting on the Ground, and being order'd to ſtay after the reſt, as the Executioners were going to do their Office, one of the Eunuchs, in great favour with the Emperor, adviſed him not to be too haſty in executing a Man ſo much beloved by the beſt of the Soldiery; and he deferred the ſame accordingly: Whereupon *Achmetes*'s Son knowing how things ſtood with his Father, ſo enraged the Janizaries, that they ran in ſhoals into the Court; to whom *Bajazet* ſhewing himſelf at an Iron Window, and asking the reaſon of that Tumult, they inſolently anſwered, that they would teach him by and by, as a Drunkard, Beaſt, and Raſcal, to uſe his great Place and Calling with more Diſcretion and Sobriety. And to reproach him the more, they often called him, *Bengi*, *Bengi*, i. e. Batchelor or Scholar, which amongſt thoſe Contemners of Learning, was accounted a Word of no ſmall diſgrace; ſo that being forced to releaſe *Achmetes* unto them, they carry'd him upon their Shoulders out of the Court, ſtill asking him how he did, and how he felt himſelf. But tho *Bajazet* hereupon reſtored him to all his Honours and ſeeming Favour, yet he was ſome time after ſlain by his order as he ſat at Supper in his Court: and becauſe he was angry with the Janizaries not only for what they had already done, but what they might farther do againſt him upon the account of *Achmetes*'s Death, he projected to murder them all: but communicating his Deſign to divers of his Baſſas, they all diſſuaded him from ſo raſh, dangerous and barbarous an Act. But finding the Janizaries had at length penetrated into his Intentions, he had no way left now but by open Proclamation to order them and all his Soldiers to be ready, by ſuch a Day, to march into *Moldavia*: tho when the time was come, the Janizaries would by no means join with the reſt of the Troops, or receive the Emperor, as uſual, into the midſt of their Ranks, but ſhaking their Arms at him, plainly told him he had ſought their Deſtruction; and bid him therefore, if he thought fit, ſet his Executioners at work, whom they ſhould find ready and able to defend themſelves. *Bajazet* with much ado appeaſed them, and ſo marching into *Moldavia* took *Kele*, and *Aſprocaſtron* after a Month's ſiege, from whence he returned to *Conſtantinople*.

Reſcued by the Janizaries.

Slain.

1486. And now *Bajazet* being somewhat at leisure to call *Pyramet* King of *Caramania* to an account for assisting his Brother *Zemes*, marched on with an Army into that Country; but not being able to come at the King, he at last laid siege to *Tarsus*, which in some time was surrendered to him. In the mean time the King of *Caramania* having obtained Aid of the Sultan of *Egypt*, came and offered *Bajazet* battel; which was fought very fiercely and with uncertain Victory, till the decline of the Day, when the King of *Caramania* rushing boldly, to support his Men, into the midst of the *Turks*, was slain, valiantly fighting: the Consequence whereof was the Flight and Slaughter of his Army, and the entire Conquest of his Country by the *Turks*. *Bajazet* brought also in this Expedition the *Mahometan* Prince of *Trachia* to submit to him, and to receive an Equivalent for his Territories in some other Part of the lesser *Asia*; then leaving *Mustapha* Bassa behind him to govern his new Conquests, he returned triumphantly to *Constantinople*.

Bajazet *conquers* Caramania, *&c.*

1487. But his Mind did not rest long before he sent *Caraguses* Bassa with a strong Army to invade *Syria* belonging to the Sultan of *Egypt*; tho he could do no great good that way, for *Istender* Bassa that marched in the Van being set upon in the Straits of Mount *Taurus* by *Aladeules* King of some of those Mountaineers, was oppress and taken prisoner by him, which made *Caraguses* retreat back into *Cilicia*, from whence he was commanded for *Constantinople*, as a Person unfit for

1488. such an Expedition. Neither was the Fortune of *Achmetes* Bassa any better against the *Egyptians* and *Arabs* the Spring following, being overthrown at *Tzucur Ova* in a great Battel by them, and sent prisoner to *Cair*. *Bajazet* incensed, rather than discouraged, with these

1489. Overthrows, next year sent a mighty Power, both by Sea and Land against the Sultan of *Egypt*, who being come near unto *Taurus* in *Cilicia*, tho he found himself much inferiour in number to the *Turks*, yet trusting to the invincible Force of his *Mamalukes*, he resolved to give his Enemy battel; which was managed with wonderful Conduct and Bravery on both sides, till the whole day was spent, when both Armies, much wearied and weakned, but not vanquished, retired into their respective Camps, where the *Egyptians* finding

Great Battel between the Egyptians *and* Turks.

all

all their Carriages, with their Proviſion and other Neceſſaries, taken away, they knew not by whom, and being made deſperate thereby, early next morning came braving into the Field, and renewed the Battel with that Reſolution and Fierceneſs on both ſides, that the former Day's Fury might be ſaid to be but Play in compariſon of this; wherein the *Janizaries* and *Mamalukes*, in emulation to one anothers Renown and Manhood, acted even beyond themſelves in the Action, and nothing but the Darkneſs of the Night could part them into their Camps: where the *Turkiſh* Baſſas finding of 100000 Men two thirds wanting, they fled in the Night, leaving their Tents and much Proviſion behind them, while the *Egyptians* having loſt the one half of their Army, at the ſame time retired to Mount *Taurus*; and ſome of the Soldiers going over into *Syria*, reported how the *Egyptians* were beaten, and the *Turks* got the Victory: ſo uncertainly was the Event of the Battel known even to thoſe that were in it. But the *Egyptian* Army was quickly undeceived by their Spies, and from their ſtrong Station coming down to the *Turkiſh* Camp, found plenty of Refreſhment in it. Neither was the Fortune of *Bajazet*'s Fleet much different, the ſame being deſtroy'd by a Tempeſt at the Mouth of the *Orontes*, ſo that he made a Peace with the *Egyptian* Sultan, unto whom he reſtored all the Places he had taken from him. *Peace between them.*

About the ſame time that this Peace was concluded, *Charles* the Eighth, King of *France*, making great Preparations againſt *Alphonſo*, King of *Naples*, after the Conqueſt of which Country he deſigned to invade *Greece*; the King of *Naples*, and *Alexander* the ſixth Pope of *Rome* deſired Aid of *Bajazet* againſt him, who knowing his Brother *Zemes* was in his cuſtody (whom the Pope had ſome time before got out of the hands of the Grand Maſter) and apprehenſive of the Power and Deſigns of *Charles*, who would have got *Zemes* in his own power, he ſent them ſome Aſſiſtance of Mony, and withal perſuaded the Pope to poiſon his Brother for fear of the worſt. In the mean time, *Charles* coming with a great Army into *Italy*, ſo oppreſt and terrify'd the Pope, that he was forced, beſides his own Son *Cæſar Borgia*, to deliver *Zemes* up to him; who yet three days after died at *Cajeta*, being Zemes *poiſoned.* 1495.

ing before poiſoned, as was thought, with a Powder of wonderful Whiteneſs and pleaſant Taſte, by Pope *Alexander*'s orders.

1497. As the *French* Wars in *Naples* are not pertinent to our Deſign, we ſhall obſerve no farther than this concerning them, that when *Bajazet* was freed of one great Fear by the expulſion of the *French* out of *Naples*, and of another by the death of his Brother *Zemes*, he began to turn his Forces upon the Chriſtians, and by his Lieutenant *Balybeg* invaded *Podolia* and *Ruſſia*, where he did great harm; but being the ſecond time forced home by the approach of Winter, and about to paſs thro *Moldavia*, that Prince denied them Paſſage and Proviſion, which made the Army ſtraggle, and ſo many of them periſhed by the hands of the *Moldavians*, Fatigue, Hunger and Cold, that the *Turkiſh* Hiſtories report they loſt 40000 Men in the Expedition. The Sultan alſo ſent *Cadumes* Baſſa into *Illyria*, who ſpoiling that Country with part of *Croatia*, was encounter'd by 9000 *Croats* and *Hungarians* near the *Morava*, of whom 7000 were ſlain; and the Baſſa, to give *Bajazet* a true Teſtimony of the Victory, cauſed all the Noſes of the ſlain Chriſtians to be cut off and put upon Strings, and ſo ſent by Waggons as a barbarous Preſent to *Conſtantinople*.

Turks *invade* Podolia, *&c.*

But now other occaſions fell out for *Bajazet* to turn his Arms another way: for being ſollicited by *Sforza* Duke of *Milan* to engage in a War againſt the *Venetians*, who had confederated with *Lewis* the Twelfth of *France* to deprive him of his Dutchy and ſhare it between them; and mindful of ſome former Injuries done him by the Republick; he made great Preparations both by Sea and Land againſt them, and on a ſudden cauſed *Scander* Baſſa with 12000 Horſe to break into *Friuli* in *Italy*, which he did to ſome purpoſe, and returned laden with the Spoil of the Country. At the ſame time *Bajazet* put a vaſt Fleet to Sea, and himſelf in Perſon with a great Army marched along the Sea-Coaſt of *Morea* to keep a Communication with his Fleet, which after ſome Irreſolution of Admiral *Grimani* was fought by the *Venetians*; for while the *Venetians* were expecting the *Turks* would put from the Shoar to fight, *Andreas Lauredamus* and *Albanus Armerius*, but a little before come from *Corcyra* on

Friuli *ravaged by the* Turks.

on purpose to be present in the Action, were the first that began the Fight, and quickly boarded a great Ship of the *Turks* commanded by *Baruk* of *Smyrna* a famous Pirate, who blowing up his Ship, the other two perished with her: some other Ships fought, but the greatest part of the *Venetian* Gallies lay looking on at a distance, and did nothing; for which the Conduct of the *Venetian* Admiral was mightily blamed, and himself afterwards, by a Decree of the Senate, banished for it. In the mean time the *Turks*, much afraid of the Enemy, with some difficulty got into the Gulph of *Lepanto*, where they besieged the City closely by Sea and Land, and in some time had it surrendred to them. Turks *take* Lepanto.

The year following, which was 1500, *Bajazet* put a greater Fleet to Sea, with which and an Army of 150000 Men entring into the *Morea* by the *Isthmus* of *Corinth*, he sat down before *Modon*, and having by his Batteries made four Breaches in the Walls, he made two terrible Assaults upon it; but the Valour of the Besieged would not let him prevail neither time. Now the *Venetian* Admiral *Trivisano* having sailed from the Isle of *Zant*, where he lay with three great Gallies laden with Necessaries under three resolute Commanders to relieve the Place, they brake thro the *Turkish* Fleet, and ran themselves aground under the Walls of the Town, whither the Citizens and Soldiers, who were overjoy'd at their arrival, ran in whole Heaps, and left several Places to the Landward unguarded; which the Janizaries perceiving, they presently entered the City without any great to do, and put most of the People to the Sword, among whom was the Governour and Bishop, besides 1000 that were slain before *Bajazet*'s face at his Tent. But to make some Reparation for this Loss, next year the *Venetian* Admiral *Pisaurus* (for *Trivisano* was dead) pursued the Enemy's Fleet to the *Hellespont*, and took above twenty of their Gallies, and in his return the Isle of *Ægina*. Then joining with *Gonsalvo* the Great, sent from King *Ferdinand* of *Spain* to aid them against the *Turks*, he at length by his Conduct took the City of *Cephalonia* from the *Turks*, after which the whole Island followed. Some time after understanding that some part of the *Turkish* Fleet lay in the Bay of *Ambracia*, he sailed thi- 1500. *They take* Modon. 1501. Venetians *take* Cephalonia.

thither from *Corfu*; and ſending the greateſt part of his Fleet to the Iſle of *Neritos*, he with 8 Gallies only entred the Bay, burnt one great Gally of the *Turks*, and carried eleven more laden with Ammunition and Proviſion away with him; and not long after took the Caſtle of *Pylos*, tho it was no long-liv'd Conqueſt: For *Camalia*, a notable *Turkiſh* Pirate, retook it again in a little time. But *Piſaurius* had not the like Succeſs in his Attempt to burn the *Turkiſh* Gallies in the River *Eante* on the Coaſt of *Macedonia*; for the 200 Soldiers that went in their Veſſels up the River to have ſet them on fire, were ſtopt in by a contrary Wind, and being beſet on all ſides by the Enemy, were all ſlain.

Durazzo taken by the Turks.

But *Bajazet* about this time having taken the antient City of *Durazzo* from the *Venetians*, and the Republick being ſore preſt with theſe long Wars againſt the *Turks*, but receiving ſome Aſſiſtance of Shipping from the *French*, the Admiral *Piſaurius* ſailed for the Iſle of *Lesbos*, where he laid ſiege to the ſtrong City of *Mitylene*; but while a Breach was made in the Wall, the *Venetian* Admiral ſailed to *Tenedos* with part of the Fleet in queſt of the Enemy, and the *French* in the mean time, contrary to the Advice of the *Venetian* Vice-Admiral, aſſaulted the ſaid Breach, but were repulſed by the *Turks*. However, upon the return of the *Venetian* Admiral, they went jointly upon a ſecond Aſſault, but could not prevail; ſo that the *French* being diſcouraged or diſcontented herewith, returned homewards, and in their Paſſage many of them ſuffered Shipwreck: of which Proceedings of the *French*, the *Venetian* Admiral highly complained to the Grand Maſter of *Rhodes*, whom he found at *Paros* coming to their aſſiſtance. However, the *Venetian* Admiral next Spring being joined by ſome of the Pope's Gallies, beſieged ſuddenly, and took *Neritos* or *St. Maura*, with the whole Iſland, from the *Turks*; but this they held not long, for the year following a Peace was concluded between *Bajazet* and the Republick, whereby this Iſland and *Leucadia* was reſtored to the *Turks*, while on the other hand the Sultan obliged himſelf to reſtore all the Merchants Goods taken in the late War, to allow the Republick's Subjects ſafely to traffick to the *Euxine* and *Conſtantinople*, and to have a Conſul there

Mitylene aſſaulted in vain by the Venetians.

1503.

Peace between the Venetians *and the* Turks.

there, and that the *Venetian* Territories ſhould be adjuſted in their Bounds. The ſame Year *Bajazet* having ravaged *Albania*, in his return home he met with a *Derviſtar* (which is a fantaſtical and beggarly ſort of *Turkiſh* Monk, uſing no other Clothes but two Sheepskins, the one hanging before, and the other behind, with a great Ring in his Ear) who drawing near the Emperor, as if he would have received Alms from him, attack'd him with a ſhort Scimiter; but *Bajazet* by the ſtarting of his Horſe having partly avoided the deadly Blow, tho not altogether unwounded, he had not eſcaped ſo, if *Iffendar* Baſſa had not knock'd the Villain down with his Mace, where he was preſently tore to pieces by the Soldiers: which Treachery moved *Bajazet* to baniſh all that ſuperſtitious Order out of his Empire.

After ſo many Troubles, *Bajazet* gave himſelf over to a peaceable Life, and the Study of Philoſophy, being naturally not inclined to War, but as he was put upon it by his Generals: and after he had thus ſpent five years, a ſudden Spark of Fire broke forth in *Aſia*, which occaſion'd much Bloodſhed and Confuſion in thoſe parts; and that was cauſed by *Chaſan Cheliſe* and *Schach Culi*, otherwiſe call'd *Techellis*, two hypocritical *Perſians*, who fled into thoſe Countries, and by a counterfeit pretence having procured to themſelves a great Name amongſt the rude People about the Mountains of *Armenia*, raiſed ſuch a diverſity of Opinions about the true Succeſſors of *Mahomet*, and ſuch a Rebellion among the People, that the one yet remains and the other was not in a good while after ſuppreſs'd without much Bloodſhed. Their Opinion that *Haly* was the true Succeſſor of their Prophet, and not *Ebubeker*, *Omer*, and *Oſman*, they firſt learnt of a Nobleman named *Haidar*, in *Perſia*; of whoſe Sanctity *Uſun-Caſſanes* the King entertained ſuch an opinion, that he gave him his Daughter *Martha* by *Deſpina* the Daughter of *Calo-Johannes* Emperor of *Trapezond*, to Wife: by whom he had a Son named *Iſmael*, who eſcaping the hands of his Uncle *Jamp* King of *Perſia*, (when his Father was ſlain) by fleeing into *Hircania*, there alſo grew very famous for his Sanctity; with the great opinion of which, conceived by the People, in conjunction with his Arms, he afterwards attained to

Bajazet *lives in peace.*

By whom diſturbed.

be

be the Great Sophy of *Persia:* who as soon as he understood that the forementioned *Chasan Chelife* and *Techellis* had raised a Rebellion in the *Turkish* Dominions in *Asia*, partly out of an old Grudg against *Bajazet*, by reason of the former Wars between the *Turks* and *Persians*, and partly by reason of their Disagreement as to *Mahomet*'s Successor; he encouraged them all he could in it, and would have entred into a League with the *Venetians*, to take that opportunity to make war upon the *Turks*, which was declined at that time by the Republick in very civil terms. In the mean time the two seditious Prophets *Chasan* and *Techellis*, continuing to waste the Country, and coming to *Iconium*, *Bajazet*'s two Grandsons *Orchanes* and *Mahometes*, who govern'd those Countries, drew into the Field, and gave them battel; but fighting unadvisedly at a disadvantage, were routed by them: who marching on now with flying Colours as far as the River *Sangiarius*, they came unexpectedly upon *Caragoses* Bassa, Vice-Roy of *Asia*, near Mount *Hormynus*, before he had compleated the Levies design'd to suppress them; who seeing there was a necessity to fight, encouraged what Troops he had with him to repress those Rebels: whose Leaders on the other hand were not wanting to animate their Followers (who wore red Hats as a distinction of their Faith) now to play the men, and all was their own. The *Turkish* Horse in the Battel fought extraordinary well; but their Foot being forced to give way by the Enemy, who now came with their long Pikes against the Horse, they fled also, and the Vice-Roy himself was in much danger of being taken. The *Turks* lost 70000 Foot in this Action, and all their Colours, with good store of Provision.

Techellis ... ws Or- ... es *and* Mahometes.

Routs Caragoses.

After this Victory the Rebels besieged the City *Cataie* near Mount *Hormynus*, the Seat of the Viceroy, whither he had with his Horse fled from the Battel; and at length, after a most terrible Assault, took it, where besides the great slaughter made of the Besieged, both Soldiers and Citizens, the Viceroy with his Wife and Children were taken prisoners, and the Rebels greatly enriched with the Spoil. And now *Techellis*, who seem'd to command all, made all necessary Preparations to besiege *Prusa*; but in the mean time *Bajazet* being awaken'd with the Fame of the Man,

Takes Cataie.

sent

ſent a ſtout Army out of *Europe* into *Aſia*, under the Conduct of the famous Commander *Alis* Baſſa, who ſent to all the Governours of the *Turkiſh* Provinces in *Aſia* with all ſpeed to bring their Forces to meet him in *Galatia*, thro which Province *Techellis* (being afraid to be hemm'd in) was making the beſt of his way with his Followers to eſcape, where the Baſſa endeavoured to way-lay him; but failing of that, purſued him very cloſe, who thinking to terrify the Baſſa, and ſo divert him from it, impaled *Caragoſes* on a ſharp Stake in his way. But the Baſſa not heeding that, and perceiving he could not overtake him with his whole Army, did himſelf (leaving the Foot with *Achomates*) with 8000 Horſe, come up with him at Mount *Olyga* near *Ancyra*; whoſe Impreſſions, and thoſe of the 1000 Carabineers *Alis* had with him, *Techellis* received with great Courage; but at laſt the *Turkiſh* Horſe breaking in, overthrew his Vanguard, where *Chaſan Chelife* himſelf was ſlain. However *Techellis* renew'd the Battel with his Firemen, commanding them by little and little to retire to the Mountain for their better ſecurity; but the Baſſa encouraging his Men to purſue the Charge, did himſelf with a Troop of the beſt Horſe break thro the Enemies Battel, and attempting the ſame a ſecond time, was encloſed by them, and ſlain. Upon which the Fortune of the Battel was changed in a moment; for the *Turks* diſheartned with their General's Death, preſently fled. But *Techellis* having loſt many Men, and the reſt being weakned with travelling, faſting and fighting, marched over the *Halys* to the City of *Tachia*, and from thence to *Celenis*; not long after which came *Jonuſes* Baſſa with an Army of 40000 Men and a good Train of Artillery to beſiege *Tachia*, the place of *Techellis*'s abode, who from the Mountains and Woods frequently annoy'd his Camp. But the Baſſa at length finding two ways whereby his Army might be conveniently led up to the top of the Mountain, he led them up thither, and forced *Techellis* (for all the advantages he had) to retire to the higher Mountains and rougher Woods; from whence he fled into *Armenia*, and thence to *Perſia*, while *Jonuſes* cauſed ſtrict Inquiſition to be made of all thoſe that profeſſed the *Perſian* Religion, of whom thoſe that were engaged in the Rebellion were cruelly put to death, and the reſt branded

branded in their Foreheads, and ſo with their Kindred tranſported into the *Turkiſh* Provinces in *Europe*. As for the remainder of *Techellis*'s Followers, they happening to rob a Caravan of Merchants, their Officers by *Iſmael*'s command were put to death, and *Techellis*, to terrify the reſt, burnt alive.

1509. This Year 1509 is very remarkable for a dreadful Earthquake, which on the 14th of *Septemb.* at *Conſtantinople* ruined a great many Buildings, and deſtroyed 13000 People, the ſame laſting 18 Days, or a Month, according to the *Turkiſh* Hiſtorians; after which enſued a great Mortality in the City. But tho *Bajazet*, who to avoid this Calamity, retired to *Adrianople*, was now at peace with his Neighbours, and had reduced his rebellious Subjects to Obedience; yet his Misfortunes from his own Family are with winged haſte coming upon him. Of his numerous Iſſue four are moſt remarkable, *Achomates*, *Mahometes*, *Corcutus*, and *Selymus*; the ſecond of whom ſeemed to be the beſt Man amongſt them, he having a lively Spirit, ſharp Wit, bountiful Diſpoſition, and princely Carriage, that in the Judgment of moſt Men he ſeemed already worthy of a Kingdom. However, the immoderate Affection of the People to him was the occaſion of accelerating his Death. He was Brother both by Father and Mother to *Achomates*, and they loved one another entirely. But while *Achomates* was Governour of *Amaſia*, and *Mahometes* of *Magneſia*, the latter out of Curioſity to know how his Brother demean'd himſelf, went with two of his Friends in the religious Diſguiſe of the Order of *Imalier* to *Amaſia*, where they received no more than five Aſpers from *Achomates* for their Muſick and Devotion; which ſo enraged his diſguiſed Brother, that as ſoon as he got to *Magneſia*, he writ him a reprimanding Letter, and ſcoffed ſo at his Niggardlineſs, that the other was never after friends with him. The ſame thing *Mahometes* did in reſpect to his Father's Court: for not long after the other Adventure, he with ſome truſty Friends diſguiſed in Seamens Habits went to *Conſtantinople*; of which *Bajazet* being afterwards informed, it raiſed many diſtracted thoughts in his ſuſpicious Head, and at laſt he writ to *Aſmehedi*, who was a ſecret Enemy of *Mahometes*, to poiſon his Son, which the other found means to effect not long after;

Mahometes *goes in diſguiſe.*

Is poiſoned.

after; for whom yet *Bajazet*, at leaſt in appearance, was greatly concern'd, and as a Reward of his Treachery, order'd *Aſmehedi* to be put in Priſon, from whence he never came again out alive.

Now the Apprehenſion of Danger from *Mahometes* had not been long over by his Death, when *Selymus*, *Bajazet*'s youngeſt Son, began really new Troubles in his Father's Empire. He was by his Father conſtituted Governour of the Kingdom of *Trapezond*, and having married the Daughter of *Mahometes* Prince of the *Precopenſian Tartars*, he was excited and aſſiſted by his Father-in-law, but chiefly in ſhipping, to paſs into *Europe*; which his arrival being wonder'd at by *Bajazet*, he was for a while doubtful of his meaning in it: But at length concluding he aimed at the Poſſeſſion of the whole *Turkiſh* Empire, he thought fit to ſend Embaſſadors to repreſent to him with what danger the *Turkiſh* Kings in former times had taken upon them thoſe *Hungarian* Wars (wherein he pretended now to engage) to whom *Selymus* made anſwer, that he left *Aſia* becauſe of the Injuries of his Brother *Achomates*, and was reſolved upon the *Hungarian* War to advance his Honour, which (he ſaid) his Father had in ſome meaſure blemiſh'd by the immoderate Advancement of his Brethren. 1511. *Selymus's Attempts.*

Now the Embaſſadors, tho *Selymus* in his Anſwer ſhew'd but little ſigns of Peace, to his old Government joined *Scamandria* in *Servia*, with many other ſtrong Towns in the ſame Country, and gave him alſo 30000 Ducats, beſides 1000 Veſts of Clothes and Silk, with good ſtore of Proviſions to relieve his Soldiers; but this wrought no manner of peaceable Effects upon his ambitious Mind. In the mean while *Bajazet* being deſirous to ſettle the Succeſſion, when the matter was propoſed by the four great Baſſas to the Soldiers of the Court, they openly declared againſt it, ſaying, they would have none but *Bajazet*, that he was young enough ſtill to govern them; with a great many things to that purpoſe, as they had been before inſtructed by the Friends and Favourites of *Selymus*. But the Emperor thinking they had (as he did himſelf) affected more particularly his eldeſt Son *Achomates*, ſince they had unanimouſly proteſted they would defend his Honour againſt all Injuries, to whom the Empire ſhould *Preſents given to* Selymus.

of right belong, he ſaid if they pleaſed he would make choice of *Achomates*. Hereupon the chief of the Soldiery cunningly extoll'd *Achomates*, and ſeemed wonderfully pleaſed with him, yet not to accept of him for their Sovereign while *Bajazet* was alive; that (they ſaid) being not the antient Cuſtom of the *Ottoman* Kings, nor becoming Soldiers, or good for the Empire, and much more to the ſame effect: which put *Bajazet* upon promiſing to give them 500000 Ducats, if they would ſtand favourably affected towards *Achomates*. But the better hopes they had conceived of *Selymus*'s reſtleſs Humour, feeding them with expectation of far greater Rewards, *Bajazet* thought fit for the preſent to diſſemble the matter, till a fitter opportunity were offer'd to effect his Deſires.

He marches to Adrianople.

In the mean time *Selymus* leaving the Frontiers of *Hungary*, marched with his Army thro *Thrace*, and incamped on a Hill not far from *Adrianople*; from whence he diſſemblingly ſent Meſſengers to his Father, to deſire him to appoint time and place to give him audience, and not to deny him leave to come and kiſs his hands. But *Bajazet* having duly weigh'd the matter, and blaming him ſeverely, that of his own head he had brought an Army into another Man's Province, he ſent him word he ſhould not preſume to come nearer, or expect any thing appertaining to Peace in the poſture he was in, but forthwith retire to his Charge in *Pontus*, and diſband his Army. *Bajazet* hearing not long after this Meſſage that his Son was directing his March for *Conſtantinople*, he haſtned from *Adrianople* thither, and *Selymus* took the opportunity, and ſeaſonably entred this laſt place upon his Father's departure from it; and then overtaking his Father at the City *Tzurulum*, the old Man being aſhamed that his March ſhould ſeem as if it were a Flight, commanded his Standard to be ſet up, and his Army to halt on purpoſe, that if *Selymus* came on, he might find him ready to give him battel. But the principal Men about *Bajazet* ſecretly favouring *Selymus*, diſſuaded him by all means from giving him battel, and told him he had but one courſe to take, which was to haſten to *Conſtantinople*, that ſo *Selymus* being ſhut out of that City, which was his main hopes, might be then diſcouraged and retire, and ſo with his raſcally Followers

Overtakes his Father.

lowers more honeſtly periſh by the hands of thoſe whoſe Countries he had ſpoiled, and upon whom he muſt of neceſſity live in his return, than by his Father's Sword. *Muſtapha* Baſſa was the chief Man that gave this Advice, who in favour of *Selymus* had drawn many of the Officers to his Intereſt; and indeed of them all, *Cherſeogles* Baſſa was the only Perſon faithful to *Bajazet*, whom he adviſed to cruſh *Selymus* in the beginning, and encouraged him to the Battel againſt *Selymus*, whoſe *Tartar* Horſe had almoſt now hemm'd in the Rear of his Father's Army, and already taken ſome of his Baggage. Wherefore the old Emperor grinding his teeth for very madneſs, and being carried out in his Horſe-litter, for he was not able to ride becauſe of the Gout, and turning to the Penſioners and Janizaries about him, did ſo pathetically ſet forth the Juſtneſs of his own Cauſe and their Duty, that they began to cry out, as with an unanimous Conſent, that he needed not fear engaging, and had no cauſe to doubt of their conſtant Fidelity towards him; while the others not daring publickly to ſhew themſelves for *Selymus*, made a great ſhew of their feigned Loyalty towards their Prince.

Cherſeogles *Baſſa perſuades* Bajazet *to fight.*

In the mean time *Bajazet* ſick in his Chariot, by the advice of *Cherſeogles* the faithful Baſſa, drew up the Army in the following order: The *Sangiacks* with their Horſe, to the number of about 6000, he poſted in the Front; the *Spahioglans* and *Siliphtars*, or Horſe-Guards, he placed in the Wings; on each ſide the great Body of the Janizaries, in the midſt of whom was old *Bajazet* in perſon; 4000 Horſe more, who were Servants to the great Officers, were poſted in the Rear, and to guard the Baggage. The Battel thus ordered, *Bajazet* cauſed the Trumpets to ſound, and a red Standard as a Signal of the Battel to be diſplay'd. On the other ſide, *Selymus* having poſted his *Tartarian* Horſe in the Wings, and his *Turks* in the main Body, in the form of a Half-moon, becauſe he far exceeded his Father in Horſe, almoſt hemmed him in on all ſides, and ſo charged him. The *Tartars* being come within a hundred paces of the Enemy, caſt themſelves into great Rings like a Crown, and ſo running round, that they might deliver their Arrows backward and forward, they poured their Shots upon the Enemy as thick as Hail, while the other *Tartarian* Archers farther off

ſorely galled the *Turkiſh* Horſe. But the old Soldiers, by the Examples of their Captains cloſing their Ranks, and throwing their Targets over their heads, received the Arrows with leſs harm, and haſted to come to a cloſe Engagement; the Penſioners alſo in the main Battel did at the ſame time bravely charge the Enemy, and *Ajax* Aga of the Janizaries drawing out 7000 Harquebuſiers, attacked the Rear of one of the *Tartars* Wings, and the four thouſand Servants left in the Rear, with great ſlaughter repulſed the other Wing of the *Tartars*, which came to plunder the *Turks* Carriages. In ſhort, the Battel laſted from Noon till Sunſet, about which time the *Tartars* turned their backs and fled, while *Selymus*'s Foot armed like Janizaries, and now forſaken of their Horſe, were hemmed in by *Bajazet*'s Horſe, and moſt of them ſlain. *Selymus* eſcaped with much ado to *Varna*, from whence he went by Sea to *Caffa*; but he ever after highly eſteemed the Horſe he fled upon, call'd *Carabulo*, or black Cloud, and had afterwards at *Caire*, where he died, a Monument erected for him, in imitation of *Bucephalus*, *Alexander* the Great's Horſe. However, tho he eſcaped himſelf, not above 8000 of the 40000 Men he brought with him into the field, ſurvived that fatal Day; and for the *Tartarian* Priſoners, *Bajazet* ſhew'd them but little Mercy.

Selymus's Army defeated.

In the mean time, while *Bajazet* came to *Conſtantinople*, his Son *Achomates*, who had heard of all his Brother *Selymus*'s Proceedings againſt him, was come with 20000 Men to *Scutari* over againſt *Conſtantinople*, from whence he ceaſed not to ſollicite his Father to reſign up the Empire to him; which *Bajazet* prepared to do with all the haſte he could, but was mightily, tho diſſemblingly oppoſed therein by his great Officers, who ſtill favoured *Selymus*: ſo that he was obliged to ſend *Achomates* word how matters ſtood, and that he ſhould forthwith depart for *Amaſia*, from whence he would ſend for him again when the matter could be accompliſhed with more ſatisfaction and ſecurity. This Diſappointment ſo enraged *Achomates*, that he declared he muſt be forced to do himſelf juſtice when others would not, and all that *Bajazet* could ſay to him by the *Cadeleſcher* could by no means appeaſe his irritated Mind: but in his return to *Amaſia* he firſt ravaged *Bithynia*,

Bajazet *diſappointing* Achomates *of the Empire, he rebels againſt him.*

and

and then calling to him his two Sons *Amurathes* and *Aladin* (young Princes of great hopes) he excited them to take his part againſt their Enemies, and defend their own Honour and Right, which would be an eaſy matter to do, by ſurprizing the leſſer *Aſia*; they from their youthful Diſpoſition being ready enough to go upon ſuch Enterprizes, and encourag'd by their Father's perſuaſion, in a little time raiſed a good Army, whilſt the Father alſo, beſides the old Troops he had, levied others, and ſo over-running the Provinces, proclaimed himſelf King of *Aſia*, and many Cities were yielded up to him. After this he enter'd into *Lycaonia*, and the Borders of *Cilicia*, where by his Embaſſadors he deſired *Mahometes* his Brother's Son, who then govern'd thoſe Countries, to aid him in his juſt Quarrel, to whom he ſet forth the pretended Injuries done him at large, and made him great Promiſes; but *Mahometes* anſwer'd, it was not for him to judg of *Bajazet*'s Actions, whether they were right or wrong, but he knew he was to obey him as long as he poſſeſs'd the Empire, and ſo adviſed his Uncle *Achomates* to be pacified: who expecting no ſuch Anſwer, entred with his Army into the Borders of his Province, and with Fire and Sword began to deſtroy the Country before him; and then encountring his Nephew near *Larenda*, he there overthrew his Army, and then laying ſiege to the place, *Mahometes* and his Brother then a Child were with the City delivered up to him.

In the mean time, old *Bajazet* being fill'd with Grief and Indignation, ſent Embaſſadors to reprove him for his Diſloyalty, and to require him to lay down his Arms without any more ado; but *Achomates* cauſed the chiefeſt of them, who very boldly delivered his Meſſage, to be put to death before his face: which Outrage ſo incenſed *Bajazet*, and gave his Enemies at Court ſuch an opportunity to oppoſe his Intereſt, and made the Guards ſo averſe to him, that he was proclaimed a Traitor. But when the Army to be ſent againſt him was ready, every body excuſed himſelf from taking the chief Command upon him; nay, the very Soldiers (as before inſtructed) ſaid peaceably they durſt not, nay they would not draw their Swords againſt the Emperor's Son, and Heir apparent of the Empire, except they were conducted by ſome of the *Ottoman*

1512. Achomates *kills his Father's Embaſſador.*

Blood: which tended to reconcile *Selymus* to his Father; for it was ſuppoſed the Age of *Bajazet* would not allow him to go upon the Expedition, and for his Son *Corcutus* he was buried in his Studies, and no body minded him. In the mean time old *Muſtapha* Baſſa laying hold of the opportunity, in a cunning Diſcourſe perſuaded the Emperor to make uſe of the reſtleſs *Selymus* in this War, and concluded, that by ſo doing he might end it with ſecurity, and expoſe him unto danger whom he had rather overcome as an Enemy, by him whom he alſo wiſh'd to periſh; he was vigorouſly ſeconded in the motion by the other Baſſas. But *Bajazet* obſerving that his faithful Son-in-law *Cherſeogles* Baſſa ſat ſilently, hanging down his head as one diſliking their Diſcourſe, he ſtood mute for a while, conſidering of, and ſtruggling within himſelf about the Faults of both his Sons, and what he ſhould do upon this occaſion; but at length againſt *Cherſeogles*'s wholeſom Advice, he writ to *Selymus* with his own hand to come forthwith to *Conſtantinople*, to take the Command of the Army upon him againſt his Brother.

Whilſt theſe things were tranſacting at *Conſtantinople*, *Corcutus* being inform'd of all the Proceedings, forthwith embark'd at *Phocis* for *Conſtantinople*; and humbling himſelf before his Father, after he had firſt talk'd of divers other weighty matters, he at length gently put him in mind, when he had thirty years before been created Emperor in that City, that yet moſt willingly and freely he had reſigned the ſame up to his Father again, as a moſt dutiful Son, and that he had continued to be ſo with the greateſt circumſpection and exactneſs ever ſince, whereas his Brothers had acted quite contrary; his Requeſt therefore was, that he might be declared Emperor by his Father before *Selymus*'s arrival to command the Army, whoſe turbulent Nature would ſpoil all his Father's good Intentions towards him afterwards. The old Emperor ſpake very comfortably to him, and told him he could be content to reſign the Empire up to him then, but that it was not in his power preſently, for fear of the Guards; but when they were once gone with *Selymus* into *Aſia*, he would then actually do it, while one, if not both his rebellious Sons might periſh in Battel againſt each other.

Corcutus's Speech to Bajazet.

Is promis'd the Empire.

In

In the mean time *Selymus* being advertiſed by his Friends, of *Corcutus*'s being at Court, made all the haſte he could thither alſo, and was received in the City with great Honour; and next day going to Court, he proſtrated himſelf before his Father, and craved pardon for his Diſloyalty. The old Emperor ſmiling upon this Crocodile, kindly took him up, and ſaid, *Thy Faults, Son* Selymus, *are ſo much the leſs, becauſe they have found ſpeedy Repentance, wherefore I do the more willingly pardon thee; but henceforth endeavour thy ſelf, that God who hath given thee a notable Spirit and Courage, may alſo be thought to have endued thee with a good and well-diſpoſed Mind: there is a military Affair in agitation, worthy thy Hardineſs, wherein thou mayſt ſufficiently manifeſt to the World thy Forwardneſs and Courage, there ſhew it as there is occaſion.* *Selymus* in a diſſembling manner would have refuſed the Command, and have his more deſerving Brother *Corcutus* prefer'd before him, which the other and his Friends thought it his Intereſt to decline, while the crafty *Selymus* deſired nothing more; and he had no ſooner accepted the ſame, but the Soldiers (as before inſtructed) ſaluted him not for their General only, but Sovereign and Emperor. This alſo he faintly refuſed at firſt, but at length he engaged the chief Baſſas and Commanders to go to his Father, and to deſire him to transfer the Imperial Dignity upon him. Hereupon *Muſtapha* the great Baſſa coming as a Man in amaze to *Bajazet*, (who awaken'd with the Tumult of the Soldiers, was come out of his Chamber to the open Rooms of his Palace) in a few blunt words delivered to him the moſt unwelcome Meſſage, ſaying, *He muſt expect preſent Death from the Soldiery, if he ratified not what they had done.* *Bajazet* perceiving how he had been betray'd by his Baſſas, in his fury brake out into theſe words; *Falſe and forſworn Wretches! Do you thus betray me? and with ſuch monſtrous Villany requite my infinite Bounty? Why do you not alſo as Murderers take away my Life, who could not endure for a while to expect the Diſſolution of this my weak and aged Body, but depoſing your rightful and lawful Sovereign, muſt needs in haſte ſet up a wicked and graceleſs Man to reign over you? But much good may do you with him, the Deſpiſer of God, and Murderer of his Father, to whom e'er long you ſhall*

Selymus *ſaluted Emperor.*

dearly pay the Price of this your Perfidy and Treachery towards me: and he himſelf beginning his Empire by moſt unnatural Treaſon, Murder, and Bloodſhed, ſhall not (I hope) eſcape the heavy Hand of God, the undoubted and ſevere Avenger of much Treaſon and Impiety. Hereupon the falſe *Muſtapha*, with *Boſtanges* and *Ajax* returning to the Soldiers, told them *Bajazet* was willing to reſign; and then *Selymus* being mounted upon a brave Horſe, and conducted up and down the City, was by the unanimous Voice of the People ſaluted Emperor, and the ſame day the Baſſas and great Officers ſwore Allegiance to him.

Hereupon *Corcutus*, notwithſtanding *Selymus*'s Promiſes to him, fled to *Magneſia*, and old *Bajazet* full of heavineſs retired to *Dimotica*, a ſmall City not far from *Adrianople*, being now 76, or, as ſome report, 80 years old. In the mean time *Selymus*, to aſſure the Empire to himſelf, before he would go with an Army againſt his Brother *Achomates*, hired *Haman* a *Jew*, his Father's chief Phyſician, to poiſon him, (and promiſed him ten Ducats a day as long as he lived) which he did in a Potion prepared for that purpoſe, and ſo he departed this Life in the Year 1512. and *Anthony Utrius* a *Genoeſe*, who ſerved at that time in his Chamber, and was preſent when he died, reports, that there were evident ſigns of the Poiſon upon his dead Body. *Selymus* reſtored all his Servants to their former places at Court, except five of his Pages, who going into Mourning for their Royal Maſter, were impriſoned by him, and two of them put to death, and the reſt were made common Soldiers, of whom the forementiond *Utrius* was one; who after ten years miſerable Captivity, eſcaped at laſt, and returning into *Italy*, wrote the Hiſtory of the Calamities of *Bajazet*'s Houſe, and a great part of *Selymus*'s Reign: but for *Haman* the *Jew*'s reward, *Selymus* order'd preſently his Head to be ſtruck off with this Exprobration of his Treachery, That when he had opportunity he would not ſtick to be hired to do the like by *Selymus* himſelf.

Bajazet *poiſoned.*

Christian Princes Cotemporaries with *Bajazet* II.

			A. D.	R.
Emperors of *Germany*.		*Frederick* III. Arch-Duke of *Austria*	1440.	54.
		Maximilian I.	1494.	25.
Kings	Of *England*.	*Edward* IV.	1460.	22.
		Edward V.	1483.	0.
		Richard III.	1483.	3.
		Henry VII.	1485.	24.
		Henry VIII.	1509.	38.
	Of *France*.	*Lewis* XI.	1461.	22.
		Charles VIII.	1483.	14.
		Lewis XII.	1567.	17.
	Of *Scotland*.	*James* III.	1460.	29.
		James IV.	1489.	25.
Popes of *Rome*.		*Xistus* IV.	1471.	12.
		Innocent VIII.	1484.	8.
		Alexander VI.	1492.	11.
		Pius III.	1503.	26 days
		Julius II.	1503.	9.

BOOK

BOOK IV.

CHAP. I.

The Life of Selymus *the Firſt, Emperor of the* Turks.

1512. SELYMUS having got the Empire thro Treachery and Parricide, as aforeſaid, diſtributed 2000000 Ducats among the Soldiers of the Court, and augmented their Pay, aſſigning to every Horſeman four Aſpers, and two to every Footman *per* day, above their uſual Allowances: and leaving his Son *Solyman* to govern at *Conſtantinople* in his abſence, marched into *Aſia* againſt his Brother *Achomates*, who conſidering his own Weakneſs to withſtand his Power, fled to the Mountains of *Cappadocia* upon the Confines of *Armenia*, and endeavoured every where to raiſe what Men he could; ſo that *Selymus* ſeeing he could not well winter in that cold Country near Mount *Taurus*, returned to *Bithynia*, and ſending his *European* Horſe to the Sea-Coaſt, and his Janizaries to *Conſtantinople*, winter'd himſelf with the reſt of his Army at *Pruſa*. But thinking no Care ſuperfluous that might tend to the Eſtabliſhment of his Empire, and having got in his power five of his Brother's Sons, *viz.* *Orchanes* the Son of *Alem Scach*, *Mahometes* of *Tzian Scach*, *Orchanes*, *Ermiſa* and *Muſa* Sons of his Brother *Mahometes*, all young Princes of great hopes; after

Selymus *murders five of his Brother's Sons.*


SELYMUS . I .
SOLYMAN . I
AMURATH . III .
SELYMUS . II .

after he had cunningly conſulted with his Doctors and Lawyers, whether it were not better that ſome five, eight, or ten Perſons ſhould ſuffer, rather than the whole Empire ſhould be ruined, and they anſwering in the Affirmative, he put them all to death: Tho *Mahometes*, who was a Prince of admirable Perfections both of Body and Mind, ſlew two of his Executioners before they could do their work. So that all old *Bajazet's* Grandſons being now cut off, except *Amurath* and *Aladin*, the Sons of *Achomates*, he diſpatched *Ufegi* Baſſa with 5000 Horſe to ſurprize them in *Amaſia*; but *Muſtapha* the old Baſſa, who was the main Promoter of *Selymus's* Advancement to the Empire, deteſting now his execrable Cruelty, found a way to give the two young Princes notice of their Uncle's Deſign; who preſently advertiſing their Father *Achomates* of it, they laid an ambuſh for *Ufegi*, wherein himſelf was taken priſoner, and moſt of his Men ſlain: but the matter could not be kept ſo cloſely but that *Ufegi* found out the Secret, and a way out of his Priſon, to give *Selymus* notice of *Muſtapha's* Treachery; who cauſed him preſently to be put to death, and his Body thrown into the Street: upon the news whereof, *Achomates* ſerved *Ufegi* the ſame ſauce, but courteouſly ſet the reſt of the Priſoners at liberty. 1513. *Attempts more.*

But tho *Selymus* was diſappointed in this murderous Deſign, yet thirſting after nothing more than Blood, he bent his whole Contrivance to cut off his Brother, then living peaceably and in quiet Contemplation at *Magneſia*, having laid aſide all hopes of Empire; to which end he ſuddenly ordered 10000 Horſe to be in a readineſs in three days time to march, giving out they were to make an inroad into *Cappadocia*. But the Men perceiving they were led another way, a valiant Soldier who had ſome time ſerved one of the Baſſas in *Corcutus's* Court, privately fled, and gave *Corcutus* at *Magneſia* notice of his danger; who with two of his Servants preſently fled to the Sea, hoping to get paſſage to *Candia* or *Rhodes*. Next day when *Selymus* came and found himſelf diſappointed, he by tormenting his Brother's Servants found out how his Deſign came to be diſcovered; but, after all the ſearch he could make, and could not find him, he return'd to *Pruſa*. In the mean time *Boſtanges*, his Son-in-law, who lay with a Fleet

Fleet of Gallies on the Coaſt of *Ionia*, hindring *Corcutus* to adventure to Sea, the poor Prince was forced to hide himſelf in a Cave near the Sea-ſide, not far from *Smyrna*; where having miſerably lived upon ſome wild fruit for a time, was at length thro mere neceſſity forced to ſend his Man for relief to a poor Shepherd's Cottage hard by. He was diſcovered by a Country Peaſant, and being apprehended and brought within a day's Journy of *Pruſa*, *Selymus* ſent *Kiren-Ogli* to ſtrangle him on the way; who ſhewing him ſo much favour as to let him write his mind to his Brother before his Death, he did it very readily in *Turkiſh* Verſe, wherein he ſo ſeverely, as well as livelily ſet forth his Cruelty and Barbarity, and concluded with his Prayer to God to take juſt revenge on him, in ſo pathetick a manner, that when *Selymus* came to view the Body and read the Paper, he could not, for all his cruel and ſtony Heart, forbear burſting out into Tears, proteſting he was never ſo much troubled at any man's death as his, and cauſed a general Mourning to be made for him in Court three days: he cauſed 15 of thoſe diligent Searchers who found his Brother out, to be put to death, and their Bodies flung into the Sea, ſaying, that if he were by any extremity forced to fly and hide his head, they would not ſtick to ſerve him in the ſame manner as they had done his Brother.

Corcutus taken and ſlain.

But to return again to *Achomates*; he upon the approach of the Spring being much ſollicited by his Friends ſuddenly to fall upon *Selymus* at *Pruſa*, who by reaſon of the abſence of his *European* Horſe and Janizaries, might eaſily be oppreſt by him, he directed his march thither accordingly: And being come to *Galatia* with about 15000 Horſe, but for haſte left his Foot by eaſy Marches to follow him, *Selymus* being advertiſed thereof, made what preparation he could to oppoſe him; and having luckily intercepted the Letters of ſome of *Achomates*'s Friends, directed to him from ſome in his own Camp (wherein they excited him to haſten his march before *Selymus*'s Forces were come together) he firſt put the Conſpirators to death, and at the ſame time counterfeited Letters (in their names) to *Achomates*, wherein he was perſuaded to haſten his march, and not to ſtay for his Foot, ſeeing they, upon the firſt Signal of Battel, would raiſe a Tumult

Tumult in the Army, and ſuddenly kill *Selymus*. Upon which, *Achomates* advances as far as the River *Parthenius*, and *Selymus* having ſent *Sinan* Baſſa, General of the *Aſiatick* Horſe, before, to make a trial of the Enemy's ſtrength, he not yet knowing where they lay, and being deceived by the Darkneſs of the Morning, fell into a place of diſadvantage, where he loſt 7000 Horſe, and was glad with 8000 to eſcape to *Selymus*'s Camp. But this did not diſcourage *Selymus* to advance to the River *Elata*, on the other ſide of which *Achomates* encamped alſo. However, the former paſt it a little before Sunſet, and ordering every thing for Battel next day, placed 1000 Horſe in ambuſh in an adjacent Wood, under the command of *Canoglis*, his Brother-in-law, a valiant *Tartar* young Prince, who came to his aſſiſtance upon this occaſion, and ordered him to fall on the Enemies Rear, when the Battel was begun. But while both Armies ſtood in Battel-Array ready for the Signal, *Achomates* ſent to challenge his Brother to try the quarrel in a ſingle Combat; which the other refuſing, *Achomates* preſently charged his Brother's right Wing, and quickly came to Sword in hand, wherein the *Perſian* Horſe were the better Men, and made the *Turks* retire. But while the Battel was maintained fiercely in *Selymus*'s left Wing, and by the *Janizaries* in the main Body, and that the brave *Achomates* with greater Courage than Fortune came on with freſh Troops, and not only renewed the Battel then declining, but was bearing down all before him, and in great hopes of the Victory, *Canoglis* out of his Ambuſh attacked his Rear; ſo that his ſmall Army being every way hemm'd in, fled as well as they could: But *Achomates* falling with his Horſe into a Ditch, was there overtaken, known, and ſome time after ſtrangled by *Selymus*'s order; but his two Sons, *Amurath* and *Aladin* eſcaped, the firſt into *Perſia*, and the other into *Egypt*: while *Selymus* having ſettled all things in order in *Aſia*, did return to *Adrianople*, becauſe of the Plague's being in *Conſtantinople*, of which there died 160000 Perſons.

Achomates *overthrown by* Selymus, *and put to death.*

Now *Iſmael*, the brave Sophy of *Perſia*, hating the Cruelty of *Selymus*, and having Compaſſion upon young *Amurath*, firſt honoured him with one of his own Daughters for a Wife, and early in the Spring ſent him

him with 10000 Horſe into *Cappadocia*, to make a trial, as well of the People's Affection towards him, as of the Enemies Strength, and ſent after him *Vaſti Ogli* a famous Commander with 20000 Horſe more, charging him ſtill to follow *Amurath* within a day's march; and the Sophy himſelf with a much greater Power ſtaid in *Armenia*, for fear he ſhould want Proviſion. When *Amurath* had entered into *Cappadocia*, divers Places ſurrendred to him, and others he took by force, and raſed; and it was thought he would directly have marched to *Amaſia*, had not *Chendemus*, an old experienced Captain of *Selymus*, come with a great Army to meet him at *Sebaſtia*; and having advertiſed *Selymus* before of the Preparations of the *Perſians* againſt him, he himſelf came into *Aſia*, and quickly drew an Army of 40000 men together at *Pruſa*; and finding now a fit opportunity given him by the *Perſian*, to the great joy of Chriſtendom, to convert his Arms wholly to the Eaſt, he in 30 days march came to *Arſenga*, and underſtanding how the Enemy had ravaged the Country, and retired, he reſolved to follow them cloſe, and enter into the greater *Armenia*, the chief Province of the King of *Perſia*. But when the matter of this Expedition was propoſed in Council, a great many Difficulties were obtruded, as the Length of the March, the Cold of Mount *Taurus*, and the Heats of the *Armenian* Plains, Thirſt, Hunger, and fear of the petty Kings of *Armenia*, and eſpecially of *Aladeules* King of the Mountains, whom they by no means ought to leave behind them: but more particularly *Chendemus* Viceroy of *Natolia*, and a Man of great Experience, in a notable and ſharp Speech adviſed him to ſtay a while in *Cappadocia* to refreſh his wearied Men, and there expect the coming of the Enemies.

1514. Amurath *from* Perſia *ravages* Cappadocia.

Selymus *reſolves upon a War againſt* Perſia.

Selymus would hearken to no ſuch Advices; but diſmiſſing the Council, ſaid, he would go on with his deſign, tho that old Fellow was ſo careful of his Life, that he was afraid to die a noble Death. Which *Chendemus*'s Enemies hearing, they uſed all the artifice imaginable to diſcredit *Chendemus*'s Advice, which (they ſaid) proceeded not from want of Reſolution in him, but on purpoſe to prevent ſo honourable an Expedition, and cut off all hopes of Victory; which they would inſinuate was as good as already got, with a great

great deal more to the ſame purpoſe: and then having ſuborned falſe Witneſſes to ſwear he had received a great deal of Mony of *Amurath*, *Selymus* without any more ado commanded him to be put to death. After which he marched to the Confines of the leſſer *Armenian* Kings and *Aladeules*, whom he deſired to join with him againſt the *Perſian*, and promiſed at the end of the War to give them all the Conqueſt. But theſe Kings anſwered, That they had taken up Arms for no other end than the defence of themſelves and their Kingdoms, not deſigning to provoke him or the *Perſian*; but if he would paſs without any Hoſtility thro their Territories, they promiſed him paſſage, and when he was entered into the greater *Armenia*, to relieve him with ſuch Proviſion as their poor Countries could afford. Hereupon *Selymus* thinking fit to diſſemble his Reſentment for the preſent, paſſed the Mountains *Scadriſci*, and in 8 days came to great Mount *Moſchii*; and here marching along the Banks of the *Euphrates*, for fear he ſhould want Water, to the Eaſtward he came to Mount *Periarda*, halted and encamped at the head of the *Euphrates*, from whence he ſent out Scouts to get intelligence, who after two days ſearch returned to the Sultan without one Priſoner, and told him all the Country lay waſte, and was forſaken by the Inhabitants. Hereupon *Selymus* began to ſuſpect Treachery, and fear Famine, and with grief to call to mind the Advice of old *Chendemus*: However, he appeared with a chearful Countenance to his Soldiers, and underſtanding by his Guides, that on the Right Hand beyond Mount *Periarda* was the moſt fruitful Country of all *Armenia*, he paſſed the *Araxes* above the City of *Coy*, and marched thither.

Selymus *marches over the* Araxes.

Now *Iſmael* being apprehenſive that the City of *Coy*, ſuppoſed by ſome to be the antient *Artaxata*, deſtroy'd by *Domitius Corbulo*, was in danger of being taken by the *Turks*; and being near with his Army to prevent that, was forthwith reſolved to give the Enemy battel: But firſt he ſent an Herald, with ſome expert Soldiers in his Company, who were narrowly to obſerve the Strength of the Enemy, and the Situation of their Camp, while the Herald was to expoſtulate with *Selymus* about his invading his Maſter's Country, to which he had no right, and to bid him be ready to fight againſt

next

next day. But *Selymus* in his Answer omitting former Injuries, required *Amurath* might be given up to him, and then he would return home. Upon which, the Herald departing, *Selymus* next day set forward against his Enemy in order of Battel, tho he could by no means learn what Force he had; so close and faithful were the *Persians* to their Prince, that not one of them deserted to the *Turks*, tho many of these went over to the *Persians*.

Selymns's *Order of Battel.*

Selymus, who had 80000 Horse in his Army, posted *Chasan* Bassa with the *European* Horse in the Right Wing, and *Sinan* Bassa with the *Asiatic* Horse in the Left, the *Acanzii* before them, the *Asapi* in the mid-battel, and behind the great Guns guarded with 4000 Horse; then followed himself and his Janizaries, compassed with small Field-pieces and Carriages, with a double Fortification of his chained Camels. He also commanded his Foot in the Van, upon the approach of the Enemies Horse, speedily to open, for the Cannon to play between them: All which being made known to *Ismael* by Deserters, he ordered his men to separate into two Bodies likewise, for which end he set up two Colours, to which they were to repair at the time appointed, the one being for himself, and the other for *Vasti-Ogli*, who commanded the rest of the Army.

Ismael (according to *Jovius*) had no more than 30000 Horse in his Army, and no Foot, but among the former were 10000 Men at Arms: they were all brave Troops, armed with good Lances, Scimiters and Maces, and the rest with strong Curasses and Helmets, being either Archers on Horse-back, or used light Horsemens Staffs; and contemning the vast number of their Enemies, who were reckoned to be about 300000 men, boldly advanced against them: and *Ismael* finding upon his approach, that the *Asapi* divided themselves to the right and left, to make room for the Artillery to play, he did the like with his Horse, and presently charged the *Turks* Right Wing. He after a terrible Fight slew the Commander *Chasan* Bassa, and a great many men, forcing the rest to retreat, where *Selymus* himself was with the Janizaries. On the other side, *Vasti-Ogli* having received no little harm from the *Turks* Artillery, because he was not so nimble as his Master, charged the *Asian* Horse in the left, and made a great

A great Battel between the Persians *and* Turks.

Slaughter

Slaughter among them; but he happening to be ſlain, the *Turks* renewed the Battel with great Fury, and with their Harquebuſiers drove the *Perſian* Horſe headlong upon the *Turks* common Foot: Yet the *Perſians* valiantly breaking thro the midſt of thoſe Foot, pierced even to their Cannon, which they took, and in that hurly-burly killed ſeveral of their own men, as well as of the Enemy with them; and ſtill like victorious Conquerors came to the Right Wing, where *Iſmael* was charging the *European* Horſe with great Vigour, who retreating, were glad to cry to *Selymus* for help. In which diſtreſs the Sultan in two places opened his Carriages, wherewith he had barricaded his Horſe, and ſent out part of them to the Charge; and preſently turning himſelf to the Janizaries, ſaid, 'This day's 'Victory is reſerved, moſt worthy Soldiers, to your 'Valour; wherefore now bravely fall on, and as freſh 'and courageous Men, attack your wearied Enemies: 'Their Horſes are all of a muck ſweat, and the Men 'themſelves faint under the weight of their Armour.' But all that *Selymus* could do, could not make the Janizaries go briskly on. Wherefore the *Perſians* in this heat ſurrounding the *European* Horſe, ſlew them downright, and were ready now to attack *Selymus* in his greateſt ſtrength, when *Sinan* Baſſa, tho his Wing had been in a manner overthrown, following the *Perſians* over heaps of their ſlain Foot, came in good time to *Selymus*'s aſſiſtance with ſome freſh Troops, and reſtored the Battel (now almoſt loſt) eſpecially by the invincible Courage of *Alis-Beg* and his Brother *Mahomet*, of the noble Family of the *Malcozzii*, which for Nobility amongſt the *Turks* was accounted next to the *Ottomans*; and the Battel herewith was ſo renewed, with the thundering of *Selymus*'s Cannon, that the *Turks* amongſt their diſmal days term this the *Only Day of Doom.* 1514.

However, *Iſmael* happening to be ſhot in his left Shoulder, and hearing of the Death of *Vaſta Ogli*, whom he highly valued for his great Experience in military Affairs, was perſuaded by his Officers to retreat: which he did in ſo good Order, as to have no reſemblance of Flight; and paſſing by *Tauris*, required the Citizens to open their Gates to *Selymus*, rather than be utterly ruined, and ſo marched off to the Frontiers Iſmael *wounded, retreats.*

1514. of *Media*, being not pursued by the wearied *Turks* at all: But coming into his Camp, they took all the *Persian* Tents, and many noble Ladies, who after the *Persian* manner had followed their Husbands to those Wars, whom *Selymus* set all at liberty untouch'd, except one of *Ismael*'s Wives, whom he gave in Marriage to one of his Bassas. And what is very remarkable in this Battel, is, that among the heaps of the slain they found the dead Bodies of divers *Persian* Women arm'd, who died with their Husbands in Battel; whom *Selymus* caused to be decently buried. Thus ended this famous Battel fought in the *Calderan* Fields near unto *Coy*, *Aug.* 7. in the year 1514. wherein *Selymus* lost above 30000 Men, *Chesan* Bassa, seven Sangiacks, among whom were the two *Malcozzian* Brethren; and besides his common Foot, lost the greatest part of his *Illyrian*, *Macedonian*, *Epirot*, *Thessalian* and *Thracian* Horse, the Flower of his Army.

From hence *Selymus* marched to *Tauris*, and lodged his Army in the Suburbs thereof, but according to the relation of some durst not go into the City save in disguise like a common Soldier; tho others say he made a magnificent Feast in the stately Palace of the King of *Persia* there, and had much discourse with the People of *Tauris* about his late Victory: and while he thus staid at *Tauris*, he designed to spend the Winter in *Armenia*; and consulting his Officers about it, they fearing his Displeasure, referred the matter wholly to him; only *Mustapha* the chief Bassa happening to say, *It were well for him to consult the* Janizaries *about it*, he took it so ill that he turn'd him out of his place, and sent one of his Jesters after him to deride and cut off part of his Tulipant that hung down, as the fashion was. But when the *Janizaries* came to hear of this Indignity, they flatly told *Selymus* they would not winter so far from home in an Enemy's Country, and would forsake him if he staid. *Selymus* perplext herewith, and at the same time hearing of the great Preparations made by *Ismael* against him, he contrary to his Promise exacted a great Sum of Mony from the Citizens of *Tauris*; and carrying along with him 3000 of the best Artificers that were most skilful in making Armour and Weapons, he marched with all speed towards the *Euphrates*: but before the Army were all got

Janizaries *mutiny.*

got over, the *Georgian* Horſe, the advanced Guard of *Iſmael*'s Army, raiſed ſuch a fear in them, that 2000 of the *Turks* were drowned, divers Field-pieces ſtuck in the Mud, and a great part of their Baggage carried away with the Stream; however the *Georgians* got a good Booty there. But *Selymus*'s Paſſage over Mount *Antitaurus* was yet much more dangerous than the *Euphrates*, his Men being continually alarm'd and attack'd by thoſe Mountaineers, who did them much harm, and all by *Aladeules*'s Order; tho he had the Artifice to diſſemble the matter to *Selymus* as if it was not in his power to help it, when *Selymus* was ſatisfied to the contrary, but put off the revenging of it to a more ſeaſonable opportunity: and at laſt came with much ado to *Trapezond*, and thence to *Amaſia*, where he ſpent the Winter in recruiting his Army, deſigning in the Spring to go and call *Aladeules* to an account for the damage done him in his laſt march.

Indeed *Jo. Ant. Menaoinus* a *Genoeſe*, who ſerved in theſe Wars, and after this laſt Action at the *Euphrates* made his eſcape, relates the matter to have hapned much otherwiſe at this River; for he ſays that *Selymus* being come thither with about 300000 men, found the Bridg broken down by *Amurath*, and the Enemy conveniently encamp'd on the other ſide, the King of *Perſia* having thereabouts 90000 Men Horſe and Foot; that *Selymus* having repaired the Bridg, ſent the two great Lieutenants of *Greece* and *Natolia* over; that *Amurath* next Morning, two hours before Sun-riſing, ſuddenly attack'd the Lieutenant of *Greece*, and took his Tents; that he of *Natolia* and his Men for fear ſwam over the River; that *Selymus* hereupon brought his Cannon to play upon the Banks of the River, but many of them being overloaden, burſt and ſlew divers *Turks*, which frightned many of their Horſes and Mules to run with their Riders into the River, where they were drowned: But the *Perſians* having received great loſs, eſpecially for fear of the Artillery, retired, which gave *Selymus* opportunity to march over and fight them, and the Battel continued doubtful till towards night, when the *Perſians* overcharged with multitudes receiv'd undoubtedly a great Overthrow, but through the benefit of the night eſcaped without farther loſs; that upon this *Selymus* leaving his Baggage

1514. with his Foot, marched with his Horſe with a deſign to ſurprize *Tauris*; but *Iſmael* ſending 10000 freſh Horſe to lie in the *Turks* way, with Command that they ſhould fly from before them, as if it had been for fear, the *Turks* followed hard after them till midnight, and ſtopping at a little River to refreſh themſelves, then purſued the Enemy; ſo that the *Perſians* now finding the *Turkiſh* Horſe far enough from their Foot, the *Perſian* Horſe in Ambuſh fell upon the Foot, and with great ſlaughter defeated them: at which time they alſo took all *Selymus*'s Cannon and Treaſure, who upon the news preſently retreated, but being now attacked by the 10000 *Perſian* Horſe before fled, and on the other ſide by the other Troops, his Army was diſcomfited, his Standards taken, and ſuch as were able brake thro their Enemies and fled, as *Selymus* did himſelf, and with much ado got ſafe to *Amaſia*.

1515. Selymus *takes* Clamaſſum. *Selymus*, in purſuance to his Reſolutions already mentioned againſt *Aladeules*, after he had firſt taken, pillaged and garriſoned *Clamaſſum*, a ſtrong Town ſituate upon the *Euphrates*, and belonging to the *Perſians*, enter'd with a ſtrong Army into the Confines of his Kingdom: of whoſe coming *Aladeules* being aware, he brought down all his Horſe, to the number of about 15000, from the Mountains to a fair large Valley near him, and commanded his Foot, which were numerous, to keep the Mountains on the right and left; where having the high Rocks, Mountains and narrow Paſſes much for his advantage, he reſolved there to reſt and expect the Enemy's coming, while *Selymus* on the other hand truſting to the multitude of his Forces, made no ſcruple of adventuring his fortune, tho upon ſuch a diſadvantage; and therefore commanded *Sinan* Baſſa the Eunuch, who was now made General of the *European* Horſe, with a ſquare Battel to charge the Enemy in Front, ſince the place would not allow him to extend his Line, and uſe any Wings, and he himſelf with his *Janizaries* and *Aſiatick* Horſe followed in the Rear. In the mean time *Aladeules*'s Soldiers fought valiantly in the Front of the Battel, and keeping cloſe to the *Turks*, ſtill kept the advantage of the ground; ſo that the *Turkiſh* Veterans with their Multitude or Valour ſeem'd to prevail little or nothing againſt them, eſpecially ſince they were grievouſly galled from the

ſides

sides of the Hills by *Aladeules*'s Foot with their Arrows and Darts: so that *Selymus* finding such unexpected Resistance, he drew some Companies of his Harquebusses out of his Men, and sent them to succour their Fellows, and at the same time commanded the *Janizaries* to mount the Hill; when the Mountaineers, terrified with the strangeness of the Shot, and not able to endure it, fled to their sure Haunts; tho the greatest slaughter fell amongst these Foot, who when they saw the Horse put to flight, and the *Janizaries* mounting the Hill, in their clambering over those rough and difficult places were slain till Sun-set, whereas the King with the Horse retreated to their Fastnesses with little loss. *Selymus* pursued the Enemy in that rough barren Country for seven days; but finding it to little purpose, he encamped in the most convenient place of that Country, and sent *Sinan* Bassa with the light Horse and some days Provision to hunt after the Enemy, especially the King himself. In the mean time *Selymus* understanding by the Prisoners that the King had entrenched himself upon a strong Rock, whither he had convey'd store of Provisions, and was resolved not to give Battel till he could draw his Enemies to those straits, and especially since he was afraid of being betray'd by his Kinsman *Alisbeg*, who first fled out of the Battel; *Selymus* ordered their Chains to be knock'd off, and lading them with Presents, sent Letters by them and Rewards to *Alisbeg*, to excite him at so proper a time to revenge his Father's Death, who was easily drawn to join now with *Selymus*; and so went over to *Sinan* Bassa with a good part of *Aladeules*'s Horse. Upon which *Aladeules* flying to hide himself in a Cave, was there taken, and a few days after by *Selymus*'s order put to death, and his Head in derision carried about thro all the lesser *Asia*, and afterwards by way of barbarous Ostentation sent by *Selymus* to the Senate of *Venice*, as a loathsom Testimony of his Victory. Then he reduced his Kingdom, and after he had divided it into three parts, in the form of a Province, where *Sinan* Bassa commanded in chief, he returned to *Constantinople*; and after he had represt the *Hungarians*, and made very great Preparations for War, he returned in the Spring to his old Army, lying now with *Sinan* Bassa at *Iconium*, designing to have invaded the *Persian* again.

Overthrows Aladeules.

Aladeules taken and slain.

1915. But when he was come thither, underſtanding that *Campſon Gaurus* Sultan of *Egypt* was come with a great Army into *Syria*, and that he would aid the *Perſians*, *Selymus* ſent a ſolemn Embaſſy to him, to deſire him not to diſturb him in that War: to whom *Campſon* anſwer'd, *That it was the antient Cuſtom of the Sultans of* Egypt, *as they held the principal Place in their Religion, with all Care and Induſtry to keep the other* Mahometan *Kings and People at Peace and Unity among themſelves; whereof he for his part had been always moſt deſirous, and was, for no other end, come with his Army into his Province of* Syria, *than to perſuade* Selymus *to Peace; who if he muſt needs wilfully proceed in his Wars againſt* Iſmael *King of* Perſia, *his Friend and Confederate, he muſt then do what was conſiſtent with his Honour and Place, and no longer ſuffer all to go to wreck for the vain Pleaſure and Fury of one inſolent and ambitious Man.* He alſo ſaid, *That he had of a long time obſerved* Selymus's *inſatiable, fierce and troubleſom Diſpoſition; who having moſt unnaturally procured the Death of his good Father, and ſlain his Brethren, Princes of great Valour, ſeven of his Nephews, Princes of no ſmall hope, with many of his beſt Counſellors, they ſhould tell him, that one and all the Conditions of Peace ſhould be to reſtore* Aladeules's *Son to his Father's Kingdom, which had long been under the Protection of the* Egyptian *Sultans, as of right he ought to do; which beſides his Friendſhip, would be a way for him to reap greater Glory by an honourable Peace than a doubtful and dangerous War.*

Selymus's *Embaſſy to* Campſon.

Campſon's *Anſwer.*

The Embaſſadors, tho they knew *Selymus*'s Diſpoſition was for War, yet to be the ſooner diſpatched, they ſeemed very much to approve of his Propoſal of Peace, and to give him hopes it might ſoon be accompliſhed; and ſo they returned laden with Rewards to *Selymus* then at *Cæſarea*, while *Campſon* removing from the *Orontes*, came to *Aleppo*. This, and his Anſwer to his Embaſſadors being underſtood by *Selymus*, and withal what Army *Campſon* had, he reſolved to turn his Arms that way, ſeeing to enter into *Armenia* and leave ſo potent an Enemy behind him was altogether unadviſable, and to give over the Enterprize at the pleaſure of another Prince was diſhonourable. Wherefore he made a ſhew as if he would have marched directly againſt the

Perſians,

Perſians, in order to which he ſent before him Part of his Army and Baggage to the City of *Suaſſia*, on the Frontiers of *Perſia*; but in the mean time calling the Janizaries before him, he told them he had altered his Reſolution, and encouraged them like brave Men not to fear the vain Names and Titles of the *Mamalukes*: *For*, ſaid he, *the Strength of thoſe Horſe is long ſince decay'd, the famous old* Mamalukes *are dead: you ſhall meet in Battel but with a kind of gallant Horſe-breakers rather than Soldiers, who know not how to encounter an Enemy, or endure to be wounded; who being effeminate by a long Peace, and corrupted with Delicacy and Exceſs, never ſaw intrenched or armed Enemies, nor heard the Sound of a Trumpet, but Plays or Shows: wherefore they ſhould not value them who had not many Cannon nor Foot. But* (continued he) *as the Interpreters of our ſacred Laws and Religion, having orderly performed all their Obſervations, do divine all Happineſs to us; ſo you, as Men full of hope, ſet chearfully forward to a moſt aſſured Victory over the proud Enemies: for doubtleſs God favoureth the Cauſe of Men juſtly provoked, and offereth Means of Victory to ſuch as took up juſt and neceſſary Arms. Yet to overcome the Enemy, and really to enjoy Victory, wholly conſiſteth in the Courage and Valour of them, who deem nothing better or more honourable, than to ſpend their Lives for the Honour of their Prince and Country.*

Selymus's *Speech to his Soldiers.*

Here the Janizaries ſhaking their Arms, cried out with a chearful Voice, he ſhould lead them where he pleaſed; ſaying, *They were ready to overcome all the Difficulties of thoſe hard Paſſages, and patiently to endure all the Fatigues and Dangers of that War.* And ſo *Selymus* having diſcovered the eaſieſt Paſſes, reſolved to paſs over the Mountains in three Places, and commanded the rough and uneven Ways to be made plain and ſmooth for his Artillery and Baggage, to be the better convey'd over; and in ſhort, ſuch Diligence was uſed, that in five days time the whole Army, Cannon and Baggage, were got over Mount *Taurus*, and come to the Plains of *Comagena*. Preſently upon which *Alis-Beg*, who betray'd *Aladeules*, overran all that Country in order to know by the Country People and ſuch Priſoners as he could take, where *Campſon* lay with his Army; and alſo by keeping the Paſſes to endeavour,

1516. as much as might be, to keep him from the Knowledg of *Selymus*'s Arrival. But *Campſon*, out of a ſtrange ſort of Pride and Vanity, could not be perſuaded he was come over Mount *Amanus*, till news was brought him that *Selymus* lay incamped with a ſtrong Army within two days march of him; which diſtracted his Head with a thouſand Thoughts, whether he had beſt to fight, retire, or what elſe to do. Now among other Men in his Army, there was one *Jamburd*, ſirnamed *Gazelles*, a Perſon of great Valour, Honour, and Experience in military Affairs, and at that time Governour of *Apamea*, who told him he was of opinion that to fight with the *Turks* Army, conſiſting for the moſt part of experienced Soldiers, with ſo ſmall a Power, was very dangerous; but it were beſt to retire ſpeedily, and chuſe *Damaſcus* as the fitteſt Place for the Wars: For as the *Turkiſh* Army could make no haſte after him, becauſe of their Foot and Carriages, they might eaſily do it, and there draw out all the *Mamalukes* in gariſon in *Judea* and *Egypt*, and take their Neighbours the *Arabs* to their Service, protract the War till Winter, and ſo eaſily diſtreſs the Enemy for want of Proviſion. It was not to be thought that *Aleppo* could eaſily be taken by them: that ſhortly they ſhould have aid of the *Perſians*; nay, *Iſmael* himſelf was likely, upon the News of this Expedition, to break into the leſſer *Aſia*; neither would the Chriſtians from *Rhodes* and *Cyprus* refuſe them Artillery. And upon the whole he adviſed the Sultan not too haſtily to adventure the Hazard of a Battel, ſince an Error in War might be lamented, but hardly recovered.

Gazelles's *good Advice to* Campſon.

Oppoſed by Cayerbeius.

But notwithſtanding the Sultan's Inclination to follow this wholeſom Advice, the Soldiers Eagerneſs for Battel, the fooliſh Hardineſs of the *Mamalukes*, and eſpecially the Influence which the treacherous *Cayerbeius*, Governour of *Aleppo* and *Comagena*, had over him (who out of a grudg to the Sultan, becauſe he had ſome years before poiſoned his Brother, now betrayed all he knew of his Affairs to *Selymus*) determined his Mind the other way, to dare the Enemy to Battel: in order to which, he conveniently encamped on the River *Singa*, almoſt ten Miles from the City, ſo as his Men might have the uſe of the River, and made four Battels

Battels of his Army; the first of which he committed to the leading of the false *Cayerbeius*, because it was in his own Province they were to fight; the second was led by *Sybeius*, a Person of great activity, and for that reason call'd *Balvano*, i. e. the Tumbler, and withal of singular Fidelity and Valour. After them came *Gazelles*, to relieve either the one or the other, as there was occasion: and *Campson* himself, in gilt Armour, led the fourth. Then on the other hand for *Selymus*, he posted his *Asiatick* Horse in the right Wing, his *European* in the left, and Janizaries and Artillery in the main Body; before whom in the middle between the Wings he posted his brave Pensioners, amongst whom, contrary to his usual Custom, he chose to serve that day.

Great Battel between the Egyptians *and* Turks.

Now *Cayerbeius*, as soon as he approached the Enemy, briskly charged the *European* Horse, and presently, as if he would have surrounded that Wing, wheeled to the Rear of them, and there lighting upon the Scullions and other Followers of the Camp, pretended to make a great slaughter among them. But in the other Wing *Sebeius* the brave Governour of *Damascus* forbearing to charge in Front, entred athwart the Enemies Ranks, where the *Mamalukes* made a most furious Slaughter of the *Asian* Horse, and penetrated so far as the very Standards in that Wing; and so having cut in two pieces the right Wing of the Enemies Battel, and falling in between the Body of their Foot and Rear of their Pensioners, brought a great Terror and Fear upon the main Body: so that the matter now was brought to great danger, *Selymus* by this brave Action being almost cut off from his Foot, in whom he reposed the greatest Confidence. And now the Janizaries were furiously charged by faithful *Gazelles*, who following the fortune of *Sebeius*, had set upon the Front of the Enemies Battel. The *Asiatick* Horse also being put to the worst, and cut in pieces, found no means to rally and renew the Battel; but in this extremity *Sinan* Bassa coming in with his Horse, mightily encouraged the *Turks* to continue the Fight; and *Selymus*'s great Cannon coming to play at the same time upon the *Mamalukes*, made a great slaughter amongst them, who tho they were forsaken by *Cayerbeius* and their good fortune, yet were not to seek either for Courage or Direction, but closing together, brake thro the midst

1516. midſt of their Enemies with great ſlaughter, and ſo fled to their Camp and City. Now *Campſon* coming up to the relief of his Men, when he heard of *Cayerbeius*'s Revolt, the Overthrow and Flight of his Men, and the Power of his Enemies, was ready to ſink down for ſorrow; but the Enemy quickly coming up, they ſoon put his Troops about him to flight, while he being a corpulent Man of great years, falling down, was trodden to death. *Selymus* next day enriched his Soldiers with the Spoils of the Camp, and then marching to *Aleppo*, had the City peaceably ſurrender'd to him by *Cayerbeius*, and granted the Citizens greater Privileges than they had before. This famous Battel was fought *Auguſt* 17. in the Year 1516. the very ſame day on which two years before *Selymus* had obtain'd the Victory over *Iſmael*, Sophy of *Perſia*, in the *Chalderan* Fields, and was fatal to the *Egyptians*; wherein, beſides their Sultan, they loſt above 10000 of their brave *Mamalukes*, and the *Turks* 3000 Horſe, who muſt infallibly have been beaten, had it not been for the Treachery of *Cayerbeius*.

The Death of Campſon.

Divers Places ſurrendred to Selymus.

Beſides the Surrendry of *Aleppo* to *Selymus*, as a Reward of his Victory, or rather Treachery of *Cayerbeius*, the Cities of *Damaſcus*, *Tripolis*, *Berytus*, *Sydon* and *Ptolemais*, received *Turkiſh* Gariſons; and not long after *Selymus* held a Council in his Camp under the Walls of *Damaſcus* (for he would not bring his Soldiers into the City, among whom he kept an exact Diſcipline) and having ſettled the civil Affairs of the Provinces and Cities he had conquer'd, with great Wiſdom and Precaution, he bent his thoughts upon the Conqueſt of *Egypt*: for which end he ſent *Sinan* Baſſa with 15000 Horſe, and a ſtrong Regiment of Harquebuſiers pick'd from among the Janizaries and other Soldiers, into *Judea*, to try the Paſſage of that Country, and to open a way to *Gaza*. In the mean time the *Egyptians* having advanced *Tomombeius*, by the *Turks* call'd *Tumanbeg*, a *Circaſſian* born, and then great Diadare, to be their Sultan, he with ſingular application made great Preparations for War; and thro the Deſarts of *Palmyrena* ſent to *Iſmael* Sophy of *Perſia*, to intreat him by way of diverſion to fall into the *Turks* Dominions in the leſſer *Aſia*, and with all ſpeed to break into *Comagena*, which would be a means to incloſe the

Turkiſh


TOMOMBEIUS
last of the Mamalukes.
VALIERE
Grand Master of Rhodes.
BARBAROSSA
the Turkish Admiral.
AURIA
Admiral to Emp. Charles V.

Turkiſh Army between them. *Sinan* Baſſa all this while, after a ſeemingly kind Reception at *Gaza*, did all he could to inform himſelf concerning the adjacent Deſarts and Sands, as alſo of the ſtate of the *Mamalukes* Affairs at *Caire:* But the Citizens of *Gaza*, who really hated the *Turks*, ſent to the *Egyptian* Sultan a true account of the ſtate of them under *Sinan*, and promiſed if he would ſet upon them in the night, they would at the ſame time ſally out of the City, and oppreſs them in their Camp. *Tomombeius* pitched upon *Gazelles* to be Commander in this Expedition, who with his *Mamalukes* and *Arabians* had not march'd far before *Sinan* had notice of his coming; who prudently diſpoſing of all things, tho he knew nothing of the Treachery of the Citizens of *Gaza*, marched in the dead of the night out of his Camp, and coming to a Village about 15 miles farther towards *Egypt*, *Gazelles* about the ſame time came thither alſo: who, tho his Men were much wearied with their March, yet was neceſſitated now to fight the Enemy; who placed their Harquebuſiers in the Wings of their Army, which was ranged into a great length for the better uſe of their Pieces, and the eaſier to hem in the *Egyptians*; and in the middle they poſted their Horſe, who receiv'd the firſt Charge of the *Mamalukes*. The Battel was doubtful a great while; for tho the *Turks* far exceeded in number, yet the *Mamalukes* were the braver Men, and nothing but their being at length incloſed by the Enemy could have overcome them, who in this Action, beſides a great many *Arabs*, loſt two Great Men, *viz.* the Governour of *Alexandria*, and *Orchamus* Governour of *Caire*, with above 1000 *Mamaluke* Horſe: and the Victory was by no means unbloody to the *Turks*, who loſt 2000 of their beſt Horſe, and ſome great Commanders.

A great Battel between Sinan Baſſa and Gazelles.

In the mean time the Citizens of *Gaza* perceiving the *Turks* Camp empty, and vainly ſuppoſing they had fled for fear of the *Mamalukes*, cruelly ſlew all the ſick and weak in it; and preſently ſetting upon 2000 of the *Turkiſh* Horſe going to join *Sinan*, routed them, and they muſt afterwards have all periſh'd by the hands of the *Arabs*, had not they luckily met with *Juleb* Governour of *Achaia*, who with a ſtrong Body of Horſe was going alſo to join *Sinan*, both which had much ado to diſentangle themſelves from the Enemy in the

1517. the difficult places they were to pass thro. *Selymus* was much concerned at this ill Success, but much more with the Imagination of *Sinan* and his whole Army being lost; but when he received the certain news of his Victory, he then entertain'd no less thoughts than the entire Conquest of *Egypt*. Wherefore he removed with his Army to *Rama*, from whence he went first to *Jerusalem*, and after all seeming Devotion there, returned to his Army at *Gaza*, where he did not stay above four days, but he set forwards towards *Egypt*; and notwithstanding those sandy dry Deserts in their way to *Caire* lay unpeopled, and the Sand moved by the Wind like the Billows of the Sea, yet such a sudden Calm followed the great Rains that fell three days before, that the Sand was laid, and they also met with plenty of Water, but were often molested in their march by the *Arabs*, in spite of whom he came in eight days time near unto *Grand Caire*, sending *Sinan* Bassa with his *European* Soldiers still a day's march before him.

Selymus *marches to* Egypt.

Tomombeius's *Designs betray'd to the* Turks.

Now *Tomombeius* the Sultan of *Egypt* having convey'd all his new and old Cannon into a Village six miles from *Caire*, call'd *Mathorea*, drew deep Ditches cross the Fields and Highways, which he closely covered over with Earth and Hurdles, as if it had been firm ground; then posted himself with about 12000 *Mamalukes*, and a multitude of *Arabian* Horse in convenient places, that upon the approach of the *Turks* they might feel the power of their Guns, be entrapped in the Ditches, and at the same time be attack'd: all which must necessarily have been a great detriment to the *Turks*, but that there were four *Epirot Mamalukes* in the Sultan's Army, who envying his Advancement, fled and gave information of the whole to *Sinan* Bassa who was their Countryman, by whose guidance they fetched a compass to the left, escaped the danger, and appear'd in the Rear of the *Egyptians*. But *Tomombeius*, tho he found he was basely betray'd, yet being a Man of invincible Courage, he call'd his Generals and great Commanders together, and briefly telling them, they had now no way left them but to fight, they all as well as the Soldiers applied themselves very chearfully, and with much Constancy, to prepare for Battel; in order to which he commanded the *Arabs*

to

to go and hem in the Wings of the Enemies Battels behind, and ſo to skirmiſh with them. In the mean time the Cannon play'd with much fury on each ſide, till moſt of the *Egyptian* Gunners were ſlain, and ſeveral of their Pieces broken; whereas *Selymus* had divers Chriſtian Gunners with him, who did him excellent Service. Hereupon they joined battel every where; for whilſt *Tomombeius* fought in the main Body againſt *Selymus*, and the Wings of the *Mamalukes* encounter'd thoſe of the *Turks*; and that the *Arabs* valiantly charg'd them in the Rear, there were four ſharp Engagements at the ſame time, and there enſued ſuch an hideous noiſe, clattering of Armour, and obſtinate fighting on both ſides, that nothing could exceed it. Now *Gazelles*, to retrieve the Loſs he had ſuſtain'd at *Gaza*, fell with wonderful fury upon *Jonuſes* Baſſa in the left Wing, and brake in upon his Ranks; while the *Arabs* courageouſly preſſing him in the Rear, forced theſe victorious *European* Troops to turn their backs and fly, which they never did before: and whilſt *Sinan* came valiantly fighting to interrupt this manifeſt Victory of *Gazelles*, he was there ſlain, and moſt of his Followers; and ſo were a pick'd Company of 500 Janizaries, being hemm'd in by the *Mamaluke* Horſe, in a trice cut to pieces. But *Muſtapha* with the *Aſian* Horſe in the right Wing preſs'd ſo hard upon the *Egyptians* left, that with the help of *Selymus*'s Cannon, that bore upon and wrought great Confuſion among them, he not only diſordered, but with his whole Troops overthrew their broken Ranks.

A great Battel between the Turks *and* Mamalukes.

At the ſame time *Tomombeius* breaking through the main Body of the *Turkiſh* Horſe, penetrated even himſelf in perſon with great ſlaughter to the Foot; and the *Arabs* caſting themſelves into a Ring, and bravely acting their parts, this brought *Selymus* on with his Foot and invincible Janizaries, to renew the Battel with terrible fury and obſtinacy, which continued from four till Sun-ſet. But at length *Tomombeius* fearing an utter Overthrow from the number of his Enemies, ſounded a Retreat (tho the Battel was broken off rather by the approach of the night than otherwiſe) and retired without his Tents and Train of Artillery towards *Caire*, in which flight the *Diudare* and famous Commander *Bidon* were taken and ſlain by *Selymus*'s order. And thus

The Turks *overthrow the* Egyptians.

1517. thus ended this famous Battel, which was fought *January* 24. 1517. and was the fatal Forerunner of the Conqueſt of the *Egyptian* Kingdom.

However the brave *Tomombeius*, no ways diſcouraged with ſo many Misfortunes, encamped his Army conveniently between *Grand Caire* and the *Nile*, and alſo put 8000 *Ethiopian* Slaves in Arms; beſides which he open'd the old Armory, and armed the *Mamalukes* Sons, *Moors*, *Jews*, and *Arabs*: but conſidering with himſelf his Want of Artillery, and other Inconveniencies, and that he could not by main force prevail againſt his Enemy in the field, he contrived to fall upon him at a convenient place in the night; but his Deſigns being baſely betray'd to *Selymus*, he cunningly took all neceſſary Precautions, and made great Fires in all the Quarters of his Camp: ſo that upon *Tomombeius*'s approach he was repulſed with great loſs, and had he not wiſely gone off in time, as doubting ſomewhat by the unuſual Lights in the *Turkiſh* Camps, he muſt unavoidably have loſt all his Men.

Hereupon *Tomombeius* retires to *Caire*, and there with much pains and care fortified all the Gates and Avenues of the City, appointing a particular Commander to every Street, and in every place encouraged the People to the defence of them all; who moſtly, as well as the *Mamalukes*, did all they could to leave no place unfortified, and to provide all things neceſſary for their defence. Now tho there were divers Gates and Avenues leading to the City of *Caire*, whereof there was one broad Street that ran directly from the Eaſt Gate to the Caſtle and middle of the City, yet the reſt were ſo crooked and narrow, that no great Artillery could poſſibly be brought in by them, or Soldiers enter without great danger; and therefore into this eſpecially had *Tomombeius* convey'd his chiefeſt Strength, and at the ſame time planted a ſtrong Body of brave Soldiers in the Caſtle; and in ſhort, provided every thing with the greateſt celerity and exactneſs for the defence of the place, ſo far as the Largeneſs of ſuch a City would admit.

Selymus *attacks* Grand Caire.

Selymus underſtanding all this, with his Army approached *Grand Caire*, and mightily encouraged his Soldiers to attack the place, and deſtroy the ſmall Remains of their Enemies, the conſequence of which would

would be their future Eaſe; and being inriched with great Booty, with which they were much encouraged, they expected nothing but the Signal for the Aſſault. Now when *Selymus* had enter'd by the Gate *Baſuela*, he at one inſtant thruſt in his Horſe at divers places of the great City, but his Janizaries he introduced by the largeſt Street; yet at the very firſt entrance Horſe encounter'd Horſe, and made a bloody Fight in the narrow Streets and Lanes; and the Foot with their Culverins cleared the Streets before them, tho they were valiantly oppoſed at the Barricadoes and Trenches by the *Mamalukes*, between whom there was ſuch a cruel Fight, as was never known in the memory of Man. But here the *Turks* receiv'd great Loſſes, becauſe while they unadviſedly ran on, and that the hindmoſt preſs'd the foremoſt on, they tumbled by heaps into the covert Trenches, and miſerably periſh'd upon the ſharp Stakes there on purpoſe planted for them by the *Mamalukes*: and the Women and Children likewiſe from the tops and windows of the Houſes aſſaulted them all they could; while divers of the *Egyptians* themſelves, who accounted both the *Turks* and Lordly *Mamalukes* their Enemies, ſometimes attacked the one, and then the other, as they ſaw the fortune of the day was like to end. In ſhort, the Lanes and Streets did ſo flow with the Blood of the ſlain, that the Duſt which at firſt roſe very thick was quite laid, and the Air darkned with the Smoke of the Shot; for the Fight had already laſted two whole days, when the *Mamalukes* being weary and few, began to give way. But now finding their All at ſtake, they fought with ſuch renew'd Courage the third day, that they drove the *Turks* before them a great way, and took ſome of their Cannon; and *Selymus* (ſome ſaid) was ſo diſcouraged with the Repulſe, and eſpecially when he ſaw *Jonuſes* Baſſa, now his beſt Commander, ſlain by a Stone from a window before his face, that he commanded the Houſes to be ſet on fire, inſomuch that the *Turks* fought now but very faintly: but news being brought that *Muſtapha* had beat the Enemy on the other ſide of the City, and had got into a fair broad Street, where the *Mamalukes* had left their Horſes ready ſaddled and bridled, that if the worſt ſhould happen, they might retreat thither, and fly; all which he took:

this

1517. this ſo diſcouraged the *Mamalukes*, now beſet on every ſide, that they fled downright; and moſt of them getting over the *Nile* with their brave Sultan *Tomombeius*, fled to the Country of *Segeſta*: and ſo the famous City of *Grand Caire* fell into the hands of the victorious *Selymus* and his *Turks*, who preſently ſent to quench the fire, and publiſh'd a Proclamation, that all the *Mamalukes* that ſurrender'd themſelves within twelve hours ſhould be taken into Mercy; but the falſe *Turk* afterwards baſely falſified his word, by murdering thoſe that came in and ſubmitted.

Caire *taken by* Selymus.

Now the ſame day that *Selymus* took *Caire*, *Gazelles* who had been ſent by *Tomombeius* to *Thebais* to raiſe the *Arabs*, came thither; who finding all was loſt, thought it beſt for him and his Followers to ſubmit themſelves to the Conqueror, who received them very kindly, and not long after ſent *Gazelles* againſt ſome *Arabs* and *Mamalukes* from *Athaſia*, that made Incurſions into the Country about *Caire*, whom he defeated, and took the ſaid place quickly from them. In the mean time *Tomombeius* having in the Country of *Cyrenaica* gathered his diſperſed Troops together, was perſuaded by the *Egyptians*, who had been ſpoiled by the *Turks* at *Caire*, to come in the night and ſurprize that City; but *Selymus* being advertiſed of their Treachery, and the Strength of *Tomombeius* by *Albuconar*, took all manner of precaution for his Security: tho at length conſidering the uncertain Event of War, tho his Arms had been hitherto victorious, he ſent Embaſſadors to *Tomombeius*, promiſing him upon the Faith of a Prince, that if he would ſubmit himſelf, he ſhould repoſſeſs his late Kingdom upon reaſonable Conditions, but if otherwiſe, he muſt never expect any regard had to his Princely Dignity. But the rude *Mamalukes*, out of a Zeal at leaſt in pretence to the Honour of *Tomombeius*, ſlew the Embaſſadors, contrary to the Law of Nations; which incenſed *Selymus* to that degree, that he with all his Power reſolved to march into the Country of *Segeſta* againſt the Sultan, and made a Bridg of Boats over the *Nile* for that purpoſe; which being made known to *Tomombeius* by his Spies, he reſolved once more to try his fortune by a Battel, and therefore by the advice of his beſt Commanders he march'd with 4000 *Mamalukes*, twice as many *Moors* and

and *Arabs*, day and night towards the *Nile*; and according as he had wisely computed his time, and forecast his design, by the time that he arrived at the desired place, the *Asiatick* Horse were come over the Bridg, and the Harbingers and Pages of *Selymus*'s Chamber, who were advanced somewhat farther than the rest, to make choice of a commodious place for pitching *Selymus*'s Tent; who perceiving, by the great Dust they saw, the approach of the Enemy, and *Mustapha* Bassa being advertised thereof, he suddenly raised an Alarm. In the mean time *Tomombeius* came boldly on his Enemy, slew many of them, and put the rest to flight; and all that *Mustapha* could do in that confusion and hurry, signified little or nothing, there being nothing now to be seen but fearful Companies of the *Turks* along the Banks of the River both above and beneath the Bridg, ruefully looking upon the *Nile*, and crying to their Friends on the other side for help, while many others miserably perished in the Waters. In the mean time *Selymus* having sent some of his best Men presently in Boats over the River, came just in time before the *Asiaticks* were ready to give all up. *Canoglis* also, *Selymus*'s Brother-in-law, taking the River with his Horse, to the admiration of all, with a little loss recover'd the opposite Shore. *Tomombeius*, who all this while saw how things went, did all he could to gain the head of the Bridg, that so if possible he might break it, and withal drown the *Turks* upon it. But notwithstanding the *Mamalukes* and their Sultan did wonders to gain it, yet the valiant and cautious *Mustapha*, who knew the consequence of it, being relieved by the Janizaries and *European* Horse, beat them off, as they and the *Moors* and *Arabs* were also beaten by them in their second Attempt, and at length put to flight. Upon which *Selymus* above all things having given orders for securing (if possible) the Person of *Tomombeius*, he was pursued for three days so close into the Territories of the *Secussan* Prince, that he was at last glad to hide himself alone in a foul deep Marsh, and by the Country People soon after delivered up to the *Turks*; who carrying him to *Grand Caire*, he was there by *Selymus*'s order first tortured, to force him to discover the great Treasure of *Campson* his Predecessor, and then in Rags with his hands tied behind,

Tomombeius *distresseth the* Turks *in passing the* Nile.

Mamalukes *put to flight.*

Tomombeius *taken and slain.*

1517. behind, ſet upon a foul lean Camel, and in deriſion carried thro the Streets of the City; after which he was openly ſtrangled at the Gate of *Baſuela*, *April* 13. 1517. all which he bore with the utmoſt Conſtancy: and the *Egyptians* now too late began to bewail the misfortune of their Prince, and ſo great a Man, and their own uncertain ſtate under their new Maſters and Conquerors, who put divers of the Princes of the *Mamalukes* to death, with ſome others alſo of the common ſort.

All Egypt *ſubmits to* Selymus.

Selymus having proceeded thus far, preſently divided his Forces, and ſent them to take in the reſt of the Cities and Provinces of *Egypt*. *Alexandria* and *Damiata* quickly ſubmitted, and indeed there was no place between the *Nile* and the Frontiers of *Judea* and *Arabia*, that yielded not in a ſhort time to the Power of *Selymus*: The Kings alſo of *Africa* bordering upon *Cyrenaica*, Tributaries and Confederates of the *Egyptian* Sultans, ſent their Embaſſadors with Preſents to him; ſo that there remained now none to be ſubdued but the wild *Arabs* (a People never to be tamed) and eſpecially thoſe of *Africa*, where they were exceeding numerous, but a divided wandring ſort of People, like the *Tartarian* Hoords: Wherefore *Selymus* by fit Inſtruments having enticed the principal Men and chief Commanders amongſt them to come to *Caire*, he honourably entertain'd and rewarded them, which brought others in daily who ſubmitted themſelves to him, whilſt the reſt who refuſed were cunningly ſurprized and rewarded for their Obſtinacy.

About the ſame time *Selymus* ſent ſome Troops of Horſe to *Suezzia*, antiently *Arſinoe*, a Port on the Red-Sea about three days Journy from *Caire*, where Sultan *Campſon* had in four years time built a ſtrong Fleet againſt the *Portugueſe*, who by their Conqueſts in *India* had taken away all the rich Trade, to the prejudice of the Kings of *Egypt*. Now this Fleet, which was commanded by *Amyraſes* and *Rayſalomon*, as they lay at *Gidda* the Port to *Meccha*, and heard of *Campſon*'s Death, and *Selymus* coming into *Egypt*, they mutinied amongſt themſelves; and *Amyraſes*, who favoured *Tomombeius*, was forced to fly to *Meccha*: but being ſome time after delivered up to *Rayſalomon*, he threw him over board, and giving the Soldiers two months Pay,

Pay, and causing them to swear Allegiance to *Selymus*, he shortly after sailed back to *Suezzia*, from whence he went directly to *Selymus* at *Caire*, where he had a kind Reception.

Now *Egypt* with all its Provinces being brought under *Selymus*'s Subjection, he sailed in the beginning of *July* down to *Alexandria*, to view his Fleet sent thither by *Pyrrhus* and his Son *Solyman* from *Constantinople*, and caused 500 of the best Families to remove from thence to *Constantinople*, besides the Treasure of the Country which he put on board also; and then returning to *Caire*, he took great pleasure to see the flowing of the River *Nile*, the nature of which he very narrowly inquired into. After which he returned into *Syria*, when he had constituted that Arch-Traitor *Cayerbeius* his Lieutenant over all *Egypt*, now reduced into the form of a Province, which Preferment of his, *Jonuses* Bassa took very ill, as thinking himself much more worthy of it, who indeed by his Valour and Liberality was grown very popular, to the no good liking of *Selymus*, who always envied great Virtues, and to whom *Jonuses* was by malicious Suggestions frequently traduced: so that he wanted nothing now but the appearance of some Crime to cut him off. Now a few days before it was certainly known that *Selymus* was to depart for *Syria*, the Soldiers in Garison at *Caire*, considering the great distance of the Place and other difficult Circumstances, requested the Emperor to augment their Pay; which he, who was ever liberal to his military Men, readily condescending to, he commanded *Jonuses* Bassa to take care of it, and enter it into his Accounts; but he, carried headlong with Discontent, gave the Treasurers and Pay-masters no orders about it, on purpose that he might bring the disappointed Soldiery to entertain an ill opinion of *Cayerbeius* as the Author of their Wrong, and so making him very uneasy in his Government, it might be an inducement to *Selymus* to place another in his room: But *Jonuses* was clearly mistaken in his mark; for the Pay-day being come and no Mony, the Soldiers began to insult the Treasurers and Pay-masters, and openly to rail at *Cayerbeius* himself, who after they had all excused themselves as well as they could, and seemed to divert the Soldiers enquiry another way,

Cayerbeius *made Governour of* Egypt.

1517. ſent Meſſengers forthwith to *Selymus* about the matter, whom they overtook with his Army a little from *Lariſſa* in *Judea*, and told him the whole matter; at which he was ſo incenſed, that he immediately ordered *Jonuſes* Baſſa to be brought into his preſence, to know the reaſon of that Procedure: who as he was about to excuſe the matter as well as he could, by ſaying he had no ill intention in it, that the Soldiers had been ſufficiently enrich'd already by the Spoils of *Egypt*, that his Majeſty's Coffers were empty, and the like, before he could hear him thro, and for fear leſt if the Baſſa ſhould once come to touch upon his former Services and Merit, he might divert his Diſpleaſure by it, order'd him immediately in his own ſight to be executed, as an Example of Diſobedience to his Sovereign's Command, and a juſt Reward of his evil Deſigns by it, as well as of his former Cruelty to the fair and beautiful *Manto*, a *Greek* Lady, whom after the death of her Husband in the Wars he took Priſoner, and made his Wife; but growing extremely tho unjuſtly jealous of her in time, and therefore endeavouring to make her eſcape to her native Country, he diſcovered her Correſpondence to that end, and without any more ado ſlew her with his Dagger.

Jonuſes Baſſa put to death, and why.

1518. Now *Selymus* all the following Winter ſtaid with his Army in *Syria*, but underſtanding upon the approach of the Spring that divers Chriſtian Princes at the inſtigation of Pope *Leo* X. were entered into Conſultations about making War upon him, he leaving *Gazelles* to be his Lieutenant in *Syria*, haſtened to *Conſtantinople*; where he cauſed great warlike Preparations to be made, but eſpecially by Sea, whereby it was thought he had a deſign upon *Rhodes*, or ſome part of *Italy*: But in the height of this, and while he was ſolacing himſelf with viſiting the Cities of *Greece* and *Thrace*, and with the pleaſant Country about *Adrianople*, he was ſtruck with a Cancer in the Reins, which ſo corrupted his Body by degrees, that he became loathſom and odious both to himſelf and others. As he continued in this languiſhing ſtate, leaning his Head on the Lap of *Pyrrhus* the Baſſa, whom he loved above all the reſt, he ſaid, *O* Pyrrhus, *I ſee I muſt ſhortly die without remedy.* Whereupon the Baſſa taking occaſion

1519.

to

to tell him that he would do well to build an Hoſpital for the relief of the Poor, with the great Wealth taken from the *Perſian* Merchants in divers parts of his Empire: The Emperor anſwered, *Wouldſt thou have me*, Pyrrhus, *beſtow other mens Goods, injuriouſly taken from them, on Works of Charity for my own Vain-glory and Praiſe? That I'll never do; nay, rather ſee they be again reſtored to the right Owners.* Which was forthwith done accordingly. After which being upon the Road to *Adrianople*, whither he had ſent *Pyrrhus* and *Achmetes* before to provide for the ſolemnizing of their Great Feaſt called *Bairam* or Eaſter, with a deſign to come leiſurely thither himſelf, before he could reach that City he breathed his laſt Breath in the Month of *September* 1520. near the City of *Chiurli*, in the ſelf-ſame place where he had moſt unnaturally attacked his aged Father *Bajazet*, with a deſign to have killed him, had not the fortune of the old Emperor prevailed at that time. This was the End of the Great *Selymus*, after he had lived 46 years, and of them reigned eight. A little before his Death he recommended his Son *Solyman* to *Pyrrhus* Baſſa, with a ſtrict charge, that he ſhould leave the *Perſians*, and turn his Arms againſt the Chriſtians; and the more to excite him to the effuſion of Blood, he left him the lively Repreſentation of himſelf hanging at his Bed-ſide, with divers bloody Precepts, breathing forth nothing but a cruel and unmerciful Diſpoſition.

1520. Selymus's *Death.*

Christian Princes, Co-temporaries with *Selymus* I.			A.D.	R.
Emperors of *Germany*.		*Maximilian* I.	1492.	25.
		Charles V.	1509.	39.
Kings	Of *England*.	*Henry* VIII.	1509.	38.
	Of *France*.	*Lewis* XII.	1497.	17.
		Francis I.	1514.	32.
	Of *Scotland*.	*James* IV.	1489.	25.
		James V.	1513.	32.
Popes of *Rome*.		*Julius* II.	1503.	9.
		Leo X.	1513.	8.

CHAP.

CHAP. II.

The Life of Solyman *the First, ſirnamed the Magnificent, Emperor of the* Turks.

FERHATES, the only Baſſa then with *Selymus*, wiſely concealing his Death for fear of the tumultuous *Janizaries*, till he had by Poſt advertiſed *Solyman*, then lying at *Magneſia*, of it; the young Prince, who was very apprehenſive of his Father's cruel Diſpoſition, as having once formerly deſigned to have poiſoned him, and finding the Baſſa's Letter ſeconded by none from the reſt, he diſmiſt the Meſſenger, as one to whom he gave little or no credit: which the Baſſa no ſooner underſtood, but he ſent to *Pyrrhus* and *Muſtapha* then at *Adrianople*, to repair forthwith to Court, whom upon their arrival he acquainted with the Emperor's Death. Whereupon they jointly ſent the news to *Solyman*, who then in a few days came to *Scutari*, where he was met by the Aga of the *Janizaries*, and by him in a Gally was tranſported to *Conſtantinople*; where being received at his landing by the Janizaries, who yet knew nothing of *Selymus*'s Death, the Aga ſaid to them with a loud Voice, *Behold your Emperor!* Which they anſwered with great Acclamations, *Long live the Great Emperor* Solyman. And ſo in great triumph he was placed on his Father's Throne, being the very ſame year wherein *Charles* the Fifth was elected Emperor of *Germany*; ſoon after which he beſtowed a great Largeſs upon, and ſomewhat advanced the Pay of the Janizaries, to their wonderful contentment. Solyman *hardly perſuaded of his Father's death.* 1520.

Solyman was about 20 years old when he began to reign, and was at firſt ſuppoſed to have been of a mild and peaceable diſpoſition; and ſo his neighbouring Princes conceived better hopes of him than of *Selymus*, tho they found themſelves much miſtaken. Now the firſt that felt *Solyman*'s heavy Hand was *Gazelles* Governour of *Syria*, who thinking himſelf now diſcharged of his Allegiance, and deſirous to reſtore the Kingdom of the *Mamalukes*, gathered as many of them, as alſo of the

1520. wild *Arabs* together as he could, and brake forth into open Rebellion; but failing in his purpose of drawing *Cayerbeius* Governour of *Caire* to make himself Sultan of *Egypt*, he was some time after overthrown at *Damascus* by *Ferhates* Bassa, after a most cruel Fight of six hours, where himself with most of his men were slain, and *Syria* quickly reduced under *Solyman*'s Obedience.

1521. Next year *Solyman*, at the persuasion of old *Pyrrhus* Bassa, resolved to besiege the famous City of *Belgrade*; to which end he advanced with his Army as far as *Sophia*, before the *Hungarians* were aware of him: For King *Lewis* was a slothful secure Prince, and his People grown of a nature much conformable to him. So that *Solyman* without any opposition invested the Place, and in a short time, what with his Batteries and Mines, became Master of it, with but very little loss, on the 20th of *August* in the Year 1521. but tho *Pyrrhus* advised *Solyman* to this Siege, yet he was against his undertaking that of *Rhodes*, wherein he apprehended too many difficulties to be surmounted; but *Mustapha*, who was next to him in Office and Reputation, extolled the Power and Fortune of *Solyman*, and seemed to make no doubt of the good success of such a War, presumptuously affirming, that upon the first landing of *Solyman*'s Great Army, the *Rhodians* would presently give up themselves and their City into his hands. But notwithstanding this and his own Ambition, *Solyman* was desirous first to know the opinion of *Cortug-Ogli*, a famous Pirate, and a Person of great Experience in Maritime Affairs, concerning such an Expedition; who giving him all due incouragement to prosecute it, and being continually instigated thereunto by *Mustapha*, he resolved to go against *Rhodes* in Person: but being willing first to make a trial of the Courage and Temper of the Grand Master *Philip Villerius*, a *Frenchman*, lately chosen into that Office, and arrived from *France* at *Rhodes*, he sent him a short Letter, wherein he arrogantly intituled himself, *Solyman*, by the Grace of God, King of Kings, Lord of Lords, greatest Emperor of *Constantinople* and *Trapezond*, most mighty King of *Persia*, *Arabia*, *Syria*, and *Egypt*, Lord of *Asia* and *Europe*, Prince of *Meccha* and *Aleppo*, Ruler of *Jerusalem*, and Master of the whole Sea; to the Reverend Father *Philip Villerius Siladamus* Grand Master of *Rhodes*,

Belgrade *taken by the* Turks.

Solyman *writes to the Grand Master.*

Rhodes, and Legate of *Aſia*. Beſides which there was nothing elſe in it, ſave a cold Compliment, and his communicating to the Grand Maſter his taking of *Belgrade*. The Grand Maſter anſwered him accordingly, thanked him for his Profeſſions of Friendſhip to him; but complained of his Servant *Cortug-Ogli*'s endeavouring to ſeize him in his late Paſſage from *France* to *Rhodes*, and ſome Merchant Ships, wherein he yet failed: But ſays never a word by way of congratulating him upon his Succeſs in the taking of *Belgrade*. Now *Solyman* perceiving by the Anſwer, that he was paid in his own Coin, and that he ſhould not ſo eaſily maſter *Rhodes* as he had done *Belgrade*, yet being intent upon his Deſign, he communicated the ſame at large to his chief Commanders, who all unanimouſly approv'd of it; which *Pyrrhus* the eldeſt Baſſa, and who had before diſſuaded *Solyman* from the War, obſerving, after he had magnified the Wiſdom and Virtues of their young Emperor, and how happy they were under him, he adviſed him by Gifts, Promiſes, and all other ways, to corrupt if poſſible the chief Citizens of *Rhodes*, ſo as to penetrate into their Counſels and Deſigns: to effect which, he ſaid, that he as a man indifferent and deſirous of Peace, would by Meſſengers and Letters induce the Grand Maſter to ſend an honourable Embaſſy to their Emperor; which if once done, he would take care of the reſt himſelf.

The Grand Maſter's Anſwer.

Solyman mightily pleas'd with this advice, bid him purſue it, and in the mean time made vaſt Preparations both by Sea and Land, which could not be kept ſo ſecret, but that they had news of it at *Rhodes* on the fourth of *February*; which made the Grand Maſter ſend one *Epidarius*, who could ſpeak the *Turkiſh* Language perfectly well, as his Spy to *Conſtantinople*, who gave him a particular account of the Preparations, but that there was no certainty whether they were deſigned againſt *Italy*, *Rhodes*, *Cyprus* or *Corcyra*. However, for fear of the worſt, the Grand Maſter uſed all poſſible diligence to get together ſtore of Proviſion, Armour, Weapons, Shot, Powder, and all other Neceſſaries; and the Walls of the City and *Auvergne* Fort were now carried on with great application under the direction of *Baſil*, Engineer to the Emperor *Charles* V. In the mean time a Meſſenger came from *Conſtantinople* from

Pyrrhus

1521. Solyman *and* Pyrrhus *write again.*

Pyrrhus the old crafty Baſſa, with Letters both from *Solyman* and himſelf to him; in the firſt whereof the Emperor acquaints him again with the ſucceſs of his Arms at *Belgrade*, and aſſures him of his Reſolution to communicate to him an account of the farther ſucceſs of his Arms: but the Baſſa in the other inſinuated, that he would not introduce the Meſſenger that brought the Grand Maſter's Letter to *Conſtantinople*, into the Emperor's preſence, becauſe of the meanneſs of his Quality; but if he would from henceforth ſend more honourable and diſcreet Perſons thither, he might aſſure himſelf he ſhould have no cauſe to repent of it, or of his Counſel.

These Letters being openly read, diſtracted the minds of the People very much, ſome being for following the Advice of *Pyrrhus*; and their Perſuaſions reached ſo far, that one of the Knights, *Raymond March* a *Spaniard*, then Muſter-Maſter, and an eloquent Perſon, skilled alſo in the *Turkiſh* Language, was appointed to have been ſent Embaſſador to the Emperor; but others oppoſed this Reſolution with a great deal of Vigour: and the Over-curioſity of *Pyrrhus*'s Meſſenger in enquiring after the State and Situation of the Place, with the Number and Strength of the Order, confirmed them the more that there was ſome deep Deſign at the bottom of it. So that at laſt he was ſent back with a private Soldier, and the Grand-Maſter's Anſwer both to the Sultan and *Pyrrhus*: the firſt of whom he adviſes not to deceive himſelf with the aſſurance of another Victory, ſince mens expectations were never deceived in any thing more than War; and for the other, tho he ſaid he did not deſpiſe his Counſel, yet he would not follow it; but when he had called his Men home from ſpoiling the Emperor's Countries and Ports by way of repriſal for the Injuries the *Turkiſh* Pirates had done his Subjects, he would ſend Embaſſadors to his Maſter, provided he ſent him firſt a ſafe Conduct for them. But theſe Letters were never delivered; for as ſoon as the Meſſenger was come over to the Continent, he poſted forthwith to *Conſtantinople*, and left the Chriſtian Soldier to return to *Rhodes* again. In the mean while the Grand Maſter was advertiſed from *Naxos* and other Places, that the *Turkiſh* Fleet was ready to put to Sea at the firſt appearance of the New-Moon; and about the

The Grand Maſter's Anſwers.

the ſame time Fires were made upon the Continent, as a ſignal to the *Rhodians*, that the *Turks* wanted to come to a parley with them. The Grand Maſter ſent one *James Xaycus* Paymaſter of the Gallies to them, who finding the *Turks* Merchants upon the Shore, with their Goods ready, as their Cuſtom was, to barter with the *Rhodians*, when they got him once in their power, they immediately ſeized and conveyed him to *Conſtantinople*, where by cruel Torments he was forced to confeſs whatever his Enemies could deſire. The *Rhodians* on the other hand awakened herewith, and finding upon examination that the Perſon whom the *Turks* gave in hoſtage for him, was a plain Country Fellow, whom they had on purpoſe dreſt to deceive them, they underſtood by his ſimple and frank Anſwers, that the *Turks* were making great Preparations for Sea upon the Coaſts of *Lycia* and *Caria*, and were ſecuring their Frontiers againſt the *Perſians*, on purpoſe to amuſe the *Rhodians*. But the Grand Maſter well perceiving *Solyman*'s Artifice, cauſed a Ceſſation from all manner of Buſineſs to be proclaimed, till all things neceſſary were accompliſhed for the defence of the City; at which time a general Muſter being made, there were found about 5000 Men able to bear Arms, among whom were 600 Knights of the Order, and 500 *Candiots*, all whom the Grand Maſter encouraged by comfortable words to ſtand ſtoutly in their own defence; while *Clement* Biſhop of the *Greeks*, and a Man in great Reputation among them, earneſtly endeavoured to perſuade his Countrymen in that common Danger, with heart and hand to unite with the *Latins* for the defence of the Place, to which he brought them all to agree as one Man.

Soon after the *Turks*, by a Fire made in the night upon the Continent, made a ſignal of Parley with the *Rhodians*, who preſently ſent a Gally and a Long boat to ſee what the matter was; but the Captain refuſing to ſend any one aſhore, according to the *Turks* deſire, a *Turk* ſaid, *What art thou afraid of* Xaycus's *Fortune?* To whom the Captain made anſwer, Xaycus, *whom you have taken contrary to your Faith, troubles me not, neither am I afraid of you, whom I truſt not; but if you have any thing to ſay, let me hear it, or elſe get you farther off, otherwiſe I'll ſpeak to you by the mouth of my Cannon.*

1521. *Cannon.* Then one of the *Turks* laying a Letter upon a Stone on the Water-ſide, ſaid, what they had to communicate was contain'd therein, and ſo rid away: and indeed the ſame was a menacing Letter from *Soly-man*, requiring them forthwith to give up *Rhodes* to him, with promiſes of their Religion and Liberty; or elſe threatning no leſs than an utter Deſolation to them. Now the ſame day that this Letter came to *Rhodes*, which was *June* 14*th*, one of the *Turkiſh* Sea-Commanders, with 30 Gallies, as fore-runners of the *Turkiſh* Fleet, came to *Chios*, then under the Dominion of the *Rhodians*, who while they were burning and deſtroying the Fruits of the ground and Country-Villages round about, were ſet upon by the valiant Governor *Prejanes*, and many of them ſlain; neither would any of them have been able to eſcape, had not the Gallies lain near the ſhore to take them in.

The Rhodians *deſtroy their Suburbs.*

In the mean time the *Rhodians*, now aſſured of the *Turks* deſigns, deſtroy'd their Suburbs and Houſes of Pleaſure, the Grand Maſter giving the firſt Example thereof himſelf; which together with the miſerable multitude of the common People now coming in with what Proviſion they could, according to the Grand Maſter's Orders, followed with great numbers of Women and Children with weeping Eyes, diſhevelled Hair, torn Faces, wrung Hands, and lifted up Eyes, made a moſt ſorrowful Spectacle. They were indeed divided in their opinions about fighting the fore-mentioned twenty Gallies, who came daily half Seas over between *Lycia* and *Rhodes* to brave them; the Chancellor and ſome others being for it, while the graver part of the Council thought it not now a proper time to expoſe any part of their Forces, which they might afterwards want for the defence of the City. Hereupon the Commander landing ſome Men at *Villanova*, began to burn the Corn; but for all this the provident Grand-Maſter countermanded ſome Troops of Horſe that were ſent out to skirmiſh with them, and did all other things both in reſpect to his Place and Acts of Devotion, that could be expected from him.

Turkiſh *Fleet appears before* Rhodes.

June 26. Early in the Morning the *Turkiſh* Fleet was deſcry'd from the Tower on St. *Stephen*'s Hill, which ſtruck a great Conſternation in the People; who after they had perform'd their Devotions, ſhut up the

the Gates, and then in ſhoals went upon the Walls to gaze at the Enemy; who, according to report, amounted to 200 Sail, over whom the Admiral of *Calipolis* was Commander in chief, whoſe Vice-Admiral with a great Squadron of Gallies bore directly towards the mouth of the Haven, but ſeeing himſelf like to be ſunk from the Guns of the Bulwark on the left ſide, he was glad to bear farther off: and ſo the whole Fleet paſſed on to the Promontory called *Bo*, about three Miles diſtant from the City Eaſtward; but the Harbour being too ſmall, many of the Gallies were forced to ride out at Sea, and were often endangered from the Shot of the City. Now while the *Turks* were landing and making other neceſſary Preparations, the *Rhodians* ſunk ſeveral deep Sounds in many parts of the City near the Walls to diſcover the Enemies Mines, and fortified their Bulwarks with great Rampiers; and about the ſame time the Grand-Maſter ſent to *Spain*, *Rome* and *France*, for aſſiſtance to little purpoſe, becauſe of the Diſtractions then amongſt themſelves: However the brave *Prejanes* Governour of *Chios* made a ſhift to get to *Rhodes*, as did alſo *Gabriel Martining* a famous Engineer out of *Candia*, by whoſe Skill five and fifty Mines of the *Turks* during the Siege were all countermined.

Rhodes *deſcribed.*

The City of *Rhodes* is ſituated on plain ground on every ſide, to be attack'd only Northward, defended with a goodly Haven, from whence it lies open all Weſtward; betwixt it and the Hills round it, lies a ſtony Plain, not very broad, but of a great length; which Hills were full of Springs, and Orchards of Olive, Fig and Vine-Trees; the City was ſurrounded with a very ſtrong double Wall, and deep Ditches, beſides 13 ſtately Towers, with five mighty Bulwarks, and divers fair Gates. The *French* were poſted at the *French* Tower under the Command of *John Abbin*, a Knight of the Order; from thence to St. *George*'s Gate lay the *Germans*; in the third ſtation were the *French Auvergnoins* with the *Spaniards*, becauſe the Ditches there were neither ſo deep nor broad as elſewhere; in the fifth place ſtood the *Engliſh*, commanded by the Grand-Maſter himſelf; next to them the *Narboneſe*, and laſtly the *Italians*. The place had not been long inveſted, but the Town was like to have been

1521. been fired by the Treachery of a *Turkish* Woman Slave, who being timely discovered, she pay'd for it with her Death. The *Turks* having possest themselves of a Hill directly over against the *English* Station, began from thence to shoot Cannon-ball into the City; and then fell to Mining of Trenches, wherein their Pioneers, whereof they had 50000, and those that guarded them, were so molested in their Works by the Sallies of the Garison, that vast numbers of them were slain, so that they were afterwards forced to work upon their Mounts by night, and to turn their Artillery upon the place from whence the *Rhodians* sallied. Among others who in the beginning of the Siege trapanned the *Turks*, were some Seamen, who being well skilled in the *Turkish* Language, with the Grand-Master's leave, went in a small Boat out of the Harbour by Night, laden with Apples, Plumbs, *&c.* and coasting to the Passage between the Island and main Land, made as if they were *Turks* come ashore from the Continent to dispose of their Commodities; and being ready to depart at the request of some *Turkish* Soldiers, who did not like the Siege, they took as many of them on board as they knew they could master, and were contrary to their Expectations brought Prisoners to *Rhodes*, where from the top of St. *John*'s Tower they discovered to *Prejanes* the situation, and whatever else they knew concerning the *Turkish* Camp, and particularly that the Soldiers were generally discontented and weary of the Siege: which indeed upon *Pyrrhus* Bassa's request brought *Solyman* from *Constantinople* to the Camp on the 28*th* of *August*, where finding the Bassa's account true, he was mightly incensed; but drawing his Army disarm'd into close Order, and surrounding them with 15000 brave Musqueteers he had brought along with him, he sat silently for a while on his Throne, but then reprimanded their Cowardise in very severe Terms, concluding that he would either spend his days or die there; and if he did otherwise, wished his own Head, his Fleet, Army and Empire might be for ever accursed. But being desirous to be accounted rather gentle than severe to his Soldiers, he pardoned them all that was past, and swore them anew: then from 12 great Mortars he began to throw great Stones into the City; afterwards having raised a Battery

Turks *deceived by some Christian Seamen.*

Rhodes *attacked several times without success.*

Battery of 40 large Cannon, whereof 12 were Basilisks, he continually battered the Walls with them; but tho he could do no great good with a Battery he planted against St. *Nicholas* Tower, where the *Turks* were greatly annoy'd by the Cannon of the City, yet *Pyrrhus*, notwithstanding the Christians had countermined 32 of the Mines in his quarter, upon the 4th of *September* blew up the *English* Bulwark, where divers of the *English* perished; tho the *Turks* attempting to enter presently, were valiantly repulsed by the Grand-Master and his Followers: But *Mustapha* Bassa coming on with fresh Supplies, renew'd a most terrible Fight; however not only the Men, but the very Women in the Town behaved themselves so bravely, that the *Turks* were forced to retreat with the loss of 2000 Men, while the Christians on their part, besides a few others, had fifty brave Knights of the Order there slain. Neither had the *Turks* any better success in the second Assault, which lasted for three hours, and wherein they lost as many Men as before, and three great Nobles, for which *Mustapha* began to grow in contempt with *Solyman*; while *Pyrrhus* continued with 17 great Cannon to batter the Mount near the *Italian* Bulwark, and *Cassius* to undermine the *French* Bulwark, tho they were still countermined by the Besieged, who also beat *Pyrrhus* from the said Mount, which he had taken.

Mustapha on the other hand much concerned at his Disgrace, resolved upon a third Assault in concert with *Achimetes* a great Commander, who was at the same time to attack the *Spanish* Bulwark; but notwithstanding all his Fury, the loss of many brave *Englishmen* among the Besieged, and the sore wounding of *Prejanes*, all that *Mustapha* could do could not carry it: neither had *Achimetes* any better success, for tho he won the top of the Walls, and pitch'd the *Turkish* Colours on them, yet he was quickly beaten out again. However the *Turks*, *Septemb.* 23. having by their Mines and Battery against the *Auvergne* Bulwark at last made a fair and large Breach in the Walls, *Solyman* after he had for some time walked up and down melancholy in his Tent, sent for his chief Commanders, and declared to them his intentions concerning another Assault, which they presently communicated to their Soldiers,

1521. Soldiers, for whose incouragement Proclamation was made thro the Camp, that they should be rewarded with the Plunder of the City: but it happening the same night, that a poor Christian Slave privately advertising the Sentinel upon the Walls of the general Assault to be made next day, the Grand-Master presently gave his Knights notice of it, and encouraged them all he could to sustain the Enemies Attacks; who (he said) were not forward to fight themselves, but as they were forced to it by the Tyrant that commanded over them. He had hardly done speaking to them, when the *Turks* with horrible Cries came on and attack'd the City in five several places with 10000 Men at each Assault; but the Besieg'd of all Ages, Sexes, and Conditions, made great havock amongst the *Turks*, with all manner of destructive Instruments from the Walls, while the Grand-Master after having taken all necessary care of the *Italian* Quarter, much distressed by *Pyrrhus*, went to that of the *English* hard put to it by *Mustapha*: but while he was there, came a sudden cry that the *Spanish* Bulwark was lost, for some *Turks* in the beginning of the Assault having, to avoid the Shot, hid themselves at the foot of the Bulwark amongst the Rubbish, others under *Achmetes* briskly charged the *Spaniards* on the right of the Bulwark, which drew the *Spaniards* at the Bulwark to their Friends defence; which the hidden *Turks* observing, they presently mounted the Bulwark, and quickly became Masters of it: but they were scarce warm there, when the Grand-Master with a Party of choice Men resolutely scaled it again; while *Hugh Capon* and *Menotius*, both Knights of the Order, with a Company of *Candiots*, brake into the Bulwark by the Gate, which the *Turks* had not yet bolted, and quickly recovered the Bulwark, after it had been two hours in the possession of the Enemy. This done, the *Turks* in short were every where put to the worst with a great slaughter; so that *Solyman*, who observ'd all from a high station, sounded a Retreat, after an Assault of six hours, and the loss of 20000 Men: but he was so enraged thereat, that he commanded *Mustapha* the great Bassa to be forthwith put to death; and when *Pyrrhus* came to intercede for him, he past the like Sentence on him also: which being observed by the rest of the Counsellors, they prostrating themselves before him

The Spanish *Bulwark taken by the* Turks.

Recovered.

him, and saying that the Enemies Ground had already drunk up too much of the *Turkish* Blood, and was not to be farther moistned with the Blood of two such noble Personages and worthy Counsellors, he changed his Mind and pardoned them. However his Admiral, because he could not hinder Relief from the Town, did not fare so well; for tho, by the mediation of *Achmetes*, he escaped Death, yet he was removed and whipped as a Slave on board the Admiral Galley.

Now *Solyman* being exceedingly grieved at the Repulses and Losses he had sustained, would have raised the Siege, but that *Abraham*, his Minion, persuaded him to continue it; as a Testimony whereof *Solyman* began to build a stately Castle on the top of Mount *Philermus* in the sight of the City, during which time divers Letters tied to Arrows were shot from the *Turkish* Camp into the Town, wherein many of *Solyman*'s secret Counsels were discovered, and the Revolt of a great Man promised, supposed to be no other than *Mustapha*; but he being soon after made Governour of *Egypt*, instead of *Cayerbeius* deceased, they received no more Letters into the City. It was now the beginning of *October*, when Winter as well as Winter-weather approaching, it incommoded his Army so much by Land, as well as Fleet by Sea, that he began to be at his wits end: but *Achmetes*, one of his valiant Commanders, having promised him, if he would continue the Siege, to open him a way, in a short time, into the City; he, in confidence thereof, did all he could to encourage his fainting Soldiers, and intimated their Labours would quickly be at an end, by a secret Design contrived for mastering of the City.

Solyman encouraged to continue the Siege.

Achmetes, Author of his great Expectations, never left attacking the *Vaumures* of the *Auvergne* Quarter, till he had made himself master of it; when presently he raised a strong Pent-house against the Town-wall, and so fell to the undermining of it, which struck a great Damp upon the Spirits of the *Rhodians*, who yet destroy'd many of the *Turks* at their work: but they at length prevailing by numbers, beat down the Wall, and the Besieged had no better shift than to labour night and day to raise a new one instead of it. Hereupon *Solyman* incouraged his Soldiers with the promise

1522. of all the Booty, and prepared for one general Aſſault more. The day being come, the *Turks* with flying Colours and great Shouts, haſtned towards the Breach; and being come to St. *Ambroſe* Gate, laid down a great many of their Colours, trimmed with Garlands, in token of Victory, while the *Turkiſh* Fleet made a ſhew as if they would attack the City from the Sea-ward; but for all this the *Rhodians* who had placed all their Hopes in their Arms, came undauntedly on to the defence of the Walls, reſolving rather upon Death than Captivity, the Thoughts whereof were intolerable to them: and while their Women with ſad Lamentations and Prayers in the Churches, craved the Divine Help in that their great Diſtreſs, they ſo very gallantly reſiſted *Achmetes*'s fierce Attacks upon the Breach, that the *Turks* at laſt by their invincible Courage were forced ſhamefully to retreat, and ſhouted at in deriſion by them: which the Infidels ſtomaching from a handful of Men, returned again to the Breach with greater Fury than before; but the Chriſtians made ſuch a ſlaughter of them, that they loſt here 5000 Men, and the reſt retreated to their Camp. Now after this Aſſault, which was on the laſt day of *November*, the *Turks* fell to the making of ſeveral large Trenches thro the midſt of the Ruins of the Walls, in order to get into the City, and to overthrow the new-made and other Barricadoes of the Beſieged, with Mattocks and Pickaxes, and at the ſame time continually alarmed and ſkirmiſhed with the *Rhodians*; and indeed they made ſuch Progreſs in their work, that in a ſhort time they obliged the Beſieged to pull down ſeveral Houſes to make new Fortifications, and to leſſen their City by new Trenches, ſo that in a little while they were brought to that Extremity, that they did not know well which Place to fortify firſt, the Enemy was now crept ſo far within them, for they had gain'd almoſt 200 Paces in breadth, and 150 in length into the City.

Turks Loſs in an Aſſault.

Turks advance into the City.

Parly offered to the Beſieged.

But *Solyman*, tho he was now aſſured of the Victory, at the perſuaſion of *Achmetes* and *Caſſius*, ſent *Hieronimus Monelia*, a *Genoeſe*, to parly with the Enemy, who being ordered privately to deliver his Meſſage to *Matthias de Via*, his Country-man and Citizen of *Rhodes*; *Francis Farnovius* a moſt valiant Knight of the

the Order, but a very cholerick Man, was ſo incenſed at a private Conference with the Enemy, that he levelled his Piece at the Meſſenger, and ordered him forthwith to depart. But ſoon after the Grand Maſter, at the preſſing Sollicitation of the People, was forced to ſend Embaſſadors to *Solyman*, to know for what end he had ſent to require a Parly; who in a great heat, as if he had known nothing of the matter, ſaid there was no ſuch thing, and ſent them away with a Letter to the Grand Maſter and Citizens, adviſing them to make trial of his Clemency, with a Promiſe of Life, Eſtate and Liberty to them, if they now accepted of it. When this Letter was read before the Knights and principal Citizens, and the Grand Maſter's opinion demanded concerning it, he ſaid he was for their fighting of it out to the laſt Man, and thereby defend their Faith, and their own and Anceſtors Nobility, and would have it never be ſaid of them, that their Honour died but with themſelves. This Anſwer made many of them ſilently look with heavy Countenances and melancholy Geſtures, a manifeſt Indication of the Sorrow of their Hearts; when at length a *Greek* Prieſt, with Tears running down his face, in a notable Speech endeavoured to perſuade them to prevent the final Deſtruction of ſo many innocent People, which muſt unavoidably follow, unleſs they accepted of the Terms now offered them, which under their Circumſtances was prudence to do. But tho moſt of them were of the Prieſt's opinion, yet there were ſome, who out of a Jealouſy of the *Turkiſh* Faith, would have fought it out to the laſt Man; among whom a bold Soldier ſtanding up, after he had made an Apology for his Freedom, ſaid, *That tho the Enemy was got ſo much within their City, yet they had been five Months a doing it, and were obſtructed in their farther Progreſs by them, and might be ſtill if they would mind it; he wiſhed himſelf dead rather than to ſee that famous City, the antient Bulwark of the Chriſtian Religion, delivered up to ſuperſtitious* Mahometans, *who were a faithleſs People, witneſs* Conſtantinople, Eubœa, Modon, *and the* Mamalukes *of* Grand Caire, *and the Officers of* Belgrade: *He perſuaded them therefore by no means to yield, but if, by the Divine Providence, they ſhould be reduced to ſo much neceſſity, by an honourable Death under*

Embaſſy to Solyman, *and his Anſwer.*

Altercations about ſurrendring the City.

1522. *under the Christian Colours, to avoid the Torments and Reproaches which their cruel Enemies hoped to inflict upon them, which would redound to their eternal Fame and Glory.* But an antient *Greek*, who was a Man of Reputation and Discretion among the People, interrupting this Spark, and exploding him for his Cowardice and Folly, used all the Arguments he could to persuade them that *Solyman* was real in his Conditions of Surrendry; and that his Actions at *Caire*, and his Ancestors elsewhere, were misrepresented; that they themselves were uncapable of any farther Resistance and Defence, and therefore the most advisable way was to yield.

The Grand Master, not pleased with this Discourse, commanded every Man to his Post, and gave no other Answer, but that he would be careful of all their Welfare: but finding by *Prejanes* next morning, that the Enemy had so shaken and battered their Works, that the City could not possibly be long defended, it was agreed by a general Consent, it should be given up; and in the mean time, a Truce being agreed on for four days, when the *Turks* in great numbers came near the Walls and Rampiers, *Farnovius* caused a whole Tyre of Cannon to be fired amongst them: at which time the *Rhodians* received a Ship with Wines from *Candia*, and in her *Alphonso*, chief Pilot of the *Rhodian* Gallies, with 100 Voluntiers from *Candia*, unknown to the *Venetians*, then in League with the *Turks*; who being justly offended herewith, advanced thro the Ruins of the Breaches into the City, as far as the Rampiers and Barricadoes, but they were valiantly beaten off by the Besieged. The *Rhodian* Embassadors in the *Turkish* Camp must have been torn in pieces by those *Barbarians* upon the Besieged's breach of the Truce, had it not been for the *Turkish* Hostages in the Town; but when two Burgesses came with the Terms of Surrendry to *Solyman*'s Camp, all was presently quiet. To them he gave audience in the midst of his Army and Janizaries, who presented to him the following Articles, *viz.* That the Churches should remain unviolated to the Christians; no Children to be taken from their Parents; no Christian forced to change his Religion; that such as would might tarry in the City without paying any Tribute for five Years, and the rest with

Articles of Surrendry.

with their Goods, to be ſhipped for *Candia*, with as many Cannon as they pleaſed; and that the Chriſtians ſhould appoint a reaſonable time for their Departure. He agreed to the whole, and ſwore to the faithful Performance of the ſame; but how the Articles were performed, the Writers of thoſe times vary in their Accounts.

The Grand Maſter proſtrates himſelf before Solyman.

Hereupon the Grand Maſter, by *Achmetes*'s advice, in mean Habit, went to proſtrate himſelf before *Solyman* to his Camp, attended with a few of the Knights of the Order; where after he had waited in the Rain moſt part of the day before the Emperor's Tent, he had at length a rich Robe put upon him, and ſo was introduced to his Preſence, where after they had for a time looked very wiſhfully upon one another, he was admitted to kiſs *Solyman*'s hand, who told him, *That tho he might juſtly violate the Articles he had made with them, yet he was inclined to Clemency, if he would make amends for his former Tranſgreſſions, and put himſelf under his Protection, whom he ſhould find very bountiful and gracious to him.* But the Grand Maſter, after he had acknowledged his own Demerit, ſaid, *He had rather loſe his Life, or for ever hereafter live in Obſcurity, than be accounted a Fugitive, ſince he looked upon that to be no other than baſe Cowardice and Treachery.* *Solyman* admiring the Courage and Majeſty of the brave old Man, ſent him back with a rich Robe into the City; and when, upon *Solyman*'s coming a few days after into the Place, the Grand Maſter would have proſtrated himſelf before him, he would by no means allow of it, but took him up and called him Father. Hereupon the Grand Maſter taking occaſion highly to extol his Clemency, and that he doubted not of his ſtrict Obſervance of his Articles, received a generous and favourable Anſwer: and when he came to the Emperor to deſire leave to depart, he was received ſo very courteouſly, that *Solyman* turning to *Ibrahim* Baſſa, ſaid, *Truly I cannot but be troubled to ſee this unfortunate old Man driven out of his own Habitation, to depart ſo heavily from hence.* And ſo we leave him and his Followers to depart for *Italy*, while *Solyman* enters *Rhodes* in triumph on *Chriſtmas*-day in 1522. About which time *Ferhates* Baſſa, Governour of the Marches of the *Turkiſh* Empire along the *Euphrates*, having

The Adventure between them.

Solyman *enters* Rhodes.

1522. having by Treachery seduced *Alis* (the Mountain Prince formerly mentioned in *Selymus*'s Reign, who betray'd his Uncle *Aladeules* into that Emperor's hands, and of whom *Solyman* was now jealous) to come to him, put him and his four Sons to death; and having reduced that Kingdom into the Form of a Province, came with 20000 Men to *Rhodes*, from whence *Solyman* went to *Constantinople*, and for three years did nothing memorable.

1526. Solyman *invades* Hungary. But then after having seriously considered the State and divided Interests of the Christian Princes among themselves, he singled out *Lewis* young King of *Hungary* to make war upon, and advanced with 200000 Men as far as *Sophia*, before the secure *Hungarians* had any notice of his coming, who then made all the haste they could to raise an Army; which, notwithstanding the proud Insults of some over the *Turks*, yet at distance, who talked of nothing but assured Victory, amounted not to above 25000 Men: so that the wiser sort and old Soldiers plainly said, it was a mere folly and madness for them with such a handful of Men to give battel to the Enemy, who would bring eight times the number into the field. This made some dissuade the young King from venturing his Person, but nothing would do with the Soldiers without his Presence; who thereupon marching with the Army to *Mohatz*, he was persuaded by the vain Arguments of *Tomoreus* Archbishop of *Colossa* to engage the Enemy before the Vayvod of *Transylvania* with his Horse had joined him. Now *Balybenes* who commanded 20000 *Turkish* Horse, and were the Van of their Army, divided them into four Bodies, and so continually skirmished with the Christians, that they could not come to the *Danube* for Water, but were forced to dig Pits of Water at their Camp; so that *Tomoreus*, who was General, was necessitated to fight. He drew up his Army in no bad order, and barricaded his Tents with Waggons, but fatal was the day; for the *Hungarians* at the first Encounter were easily overthrown by the multitude of the Enemy, who here slew *Tomoreus*, with many other Prelates and Nobles: and then the *Turks* attack'd their Camp, in defence whereof when the young King's small Guard were engaged to little purpose, he fled, and was unfortunately drowned in a filthy

The Battel of Mohatz.

filthy Ditch, into which his Horſe had plung'd him. Of all the *Hungarian* Army only a few Horſemen eſcaped, the reſt being ſlain in this fatal Battel, fought *Octob.* 29. 1526. to the unſpeakable Miſery of that famous Kingdom. The immediate Conſequence of this Victory was the Surrender of *Buda* to *Solyman* upon Articles, which he faithfully obſerved; and where the ſeven bloody Heads of the Biſhops and chief Nobility were preſented to him, and he paſt his Cenſure upon the Actions of every one of them while alive, in reſpect to their Conduct in the late Battel. However he much deplored the hard Fate of the young King, ſaying, he came not into *Hungary* to take his Kingdom from him, but to revenge former Injuries receiv'd from the *Hungarians*, and would have reſtored it to him again; as indeed he afterwards freely beſtow'd it on *John Sepuvius* Vayvod of *Tranſylvania*: and after he had ravaged all the Country between *Raab* and the *Theyſe*, to the Deſtruction or Captivity of 150000 People, he return'd to *Conſtantinople*.

Vayvod of Tranſylvania *made King of* Hungary.

In the mean time the Vayvod of *Tranſylvania* already mentioned coming into *Hungary*, practiſed with the Nobility to make him their King, and at length actually obtain'd it: while *Ferdinand* Archduke of *Auſtria*, and now elected King of *Bohemia*, conceiving his Title in Right of *Anne* his Wife, Siſter to the late King *Lewis*, to be indubitable, became too potent a Competitor for him; who after he had taken *Buda*, routed King *John* and his Army at *Tocay*, from whence flying into *Poland*, he was honourably entertain'd there by *Jerom Laſcus*, a Man of great Underſtanding and Reputation in his Country; who laying before him that he had no other way to retrieve his Fortune than to make his application to *Solyman*, King *John* agreed to it, and deſired him to undertake that Embaſſy: which he did accordingly, and being arrived at *Conſtantinople*, quickly inſinuated himſelf into the favour of the Grand Viſier *Abraham*, and the other Baſſas, by whom he deſired *Solyman*, that King *John* wrongfully diſpoſſeſs'd of his Kingdom by *Ferdinand*, might be reſtored by his Arms, and he would do him Homage for it, ever be grateful, and pay ſuch a yearly Tribute as he was pleaſed to lay upon him; that it was much more advantageous for the *Ottomans* to have a weak tributary

Outed by Ferdinand.

1528. King for their Neighbour, than ſuch an one as *Ferdinand*, who was already King of *Bohemia*, and ſupported by his Brother the Emperor *Charles* V. that there was as much difference as between the maintaining of a continual heavy War upon the Borders, and the ſafe Enjoyment of a ſure Peace; and they were to be very jealous of the great Power of the Emperor *Charles*, who as he exceeded the reſt of the Chriſtian Princes, might bring the reſt to engage with him in the common Cauſe of Chriſtianity againſt them. Won with theſe Arguments, *Solyman* grants *Laſcus* his Requeſt; but *Ferdinand*'s Embaſſador, whom he ſent alſo to him to ſet forth his Right, and to deſire his Friendſhip, and enter into a League with him, did not find him ſo eaſily to be intreated, but on the contrary, the Anſwer given him was, *That it was far from the manner of his Anceſtors to receive them into favour, who had done injury to the* Ottoman *Name*; *that* Ferdinand *had done imprudently to revive an obſolete Claim againſt the Right of Arms: wherefore inſtead of a League and Friendſhip he denounced unto him all the Calamities of War, and ſo commanded him with ſpeed to leave* Conſtantinople. But when he came to *Vienna*, no body there would believe him in reſpect to *Solyman*'s Threats; wherefore he haſtned to *Ferdinand* at *Spires*, who was, conſidering his preſent Want of Mony and other Circumſtances, much troubled at it.

1529. When Spring was come, *Solyman* firm in his Reſolution, with an Army of 115000 Men marched into *Hungary*, and was met at *Belgrade* by *Laſcus*, and ſuch of the *Hungarian* Nobility as follow'd his fortune; to whom he did the greateſt Reverence, and humbly beſought his Protection: upon which *Solyman* gave him his right Hand, proteſting, nothing better could have happened to him, and he deſired nothing more of God, than to be able to relieve diſtreſſed Princes, eſpecially ſuch as were injuriouſly oppreſs'd by their Enemies; wherefore he wiſhed him to be of good chear, ſince he freely beſtow'd upon him whatever he ſhould in that War conquer with the Sword. The Fame of *Solyman*'s coming ſo terrified the Citizens of *Buda*, that moſt of them fled away to *Alba Regalis* and *Presburg*; ſo that upon his arrival he found the City almoſt deſolate, and the Caſtle gariſoned by *Germans*,

Buda *taken by* Solyman.

mans, which he beſieged. The Governour *Thomas Nadaſti* was an *Hungarian*, and a Perſon of great Honour, Learning, and other Accompliſhments; who after he had done all that a Man could do for the defence of the place, and to encourage his Men, they would not at laſt hearken to him, but on the contrary, having ſeiz'd his Perſon and bound him, preſently agreed to yield up the place, on condition they might with their Bag and Baggage ſafely march away, which was granted them: but when they were to the number of 700 of them juſt upon their departure, and the Janizaries who were come into the Caſtle about to looſe the Governour and let him go alſo, *Solyman* advertiſed of the Gariſon's Treachery, changed his mind, and in deteſtation of their perfidious dealing with their Commander, order'd them all to be ſlain by the Janizaries; but to the Governour he offer'd honourable Preferments, and upon his refuſal courteouſly diſcharged him.

Buda thus taken by *Solyman*, he reſolved forthwith to lay ſiege to *Vienna*, the Capital City of *Auſtria*; and ſending before him *Achmetes* with the Voluntier Horſe, they deſtroy'd the Country all along with Fire and Sword, even beyond *Vienna* as far as *Lintz*, ſlew the old Men, made the young ones Priſoners, raviſh'd the Women, then ſlew them and their Children, with many other Cruelties and incredible Barbarities perpetrated by them. Then *Solyman* himſelf ſoon follow'd, and having in his March taken the Caſtle of *Altenburg*, and in vain attack'd *Neuſtadt* ſeven times in one day, he held on his way to *Vienna*, where he arrived *September* 26. and with his huge Army incamped in five places round the City; ſo that it was impoſſible for *Frederick* Duke of *Bavaria*, who was Commander in chief over King *Ferdinand*'s Forces, to put any Reinforcement into it, but he ſtaid at *Chreſme* about 12 miles diſtant from *Vienna*, into which however by good fortune 20000 Horſe and Foot were from ſeveral Countries got before, under the Command of *Philip* Palſgrave of the *Rhine*; and great need there was indeed of them, the place being ſo indifferently fortified as it was: altho they did all they could to place all things in order for the time, by muring up the Gates, clearing the Ditch, mounting their Cannon, and aſſigning every Quarter to which the City was divided a Gariſon.

Vienna beſieged by Solyman.

1529. riſon. Now in the firſt Sally the Beſieged made, they loſt *Wolfgang Hagen* a valiant Commander, and in another Skirmiſh *Chriſtopher Zetlitz*, and ſix more taken priſoners; of whom *Solyman* ask'd divers Queſtions, and particularly, whether the Princes who had the charge of the City were reſolv'd to defend it againſt his mighty Power? *Chriſtopher* made him a ſly Anſwer, that *Ferdinand* lay at *Lintz* in expectation of a great Army from ſeveral parts of *Germany*, with which he would undoubtedly come and give *Solyman* battel; and for the Beſieged, he knew they were reſolved to defend the place to the laſt. Upon which, *Solyman* diſſembling his Concernment, generouſly gave them their liberty, and charged them to tell the Beſieged how vain it was for them to pretend to ſuch a Defence againſt him who had conquer'd *Belgrade* and *Rhodes*; and that if they would ſubmit, he would grant them very favourable Conditions, otherwiſe they muſt expect nothing but the greateſt Extremity from him. But perceiving at length they would not be frightned into a Compliance, he began to batter the City with his ſmall Field-pieces, whilſt his great Guns were coming up by the *Danube*; which were happily ſunk, together with the *Turkiſh* Veſſels that brought them, by the valiant *Wolfgang Hoder*: however another part of the *Turkiſh* Fleet coming up to *Vienna*, brake up all its Bridges, and ſo block'd it up that way alſo. Hereupon *Solyman* fell to mining, which he carried on in fifteen ſeveral places; but they were all countermined, with the loſs of 8000 *Turks* buried alive or ſlain.

Walls of Vienna blown up.

However the *Turks* having the luck to bring one of their Mines to perfection, they blew up therewith a great part of the Wall near the Gate of *Carinthia*, and immediately attack'd the Breach with great fury, where they met with ſo warm reception, as at length to think of retiring; but being reinforced with new Supplies, they renew'd the Aſſault, tho with no better ſucceſs than before. They alſo came off with great loſs in two other Aſſaults they made at the Breach, occaſion'd by the blowing up of part of the Wall over againſt St. *Clare*'s Church, and near the forementioned Gate of *Carinthia*, tho they fought at both with the greateſt obſtinacy; which was no ſmall mortification to *Solyman*, as was alſo the loſs of almoſt 5300 of his Men,

Divers Aſſaults made upon the City.

Men, who were cut to pieces by the Lord *William Rogendorf* in a Sally. So that having call'd his chief Commanders together, and firſt ſeverely reprimanded them for their Cowardice, he encouraged them for another Aſſault, which he appointed on the 15th of *October*; and wherein tho they attack'd the City with all their Forces, yet they could no more prevail than before, but at laſt were forced to give it over with the loſs of many thouſands of their Men in the Town-Ditches.

Next day *Solyman* ſent ſome of his chief Priſoners into the City to acquaint them, that he did not come to beſiege *Vienna*, but to revenge the Wrongs done him by *Ferdinand*, and to have fought a Battel with him for the Kingdom of *Hungary*; but ſeeing he could not bring him to that, he would draw off, but firſt they would do well to ſubmit to him, and he promiſed he would not moleſt nor enter in their City. But finding they diſdained his Propoſal, he raiſed his ſiege, and barbarouſly ſlew all his Priſoners, but otherwiſe with very little loſs of People to the Beſieged; tho 'tis reported himſelf had leſſen'd his Army by 80000 Men in this Siege, which was raiſed about the 16th of *October*. *Siege raiſed.*

Solyman after this reſtored the Kingdom of *Hungary* to King *John*, to be held by him as his Vaſſal; but diſcourſing with him one day, and finding him averſe to pardon *Paul* Biſhop of *Grand*, and *Peter Parene*, who had adhered to *Ferdinand*, he told him with ſome concern, *Can any thing happen to thee better, or more honourable, than if by this Kindneſs thy Enemies of all Men ſhall be accounted ungrateful, that is, Men branded with eternal Infamy, whenas thou thy ſelf ſhalt for ever be extolled for a good and gracious Prince?* After this he return'd to *Conſtantinople*, where the Year after he ſolemnly circumciſed his three Sons, *Muſtapha*, *Mahomet*, and *Selymus*; but not being able long to digeſt the Diſhonour he had received at *Vienna*, and being withal continually ſollicited for Aid by the King, he raiſed a vaſt Army, but concealed his Deſigns where he would employ it, tho the report ran that he would often ſay, that whatever belong'd to the *Roman* Empire of right appertain'd to him, ſince he was Poſſeſſor of the Imperial City and *Conſtantine* the Great's Scepter: and therefore in his common Diſcourſe and Writings, when he had occaſion to mention the Emperor *Charles* (who 1530.

was

1530. was all the while that *Solyman* besieg'd *Vienna*, playing his Pranks in *Italy*) he contemptibly called him no other than by the Name of the King of *Spain*.

Ferdinand *sends Embassadors to* Solyman. In the mean time King *Ferdinand*, apprehensive of the great danger, and hearing of *Solyman*'s March, sent his Embassadors to him into *Servia* about a Peace; but they could obtain no other Answer from him, saving that they should follow his Camp, and wait his farther pleasure. The report whereof made the *Austrian* People flee every where for fear; but the Emperor *Charles* the Fifth, who was now in *Germany*, began to take the matter in earnest upon himself: to which end he engaged the Princes of the Empire to send him strong Supplies, writ to his General *Alphonso Vastius* in *Italy* to bring as many good Soldiers as he could from thence into *Austria*, and order'd his Admiral *Andreas Auria* to fit out his Fleet; he was also assisted by Pope *Clement* VII. with Mony, who for that purpose sent his Nephew, the young Cardinal *Hippolitus de Medicis*, as his Legate to him. While these vast Preparations were making, and Troops drawn together from all quarters, King *John*, upon the approach of the *Turkish* Army towards *Semendria*, thought it a fit time to besiege *Gran*; but tho *Aloysius Grittus* destroy'd most of *Gazzianer*'s Fleet upon the *Danube*, which was sent by *Ferdinand* to relieve it, yet the place would not yield to him.

Gran *besieged in vain by* K. John.

1532. So that now we must come to the Proceedings of *Solyman* himself, who in fifty six days march came to *Belgrade*, transported a great many Horse over the *Save* into *Hungary*, and leaving the *Danube* on the right, marched directly towards *Stiria*, and coming to the little Town of *Gunz*, where the most valiant *Nicholas Jurischitz* was Governour, *Ibrahim* the chief Bassa desirous to save so brave a Man, and his former intimate Acquaintance at *Constantinople* (where he had been Embassador) did all he could by gentle, then by rough means to induce him to surrender the Town to *Solyman*; but he absolutely refusing the same, the *Turks* fell presently to mining, and overthrew the Walls in three several places: but all that ever the *Turks* could do by their fierce Assaults, Cannon, and huge Mounts, could not hinder the Besieged to raise a Curtain to blind the Enemy firing upon their backs, and to repair the Breaches as strong as they were before; and the only

Solyman *besieges* Gunz *in vain.*

only way *Ibrahim* had at laſt, for the ſaving of *Solyman*'s Reputation, was to perſuade him to ſend for the Governour, and as it were of his own Bounty to beſtow the Town upon him. Now the Governour upon ſafe Conduct and Hoſtages given, being come to *Ibrahim* to the Camp, and honourably received, the Baſſa after many ſeemingly kind Queſtions and Allurements find-ind nothing would work upon him towards an entire Surrendry, at laſt told him, *That tho the Mighty* Solyman *could deſtroy the Place at his pleaſure, yet he commanded him in his name to give him that Town and the Lives of all that were in it, as a Reward of his Valour in defence of it, upon condition he would ſwear Obedience to him, and receive a few* Turks *into the Town.* The politick Governour knowing he had hardly a third part left of 800 ſtout Soldiers, and being himſelf weaken'd with his Wounds, and Want of Reſt, yet ſhewing no ſign of fear, anſwer'd, *That he would at firſt have ſurrender'd the place for old acquaintance ſake to him, had he not been hinder'd by the* Spaniards *and* Germans *in Gariſon, who now with difficulty let him come into the Camp; that therefore it was in vain to urge that any* Turks *ſhould be admitted: but for a token of his Submiſſion he would ſet up one of* Solyman*'s Enſigns upon the chief Tower of the City.* In ſhort, the Baſſa was brought at laſt to agree that a Captain and ten Janizaries only ſhould be admitted in, entertain'd courteouſly for a while, and then diſmiſs'd; whereas the Governour had neither *German* nor *Spaniard* in Gariſon there.

In the mean while 200 *Turkiſh* Horſe ſtraggling from the Camp as far as *Newſtad*, were all ſlain or taken by ſome *Hungarians.* By the Priſoners the Chriſtians came to know *Solyman* was 500000 ſtrong, and had 300 ſmall Field-pieces, but no heavy Cannon; and the ſame was confirmed by *Ferdinand*'s Embaſſadors, who were now releaſed by *Solyman* at *Gunz*, with Preſents for themſelves, and Letters to the Emperor and *Ferdinand*, wherein he proudly uſurped the Titles of many Kingdoms, and inſolently ſtiled himſelf Lord and Sovereign of almoſt all Nations; but the Purport of them was, that he came into *Hungary* to revenge the Injuries done to his Friend and Vaſſal King *John*, would with Fire and Sword deſtroy their Countries, and by

Mahomet

1532. *Mahomet* give them battel, if they durſt meet him. Then *Solyman* after 28 days ſiege leaving *Gunz*, directed his March not towards *Vienna*, which he left on the right hand, where the Chriſtian Army were moſtly now aſſembled, but to *Carinthia*, with a deſign only to ravage the Country, and not fight the Chriſtians, whoſe Power he now feared, tho the *Turks* did all they could to colour his Credit with Excuſes: to which end *Michael-Ogli* by his order ſent *Caſan* with 15000 Voluntier Horſe before, to ſpoil all the places between the *Danube* and the *Alps*, thereby to learn the Strength of the Emperor's Camp. *Caſan* did incredible miſchief in this Expedition, and took thouſands of Priſoners; but being on his return towards *Gunz*, where he had left *Solyman*, and ſtill expected to find him, he was firſt ſet upon by four Troops of *Italian* and *Spaniſh* Horſe under *Cove* in a Valley near *Newſtad*; but tho he made a ſhift to rout and kill moſt of theſe, yet perceiving he was beſet on all ſides, after he had firſt cruelly ſlain 4000 of his Priſoners, he divided his Army into two Bodies, and about midnight endeavoured to make his eſcape. *Feriſes*, who took to the Southward, with incredible labour cut his way thro thick and overgrown Woods, and with little or no loſs came to *Solyman* in *Stiria*; but *Caſan* breaking out of the Vally of *Staremburg*, was met with by the General of the *German* Princes with 10000 Foot, 2000 Horſe, and ſome Field-pieces, who broke in upon the *Turks*, and here ſlew *Caſan* and a great many more; while thoſe that eſcaped fell into the hands of the Marquiſs of *Brandenburgh*, then were purſued by the *Hungarian* light Horſe, and laſtly fell into the hands of the Country People about *Weisbrun*, and the Lake *Bulaton*: ſo that of 8000 *Turks* which were with *Caſan*, it was thought not one return'd to *Solyman*.

Great Slaughter of the Turks.

Now the Emperor underſtanding that *Solyman* was advanced as far as *Gratz* in *Stiria*, called a Council of War at *Lintz*, where it was reſolved to fight the *Turks* in that uneven mountainous Country, becauſe their Horſe could be of little uſe to them. In order to which, *Apontius* a *Spaniard* being ſent to view the Paſſes, he reported the Country was all deſolate, and that he could learn no News of the Enemy; they thereupon reſolved to march to *Vienna*, where the Emperor

Emperor upon a general Review found his Army to consist of 260000 Men, whereof 90000 Foot and 30000 Horse were accounted old Troops, and several Companies consisted of such as had been Officers. This numerous Body, a goodlier than which perhaps was never seen in any Christian Country, was drawn up in order of Battel in a great Field near *Vienna*, and headed by the great Emperor *Charles* V. and King *Ferdinand* his Brother in person, in expectation of giving battel to the mighty Host of the *Ottomans* under the Command of the magnificent Sultan *Solyman*; but he being advertised of their Strength and manner of Encampment, thought not fit to try their Power and Courage, but return'd the same way he came directly between the *Save* and the *Drave* for *Belgrade*, and so to *Constantinople*, with (as was reported) 30000 Christian Captives, besides the many thousands of poor Country People slain by his mercilesse *Turks*; while the Emperor, contrary to his Brother's Request of pursuing the advantage against King *John*, determined to return speedily into *Italy*: however he left behind him all the *Italians*, to assist his Brother in the Reduction of *Hungary*, and one *Fabritius Maramaldus* to command them; which the Soldiers no sooner understood, but disdaining to be commanded by a Man whom they looked upon to be no better than them, they presently began to mutiny: and tho *Vastius* by his Authority and strenuous Arguments had in a manner brought them to recollect a better Temper, yet upon his departure for *Vienna*, for the farther remedying of all remaining Difficulties, they began to reassume their Insolencies again, to which some coarse, hoary, mouldy Bread, that happen'd to be brought into the Camp at that time, did not a little contribute; for some of them sticking it upon the points of their Spears, and going about with it to their Fellows, did whatever they could to incite the Multitude to a Defection: but above all, one *Titus Marconius* of *Volatera*, a Man of a turbulent Spirit, but a good Spokesman, being set up on an heap of Saddles, the better to be heard, made a most seditious Harangue, which principally tended to their joining one and all to return without any more ado into *Italy*. And this took so with them, that as soon as he had done, the Drums beat a march, and so in a Body they moved

Strength of the Christian Army.

Italians *left with* Ferdinand *mutiny.*

The mutinous Italians *return to* Italy.

1532. moved towards *Newſtad*, under the leading of Officers of their own chuſing; and in ſpite of all the Intreaties of *Vaſtius*, and the Difficulties they met with in *Stiria* and *Carinthia* by *Ferdinand*'s order, they recovered *Taliaventum* in *Italy*, and there disbanding, return'd every Man to his own home. And ſo ended thoſe wonderful Preparations made by the two great Monarchs *Solyman* and *Charles* in the Year 1532. which held the World in ſuſpenſe with fearful Expectation of the marvellous Event, and ſo much the more, becauſe a great blazing Star appear'd at that time for the ſpace of fifteen days.

Now while the Emperor *Charles* was thus in Arms againſt *Solyman* in *Auſtria*, he ſent *Andreas Auria*, his Admiral, with a Fleet of 35 tall Ships, and 48 Gallies, on board of which he embarked 25000 old Soldiers, with a deſign to annoy the *Turks* in *Peloponneſus*; but the *Venetian* Fleet refuſing to join with him, becauſe of the League lately renew'd between the Sultan and Republick, it gave the *Turkiſh* Fleet opportunity to get out of the Bay of *Ambracia*, and ſo to the ſtrong Port of *Calcide*. Wherefore *Auria* directed his courſe towards *Coron*, which he laid ſiege to both by Sea and Land; but after that Count *Sarne* had defeated the *Turks* out of the *Morea* that came to the relief of it, and ſlew *Zadares* their chief Commander, whoſe Head with ſome other Officers they ſet upon ſtakes to terrify the Beſieged, they at length wearied with Aſſaults, and fearing the want of Proviſion and Ammunition, ſurrender'd the place upon condition they might ſafely depart thence with Bag and Baggage. From *Coron*, *Auria* ſail'd and laid ſiege to *Patras*, which he eaſily took and ranſacked: for the *Turks* diſtruſting the Strength of the place, had ſtrongly entrench'd themſelves near unto the Caſtle, which they alſo ſurrender'd upon condition their Wives only with their Clothes might ſafely depart into *Ætolia*; which was exactly performed by *Auria*. After this he took the two Caſtles call'd *Rhium* and *Molycreum*, oppoſite to one another in the Gulph of *Lepanto*; the great Cannon taken in the firſt of which was valued at 70000 Ducats, whereof ſome were vaſtly big, inſcribed with *Arabick* Characters. And then the Admiral returned with his Fleet home to *Genoa*.

Coron and other places taken by Auria.

But

But about the beginning of the Year 1533, *Mendoza*, Governour of *Coron*, having advertiſed the Vice-Roy of *Naples*, that he was, both by Sea and Land, beſieged by the *Turks*, and the ſame being quickly communicated to the Emperor, *Auria* was forthwith diſpatched thither; but two of his Ships, near unto *Coron*, lagging behind, the *Turks*, commanded by *Lutzis* Baſſa, *Solyman* of *Acarnania*, and the *Moor* of *Alexandria*, with their Gallies preſently hemmed them in, and took the leſſer of them, with the Slaughter of all the *Spaniards* in her; and they had boarded and won the Forecaſtle and Waſt of the other Ship: when *Auria*, diſdaining to be ſurpriſed at his heels, order'd his Gallies to turn upon the Enemy and reſcue them; which the *Turks* obſerving, and that they were drove by the Weſterly Wind within danger of the Shot of the Town, they began to forſake their Ships and row away, leaving their Booty, with 300 Janizaries on board them to be ſlain, and *Auria* to purſue them to *Modon*. *Aſſem-beg*, that Arch-Pirate, and *Moor* of *Alexandria*, with others, much blamed the Baſſa for not fighting the Chriſtians; but he excuſing himſelf with *Solyman*'s Commands, the matter ended ſo. *Coron* being thus relieved by Sea, the *Turks* quickly left it by Land; and *Auria* having taken care to furniſh it with all Neceſſaries, ſailed to brave the *Turks* in their Harbour of *Modon*, from whence they would not put out to fight him, and ſo he returned to *Meſſina* in *Sicily*.

1533. *Coron beſieged by the* Turks. *Relieved by* Auria.

Now the Winter following the *Spaniards* and *Greeks* in *Coron* beginning to want Proviſion, deſired *Macicaus* their Governour to lead them out to ſome Service or other againſt the Enemy, they wiſhing rather to die like Men in Battel, than to ſtarve within thoſe dead Walls; and their Requeſt was ſo ſeconded by *Didocus Tonarres* and *Hermoſillo*, both great Commanders, that notwithſtanding all the Governour's Arguments to the contrary, he was forced to give way to it, and to lead them under the Guidance of one *Barbatius*, a valiant Man, who ſpoke the *Turkiſh* Language very well, to ſurprize the City of *Andruſſa*; where, for all their Secrecy, and the *Turks* being taken unawares, yet they, having there 3000 Foot, whereof half were Janizaries, and 1000 Horſe, made ſuch a Reſiſtance, that *Macicaus* himſelf, endeavouring to break in at a Poſtern,

The Garriſon of Coron *attempts* Andruſſa *in vain.*

1533. was there, and divers of his Men ſlain, as ſeveral others were elſewhere; ſo that the Chriſtians at laſt reſolv'd to make a good Retreat only to *Coron:* where the Plague not long after beginning to rage, the *Spaniards* embarked themſelves, with all the great Cannon, and ſuch *Greeks* as would go along with them, and left the Town to be repoſſeſt again by the *Turks*; as we do this part of the World, and paſs into *Africa* and *Aſia*, after we have ſaid a little firſt concerning *Solyman*'s proviſionary Care of his Intereſt in *Hungary* before his *African* War, and Expedition againſt the *Perſians*.

1534. *Solyman* therefore hearing that King *John*, his Vaſſal, induced by the continual Sollicitations of his Subjects, was deſirous of Peace with King *Ferdinand*, upon condition he might quietly enjoy the Kingdom during his Life, and the ſame after his deceaſe to devolve to *Ferdinand* and his Heirs; he ſent *Grittus*, the Duke of *Venice*'s Son, for his Lieutenant into *Hungary*, to be an Aſſiſtant to King *John*, in a very magnificent manner: who entring *Tranſylvania* attended with 7000 Perſons, among whom were *Urbanus Batiani*, and *John Docia*, two famous *Hungarian* Commanders, with their Troops, and divers Janizaries; but not being received with a ſutable reſpect by *Americus* Biſhop of *Waradin*, and Vayvod of that Country, who envied that Greatneſs, notwithſtanding they dined together and made offer of Friendſhip, yet *Grittus*, as he departed, taking his Cap off his Head, and opening it with both hands, ſaid, *This Cap will not hold two Heads, and therefore it muſt be fitted to one.* Whereupon *John Docia*, out of a ſecret Grudg he bore to the Biſhop, did all he could by working upon the Pride and Ambition of *Grittus*, to incenſe him againſt him; which ſo took with *Grittus*, that tho ſome ſaid he gave *Docia* no other order, than to take him alive, yet *Docia*, with a ſtrong Party of Horſe, according to his order, departed from *Baxovia* in the night towards the Vayvod's Camp, whither he had ſent ſome Spies before for Intelligence, who informing him how careleſly the Vayvod lay in his Tent, with his menial Servants only about him, *Docia* ſuddenly ſurprized him there, and cut off his Head, which he brought in his hand by the Ear to *Grittus*; who turning to *Laſcus*, a *Polander*, that had lately, upon ſome diſcontent, deſerted King *John*, and asking

The Vayvod of Tranſylvania *murdered by* Docia *in his Tent.*

asking him, *Doſt not thou know this ſhaven Pate; truly 'tis a great, but a very ambitious, rebellious and proud Man's Head?* the other, who was naturally compaſſionate, reply'd, *Indeed tho I loved him not, yet I thought it not ſo whilſt it ſtood upon his Shoulders:* which Words made *Grittus* alſo relent. However the Biſhop's Kindred and others, to revenge the horrid Fact, raiſed the whole Country, ſo that in a few days they had got together 40000 Men under the Command of *Stephen Maylat*, who beſieged *Grittus* in the ſtrong Town of *Mege*, whither he had retired for his better Safety; who at length finding no Aſſiſtance from King *John* and the *Turkiſh* Sangiacks upon the Frontiers, and being withal unprovided of Victuals, he endeavoured to eſcape thro their Camp, but was taken Priſoner and forthwith beheaded; about whoſe Body the Executioner found in Jewels, to the value of 40000000 of Ducats.

But to return to *Solyman* and his Deſigns upon *Africa*, which were carried on under the Conduct of the famous *Barbaroſſa:* It will be neceſſary to premiſe ſomewhat concerning this Perſon for the better underſtanding the Hiſtory to follow. You muſt know there were two Brothers born at *Mitylene* in the Iſle of *Leſbos*, whoſe true Names were *Horruccius* and *Hariadenus*, of mean Parentage, being the Sons of a Runnagade *Greek*; who had lived upon little Piracies at firſt, but at length aſſociating themſelves with other notable Pirates of thoſe times, the elder, in proceſs of time, came to be Arch-Pirate, and they went to ſeek for Booty as far as *Mauritania*; at what time *Selymus* King of *Algiers* hired theſe Fellows to fight for him in defence of his Kingdom againſt *Marchemetes*, his Brother, who laid claim to it, who had the good Fortune to ſettle him in the peaceable poſſeſſion of it. Now *Horruccius*, being a Man of a notable Talent, and ſufficiently ambitious, managed his Matters ſo, that he not only ſlew the King, but alſo had the Artifice to get himſelf advanced to his Throne; but after many Succeſſes, being at laſt ſlain by the *Spaniards*, who came to the Aſſiſtance of the King of *Tremiſſa*, on whom he made war, he was ſucceeded by his Brother *Hariadenus*, who had alſo the Sirname of *Barbaroſſa*; who after many famous Actions and Succeſſes, was,

Barbaroſſa's *Riſe.*

1534. was, according to the Advice of *Ibrahim* chief Baſſa, invited by *Solyman* to come to *Conſtantinople*; *Sinan*, a great Man at Court, being ſent Embaſſador to him for that purpoſe, with Aſſurance of great Encouragement. *Barbaroſſa*, full of great Thoughts, was glad of the Opportunity; and after he had done all the miſchief he could at Sea, and in *Naples*, as he paſſed, he arrived at *Conſtantinople* in 1533. where he was joyfully received, and made many Preſents of fair Boys and Girls, ſtrange Beaſts, and the like to *Solyman*: however he had not continued there long, before he was much envied and ill repreſented; and the Anſwer given him at laſt from *Solyman* by *Ajax* and *Caſſimes*, two of the great Baſſas, was, *That his Buſineſs was referred to the Diſcretion of* Ibrahim, *chief Baſſa, who was then at* Aleppo, *by whoſe Advice he had been ſent for; and that therefore, if he expected any thing, his beſt way was to repair thither.* The Meaning of this he underſtood very well; however hoping to gain his Point by Perſeverance, he went directly for *Aleppo*, from whence in ſome time he returned with commendatory Letters from the great Baſſa to *Solyman*, deſiring that for his Abilities he would join him a fourth to the other three Baſſas of his Council; ſo that now, quite contrary to the former Uſage, all People favoured him: ſo great was the Authority of *Ibrahim* at that time, tho abſent from Court.

Barbaroſſa ſent for by Solyman.

Envy'd at Court.

Favoured by the means of Ibrahim.

Now *Barbaroſſa* uſed all the Arguments he could to perſuade *Solyman* to the *African* War, and having brought *Roſcetes*, the elder Brother of *Muleaſſes*, King of *Tunis*, along with him to *Conſtantinople*, he alledged him to be a very fit Inſtrument for the ſubduing of the Kingdom of *Tunis*. So that in ſome time *Barbaroſſa* was made the fourth Baſſa, and *Solyman*'s high Admiral, who delivered to him a Scepter and a Sword; after which he was conducted in great Pomp to the Fleet by *Ajax* and *Caſſimes*, with the Aga of the Janizaries; and for the maintenance of that Maritime War had 800000 Ducats delivered out of *Solyman*'s Treaſure, and 800 Janizaries. Hereupon he quickly put to Sea with a Fleet of 80 Gallies and ſome Galliots, and ſteered his Courſe for *Italy*, where he took and plundered the Town of *Lucidius* and *Citario*, and afterwards coming to the Iſle of *Capri*, within ſight of *Naples*, ſtruck not only

Barbaroſſa *does much miſchief in* Italy.

only a Terror into all the *Neapolitans* along the Coaſts, but even in the very Citizens of *Naples* themſelves, who were ready for fear to leave the place. Soon after he took and pillaged the Town of *Prochita*, and had *Spelunca* and its Caſtle quickly ſurrendred to him; while 2000 *Turks* from the Fleet paſſing through the rough and woody Mountains in the night ſurpriz'd the City of *Fundi*, and were very like to have taken the Beauty of *Italy*, *Julia Gonzaga*, who with much ado made her eſcape, and whom 'twas thought *Barbaroſſa* had a deſign to make a Preſent of to *Solyman*. Another part of his Fleet came to *Terracia*, which they found deſerted by the Inhabitants, except a few who were not able to get off, whom they put to the Sword; as they had done, or captivated the People in other places taken by them. In ſhort, after he had done all this miſchief to the Chriſtians, and greatly terrified *Rome* it ſelf, he paſt over with that Celerity to *Africa*, that he was there before they thought he had left the Coaſt of *Italy*, to the great ſurprize of the *Africans*, and eſpecially of *Muleaſſes* King of *Tunis*, againſt whom his Expedition was principally intended.

Muleaſſes *King of* Tunis.

This *Muleaſſes* was lineally deſcended from the antient Kings of *Tunis*, and was by his Father *Mahometes*, at the inſtance of his Wife *Leutigeſia*, in prejudice to his elder Brothers *Macino* and *Roſcetes*, declar'd his Succeſſor; who no ſooner aſcended the Throne, but he unnaturally put *Macino* with ſeventeen more of his Brethren to death, and put the Eyes out of three others, while *Roſcetes* and his Brother *Abdemelech* made their eſcape to *Numidia*: the laſt of which turning *Mahometan* Monk, the other did all he could by the aſſiſtance of the *Numidians*, to diſpoſſeſs *Muleaſſes*, and recover his right to his Father's Kingdom. But all his Attempts failing, he fled at length to *Barbaroſſa*, who carried him to *Conſtantinople*, as before mentioned, where he was detain'd now in ſafe Cuſtody; tho *Barbaroſſa* in Policy gave out he was with him in the Fleet, and ſhould by *Solyman*'s Power be reſtor'd to his Father's Kingdom. In the mean time *Barbaroſſa* landing at *Biſerta*, had the place quickly delivered up to him; from thence he ſailed for *Guletta*, a ſtrong Caſtle within the Bay of *Tunis*, commanding all the Paſſages leading to that City, and in token of Friend-

Barbaroſſa *takes* Biſerta.

1534. ſhip ſaluted it with all his great Guns, which the Caſtle anſwered in the ſame manner; but being required to deliver it up to *Roſcetes*, they anſwered it ſhould be always at his command who governed in *Tunis:* where the news of *Roſcetes*'s arrival put all the Citizens into an uproar, who were ready to embrace his juſt Quarrel againſt *Muleaſſes*, whom they hated for his Cruelty; and who now finding all his Perſuaſions and Promiſes avail'd nothing, by the advice of *Abdahar* the *Meſſuar*, gave way to his adverſe Fortune, and fled out of the City, leaving all his Treaſure behind him, which afterwards fell into the hands of his Enemies. *Barbaroſſa* was no ſooner advertiſed of his departure by *Abezes*, and invited forthwith to repair to the City, but he ſet forwards with 5000 *Turks*, and was joyfully received at *Tunis:* However the People finding themſelves deceived in their Expectations of the arrival of *Roſcetes*, ſuddenly changed their Minds, and under the Conduct of *Abdahar* the *Meſſuar*, fell furiouſly upon the *Turks* before they had yet all got into the Caſtle, and at the ſame time ſent for *Muleaſſes* back to the City: they quickly gained one of the weakeſt Bulwarks of the Caſtle, and with their Darts and Arrows forced the *Turks* to forſake and retire farther into the Caſtle, from whence with their great Cannon and ſmall Shot they made a great ſlaughter among the *Moors*. But tho *Barbaroſſa* was a Man of invincible Courage and great Experience, yet the Difficulties he lay under, and the renewed Aſſaults made upon him by the arrival of *Muleaſſes* and his Uncle *Dorax*, made him at his wits end; at length by the advice of *Halis* of *Malaga*, a runnagade *Spaniard*, but a moſt admirable Soldier, he ſallied out at two Gates of the Caſtle upon the *Moors*, of whom he made great ſlaughter; and *Abdahar* the *Meſſuar* being here ſlain among the reſt, at laſt the Citizens fled, having 3000 ſlain, and thrice as many wounded. *Muleaſſes* thus diſcouraged, by the help of *Dorax* with difficulty eſcaped to *Conſtantina*, antiently *Cyrtha*, where he was honourably maintained by *Dorax*, part of whoſe Dominion it was, till the arrival of the Emperor *Charles* in *Africa*.

Enters Tunis.

The deceived Citizens riſe againſt the Turks.

The Citizens diſcomfited.

They ſubmit to Barbaroſſa.

The Citizens next day, being diſcouraged with the loſs of ſo many of their Friends and Relations, and having no King now to fight for, asked Pardon of *Barbaroſſa*,

Barbaroſſa, excuſing their Reſiſtance by the Title of Loyalty to their antient Kings, and offering to be very faithful to him; which *Barbaroſſa* readily accepted, as knowing he was not able to defend the place for three days for want of Proviſion: whereupon a Peace was agreed to, and confirmed by ſolemn Oaths on both ſides, by which the Citizens bound themſelves in expreſs terms to be faithful to *Solyman* and *Barbaroſſa* his Lieutenant. And when all things were ſet in order in *Tunis*, he endeavoured all he could to gain the *Numidian* Princes to his Intereſt. This done, he by *Aſan-aga* an Eunuch, and *Halis* the *Spaniard*, with the *Janizaries* and ſome Cannon, quickly reduced the reſt of the Cities in the Kingdom of *Tunis*; only *Carvema* held out for a while, but at length ſubmitted alſo.

But here we ſhall leave *Barbaroſſa* in poſſeſſion of the Kingdom of *Tunis*, and *Muleaſſes* in Exile at *Conſtantine*, till he ſhall be reſtored to his loſt Dominions by the Emperor *Charles* V. of whom more in its proper place; ſince 'tis now high time we ſhould return to *Solyman*'s Expedition in Perſon into *Perſia*, whereunto he was moved principally by the Arguments of *Ibrahim* the great Baſſa, who was bred with *Solyman* from his Youth, and had the greateſt aſcendency over his Affections: tho indeed he was not only born of Chriſtian Parents near *Perga* in *Epirus*, but alſo thought by many never in his heart to have renounced the Chriſtian Religion; which was the rather conjectured of him, becauſe he ſtrangely favoured and protected the Chriſtian Merchants, and was very forward in furthering the Leagues made by *Solyman* with the Chriſtian Princes, as he conſtantly endeavoured to divert his Forces from them upon the *Perſians:* And the more to excite his Maſter thereunto, he cunningly inſinuated into his acquaintance one *Mulearbe* of *Damaſcus*, a Man famous in his time at *Conſtantinople*, for the opinion People had entertained of his Sanctity and deep Knowledg in the ſecret Cauſes of things, and the Magick Art; and made uſe of him as a Prophet, to fill *Solyman*'s ambitious Mind with certain hopes of ſucceſs in a War, which he ſaid was ſo much pleaſing to God. This deſign alſo of the Baſſa was much furthered by *Ulemas* a noble and valiant *Perſian*, who was revolted from his Brother-in-law King *Damas* of

Ibrahim perſuades Solyman *to the* Perſian *War.*

1534. *Persia* to *Solyman*, and was very instrumental to persuade *Solyman* to undertake that War, to whom he discovered all the Power, State and Strength of the Kingdom of *Persia*, and the easiest way to conquer it; insomuch that *Solyman* at length being fully determined upon that Expedition, made all suitable Preparations accordingly, and gave Orders that all his Army should be ready for a general rendevouz at a day prefix'd, near the City of *Nice* in *Bithynia:* tho his Design was mightily impugned by his Mother, and his best beloved the fair *Roxolana*, who used all the Arguments and Charms they could to divert him from it; but so prevalent was the Bassa's Credit at that time with his Master, that all they could do avail'd them nought, tho afterwards it contributed to the Bassa's Ruin, as shall be declared in its proper place.

Ibrahim *takes* Tauris.

The time appointed being come, *Solyman* sent *Ibrahim* and *Ulemas* before him with a strong Army to winter in *Syria*; but upon the approach of Spring, the Bassa detach'd *Ulemas* with some light Horse into *Mesopotamia* before him, as best knowing the Country, and soon after followed himself, and without opposition came at length to the famous City of *Tauris* in the greater *Armenia*; which tho very large, yet being an unfortified place, and King *Damas* then absent in his Wars against *Kezien* Bassa, a Prince of the *Corasin Hircanians*, was presently surrender'd to the Bassa: of which he forthwith dispatch'd an account to *Solyman*, and of the Enemies design to over-power him, and therefore pray'd for speedy Relief. *Solyman* was then forward on his Journy, taking the nighest way from *Nice* to *Iconium*, from the former of which places in four and fifty days march he arrived at the City of *Coim* in the greater *Armenia*, from whence in a short time he joined the Bassa. Now *Damas* finding himself not strong enough to cope with the mighty Power of *Solyman*, retired to *Sultania*, about six days march from *Tauris*, and was pursued thither by *Solyman*, who for haste left a great part of his Carriages, Baggage, with 500 *Janizaries*, and three of his Sangiacks with their Troops behind him, but all to no purpose; for *Damas* was so far from coming out of his Fastnesses to fight him for the Injuries he had received from *Solyman*, that he could by no means learn what

Solyman *pursues* Damas *to* Sultania.

was

was become of him, or which way to follow. But he had not continued very long in thoſe vaſt and open Plains of *Sultania*, before he was encountred with a much more formidable Enemy than *Damas*; for a moſt dreadful and cruel Tempeſt fell from the adjacent Mountains (and the more ſtrange, becauſe it was yet but the beginning of *September*) with ſo much Rain, which preſently froze as it fell, and the bluſtering Winds ſwept the Snow from the tops of thoſe Mountains in ſuch abundance into the Plains, that the *Turks* lay as Men buried alive, wherein a vaſt number of ſick Soldiers and others periſhed; many were ſo benumbed, that they loſt the uſe of their Hands and Feet for ever, and moſt of their Beaſts of Carriage were frozen to death: yea, *Solyman* himſelf was in great danger to have been overwhelmed in his Tent with the violence of the Storm, all the Tents round about him being thrown down. Neither was it the leaſt of their miſery that this hapned in the darkneſs of the Night, when moſt of their Fires were put out by the extremity of the Storm, which did not a little terrify the ſuperſtitious *Turks*, as a thing very ominous to them; neither were they alſo without apprehenſions of the ſudden coming of the Enemy upon them. But at length the Sun beginning to diſplay its bright Beams next Morning, diſabuſed them in reſpect to that danger, tho they were preſented with a melancholy Scene of the dead Bodies of their Friends and Companions upon the ground; and many ſo ſurvived, that they accounted the dead happier than themſelves. In ſhort, many of the *Turks* vainly attributed this Storm to the Enchantments of the *Perſian* Magicians, whereas undoubtedly it was no other than the Hand of him who brings the proud Devices of Princes to nought.

His Army diſtreſſed with a Storm.

From hence *Solyman* by the advice of *Ulemas* held his march on the left towards *Aſſyria*, in hopes that *Mahometes* the Governour of *Babylon* or *Bagdat*, and *Ulemas*'s Friend, would deliver the ſame up to him: But tho they were miſtaken herein, yet the Governour hearing of the approach of ſuch a mighty Power, for whom he was unprovided, preſently fled out of the City, which without any more ado ſubmitted to *Solyman*; who here, according to old Superſtition, received the Enſigns and Ornaments of the Kings of *Aſſyria*

Babylon *yielded to* Solyman.

1534. *Syria* at the hands of the great Caliph, the chief of the *Mahometan* Prieſts, whoſe chief Seat is in that famous City, where *Solyman* ſpent his Winter, while the other Cities of *Aſſyria* and *Meſopotamia* ſubmitted and received Gariſons; and the fame thereof was ſo great, that Embaſſadors came from as far as *Ormus* to ſue to him for Peace. Thus the great Countries of *Aſſyria* and *Meſopotamia* fell under the Dominion of the *Turks*, and became Provinces of their Empire in 1534. over whom *Solyman* placed a Beglerbeg and divers Sangiacks to command under him.

Now when *Damas* underſtood that *Solyman* was gone for *Babylon*, he return'd to *Tauris*, from whence the *Turkiſh* Gariſon ſpeedily fled; but *Solyman* in the Spring (after having mightily reinforced his Army with freſh Supplies from *Alexandria*, *Judea*, *Syria* and *Comagena*) returning to *Tauris*, *Damas* fled in all haſte to *Hircania*, and deſtroy'd the Country as he paſt, that the *Turks*, who purſued him under *Ulemus*, might find no ſubſiſtence. *Solyman* fretting he could not come to Battel with *Damas*, gave the rich City of *Tauris* a Prey to his greedy Soldiers, and deſtroy'd the Country all he could as he marched towards *Meſopotamia*, and gave orders for the killing the very Cattel they lighted on; but he had ſcarce got as far as *Coim*, before ſome *Perſian* Horſe took ſome of his Baggage, and ſlew divers Stragglers: and it being alſo rumoured that *Damas* with all his Power was marching up, he ſecured his Rear with 18000 good Soldiers, till he got ſafe to *Carenuda* in *Meſopotamia*. *Damas* in the mean time returning with a mighty Army to *Tauris*, in hopes to have ſurprized the Enemy there, was mightily concern'd at the diſappointment; however *Delimenthes* one of his Nobles, voluntarily offering with 5000 Horſe to go in purſuit of the Enemy, he was much pleaſed with it. *Delimenthes* uſed ſuch Expedition therein that he came up with the Rear of the *Turks* at a place called *Bethlis* in the Confines of *Perſia*; before which finding by his Spies the Enemy lay ſecure and careleſs in the Valley, he ſent to the Governour of that Caſtle to ſally upon them in the night on that Quarter which lay next him, while himſelf with his whole Power fell in with them on the other ſide: and his bold Deſign was ſo favour'd by the darkneſs of the night, and the abu-

Ranſacks Tauris.

abundance of Rain that fell at the ſame time, that he was got within the *Turks* Camp before they were aware of his coming, and made ſuch a ſlaughter of the ſleepy *Turks*, that the Baſſas of *Caire* and *Syria* with *Ulemas*, who commanded in chief, had much ado to ſave themſelves by flight: ſo that the *Turks* were ſlain by thouſands, and of the five great Sangiacks that were in the Army, three were ſlain and one taken, and 800 *Janizaries* laid down their Arms and ſubmitted; neither were the Mountaineers backward upon this occaſion, to revenge the Injuries they had ſuſtained after the death of their King *Aladeules*, to whoſe ſhare all the *Turks* Baggage fell: Nay, the ſlaughter was ſo great, that the *Turks* account it among the greateſt of their Loſſes to this day; and in memory whereof the *Perſians* kept the ſame day, which was the 13*th* of *October*, as one of their ſolemn Holy-days for many Years after.

Delimenthes *makes a great ſlaughter of the* Turks.

When *Solyman* was advertiſed of this great Overthrow, he was extremely concerned at it, and reſolved now to return home, being ſecretly much diſſatisfied with *Ibrahim* the great Baſſa for adviſing him to that Expedition; who was ſo far from expecting any ſuch thing, that he was gone before him to the *Thracian Boſphorus*, where as a token of Triumph he had cauſed the Shoar all along that place where *Solyman* was to go on board his Galley, to be covered with *Perſian* Silk, for him to tread over. But when *Solyman* was come to *Conſtantinople*, matters began to work apace towards *Ibrahim*'s ruin, for the *Sultana* Mother, and *Roxolana*, becauſe of his favouring *Muſtapha*, *Solyman*'s eldeſt Son, againſt *Bajazet* her Son, contributed not only all they could towards it, but a ſuſpicion of his ſecret Correſpondence with ſome Chriſtian Princes, brought it on with winged haſte; ſo that being invited to a ſolemn but fatal Supper into the Court on the 14*th* of *March*, after *Solyman* had upbraided him with his faults, and ſhewed him his own Letters, whereby he correſponded with the Chriſtians, his Throat next night was cut by an Eunuch as he ſlept in Bed, becauſe *Solyman* had in former times ſolemnly ſwore to him he ſhould never be killed whilſt he lived; the Tyrant pretending hereby to ſave his Oath, becauſe he was ſlain ſleeping.

Ibrahim *Baſſa put to death.*

1536.

Whilſt *Solyman* had been engaged in his *Perſian* Expedition, the Emperor *Charles* V. being much concerned

1536. cerned at the Succeſs of *Barbaroſſa* in *Africa*, and fearing in time his own Dominions, eſpecially *Sicily*, would be endangered by him, he reſolved in Perſon with a puiſſant Army to paſs over into *Africa*; and for that end came down to *Barcelona* with 8000 Foot, and 700 Horſe, ſooner than any body expected: to whom his famous Admiral, *Andrew Auria*, with a great Fleet of Ships, Gallies, and Galeaſſes came not long after; as did alſo *Lewis* the King of *Portugal*'s Brother with 25 Caravels, and an huge Galeon, on board of which were 2000 *Portugueſe* Soldiers, beſides Mariners: to which if we add ſixty ſail of tall Ships out of the *Netherlands*, ten of the Pope's Gallies, and the *Malteſe* Ships, they'll be found to be a vaſt Fleet. Neither were the Land Troops drawn from divers Countries diſproportionate; for beſides the Army the Emperor had with him, *Vaſtius* his General raiſed 5000 Men in *Italy*; to whom at the ſame time came *Maximilian Eberſtein*, an old Commander, with 8000 *Germans*, over the *Tridentine Alps* to *Milan*, and ſo to *Genoa*; were they embarked at *Port-Venere*, and ſailing for *Naples*, had there a great Reinforcement both of Shipping and Soldiers. From *Naples*, *Vaſtius*, after he had appeaſed a Mutiny of the Soldiers by reaſon of the ſmallneſs of their Pay, ſailed for *Cagliari* in *Sardinia*; where he was joined by the Emperor, and from whence with a good Weſterly Wind they paſſed over into *Africa*. As they enter'd into the Port of *Utica*, the Admiral's Gally, wherein the Emperor himſelf was, ſtruck upon the Sand; but being happily got off, they doubled the Cape of *Carthage*, and came to an Anchor before the Caſtle of *Aquaria*. The *Moors* from the Hills of *Utica* perceiving ſuch a vaſt Fleet, computed at 700 Sail, whereof 82 were Capital Ships, quickly alarm'd *Barbaroſſa* with the news and danger; who was mightily concern'd at it, eſpecially becauſe the Emperor was come in Perſon, and muſt have a vaſt Army with him, ſeeing it was a thing he never expected, being all the while perſuaded to the contrary by *Aloyſius Præſenda*, a *Genoeſe* Gentleman, who was his Priſoner, and whom now he put to death by reaſon of the diſappointment.

Emperor Charles *reſolves to invade* Tunis.

But *Barbaroſſa*, to be no way wanting to himſelf in ſo imminent a danger, called to him his Sea-Commanders,

manders, and told them, That they as brave Men, acquainted with the Dangers attending honourable Actions, were not to doubt of Victory, ſince he ſaw it was already as good as won; and the Emperor, if he had not been half mad, would never certainly have undertaken ſo deſperate and dangerous a War: however he encouraged them ſtoutly to defend the ſtrong Caſtle of *Guletta*, as the only Bulwark, not only of *Tunis* and the whole Kingdom, but alſo of their naval Power. *Guletta* ſtands in the Bottom of the Bay of *Carthage*, upon a Point of Land, where the Sea by a narrow Strait runs on the Eaſt-ſide of it into the Lake of *Tunis*; but ſince, the Caſtle has been parted from the main Land on the Weſt-ſide alſo, by the Sea let in that way; and this work was begun by *Barbaroſſa*, but given over again, for fear the Sea ſhould fill the Lake with Sand, tho afterwards it was perfected by others. Near this Place the Emperor commanded his Men to land in their Long-Boats; which was done ſo regularly, that the *Moors*, who came to oppoſe them, were preſently put to flight. The *Spaniards* were the firſt that went aſhore, then the *Italians*, and laſtly the *Germans*. In the mean time the General having ſent out ſome Detachments to view the Ground, and ſee where the Water-Ciſterns and Fountains lay, were ſet upon by the Enemies nimble Horſe, and ſeveral of them ſlain in two ſucceſſive Rencounters; which yet could not hinder the Emperor to go out in perſon, with a ſmall Body of Horſe for the ſame purpoſe.

The Situation of Guletta.

And now to the Siege it ſelf: When the General had with wonderful celerity drawn his Trenches, and made his Approaches, every Man was aſſigned to his Poſt; and among the reſt Count *Carns*, a Perſon famous for his Nobility and good Service againſt the *Turks* at *Coron*, upon his requeſt had the charge of the Mount next the Caſtle given him, which as 'twas a Poſt of much danger, ſo it was of greateſt Honour, for which the *Spaniards* envied him. Now the Count with his *Italians* had not been long poſted here, when *Salec* of *Ionia*, one of the famous *Turkiſh* Pirates, made a Sally upon him, and having craftily drawn him by a feigned Retreat from the Mount, ſuddenly turn'd about to his Soldiers, and ſaid, *The Advantage you deſired is offered you; they are now in danger, wherefore ſhew your ſelves Men,*

Beſieged by the Emperor Charles V.

1536. *Men, and ſuffer not one of theſe proud freſh-water Soldiers to eſcape alive or unwounded.* This was no ſooner ſpoken, but they fell on furiouſly, quickly put the *Italians* to flight, ſlew the Count and his Kinſman *Belinger*, with many others, and penetrated ſo far into the Trenches, that they carried the Count's Plate and Riches out of his Tent, while the *Spaniards* all the while quietly looked on, and might eaſily have relieved them; for which they were ſharply reproved by the General. But they had not any reaſon long to rejoice at their Neighbours Misfortunes; for *Tabaaccbes*, a Piratical Captain of the *Turks*, ſallying upon them at break of day, ſurprized them moſtly ſleeping within their Trenches, ſlew *Mendoza*, took the Colours of *Sarment*, and cut many others to pieces; ſo that the Emperor himſelf was forced to run thither to encourage them to ſtand, and reprove their Cowardice. Upon this, *Vaſtius* calling ten of their chief Officers to him, took occaſion to tell them how much they had degenerated from their antient Valour by this Action, what little reaſon they had to rejoice at the ill fortune of the *Italians* before them, and charged them to recover their Honour by new Atchievements againſt the Enemy. But notwithſtanding the large Promiſes they made of a better Behaviour for the future, the *Spaniards* were ſo negligent of their Guard in the heat of the day, when *Giaffer* Captain of the Janizaries not long after made a Sally upon them, that he got up to the top of the Rampiers, and made a moſt furious Diſcharge of Shot and Arrows amongſt them; but *Vaſtius* with admirable Conduct brought his Troops ſo to charge, that the Janizaries, with the loſs of *Giaffer* their Commander, and divers others, were put to flight, and a fourth part of them ſhut out of *Guletta*, for fear the Chriſtians ſhould enter with them: but the Cannon of the place mightily galled the Chriſtians in their Retreat, tho this day's work very much abated the Pride and Courage of the Beſieged.

Guletta ſtormed and taken. The Emperor at length conſidering all the Conveniences and Inconveniences of this Siege, reſolved upon a general Aſſault, to which end the Batteries began about *July* 15. to play by Land, while *Auria* with his Fleet did the ſame by Sea; with which they made ſuch a dreadful noiſe and ſmoke from morning till noon,

noon, as was never known before. But at laſt after the great Guns had done their work, upon a ſignal given, the Chriſtians valiantly attack'd the Breach, while others ſcaled the Walls, and all with that Reſolution, that notwithſtanding the obſtinate Defence made by the *Turks*, in caſting down Darts, Wild-fire, and ſuch things upon them, all availed them nothing; ſo that being overcome by a greater fortune, they turn'd their backs and fled, and *Sinan* the valiant *Jewiſh* Commander, with the reſt of the Officers, by a wooden Bridg got out at the further ſide of the Caſtle, and made their eſcape by Land to *Tunis*, while the reſt of the *Turks* and *Moors* were either killed or drowned. Thus *Guletta* fell into the Emperor's hands with all its Stores, and not only that, but *Barbaroſſa*'s great Fleet and Power at Sea, which but a little before had been no ſmall Terror to all the Frontiers of *Chriſtendom*, and Iſlands in the *Mediterranean*: And all that *Barbaroſſa* could do, was to inveigh againſt *Sinan* and the reſt for making no better defence; but after *Sinan* had ſomewhat appeaſed his Fury by the juſt Reaſons he gave for their evil Fortune, he applied himſelf wholly to warlike Preparations, and by Mony to gain the *Moors* and *Numidians* to his Intereſt.

In the mean time *Muleaſſes* the exiled King with a ſmall Retinue coming to the Camp, by his Interpreter complimented the Emperor upon his Succeſs, hoped he would reſtore a diſtreſſed Prince to his Father's Kingdom, and promiſed he ſhould always retain a moſt grateful Remembrance of his Kindneſs, and pay him Tribute. The Emperor anſwered, *As he doubted not but he ſhould ſhortly take* Tunis, *and obtain a compleat Victory, ſo he would kindly grant him whatever ſhould ſtand with the Conveniency of his Affairs, and the Uſe of his Victory, provided he would not falſify his Faith, which he believed he would not; however it were, he might aſſure himſelf that the ſame Power which could reſtore him to his Kingdom in favour to him, could alſo take it from him if his Ingratitude required it.* Muleaſſes upon this and all other occaſions demeaned himſelf like a prudent and wiſe Prince, and informed the Chriſtians of the Situation and Strength of *Tunis*, and even of every thing elſe that was requiſite for their wary proceeding in this War; more particularly he told

Muleaſſes *waits upon the Emperor, with his Requeſt to him.*

The Emperor's Anſwer.

Muleaſſes's *Demeanor.*

1536. told them *Barbaroſſa* would never truſt to the Strength of the Walls, but make a ſhew with his multitude of ſcoundrel Soldiers of drawing out to fight, yet would never bring his *Turkiſh* Foot to engage. Neither did he ſpare to acquaint the Chriſtians with the Inconveniences they ſhould labour under from the ſcorching Heat of the Sun, as alſo Want of Water, and how the ſame might be remedied; ſo that the Emperor having conſidered of all matters, upon the whole reſolved to march for *Tunis*.

A general Battel like to be.

But while all neceſſary Preparations were making, they were like in one of their Skirmiſhes with the *Numidians* to come to a general Battel; for the *Moors* having planted ſome Field-pieces in an Olive-yard, wherewith they annoyed the Chriſtians Camp, the Emperor leaving a ſufficient Guard there, drew out with his Horſe and the reſt of his Army, and ſending *Montegius*, General of the *Spaniſh* Cavalry, before, with ſome raw Soldiers, they skirmiſhed for a time with the Enemy; but the General hapning to be wounded, they ſhamefully fled: which the Emperor obſerving, he bravely advanced to the Charge, routed the *Turks* and *Moors*, and took the formentioned Cannon. The Emperor, upon this occaſion, gave the Signal himſelf, crying aloud, St. *James*, St. *James*, the *Spaniards* Patron; and behaved himſelf very gallantly, reſcuing *Andrew Pontius*, a Nobleman of *Granada*, even with his own hand, when he was unhorſed, wounded, and likely to periſh, and thereby deſerved the *Civica Corona* of the *Romans* for ſaving a Citizen in Battel. About the ſame time 30000 *Moors*, with a mumbling ſuperſtitious Prieſt before them, attempting to ſurprize a ſmall Tower upon a Hill near the Ruins of *Carthage*, gariſoned by the Emperor; he himſelf came timely enough to relieve it, ſlew the conjuring Prieſt and others, and put the reſt to flight.

However the defeating of the *Spaniſh* Horſe made many of the Emperor's Counſellors, but ſuch as were none of the beſt Soldiers, uneaſy; who now uſed all the Arguments to diſſuade him from the Proſecution of his Deſign, and to return home: but he abſolutely rejected their Advice; and having put a ſufficient Gariſon into *Guletta*, repaired the Works, and uſed all neceſſary Precaution for a ſafe March, and advanced towards

wards *Tunis*, incouraging his Men all the while againſt the Inconveniences of Heat, Thirſt, and the like Difficulties, wherewith they were to encounter. The Army now was come to the Ciſterns of freſh Water, which *Muleaſſes* and others had ſpoke of before, and to which, deſerting their Colours, they ran very greedily, contrary, not only to the Authority and Endeavour of the General *Vaſtius*, but even of the Emperor himſelf; but before this, a Draught of cold Water upon their march was ſold for two Ducats. However the Army being brought into order again, the Emperor continued his March towards *Barbaroſſa*, who with a great Body of Horſe and Foot, with Multitudes of Colours was advanced within about three Miles of *Tunis*, and with ſome Field-pieces began to play upon the Chriſtians; where *Vaſtius* perſuading the Emperor without ſtaying for the coming up of his great Cannon, to give Battel, the other anſwered, *If thou thinkeſt it good, as I do, in God's Name give the Signal.* That I ſhall do by and by, ſaid *Vaſtius*: but firſt he told the Emperor he had made him General, who would act accordingly, and that it was not ſafe for him to expoſe himſelf too much; whereat the Emperor ſmilingly ſaid, *He ſhould fear no danger, for that never Emperor had been yet ſlain with a Gun:* but for all that he departed out of the Place he was required to leave, and went into the middle of the Battel. The Action, tho fierce enough, laſted not long, before the Infidels, after the Loſs of about 300 Men, fled to *Barbaroſſa*, who now retired in great Fury to *Tunis*; where being diſtracted with many Fears and Cares, he thought once to have put all the Chriſtian Priſoners in the Caſtle to death, wherein however he was diſſuaded by the Arguments of *Sinan* the *Jew*, who at laſt made him aſhamed of ſuch a horrid Fact.

Emperor marches to Tunis.

His Anſwer to Vaſtius.

In the mean time the Chriſtians being advertiſed of this barbarous Deſign by ſome manumis'd Slaves, who out of Affection to their old Religion, incouraged them all they could now to lay hand upon their Liberty; and more particularly one *Francis*, otherwiſe called *Memis*, a *Spaniard*, and *Vincent Catereus*, a *Dalmatian* Eunuch, were at the head of them: who immediately, to the number of 6000 of them, knocking off their Chains, and ſeizing what Arms they could, ſuddenly

Chriſtian Slaves drive the Turks *out of the Caſtle of* Tunis.

1536. fell upon the *Turks* that were in the Caſtle; and notwithſtanding all that *Ramadas*, a runnagade *Spaniard*, and Governour of the Caſtle, could do, they poſſeſt themſelves of all the Caſtle; from the Turrets whereof they gave Signals of Victory to the Chriſtian Army by Smoak and falſe Fire, and laſtly by diſplaying of *Sarmentus*'s Colours taken at *Guletta*: and *Barbaroſſa* at laſt, ſeeing all his Promiſes to the Captives, and Intreaties to be readmitted, ſignify'd juſt nothing, he fled towards *Hippo*, where he had 14 Gallies in the Lake to ſerve him, as he had occaſion, while the Citizens of *Tunis* went to deliver the Emperor the Keys of that famous City, and only requeſted he would keep his Soldiers encamped without its Walls, and not give it for a ſpoil unto them. But the Murmurs of the Soldiery, and other Reaſons, made him refuſe their Petition; ſo that the Place was given up to the Rapine and Cruelty of the Soldiers, who ſpared neither Treaſure, Age nor Sex, till the Emperor at length by *Muleaſſes*'s Intreaty, put out a Proclamation, that no Man upon pain of death ſhould hurt any Citizen, or take any Priſoners: tho for all that many young People were by the Seamen carried away Captives to the Fleet, many of whom were ranſomed for a ſmall matter by *Muleaſſes*, and among others, one of his own Wives, whom he ſome time held deareſt, for two Ducats. The Emperor liberally rewarded the Captives in the Caſtle, and particularly the two forementioned Ringleaders, while *Muleaſſes* more eſpecially lamented the Loſs of three things in the Spoil of the City: 1. The *Arabick* Books that interpreted the *Mahometan* Law, and the Acts of his Predeceſſors. 2. His Ointments, Perfumes, Ambergreaſe, Musk and Civet. 3. Rare Colours for Painting.

Tunis *ſurrendered and plunder'd by the Chriſtians.*

But for *Barbaroſſa*, after he had got ſafe to *Hippo*, and reſted his Men for two days, he ſo cheared up his dejected Soldiers, that they requeſted him with one accord to command them what he pleaſed, and they would obey: wherefore he ſet all hands on work to weigh up the 14 Gallies he had ſunk in the Lake, which he preſently fitted and rigged, and raiſed ſome Batteries on the Lake ſide, for the defence of the Harbour againſt the Chriſtians, whom he was apprehenſive of, and who in reality had a Deſign upon the Place.

To

To which end *Auria* ſent one *Adam*, a *Genoeſe* Captain, for that Service; who when he was come near *Hippo*, and underſtood what Defence *Barbaroſſa* had made, he upon good advice returned back to the Fleet for Aid, without being purſued by *Barbaroſſa*, who from *Hippo* ſailed along the Coaſt to *Algiers*: while *Auria*, angry with himſelf and thoſe whom he had entruſted for the Service at *Hippo*, with his own Gallies and ſome of his beſt Ships went thither, took the City, and raſed its Walls, but put a good Gariſon into the Caſtle, and then returned to the Emperor; who afterwards, to ſave Charge, cauſed it alſo to be raſed, and by the Advice of his Council reſtored *Muleaſſes* to his Kingdom, upon condition he paid him for a yearly Tribute two Falcons, and as many *Numidian* Horſes, and from time to time defrayed the Charge of 1000 *Spaniards* to be left in Gariſon at *Guletta*. After which the Emperor in triumph ſailed for *Italy*: where at preſent we ſhall leave him, and ſee what was done in other Parts referring to our Hiſtory.

Barbaroſſa *flies to* Algiers *from* Hippo.

Solyman, beſides his Ambition which prompted him, well knowing what Injury the *Portugueſe* Settlements did him in the *Eaſt-Indies*, who now carried the Riches of *India*, by the way of the main Ocean, into *Europe*, which before were convey'd by the Gulph of *Arabia* to *Cairo* and *Alexandria*, to the great Diminution of the *Egyptian* Tribute and Cuſtoms; did, by the advice of *Solyman* the Eunuch Baſſa, and Governour of *Egypt*, with wonderful Application and Celerity build a great Fleet of 80 tall Ships and Gallies at *Arſinoe* or *Suetia*, a Port in the Red Sea, to go againſt the *Portugueſe*, under the Command of *Solyman* Baſſa himſelf, and the famous *Moor* of *Alexandria*; when the former had firſt, with the Approbation of his Maſter, ſeized upon the *Venetians* Effects at *Cairo* and *Alexandria*, and put the Seamen on board his Gallies as Slaves. And having ſailed by the Gulph of *Perſia*, they attacked the Caſtle of *Dium*, belonging to the *Portugueſe*, at the Mouth of the *Indus*, tho all in vain; ſo that at laſt they were forced to leave their heavy Cannon behind, and return to *Aden* in *Arabia Fœlix*: when *Solyman* having allured the King of that rich Place aboard, he barbarouſly hanged him at the Yard-Arm, and then ſurprized and plunder'd it. The ſame he did by the King and his

1537.

Turks *attack the* Portugueſe *in* India *in vain.*

1537. Nobility at *Zibyth*, another famous Port in *Arabia*; and ſo going by Land, for barbarous Devotion-ſake, for *Meccha*, he ſent the *Moor* with the Fleet back to *Suetia*, without doing any thing memorable againſt the *Portugueſe*.

Solyman *deſigns to invade* Italy.

At the ſame time, *Solyman* turned all his Forces from *Perſia*, with a Deſign to invade *Italy*; wherein he was much ſollicited by *John Forreſt*, the *French* Embaſſador, as alſo by *Troylus Pignatelli*, ſometime a Commander in the Emperor *Charles*'s Army, but now baniſh'd out of *Naples*, and fled to *Solyman*, by whom he was honourably entertained amongſt his *Muttaſacaras*, who are a Body of choice Horſe of all Nations, that have the free Exerciſe of their Religion, and are bound to attend the Sultan's Perſon when he goes to War. Moved by their Arguments, as well as thoſe of his Counſellors, he came in Perſon with 200000 Men to the Port of *Aulona* in *Macedon*, by Sea and Land, where *Lutzis*, Admiral Baſſa, and *Barbaroſſa* with their Fleet ſoon after arrived; whom *Solyman*, to loſe no time, commanded to ſail over for *Otranto:* with whom *Pignatelli* was alſo, and to whom the Town of *Caſtrum* in *Apulia*, with the adjacent Caſtle, were quickly delivered; both which the *Turks* baſely rifled, contrary to Articles, to the great Mortification of *Lutzis*. And now *Italy* was ready to be overwhelmed with the mighty Power of *Solyman*, when the accidental Raſhneſs of one *Venetian* Captain diverted the Storm from the *Italians* upon that Republick; and this was one *Alexander Contareni*, who meeting with ſome *Turkiſh* Gallies, who would give him no Signals of Friendſhip, he attacked and ſunk two of them. *Solyman* alſo happning to ſend *Junusbeius*, his chief Interpreter, with two Gallies on a Meſſage to *Lutzis*; this proud *Turk* offering to paſs by the *Venetian* Fleet at *Corfu*, without ſaluting the Admiral, ſome of the *Venetian* Commanders attacked and drove them upon the *Acroceraunian* Rocks, where the mountainous People ſhewed them but little favour; and *Junusbeius* with much ado redeemed himſelf at length out of their hands, and returned to his Maſter. Upon this, the offended *Turks* ſought to violate their League with the *Venetians*; which fell out ſo much the ſooner, becauſe *Auria* about the ſame cruiſing in the *Ionian* Sea, fell in the night

night on 12 of *Solyman*'s great Gallies near *Corfu* full of *Janizaries*, and his beſt Soldiers; who after a moſt gallant and obſtinate Fight againſt his thirty Gallies, were moſt of them ſlain, and their Gallies taken: but *Auria* finding himſelf too weak to encounter *Barbaroſſa* with his 80 Gallies, he returned to *Meſſina* to refit.

Solyman chafed with this Loſs, but more with the double Injury done him by the *Venetians*, and pretending at leaſt-wiſe that the *Venetians* had entred into a ſecret Confederacy with the Emperor *Charles* his Enemy; he changed his Reſolution of invading *Italy*, and in his mad fit proclaimed War againſt the *Venetians*. Whereupon leaving *Aulona*, he marched off with his Army, and encamped near the *Acroceraunian* Mountains over againſt *Corfu*; where the rude and wild Mountaineers of *Chimera*, by the inſtigation of one *Damianus* a famous Robber, attempted a dangerous and ſtrange Exploit, of breaking in by night to *Solyman*'s Camp, and killing him in his Tent. To which end being under the conduct of *Damianus* come thro byways near the Camp, to view where *Solyman*'s Tent ſtood, and the Order of the *Turkiſh* Guard; *Damianus*, by the breaking a Bough on which he ſtood, was diſcovered by a Janizary, and taken, and being tortured, confeſt the whole Deſign: which made *Solyman* ſend ſome Troops to endeavour, if poſſible, utterly to deſtroy thoſe ſavage Mountaineers; on whom when he had pretty well revenged himſelf, he reſolved to invade *Corfu*: which *Piſaurius* the *Venetian* Admiral perceiving, he ſupply'd it with Men and other Neceſſaries, and then retired to the *Adriatick* to join with another Fleet of the *Venetians*; while *Aloyſius Ripa*, and *Simon Leonius*, two Senators of *Venice*, and Governours of *Corfu*, for the better defence of the Place cauſed the fair Suburbs of the City to be pulled down, and turned all the unneceſſary People out of the Place, who many of them miſerably periſhed in the Town-ditches for fear of the Enemy, while others up and down the Iſland were deſtroyed or captivated by them: only 3000 poor People valiantly defended and ſaved themſelves in the Caſtle of *St. Angelo*, about 15 Miles from *Corfu*. In the mean time the *Turks* annoyed the Town with their Cannon from the Rock *Maripetrus*, as alſo with their Musketeers from the Ruins of the Suburbs;

He converts his Arms againſt the Venetians.

Beſieges Corfu *in vain.*

1537. neither were the *Turkiſh* Gallies with their Ordnance wanting to gall the Beſieged. But *Solyman* for all this perceiving the City was not likely to be taken, left the Iſland about the 12*th* of *September*, 1537. and carried about 16000 Priſoners along with him into Captivity; but firſt by a notable piece of Juſtice cauſed the Authors of the violation of the Articles of *Caſtrum* in *Italy* to be put to death, and the Priſoners to be diligently lookt after and ſet at liberty. In the mean time *Lutzis* his Admiral with the Fleet, after an obſtinate reſiſtance took the rich and famous Iſland of *Ægina*, burnt the City of *Ægeum* to the ground, and committed horrible Spoil and Slaughter there, beſides the giving the Women to the Luſt of his Soldiers, and afterwards carrying them and their Children into Captivity. The like Spoil and Cruelty he committed at *Paros*: But the Duke of *Naxos* ſubmitted to pay *Solyman* a yearly Tribute of 5000 Ducats; from whence *Lutzis* laden with Spoil returned to *Conſtantinople*: where he had not been long, but ſtriking and confining his Wife, who was *Solyman*'s Siſter, to her Chamber, for expoſtulating with him about abuſing her Bed, by his committing an unnatural Sin with a delicate Youth he kept in his Houſe, ſhe made her complaint to *Solyman*, and deſired to be divorced from the Baſſa; with which the Sultan was ſo enraged, that he baniſhed him into *Macedon*, where he ſpent the remainder of his loathed Life in a poor private Condition. But of the *Turkiſh* Affairs on this ſide againſt the *Venetians*, we ſhall at preſent ſay no more, the courſe of things calling us to a view of them elſewhere.

Lutzis *reduces* Ægina, Paros *and* Naxos.

His Diſgrace.

Now the ſame Autumn that *Solyman* had ravaged *Corfu*, K. *Ferdinand*'s Troops received a great Overthrow by the *Turks* at *Eſſeck*. There was indeed a kind of League at that time between *Solyman* and *Ferdinand*, notwithſtanding which their Troops in ſmall Parties, according to old Cuſtom, committed continual Spoil and Ravages in each others Territories, wherein the *Turkiſh* light and nimble Horſe generally had the better of the great and heavy-armed *Germans*; which ſo incenſed K. *Ferdinand*, that he determined to drive the *Turks* out of the Country of *Poſſega*, between the *Save* and the *Drave*: and ſo paſſing over this laſt River, marched directly for *Buda*, againſt K. *John*, who was aſſiſted

King Ferdinand *breaks his League with the* Turks.

aſſiſted and ſupported in his Intereſts by the valiant *Turkiſh* Commander *Mahometes*, Governour of *Belgrade*. To which end, *Ferdinand* out of all Countries raiſed an Army of 8000 Horſe and 16000 Foot, over whom he made *John Cazzinaer*, a noble *Croatian*, General. *Mahometes* hearing of this Preparation, was not wanting on his part to draw together all the Troops he could out of *Boſnia*, *Dalmatia*, and other Provinces, beſides the Supplies he had from the *Hungarians*; ſo that in a ſhort time he had an Army not much inferior to King *Ferdinand*'s, whoſe coming he reſolved to wait at *Eſſeck*: And by the ſmall Gallies he had on the *Save* and *Drave*, and with ſome Troops of Horſe, he endeavoured to prevent the Chriſtians from receiving any Supplies of Proviſion, which *Simon*, the zealous Biſhop of *Zagrabia*, had promiſed to ſupply them with. But the wiſer ſort perceiving there was like to be a ſcarcity of it, and repreſenting the ſame to the General, who was now advanced with the Army by ſlow Marches as far as the Caſtle of *Veruczа*, he writ ſharply to the Biſhop about it; but thought fit to ſtay there till *Paul Bachitius*, who was ſent out with 1000 *Hungarian* light Horſe, and ſome *Italian* Musketeers, to get intelligence towards the Caſtle of *Zopia*, were returned: upon whoſe approach the *Turks* fired the Caſtle, and by their Boats made their eſcape down the *Drave*. However he took ſome of them, by whom the General learnt that *Mahometes* was incamped at *Eſſeck*, with a reſolution to give him battel. Hereupon the General, according to the reſolution of the greateſt part of his Officers, directed his march toward that Place; before which time his Horſe was increaſed to 10000, but his Foot, by the Fatigue of the March, Deſertion, and otherwiſe, were much diminiſhed, and ſcarcely amounted to 8000 ſtrong. They incamped in a Valley within three Miles of *Eſſeck*; and two days after, the Biſhop of *Zagrabia*, with his Horſe and ſome Proviſion, came into the Camp. Now near the Valley where the Chriſtians lay, there was a Hill, whereon ſtood a Village in which ſome Companies of *Turks* were placed, in order to skirmiſh with the Chriſtians; but the Chriſtians planting their Artillery againſt them, made the place quickly too hot for the *Turks*, who fired the Village, and ſo retired to *Eſſeck*, leaving the Hill to be

1537. poſſeſt by their Enemies: from whence deſcrying a riſing Ground on the farther ſide of the City, equal to the top of the Walls, they thought it beſt to remove their Camp thither, and there to plant their Battery againſt the Town; but this was to be done by a foul and troubleſome way, thro a Foreſt. However, the Chriſtians, notwithſtanding the oppoſition made by the *Turks*, and their charging their Rear as they paſſed, got all thro with but a ſmall loſs, and encamped at the place deſired, and in good order offered the Enemy battel. But *Mahometes* underſtanding there was a ſcarcity of Proviſion in the Chriſtian Camp, and withal being enjoined in a Letter from *Solyman* to defend the Place to the laſt extremity, wiſely declined to give them battel: with which diſappointment and the diminution of their Store, they began to faint; when by the advice of *Balthazar Pamphilus*, a noble *Hungarian*, he was detached to take the Caſtle of *Hermaude*, where they were like to be relieved with the Stores laid up there; but he found little Corn or Victuals in the Town: however he took ſome Veſſels of Wine, which was a refreſhment to the Soldiers. The whole Army, upon the news of taking the Town, leaving their Camp before *Eſſeck* at ten in the Night, marched off diſorderly enough, tho without moleſtation from the *Turks*, and raiſed their Batteries againſt the Caſtle, which after the *Turks* had valiantly defended for half a day, was ſurrendered upon Articles; but much contrary to their Expectations, they only found in it two Barrels of Meal, and as many of Millet, and in ſhort ſcarce ſo much Victuals both in it and the Town as would ſerve the Army for two days. But the Officers diſſembling the matter as well as could be, ſet all hands on work to repair the Bridg on the *Bogrod*, broke down by the *Turks*; but being like to break in their Paſſage with the weight of the Cannon, they were forc'd to burſt one of the faireſt Pieces, and to carry it away by piece-meals: nay, they entred ſoon after into a Conſultation, whether they ſhould burſt all their great Ordnance; but this was rejected, and reſolution taken to march thro *Poſſega* to *Juvancha*, where they ſhould find ſtore of Neceſſaries: near unto which, in a little Town inhabited by Chriſtians (who readily opened their Gates to the Soldiers) they found great

Refreſh-

Refreſhment; but the *Turks* burnt the Town the ſame night, who with wonderful celerity fetching a Compaſs, were come to *Juvancha* at the ſame time with the Chriſtians, and between whom at the dawning of the day there paſſed divers hot Skirmiſhes, eſpecially in that part of the Camp where the *Bohemians* lay, of whom, notwithſtanding the repulſe they gave them, the *Turks* ſlew many.

The Turks diſtreſs the Chriſtians in their retreat.

Now the Chriſtian Commanders purpoſing to retreat homewards, placed on each ſide of the Army four Rows of Waggons for their defence, and in the Van the weak and ſick, yet ſo that in the Front of the Army were ſome Troops of good Soldiers; but in the Rear was poſted the greateſt Strength of Horſe and Foot. Now the Army thus marching, as it were intrenched on both ſides, *Mahometes* ſent ſome Companies of Janizaries and light Foot before, who well knew the Country and Paſſes, to gall them with ſome ſmall Field-pieces, as they found occaſion; and in the open Places he had his Troops of light Horſe, whereby the Chriſtians were much incommoded in their March. At one of theſe Paſſes *Paul Bachitius*, a famous *Hungarian* Commander, and one whom the Soldiers repoſed a great Confidence in, was ſlain, which did not a little diſcourage them. However, to revenge his Death, the *Hungarians* in the ſame Skirmiſh repulſed the Enemy, not only with the loſs of many Men, but their ſmall Cannon alſo; but not being ſo well ſeconded by the Chriſtian Foot as they ſhould, they loſt them again.

Chriſtian Commanders fly, with the General.

In ſhort, this and other Apprehenſions and Accidents reduced the whole Chriſtian Army, both Officers and Soldiers, into a doubtful and hazardous State; and the Council of War was much divided in opinion what they ſhould do, and how to eſcape: while *Mahometes* on his part uſed all poſſible vigilance and diligence to incloſe them as it were in a Toil, when they were entred into the Woods and Faſtneſſes, thro which they choſe to march. But ſo great now was the panick Fear that ſeiz'd ſome of the Commanders of the Chriſtian Army, that they ſuddenly took their own meaſures, ſome taking one way, and ſome another; ſo that the diſmayed General betook himſelf alſo to flight. However *Ladronius* the General of the Infantry, who ſtill kept

1537. kept their Poſts, encouraged them all he could to withſtand the Enemy now ready to fall upon them; during which the *Carinthian*, *Saxon*, *Auſtrian* and *Bohemian* Horſe, who had in vain expected the appointed Signal from their General, came and joined *Ladronius:* who as he was heartning up his Foot as aforeſaid, was (as ſome ſaid) bluntly, yet ſharply accoſted by an old *German* Soldier, who told him, *Worthy* Ladronius, *thou canſt never be thought to fly ſhamefully with a Horſe of ſuch a price under thee.* Which made him forthwith alight and hox his Horſe, ſaying aloud, *This day, brave Soldiers, you ſhall have me both your General and Soldier, fighting on Foot as one of your ſelves. See now that you deceive not my Expectation, but let us either with glorious Victory or honourable Death end this War together, yet ſo as we die not unrevenged.* But now it was not time to talk much, for the Enemy came preſently on to charge them, and were valiantly oppoſed by the Horſe upon divers occaſions; who yet ſuffered much, and more eſpecially the *Bohemians*, of whom the *Turks* made a great Slaughter. The Foot alſo being ſore galled in their March by the Janizaries and Archers from the woody Bank of a Marſh, and charged on the other ſide by *Amurathes*'s *Boſnian* Horſe, they were at laſt broke and cut to pieces, ſo that few of them eſcaped Death or Captivity: only *Ladronius* being driven into a Marſh, and ſore wounded, was at laſt by the intreaties of the *Turks* perſuaded to yield himſelf with three Companies that were with him, who were all ſaved as valiant Soldiers.

The Chriſtians diſcomfited.

Mahometes having obtained ſo eaſy a Victory, after he had merrily feaſted his Officers, commanded the chief Priſoners, Spoils and Colours, to be brought before him; openly commended the Officers that had done good ſervice, and rewarded the Soldiers himſelf ſome with Gold, ſome with Silver, according to their reſpective Merits, and cauſed all the Names of the Priſoners, who were not common Soldiers, to be regiſtred by his Clerks. As for the brave *Ladronius* who by reaſon of his Wounds was thought unable to travel to *Conſtantinople*, his Keepers ſlew him, and ſent his Head thither. In the mean while *Cazzinaer*, the General, and Author of this publick Calamity, having fled firſt to his own Caſtle, and being generally hated

Ladronius *ſlain.*

and

and lampoon'd, had leave to come to *Ferdinand* to clear himſelf; but being conſcious of his danger, he broke Priſon, and fled to the *Turks*, and afterwards, upon a promiſe of being made Governour of *Croatia*, tamper- Cazzinaer ing with *Nicholas Serini* to revolt alſo, he was deluded *ſlain.* by him, and ſlain in his Houſe; whoſe Head he ſent to King *Ferdinand*, and in reward whereof he gave *Serini* the other's Caſtle, and all his Subſtance.

Having now briefly run thro the *Turkiſh* Affairs on the ſide of *Hungary*, we are to reaſſume thoſe of *Venice*; where the Senate finding themſelves hard put to it by the *Turks*, entered into a Confederacy with the Emperor *Charles* V. and Pope *Paul* againſt them. The Emperor's Fleet of 82 Gallies was commanded by *Auria*, the *Venetians* of the like number by *Capello*, and the Pope's by *Grimani* Patriarch of *Aquileia*, and the Land-Troops by *Ferdinand Gonzaga* Vice-Roy of *Sicily*; and all that was taken from the Enemy in *Greece*, the Iſlands, or *Dalmatia*, was faithfully to be delivered up to the Republick. To obviate this Power and Deſign of the Chriſtians, *Barbaroſſa*, *Solyman*'s Admiral, 1538. with 138 Gallies, early in the Spring ſailed directly for *Candia*, with a deſign to ſurprize the City of *Canea*; Barbaroſſa but *Grittus* the Governour ſo plyed the *Turks* with great *unſucceſſ-* and ſmall Shot from the Walls and Bulwarks, that *ful in* Can- *Barbaroſſa* was forced to retire with the loſs of many *dia.* Men, and leave 1000 *Turks* behind him aſhore, who were afterwards all ſlain. All he did was to take and burn the little Town of *Cecilia*, and then ſail to the Bay of *Ambracia*, which he fortified for fear of the Chriſtians Fleet now come to *Corfu*. But the Patriarch *Grimani* in this time beſieged *Preveſa*, tho he was neceſſitated to give over his Enterpriſe, and go to join the Fleet, becauſe the *Turks* from *Ætolia* came to the relief of it; yet it gave him an opportunity to view the Straits of that Bay, ſo that the Chriſtians now entred into a Conſultation what Action to go upon. *Gonzaga*, General of the Army, was for landing, and attacking *Preveſa*, which if once taken would bring their Ordnance to bear upon the Enemies Fleet in the Bay, and they might eaſily be ſtopt up there; but *Auria* oppoſed this Counſel, and adviſed rather, that if the Enemy could not be drawn out of the Bay to fight, they ſhould ſail directly and take *Lepanto*, and ravage

all

1538. Barbaroſſa *braved by* Auria. *Reprov'd by an Eunuch.*

all the Towns to the bottom of the Bay of *Corinth*; which was moſtly approved of. Now the Chriſtian Fleet no ſooner appeared before the Bay of *Ambracia*, but *Barbaroſſa* was very irreſolute what to do; for which he was ſharply reproved by an Eunuch of *Soly-man's* Court, ſent him as his Companion, as if he had been guilty of Cowardice: who in the cloſe of his Diſcourſe willing him to beware, that whilſt he feared a moſt honourable Death, which was uncertain, tho the Battel were loſt, he drew not upon himſelf the certain danger of a ſhameful Death by the diſpleaſure of *Solyman*; *Barbaroſſa* turn'd himſelf about to *Salec* one of the Arch-Pirates, and ſaid, *We muſt for ought I can ſee venture this Battel, tho it be at too much diſadvantage, leſt perhaps we periſh by the Complaints of this barking Half-Man.*

Upon this *Barbaroſſa* weighed Anchor, and preſently put out of the Bay to fight the Chriſtians, who were now, as not expecting he durſt do it, ſteering towards *Leucade*: but *Auria* immediately upon the News, put all things in order for Battel; as *Barbaroſſa* was no ways wanting on his part to do the like: before whoſe Fleet were placed about 20 nimble Gallies under the Conduct of *Gragut* an Arch-Pirate, the foremoſt of which was now come to the great Galleon of *Bondelmerus*; who when he came within due reach, poured in ſo many great and ſmall Shot upon them, that they were glad to be farther off. In the mean time *Auria* being reſolved not to engage with his Gallies without the Men of War, which by reaſon of a Calm were not able to bear up with them, he ſteered his Courſe accordingly; which made the crafty old *Turk* change his alſo, and lie ſtill for fear of being circumvented: however a little before Sun-ſet both his Wings began in divers places to engage the Chriſtians, from whom they took two Gallies and a *Spaniſh* Man of War, and ſunk two Ships more, with ſome other damage; but a ſudden Tempeſt ariſing, the Chriſtians ſailed back for *Corfu* in ſuch haſte, as ſeemed rather a Flight than a Retreat, for which *Auria* was ſufficiently cenſured: and becauſe the Chriſtians, it's likely out of fear, had put out the Lights which they uſually carried in their Poops, *Barbaroſſa* heartily laughed at it, and would often ſay in *Spaniſh*, *Auria* had put out his Light, the better

better in the dark to hide his flight. *Barbaroſſa* ſoon after came with his Fleet to the Iſle of *Paxos*, four Leagues from *Corfu* Eaſtward, braving the Chriſtians as if he would have fought them if they durſt; but their protracted Conſults about it, and his returning to *Ambracia* about the 7*th* of *Octob.* for fear of tempeſtuous Weather, ended this matter, and gave the Chriſtians an opportunity to beſiege and take *Caſtle Nuovo*; which contrary to Articles was gariſoned for the uſe of the Emperor, and made the *Venetians* ſo diſcontented, that they ſued to *Solyman* for a Peace, as you'l hear by and by.

Chriſtians take Caſtle-Nuovo.

But while theſe things were in agitation, *Barbaroſſa* putting to Sea to relieve *Caſtle-Nuovo*, many of his Gallies by a ſudden Tempeſt were ſhipwreck'd on the *Acroceraunian* Rocks, and his Loſs was reported to be 20000 Men; yet *Auria* refuſing upon this advantage to purſue him, and returning into *Italy*, made *Urſin* a noble *Venetian* then in the Service merrily ſay, That *Auria* had done nothing but wiſely and politickly, in ſetting the *Venetians* and *Turks* together by the ears, and opening a door for a long War, whether the *Venetians* would or not, ſo that the Emperor himſelf could not have wiſhed better, and that without the loſs of one Galley. *Solyman* to recover *Caſtle-Nuovo*, gari- 1539.
ſoned by 4000 *Spaniards* under the Command of *Sarmentus*, ſent *Barbaroſſa* next Spring to beſiege it both *Recovered by* Barba-
by Sea and Land; but the Men that firſt landed out of roſſa.
30 Gallies were beaten back again, and many of them ſlain and taken Priſoners: However, when the whole *Turkiſh* Fleet and Ordnance arriv'd, they landed again; wherein and in making their approach, in the ſpace of three days the Chriſtians ſlew above 1000 of them. At length having every where inveſted and battered the Town, taken one of the Towers, and made a Breach, they ſtormed it, and after a moſt cruel and bloody Fight ſlew *Sarmentus* and the Gariſon almoſt every Man; but the Officers and Soldiers in the Caſtle had Quarter given them. Yet notwithſtanding this Succeſs of *Barbaroſſa*, his threatnings of *Bembo* the *Venetian* Governour of *Cattaro*, could not make him deliver up the place; however he afterwards ſo appeaſed him with Preſents, that he departed out of the Bay.

About

1539. About this time a final Period having been put to the long Wars between the Emperor *Charles* V. and *Francis* I. of *France*, they both ſent ſolemn Embaſſies to the Republick of *Venice*, to invite them to join in a League with them againſt the *Turks*, the common Enemies of *Chriſtendom*; about whoſe Propoſals the Senate held divers Conferences and Debates, and at laſt came to this Reſolution, to ſend three Embaſſadors abroad, *viz.* one to the Emperor, and another to the *French*, with orders to endeavour to penetrate into their Deſigns; while the third was diſpatch'd away with all ſpeed to *Solyman*, and to do all he could to ſave unto the Republick their Cities of *Napoli di Romania* and *Malvaſia*, which *Solyman* required of them before he would grant them Peace. Which matter while their Embaſſador was carefully ſolliciting, and offered inſtead of the ſaid Towns a great Sum of Mony, *Solyman* took him up ſharply as a baſe Diſſembler; and after he had proteſted he would never grant him Peace unleſs thoſe Cities were yielded him, he recounted to him all the private Inſtructions of his Embaſſy, and that in ſuch Terms as not only frighted the Embaſſador to yield to the Renunciation of the ſaid Cities, but of two Caſtles alſo in *Dalmatia*: which ſo enraged the Senate againſt him, that he had much ado to ſave himſelf from Baniſhment, and the Confiſcation of his Eſtate. However the Traitors were ſometime after diſcovered and executed, according to their juſt Demerits.

Venetians make a Peace with the Turks.

1540. Now that we have made Peace, ſuch as it is, between the *Venetians* and *Turks*, it will be proper for us to look again towards *Hungary*; where we find *John Sepuvius* King of that Country, and *Solyman*'s Tributary, depart this Life, in the Year 1540. and leaving a young Son behind him by *Iſabel* his Queen, Daughter to *Sigiſmund* King of *Poland*, under the Tuition of *George* Biſhop of *Waradin*, and *Peter Vache* a Nobleman, and his near Kinſman, who was baptized *Stephen*, and preſently after crowned King of *Hungary*: while a ſolemn Embaſſy was diſpatch'd to *Solyman* to acquaint him with it, and with Preſents of ten Bowls of pure Gold curiouſly wrought, 600 of Silver gilt and engraven, 40 pieces of Purple Silk, and Cloth of Gold for *Turks* Gerens, and 50 Pound of coin'd Gold to be paid in

in the name of two years Tribute. *Ferdinand*, you may be ſure, was ſorry for all this, who ſeeing he expected nothing leſs than all *Hungary* upon the death of King *John*, projected now to recover it by Arms; whereunto he was inſtigated very much by the Arguments and Perſuaſions of the fugitive *Hungarians* about him, as well as by his *German* Officers, whoſe Gain and Intereſt conſiſted in War.

But *Laſchus* the *Polander*, a Perſon well verſed in Military and Civil Affairs, was of a contrary Opinion; who plainly telling *Ferdinand*, the Kingdom of *Hungary* was to be obtained rather by Policy than Force, by craving it at *Solyman*'s hand, to hold it of him by Tribute, as King *John* had done; he appointed him his Embaſſador to the Port for that purpoſe, tho at the ſame time truſting to the aſſiſtance of the Emperor his Brother, and the coming in of the unconſtant *Hungarians*, he made all neceſſary Preparations for War. But before he would come to an open Rupture, he ſent the Count of *Salm* to the Queen of *Hungary*, to ſhew her the Articles of the League between him and the late King her Husband, whom he was to ſucceed, and to offer unto her Son the Province of *Sepuſia*, as was expreſly agreed between them, and in caſe of refuſal to make uſe of Menaces. But ſhe anſwering, ſhe would firſt adviſe with her Father *Sigiſmund*, whoſe Juſtice and Integrity was ſuch, as King *Ferdinand* had occaſion for no other Arbitrator beſides himſelf; *Ferdinand* without any more ado invaded *Hungary*, took *Vicegrade*, *Peſth* and *Vaſbia*, and then laid ſiege to *Buda*; but failing in that deſign, his General *Velſius* marched to *Alba Regalis*, which by the means of *Perenus* was quickly ſurrender'd to him.

Laſchus *perſuades* Ferdinand *to ſend an Embaſſy to the Port.*

Ferdinand *invades* Hungary.

In the mean time the Queen craving Aid of the Governours of the *Turkiſh* Frontiers, who would not ſtir without particular Directions from the Port, had by her Embaſſadors recourſe to *Solyman* himſelf; who not only promiſed to protect her and her Son againſt *Ferdinand*, and ſent coſtly Preſents to the young King, but wrote effectually to *Uſtref* and *Mahometes*, his Lieutenants on the Frontiers, to aid the Queen without delay, and make no excuſe becauſe it was Winter, and threatning if any harm ſhould befal her thro their default, it ſhould coſt them their Heads: according to which,

1540. which, they made all neceſſary Preparations to aſſiſt her; whoſe Embaſſadors had ſcarce left the Port, when *Laſchus* arrived, and met with another ſort of Entertainment, for he was ſoon after clapt in Priſon, and told by *Ruſtan*, *Solyman*'s Son-in-law, he deſerved Death for offending with over-much freedom the Majeſty of ſo courteous a Prince.

Laſchus *impriſon'd.*

1541. Spring at length being come, *Mahometes* and *Uſtref* with their Forces joining with *Valentine* the Queen's General, by whom they were furniſhed with Cannon and Proviſions, paſſed the *Danube* and took *Vachia*; from whence they removed to *Peſth*, which was ſo valiantly defended by the Gariſon, and they ſo ill provided with Victuals, that after they had faithfully reſtored the Cannon to the Queen, they returned home again, but were many of them ſlain by the *Hungarians* in their retreat. *Ferdinand* hearing of their departure, revived his hopes of recovering *Hungary*, and to that end ſent more Troops thither under the Command of the Lord *William Rogendorf* Steward of the Houſhold; who joining the old Army, marched directly to *Buda*, and beſieg'd it. He firſt planted a Battery on St. *Gerrards* Mount, from whence he afterwards removed his Camp to the *Jews* Graves, and began in two places to batter the Walls with that Violence, that a great part of them was beaten down: another part, over-charged with Earth, which the beſieged had caſt upon the inner-ſide for the ſtrengthening thereof, was at the ſame time born quite down, to the great terror and amazement of the whole City; inſomuch that if the General, who was naturally of a ſlow and ſuſpicious Diſpoſition, had attack'd it preſently, it muſt unavoidably have been taken: but the Beſieged, with incredible diligence and labour in the Night, raiſed a new Rampire inſtead of the beaten-down Wall, which made the Work much more difficult for the *Germans* next Morning; ſo that they were quite beaten off with the Loſs of about 1600 Men. Neither were they more ſucceſsful in the Mines, which were all countermined by the Beſieged. But for all this the City, which could not be taken by Force, had like to have been loſt by baſe Treachery; for one *Bornemiſſa* a Lawyer promiſed *Revalius* Marſhal in the Enemies Camp, to let in a Body of *Hungarians* at the Poſtern in St. *Mary*'s Church-yard: but *Rogendorf* having

Buda *beſieg'd by* Ferdinand's *Forces in vain.*

having appointed *Germans*, contrary to agreement, for that purpoſe, they were let in by *Bornemiſſa* at midnight; but he perceiving the fraud, neglected to conduct them on, and ſo being in a ſtrange place, and terrified in the dark with their own ſhadows, fled out at the Poſtern again, many of whom were ſlain in the Rear, or taken Priſoners.

Solyman underſtanding the Queen's diſtreſs, and *Ferdinand*, ſupported by the Emperor his Brother, his ambition to conquer *Hungary*, ſet all the Affairs of his Empire in order; and firſt ſent *Solyman* Baſſa to *Babylon* for the defence of his Frontiers on that ſide, againſt the *Perſians*; *Mahometes* into *Hungary* to relieve the beſieged Queen, and *Uſtref* after him with another Army to ſtay at *Belgrade*, to give aid as occaſion ſerved. His Fleet he committed to *Barbaroſſa* againſt *Auria*, who a little before had driven the *Turks* and *Moors* out of all the Towns along the Coaſt of *Africa*, which the *Moors* call *Mahomedia*, except *Leptis*, and cauſed them to ſubmit to *Muleaſſes* King of *Tunis*. And againſt *Maylat* Vayvod of *Tranſylvania*, who ſided with *Ferdinand*, he ſent *Achometes* Governour of *Niſſa*, and commanded the Prince of *Valachia* to aſſiſt him; while himſelf went to *Adrianople*, and raiſed a third Army, to be commanded by *Ruſtan* his Son-in-law. Now *Mahometes* Baſſa enter'd *Hungary* with his Army, about the middle of *June* 1541. of whoſe arrival the Chriſtians being informed, they held a Council whether they had beſt continue the Siege, or march and fight the Enemy: But the fatal Period of the *Hungarian* Kingdom haſtning on, *Rogendorf*'s Opinion prevailed for continuing the Siege, he ſeeming more willing to die, than to croſs over the River to *Peſth*, or retreat to *Vicegrade* or *Gran*, as many would have perſuaded him; and therefore he removed his Camp to the farther ſide of the City, at the foot of St. *Gerrard*'s Mount, on purpoſe that the *Turks*, whom he knew would not go far from the River and their Fleet, might be forced dangerouſly to paſs the Mouth of his Cannon, which he had planted conveniently for that purpoſe. His Camp on the right was ſecured with a ſteep Hill, on the left with a River, and behind towards the City with a ſtrong Retrenchment. On the right upon a little riſing Ground, was his leſſer Camp of *Hungarians*.

Solyman's Preparations.

Turks *come to the Relief of* Buda.

1541. *rians.* He also made a Bridg from his Camp to a little Island in the River, and with a Fort well mounted with Cannon commanded both the River and the Plain, thereby both to annoy their Fleet and their Army in the Plain. As soon as the *Turks* approached the City, they were joined by *Valentine* the Queen's Ambassador with 2000 Horse, who instructed them in all particulars concerning the Enemy. *Mahometes* Bassa quickly intrenched himself strongly within half a Mile of the Christians Camp, while the other *Mahometes*, Governour of *Belgrade*, took the higher Ground towards the *Hungarian* Camp. The Christians Fleet upon the River was considerably stronger than that of the *Turks*; but *Rogendorf*'s neglecting to possess himself of the Island of *Cepelia*, proved of great advantage to the Enemy.

The Armies lying in this order, the *Turks* from the higher Ground, and out of *Cepelia*, perceiving the *Germans* in the little Island to be negligent of their Guard, suddenly attacked the Island, killed 600 of them, before they were well awaked or armed, while the rest flying over the Bridge into the Camp, made such precipitate haste, that many of them were drowned in the River; but the Christians at first strangely dismayed, yet disdaining to be thus beaten from the Island, and to lose their Cannon, so courageously charged the *Turks* then busied in stripping the Dead, that they quickly drove them back again to their Boats. Yet notwithstanding this, the *Turks* shortly after grew very troublesome to the Christians Camp: and some reporting that *Valentine*, by a faithful Soldier advertising *Perenus* speedily to provide for his own safety, and his *Hungarians*, because there was a great Beast coming, who would at one morsel devour them; this gave him just apprehensions that *Solyman* himself, with all his Power, would come into the Camp; and therefore he acquainted the General, unless he quickly marched off, he would provide in time for himself and his Countrymen. But notwithstanding the obstinacy of the General against this Counsel, yet Fear at length urged them to pass the River next Night, in four Convoys to *Pesth*. The two first did well enough; but the *Turks* fell upon the rest, which were chiefly the Foot, before they could get out of their Camp. The

upper-

uppermoſt Tents, wherein *Perenus* lay, were firſt taken by *Mahometes* of *Belgrade*, and *Valentine* and the *German* Foot chaſed over St. *Gerrard*'s Mount. The Gariſon of *Buda* at the ſame time ſallied upon them, and the Biſhop cauſed a great Stack of Straw ſtanding by the King's Stables near the River-ſide to be ſet on fire, which gave the Infidels light to deſtroy the Chriſtians, on whom the Cannon was fired from all Quarters; and to increaſe the danger, *Caſon* the *Turkiſh* Admiral with light Boats came up the Stream, and ſet upon the Ships croſſing the River to *Peſth*, ſome of whom he took, and ſunk divers others, while the reſt of the *Germans* flying over the Bridg into the little Iſland, were purſued by the *Turks*, and there ſlain without Mercy, and others miſerably periſhed in the River. But the Chriſtian Fleets ſeeing all loſt, cleared themſelves as ſoon as they could of the *Turks* with their Cannon, and got up the River to *Comorra*. The reſt of the Land-Troops endured the ſame Fortune in the Camp; of whom the *Bohemians* died moſt honourably, valiantly fighting againſt the Enemy. About 3000 Men of one ſort or another, who had taken a little Hill by St. *Gerrard*'s Church, there defended themſelves till ſuch time as about 2000 of them were ſlain; the reſt throwing down their Arms, were afterwards barbarouſly kill'd by *Solyman*'s Command. At the ſame time *Caſon*, with his victorious Fleet, coming to the Shore of *Peſth*, quickly frighted the Horſe out of it; and the reſt were ſo diſpirited, that they made but little defence: So that wealthy Place and themſelves quickly became a Prey to the barbarous Infidels, who exerciſed the utmoſt of their Cruelty upon them. So that the Chriſtians, by the report of ſome, loſt by this War 20000 Men one way or other, beſides 36 pieces of great Cannon, and 150 ſmaller ones upon this occaſion; and for their unfortunate General *Rogendarf*, he died ſoon after in a little Village near *Comorra* of his Wounds and Grief.

A moſt dreadful Slaughter of the Chriſtians.

Solyman, in *Auguſt* after this Victory, came with a great Power to *Buda*, and by his Embaſſadors, with whom he ſent rich Preſents to the young King, he required the Queen to ſend him to his Camp; which ſhe, to avoid all thoughts of ſuſpicion, by the Biſhop's advice did: and at his coming he was for Honour-ſake

Solyman ſends for the young King into the Camp.

1541. met by some fine Troops of *Turkish* Horse, and the Janizaries all the way he passed through the Camp stood to their Arms. *Solyman* looked upon the princely Babe in Swadling-Clouts courteously, talked familiarly with the Nurse, and commanded his Sons *Selymus* and *Bajazet* there present to take him in their Arms and kiss him, in token of the Love they would bear him, whom they were in time to have for their Friend and Tributary. But *Solyman* at such time as the Nobles of *Hungary* were merry at Dinner with the Bassas, commanded some Troops, before instructed in the Business, under pretence of going to see the City, to take the Sabatine Gate and chief Streets, which was done so cunningly and quietly, as hardly to be noted by the wariest Observer, till it was too late; but when the thing was done, the Captain of the Janizaries caused Proclamation to be made in all Parts of the City, that the Citizens should without Fear keep in their Houses, and presently, as they would have their Lives, Liberties and Goods saved, give up their Arms; which they were necessitated to do accordingly, and receive those unwelcome Guests into their Houses: but the *Turks* were kept under so severe a Discipline, that no Citizen was any ways injured by them. Now when *Solyman* understood that the City was thus quietly taken, he sent the Child back again to the Queen, but detained the Nobility in the Camp; whereat they were greatly surprized, as well as the poor Queen, who by submissive Letters desired *Solyman* not to forget the Faith he had long before given her, and even lately confirmed by his Embassadors, but be mindful thereof, and send back the Nobility who had merited well, both of him and her: and *Rustan* Bassa, whom she had now prevailed on with large Presents, proved an Intercessor for her.

Surprizes Buda, and detains the Nobility.

Opinions about disposing of Hungary.

Hereupon *Solyman* consulted with his Bassas about disposing of the Kingdom of *Hungary*, who varied much in their Opinions concerning this matter: *Mahometes* was for carrying the young King and all the Nobility to *Constantinople*, and leaving such a Governor in *Buda*, who by Moderation rather than Rigour might put the People out of any Apprehension of Servitude; but *Rustan* Bassa stood altogether upon Terms of Honour, alledging nothing to be so dishonourable to

to ſo great a Monarch, who had never blemiſhed the Glory of his Name, than after Victory, againſt all reaſon, to break his Faith at once with a weak Woman and poor Infant, whom before he had taken into his Protection. *Mahometes*, Governour of *Belgrade*, diſliking both theſe Opinions, as too full of Lenity, urged the beſt way for the Emperor, was to turn the Kingdom of *Hungary*, after the manner of his Anceſtors, into the Form of a Province, to ſend the Queen to her Father, and to bring up her Son in his Court at *Conſtantinople*, and in the *Mahometan* Religion; to put the Nobility of *Hungary* to death, to raſe their Caſtles, and tranſport the better ſort of Families into *Aſia*; but for the meaner ſort, they ought to be kept under with good Gariſons, and be left to till the Ground and inhabit the Cities.

Hungary reduced to a Province.

But *Solyman* thinking it proper to ſacrifice, before he had fully reſolved on the Matter, with his two Sons entered *Buda* on the 30th of *Auguſt*; and when that was over, he publiſhed a Decree, the fatal Doom of that flouriſhing Kingdom, that *Buda* ſhould be kept with a *Turkiſh* Gariſon, and the Kingdom converted into a Province of his Empire, and the Queen with her young Son ſhould preſently leave the City and live at *Lippa*: which ſhe quickly, tho very ſorrowfully, did, being attended by the Nobility, now all ſet at liberty, except *Valentine*, who was ſtill detained in the Camp. Now whilſt theſe things were tranſacting at *Buda*, King *Ferdinand* being informed of the Diſaſter of his Army, ſent *Velſius* to *Comorra*, to gather the ſcatter'd Remains of them together, and to give them hopes of Pay and new Succours, and at the ſame time ſent two Embaſſadors with curious Preſents to *Solyman*, amongſt which was a Silver Globe, ſhewing the Hour of the Day, Motion of the Planets, Change of the Moon, *&c.* as alſo with Terms of Peace. They were kindly received and feaſted after the *Turkiſh* manner of Diet, and when they were admitted to Audience, they humbly deſired *Solyman* would beſtow the Kingdom of *Hungary* upon *Ferdinand*, almoſt upon the ſame Conditions as *Laſchus* had before required it of him at *Conſtantinople*, paying him the ſame yearly Tribute as King *John* had done, and promiſing to draw the Emperor *Charles* into the League, that he might turn his Forces againſt the *Perſians*,

Ferdinand ſends Embaſſadors to Solyman.

1541. *sians*, with a great many Arguments more to induce *Solyman* to be favourable to their Master. But they found his Answer by *Rustan* Bassa much contrary to their Expectations; for this was his firm Resolution concerning the Conditions of Peace, That *Ferdinand* should forthwith restore all the Places formerly belonging to King *Lewis*, and for ever after not meddle with *Hungary*: and whereas he had put him to much Charge in War, for that he was content to impose an easy Tribute upon *Austria*, but if he agreed not to this, let him take what followed. Hereupon the Embassadors required a Truce till such time as King *Ferdinand* and the Emperor his Brother might be made acquainted with the matter; which *Solyman* refused, but allowed them on purpose to see all his Camp, where there was such exact Discipline and Silence, as was almost wonderful to observe, and then sent them home: and when he had made *Solyman*, an *Hungarian* by Birth, Governour of *Buda*, he himself returned to *Constantinople*, and by the way set *Laschus*, King *Ferdinand*'s Embassador, at liberty.

His Answer.

Maylat *taken prisoner.*

As *Solyman* was on his return to *Thrace*, he received the welcome news, that *Stephen Maylat*, Vayod of *Transylvania*, who sided with *Ferdinand*, was taken by *Peter* of *Moldavia*, and Prince of *Walachia*, and that all the Country was pacify'd and subjected to his Obedience. For *Maylat* not being able to keep the field against the *Moldavians* in conjunction with the Governour of *Nicopolis*, named *Achometes*, he fled to the strong Town of *Fogaras*, and was followed thither by *Achometes*; who finding that the Place could not be taken by force, by his Artifice deluded *Maylat* to come into his Camp to conclude upon Terms of Peace: but when he had got him there, he without further ado secured him, and had *Fogaras* quickly surrender'd to him; after which almost all the Country of *Transylvania* was, by *Solyman*'s consent, given to the young King *Stephen*, to whom the People presently swore Allegiance, and with many Presents honoured him at *Lippa*, with the Queen his Mother, and the Bishop and *Vicche* his Protectors.

Transylvania *given to the young King.*

Some Authors bring in a Relation of the Emperor *Charles* the Vth's unfortunate Expedition to *Algiers* in this place, as part of the *Turkish* History, tho very lit-

tle

tle to the purpoſe, becauſe it appears not to be directly a War againſt the *Turks*, but Pirates of *Barbary* now infeſting all the Straits from one end to another, and more eſpecially to the *Spaniards*, whom the Divine Providence ſeemed juſtly to puniſh hereby, ſince they themſelves had been the occaſion, by the Expulſion of the *Moors* out of *Granada*, of their ſettling on the oppoſite Shore of *Africa*, who have from thence by their Piracies become a Plague to them and all *Europe* ever ſince: and the confounding the Names of *Turk* and *Mahometan*, has made many Writers miſtake, as if a *Moor*, becauſe he is a *Mahometan*, is of the ſame People and Nation with a *Turk*. But to leave any further Digreſſion, we are to obſerve, that new Emulations and a War beginning to break out afreſh between the Emperor *Charles*, and King *Francis* of *France*, to which the murdering of the *French* Embaſſador *Rinco* by ſome *Spaniards* in *Italy* (as he was paſſing to *Venice*, and ſo to *Turky*, to ſollicite *Solyman* to make war upon the Emperor) did not a little contribute. *Francis* ſent *Anthony Polinus* upon another Embaſſy to *Solyman*, who met him in *Myſia*, in his return from *Buda*; where after *Solyman* had received the Preſent, and read the *French* King's Letter, he ſeemed to be much concern'd for the Death of *Rinco*, and promiſed to be aſſiſting to his Maſter, but deferred the further Anſwer till he came to *Conſtantinople*. *Polinus* above all things deſired that *Barbaroſſa* with the *Turkiſh* Fleet would come into *Provence*, where he ſhould be received into the *French* Harbours, and be employ'd againſt the Emperor as occaſion did require; and that he would requeſt the *Venetians* to confederate with his Maſter againſt the Emperor. When about the latter end of *December* they were arrived at *Conſtantinople*, *Solyman* adviſed the Embaſſador to return into *France*, and bring back an account of the fixed time and full Reſolution of the King in reſpect to the waging the intended War; which he did, and returned in as ſhort a time as well could be. But in his way at *Venice* not finding *Junusbeius*, whom *Solyman* had promiſed to ſend Embaſſador thither, he with the Lieger Embaſſador of *France*, uſed all the Arguments imaginable to induce the Senate to take up Arms with the *French* againſt the Emperor; but the Senate returning a crafty and dilatory Anſwer,

1542. French *Embaſſador ſollicites* Solyman *and the* Venetians *to make war upon the Emperor.*

1542. till *Fanusbeius* came, he upon his arrival desired that the League made by *Badoerius*, their Embassador at *Constantinople*, might be confirmed, and so recommended the *French* King's Cause to the Senate; that he requested no more but that they would add further Favours to that Friendship they had already with the *French*, and the rather because *Solyman* had esteemed him as a Brother, and had undertaken to assist him against *Charles* King of *Spain*: but he said nothing of joining in the League with, or engaging in his Quarrel, which was quite short of what the Embassador expected. However he continued his Journey to *Constantinople*, where also he found things more difficult than ever he dreamed of; the great Bassa saying there could be no Fleet sent out that Year, because of the approach of Winter: which made the Embassador so out of humour, and to forget himself to that degree, that he cursed the froward and unconstant Humours of the Bassas, called upon the Faith of *Solyman*, but at the same time sollicited them not to betray the Majesty of his King, who had now invaded the *Netherlands*, and was as good as sure of Victory. But this manner of Procedure, so ungrateful to the proud Bassas, excited them sharply to take him up, and for that time to shake him off: To which end having sent for him and the other *French* Gentlemen to the Court, *Solyman* Bassa the Eunuch took him to task, in a Speech on purpose directed to him; so that *Polinus* was at his wits end, and knew not what to think of the matter: and indeed his Concern was so much the more aggravated, since the Words seemed to have proceeded from *Solyman*'s own Mouth, who was thought to have heard all: for behind the Bassas, as they sat in Council, there was a Window with a brazen Grate, and a Curtain drawn before it, that the Emperor, at pleasure and unperceiv'd, might hear the Complaints and Petitions of all Nations, and observe the Demeanor of his Counsellors. But nothing could discourage the bold *Frenchman* from prosecuting his Suit: for after he had by his Presents won the Favour of the *Capiaga*, or chief Porter, a Man always of great Authority in the *Turkish* Court, he not only labour'd, but obtained, by his means, to be brought into the Emperor's Presence, even in the secretest Part of the Court, where few

Christians

Christians had ever been; and there having recounted unto *Solyman* how all things had gone, he earnestly intreated him not to fail the King's Expectations of the Fleet he had promised. To this *Solyman* courteously, but positively answered, *That the opportunity of sending out the Fleet was past, not by his Will, which was always immutable and firm, but by his late arrival, and the time of the year half spent; but he promised faithfully the following Spring to send him as large a Fleet as he desired against* Charles *his Enemy.* With which Answer, the Embassador immediately dispatch'd a Messenger to *France.* Solyman's *Answer to the* French *Embassador.*

But to leave at present the Sollicitations and Affairs of *France* at the Port, we shall now see how matters stand in *Germany*, after the peremptory and severe Answer of *Solyman* to *Ferdinand*'s Embassadors suing for a Peace, with which King *Ferdinand* could not chuse but be alarm'd; and therefore the Princes and States of *Germany* at his request, unanimously resolved to take up Arms against the *Turks*, for the recovery of *Buda*, and other lost Places in *Hungary.* To which end the Princes and free Cities raised 30000 Foot, and 7000 Horse, under the Command of *Joachim* Marquis of *Brandenburg*: and being joined at *Vienna* by *Ferdinand*'s Forces, 10000 Horse out of *Stiria*, 15000 *Hungarian* Horse, and 3000 choice *Italian* Foot sent to *Ferdinand* by Pope *Paul* III. under the Command of *Alexander Vitellius*; the Marquis marched so slowly along the *Danube*, that many of his Officers said the Summer would be spent before they could enter upon Action. At length being come to *Gran*, and there having certain Intelligence from *Semendria*, that the report of the *Turks* coming to *Hungary* with a great Army was false, and that there were scarce 1000 *Janizaries*, and not above twice so many Horse come to *Buda*; and withal that the *Turkish* Fleet was much inferior to the King's: they were hereby the more incouraged to march, and the General, contrary to the Opinion of the *Hungarian* Commanders, would pass the *Danube*, and first besiege *Pesth* before they attack'd *Buda*, which would be the sooner taken if the other were lost. At the same time *Medices* an *Italian*, and Admiral of the Fleet, came down the River, and forc'd the *Turks* out of the Island of St. *Margaret*, lying in the *Princes of* Germany *join their Forces with King* Ferdinand *against the* Turks.

3542. the River a little above *Buda*, whose Garison the General upon his approach understood to be considerably reinforced. The Marquis had no sooner come near *Pesth*, but the *Turks* sallied out at one of the Gates, and skirmished with the *Hungarians*, with no great Loss on either side; but next day *Vitellius* approaching the City with five Companies, to find out a place to raise a Battery, the *Turks* made a sally at two of the Gates, and fought with the Christians with equal Courage and Force; but the former being reinforced with new Supplies of Horse and Foot, first the Christian Foot, and then the Horse were forced to a disorderly Retreat, with the loss of four Captains and two Ensigns: and had not *Vitellius* with some Horse stoutly repulsed the *Janizaries*, the loss had been much greater. *Vitellius* however to be revenged, after he had engaged *Perenus* to be ready to join him, as occasion should require, incamped in the King's Orchards, which were walled as it were a Mile about, and equally distant both from the great Camp and City; upon whom the Enemy, flush'd with the former day's success, bravely sallied at the East-side of the City, and courageously charged him: but *Vitellius* covering his Shot with his Pikes, and keeping in close Order, receiv'd the Enemy's Charge, and ply'd them so with Ball under the Pikes, oftentimes upon their Knees, that many of the *Turks* were slain, while they desperately fought to break in upon the Christians. In the mean time when many of the *Turkish* Horse and Janizaries coming out of the Gates, and several others beholding the Fight, were got over the River from *Buda* to participate of the Victory, and had covered the hithermost Bank, *Vitellius* having retreated a little on purpose, as if he had been overpowered, the Enemy began then to shout, and more fiercely to attack the Christians: Their Horse fell in their Rear, with a design to charge them that way, which gave *Perenus* an opportunity to get between them and the City with his light Horse, who was followed by *Maurice*, afterwards Duke of *Saxony*, with a Troop of brave *German* Horse: so that the *Turks* being now unexpectedly beset both before and behind, were miserably slain, *Segames* having upon this occasion lost above 100 Janizaries, and four hundred other Soldiers. The Christians incouraged with this little

little Victory, preſently raiſed their Batteries; and having made a Breach in the Walls, the Signal for an Aſſault was given, when four *Italian* Captains with their Companies, ran deſperately by the ruins of the Wall to the Breach: but while they were ſetting up their Colours, and wondering at the Countermure ſo readily made there by the Enemy, they were ſuddenly overwhelmed with a Shower of Arrows and Bullets; yet being ſtill incouraged by *Vitellius*, they did what they could to have entred, while the *Germans* and *Hungarians* came not at all to their aſſiſtance, inſomuch that a *Turk* was heard to ſpeak aloud in the *Italian* Tongue, *Why do not you, valiant* Italians, *ſpare your ſelves, and give place to thoſe lazy* Germans? *We all deſire to ſpare you, and to beat the Drunkenneſs out of their cowardly Heads, that might no more hereafter provoke us.* At length the *Italians* were forced to make a diſorderly retreat, after the Chriſtians had 700 Men ſlain in this Aſſault, beſides many wounded. *Chriſtians aſſault Peſth in vain.*

Hereupon the General and chief Commanders fell into a Conſultation, whether they ſhould raiſe the Siege or no; but while they continued divided in their Opinions, the news came that *Achometes*, *Solyman*'s Lieutenant of the *European* Horſe, was coming to the *Drave* to fall upon them, tho the fame was falſe; they determined then to march off, and return for *Vienna*. But firſt *Segemes* perceiving how much the Chriſtian Army was diſcouraged by the laſt day's ill ſucceſs, ſent out early in the Morning all his Horſe, and after them ſome Companies of Foot to ſuſtain them, who in many places skirmiſhed with the *Hungarians*; and the matter was brought to that paſs, that many of the beſt Soldiers, as if on purpoſe, encountred together hand to hand, in the ſight of the *Germans* and *Italians:* And here it happened that a notable Commander of the *Turks* deſired to ſee *Vitellius*; and being ſhewed to him, the *Turk* ran and embraced him out of reſpect, and ſo departed. The Night following the Batteries were removed, and the Army marched off towards the River to the Fleet; which being perceived by the *Turks*, they ſallied every way out of the City, and with a great Cry upbraiding them of Cowardice, cloſely purſued their Rear: nay, *Ulemas* the Governour came over himſelf from *Buda*, and ſo eagerly followed the Army, that *Purſued, and return to* Vienna.

1542. that they could hardly have escaped without great danger, had not *Vitellius* with his *Italians* made a bold stand, and desired the *German* and *Hungarian* Horse to turn upon the Enemy; which they did, and not only repulsed, but also routed them, and in the pursuit slew many. After which the Army marched on quietly, tho 700 *Germans*, who were sick, and straggled behind the Army, were by the *Turkish* Horse miserably slain in the sight of their Companions. When the Army was got to *Vienna*, they were there broke up; but to cover the shame of this unfortunate Expedition, and divert mens Discourse another way, the noble *Hungarian*, *Peter Perenus*, was upon a pretended suspicion of aspiring to the Kingdom of *Hungary*, seized for a Traitor by *Ferdinand*'s Command, and a great many strange things surmised against him, tending to his Destruction. But of this, and the unhappy Affairs of the *Germans* in *Hungary*, enough at this time.

1543. We return now to the effect of the *French* Embassador's Sollicitations, and *Solyman*'s Promise to assist his Master, which out of envy to *Barbarossa*, was opposed very much by *Solyman* the Eunuch Visier in Council; where he openly protested he saw no cause why the *Turkish* Emperor should, to his great Charge and common Danger, send out such a Fleet, but to serve *Barbarossa*'s turn. But *Solyman*, pursuant to his promise, resolved to send his Fleet under *Barbarossa*, to aid the *French*; and two days after the *French* Embassador, now revived with the Decree, was solemnly feasted by *Rustan* Bassa, and *Solyman* Eunuch Visier, the same being their Great Master's Pleasure, and had many Presents made him and his Retinue; but at his taking Audience of leave, *Solyman* gave him strict Charge of his Navy, and withal sent a Letter by him to his Master, importing the same thing in respect to his Fleet, and the safe return of it, and wishing him not to be deceived with Proposals of a deceitful Peace from *Charles* King of *Spain* his Enemy. *Polinus* upon this, leaving *Adrianople* where *Solyman* then lay, returned to *Constantinople*, where he found *Barbarossa* with 110 Gallies, and 40 Galleons, which he had fitted up with incredible diligence, ready to put to Sea, from whence they set sail thro the *Hellespont*, and at length arrived in the *Phare* of *Messina*; where

Solyman sends a Fleet to the aid of the French *King.*

where the *Turkish* Pirates being come with their Galliots within ſight of *Regium*, began to land their Men, which made the People preſently leave the City; but the Caſtle was ſtill kept by *Gaietano* a *Spaniard*, who refuſed any Parley with the *French* Embaſſador, and with his Shot ſlew ſome of the *Turks*, wherewith the reſt were ſo enraged, that they brake into the City, and fired it, ſore againſt the Will of the Embaſſador and *Barbaroſſa*, who endeavoured to find out the Authors thereof, and to have them puniſhed. After this the *Turks* landed, and planted ſome Cannon againſt the Caſtle, which with a few Shot ſo terrified the Commander, who was already much ſollicited with the Cries of his Wife to ſurrender, that he preſently gave up the Place, and all that was in it, into the hands of the Enemy, to whom with his Wife and Children, *Barbaroſſa*, at the requeſt of the *French* Embaſſador, gave both Life and Liberty; but he ſhut up the reſt in the Church, and gave the Spoil of the Caſtle to his Soldiers; and afterwards the Gariſon, which conſiſted of about 70 *Spaniards*, but many more Citizens, were all carried away Priſoners. And here one of the Captain's Daughters of exceeding Beauty, did ſo warm the wither'd Affections of the old Pirate *Barbaroſſa*, that he took her from her Father, inſtructed her in the *Mahometan* Superſtition, and ſo uſed her for his Wife, inſomuch that ſome Months after, when the Captain came to ſee his Daughter at *Porto Ercole*, he kindly entertained him as his Father-in-law. Barbaroſſa *in Love.*

Barbaroſſa ſailing along the Coaſt of *Italy*, came to *Oſtia* in the mouth of the *Tiber*; which ſo terrified the Citizens of *Rome*, that the *French* Embaſſador's Letter to Cardinal *Rudolphus* the Pope's Legate, to aſſure them there was no danger, could ſcarce keep them from forſaking the City. From thence he ſailed for *Marſeilles*, where we muſt now leave them, the *Turkiſh* Affairs in *Hungary* being again ripe to be treated of.

Solyman by this time was come thither in Perſon, and diſpatch'd *Amurathes* Governour of *Dalmatia*, and *Usmas* the *Perſian*, to beſiege *Walpo*, which was baſely delivered to them by the Treachery of the Gariſon; who were ſoon after juſtly rewarded by being all put to the Sword, while the General was uſed with much Courteſy by the *Turks*. *Five-Churches* alſo, and *Siclos*, were Turks *take ſeveral Places in* Hungary.

1543. were quickly delivered up, the Garison of which last Place were all put to death, because they did not do it sooner. *Solyman* being advertised of these Successes, marched from *Buda* to besiege *Gran*, then governed by two proud covetous *Spaniards*, called *Liscanus* and *Salamanca*. The *Turks* had no sooner invested the Place, but the Garison, who were before very uppish, begun now to be much dejected; and their Fear was also increased by the coming of Messengers from *Solyman*, who knowing of what Nations the Garison consisted, sent into the City 3 of his own Guard, who were a Runnagade *Italian*, *Spaniard* and *German*, that every one might hear them speak in their own Language. But notwithstanding all their Promises and Menaces, the Commanders stoutly answered, they were valiant Men, who reposed their last hopes in their Arms, and were neither to be won by Gifts, nor terrified by Threats. Hereupon the *Turks* the same day planted their Cannon upon the Hill before the City-Gate, and pick'd out the weakest parts of the Wall every where to assault them, so that they must needs be informed therein by some Traitor or another. At length the Tower being beaten down, and a great part of the Wall, and the *Turks* continually raking the Men upon the remaining Walls with their Muskets and Arrows, besides the hurt done to them by pieces of broken Stones, the Besieged were forced to raise new Fortifications within for their better defence. However, they most valiantly repulsed three Assaults of the Enemy upon the Breach, killed a great many of the Soldiers and Mariners that came up the River, and thought to lie safe in the Suburbs, and drove the rest to their Fleet. But an old *Calabrian* Engineer of King *Ferdinand*'s deserting from the City to the Enemy, communicated to them all that they desired to know in respect to the state, and best manner of attacking it; and it happened, while the *Turks* were carrying on their Works, that a gilt brazen Cross fell down from the top of the Cathedral; and it's reported that *Solyman* taking that as a good Omen, cried out presently, *Gran* is won. Now the two *Spanish* Commanders in the place, fearing the Event of the Siege, resolved to save themselves whatever came of it, to which end not long after an Ensign was let down over the Wall, and having by an Interpreter receiv-

Gran *besieged by* Solyman.

the *Turks* Faith, called *Salamanca* out, that he might upon better Conditions go thro with them for the surrendry of the Town. He was presently brought to *Achometes*, but before he went, he commanded them who defended the Water-Tower next the River-side to withdraw into the City; which they doing with precipitation, the vigilant *Turks* suddenly brake in, slew some of them, and possessed the Castle. However *Salamanca*'s compliance could procure them no better Conditions, than wholly to commit themselves to the Mercy of *Solyman*, which he agreed to, and writ to *Liscanus* to yield the City without any more ado; and so *Halis* Aga of the Janizaries having the Keys delivered to him, they enter'd peaceably, pick'd out all the beardless Youths, and commanded the rest to lay down their Arms; amongst which a flash of Powder happening to take fire, it blew the heap of Weapons among the *Turks*, who taking it as a piece of Treachery, fell furiously upon the Christians, and slew many of them: But *Halis* having appeas'd this Tumult, would by Proclamation and Rewards have induced the Garison to serve *Solyman*, of which not above 70 complied. The covetous *Liscanus*, notwithstanding his having made Shipwreck of his Honour, could not save his Treasure; first *Halis* took away his Gold Chain from him, and afterwards as he had stuffed his Saddles with Gold, thinking by that means slily to convey it away, a *Turk* laughing at him, took from him his Horses; saying, *That he who was to go by Water, had no need of Horses*: and when the Garison was come to *Presburg*, he together with *Salamanca*, and some other Officers, were seiz'd upon suspicion of Treachery, by *Ferdinand*'s Order. Gran *surrender'd to* Solyman.

Solyman enter'd *Gran* on the 10*th* of *August*, and after having converted the Christian Churches into *Mahometan* Mosques, and fortified the City, he went and laid siege to the Castle of *Tatta*, which was presently surrender'd, and raised by him. From hence he directed his March for *Alba Regalis*, so called as having been antiently the Coronation and Burying-place of the Kings of *Hungary*. This City is strongly situated in a great Lake, from which thro the Marsh or said Lake, lie three broad and high Causeways, well built with fair Houses and Gardens on each side, and a broad way in Alba Regalis *besieged by* Solyman.

1543. in the middle for Men to pass to and fro: at the end of every Causeway to the Land-ward, were cast up strong Bulwarks, whereby the Houses standing upon the Causeways were secured from danger from the Enemy, the Lake filling up all the spaces betwixt the Causeways, which were not passible; and the City it self standing in the midst of the Lake, surrounded with a strong Wall and deep Ditch, always full of Water, was hardly to be besieged. It was garison'd at this time by two Companies of *Germans*, and 200 Horse, besides 500 *Hungarian* Horse that liv'd by robbing, and were called by the infamous name of *Hussars*. Count *Torniello* who was come to *Raab*, sent also four Companies of *Italians* thither, who were followed by *Barcotius*, Captain of the King's Guard, with a Troop of Horse, he being appointed chief Commander by the King. Now upon the approach of the Enemy, the Citizens much valuing the rich Suburbs, and thinking them defensible, would not suffer them to be destroy'd; which *Barcotius* gave way to, tho he knew the ill Consequence of it: However they fortified them as well as they could, and began to skirmish with the Enemy; but when *Solyman* with his vast multitudes began to surround the place on all sides, the roving *Hussars* not used to be cooped up, departed out of the Town in the Night. In the mean time the *Turks* carried on their Approaches very vigorously, and with the continual firing of their Cannon, batter'd down the Planks and Timber which kept in the sandy Mould, whereof the Fortress was made; after which, with incredible diligence, they filled up the Ditches and Lake in twelve days time, and by plain force assaulted the Bulwark of the Suburbs towards *Buda*. The Fight here endured above three hours with equal Hope and Courage, but the *Turks* being continually relieved, at last gained the Bulwark; however the *Italian* Fort was that day gallantly defended, the very Women and Religious putting to their helping hand: among whom a tall *Hungarian* Woman thrusting in among the Soldiers to the top of the Fort, with a great Scythe at one blow struck off two of the *Turks* Heads, as climbing up the Rampiers. This Assault was given *August* 29. the same day the *Turks* had taken *Belgrade*, and also slew King *Lewis* at the Battel of *Mohatz*; but at that time being not

not able to penetrate any farther, and *Solyman* menacing the Officers that they must never return to him unless they won the City, they renewed the Assault again, and by the benefit of a thick Mist, got up to the top of the Rampiers before they were discovered by the Besieged: in short, the *Turks* won the Suburbs, and the Christians being forced to fly and get thro a little narrow Gate like a Wicket into the City, since the Draw-bridg was pulled up, were miserably slain by the Janizaries; with whom perish'd *Barcotius* their General, whose Head and Right Hand being full of Rings, was by the barbarous Enemy carried about in derision upon a Lance, while others were drowned in the Ditch. *Birrous*, who was Mayor, and the Citizens being now struck with a panick Fear, and overcome with despair, spake to the *Turks* from the Wall about having a safe Conduct for Messengers to be sent to *Solyman* about Articles for the Surrendry of the City, which *Achomet es* easily granted: so that all things being agreed on, and the City surrendred, *Achomates* by Proclamation in the Market-place commanded the *Italians* and *Germans* to prepare for their departure next day, but to take heed that no *Hungarian* went along with them; and at the same time required the Citizens to keep within their doors until the foreign Soldiers were gone, who were convoy'd by *Homares* with a Body of *Turkish* Horse; who after he had left them, had much ado to escape the *Hungarians*, but at length after many Difficulties they came to *Vienna* more like Ghosts than Men. Soon after the Surrendry, *Solyman* enter'd the City; and notwithstanding his Proclamation that the *Hungarians* should fear no harm, yet within three days after he caused the principal Citizens barbarously to be slain: tho others will have it, that he only put to death those that bore Offices at the time when they revolted from the Queen and Infant King to *Ferdinand*; and after that return'd for *Constantinople*, leaving his cruel *Tartars* to ravage the Country, where they committed horrid Barbarities and incredible Mischief.

Alba Regalis *surrendred.*

Barbarossa all this while lay with his Fleet at *Marseilles*, fretting exceedingly that the *French* let the Season slip, and did nothing whereby he might enter upon Action, the blame whereof he said would be imputed to him at *Constantinople*. At last upon *Polinus*'s Repre-

Nice *besieged by the* French *and* Turks.

1543. sentation of the matter to the *French* King, he had orders to lay siege to *Nice* in *Provence*, then in the hands of the Duke of *Savoy*; to which Service the *French* sent also 22 Gallies and 18 Ships, wherein were 8000 Foot, and Victuals for many days. When they were come before the place, which was refused to be surrender'd to them upon their Summons, they laid siege to the Town in three places; which had been newly fortified by *Paul Simeon* a Knight of *Rhodes*, and one that had sometime served under *Barbarossa*, by whom the Citizens were much encouraged to withstand the *Turks*: however the Besiegers at last beat down one of the new Bulwarks, and made so fair a Breach, that they endeavour'd to have enter'd it, but they were manfully repulsed by the Citizens, and forced to retreat with the loss of about 100 *Turks*, and 22 *Frenchmen*. But *Barbarossa* presently after began a fresh Battery in such a terrible manner, that the Citizens were glad to come to a Parley, upon condition they might in all respects live under the *French* King, as they had done under the Duke: and so the *Turks* were disappointed in their hopes of Plunder, to the great dissatisfaction of the Janizaries, who would have slain *Polinus* and *Strozza* an *Italian* Commander in the *French* Service, as being the occasion of it. This being done, they presently laid siege to the Castle; which they had not long done, but the *French* wanted Powder and Shot, and *Polinus* was forced to desire they might buy or borrow some of *Barbarossa*; which put the old *Turk* into such a rage, that he threaten'd to lay hands on *Polinus*, who had brought him from *Constantinople* thither, where he must either lose his Honour, or, having spent his Powder and Shot, expose himself and Fleet to all manner of dangers: so that he was in the mind presently to return home. But he was scarcely pacified when they intercepted a Letter from *Vastius* to *Paul* Governour of the Castle, encouraging him to hold out and he would be reliev'd in two days time: which fully determined them to raise the siege, but the *Turks* first brake into the City, plunder'd and set it on fire.

Town taken.

Raise the Siege.

Barbarossa being come to an Anchor with his Fleet at the Isle of *Lerida* or *Margarita*, at which time *Auria* with his Navy arriv'd at *Villa-Franca*; *Polinus* understanding this last had been much injured by a Storm

wher

where he had loſt four of his Gallies, he ſent to perſuade *Barbaroſſa* to lay hold of the advantage and fall upon him: but he making no great haſte in his courſe thither, was much derided by the *Turkiſh* Officers, who ſaid, he had reaſon to deal kindly with *Auria*, as his Brother and of his own Profeſſion, for that he ſome years before had received the like favour at his hands, in letting him eſcape at *Hippo*, which he now honeſtly paid him again. But *Barbaroſſa*'s conſtant Anſwer was, *That he being an old Commander, and half blind, ſaw more into the matter than all thoſe green Captains with their ſharp ſight.* Not long after he returned to *Marſeilles*, and from thence to *Thoulon*; where ſending out 25 Gallies under *Salec* and *Aſſanes* his near Kinſman, after they had pillaged ſome Maritime Towns of *Spain*, they went over and winter'd at *Algiers*, while himſelf refitted his Fleet at *Thoulon* aforeſaid for the Service of the following Spring: wherein *Auria*, under a pretence of redeeming Priſoners, was not wanting to ſupply him with ſome Neceſſaries, tho he were his Enemy, for fear *Genoa* his Country might any ways be injured by ſo great a Power.

Barbaroſſa weary of lying ſo long idle in *Provence*, 1544.
requeſted of the *French* King he might have leave to depart, or ſpoil the Sea-Coaſts of *Spain*; which laſt the King being not willing to gratify him, beſtowed on him, in lieu of the *Turks* that were dead, all the *Mahometan* Slaves in his Gallies, to the number of 400, with ſtore of Proviſion and other Preſents. Wherefore ſteering his Courſe to the Iſle of *Elba* belonging to the Duke of *Florence*, and underſtanding that one of the Sons of his old Friend *Sinan* was kept a Priſoner there, he writ to *Appian* the Governour of the Iſland for his Releaſement, and in caſe of refuſal threatned the Coaſt with a ſevere Deſolation. But the other anſwering, *That the young Man being turn'd Chriſtian, he could by no means do it, but withal that for his ſake he would uſe him as his own Son*: *Barbaroſſa* not ſatisfied therewith, landed his Men, and committing great Spoil in the Iſland, the Governour was glad to give up the Captive, with which *Barbaroſſa* was ſatisfied, and ceaſed any further to moleſt him; but what was Liberty to the Son, proved Death to the old Jew *Sinan* his Father, who being overjoy'd at his ſudden

1544. and unexpected Return, fainted away in embracing him, and ſo died.

Barbaroſſa *ſpoils the Coaſt of* Italy. *Barbaroſſa* ſailed from *Elba* to the Bay of *Telaman*, where he took and burnt the City; he did the like miſchief at *Portus Herulis*, and afterwards landed at the Iſle of *Gigio*, from whence he carried abundance of People into Captivity, as he did alſo from the Iſle of *Iſchia*, where he burnt the three principal Towns of the Iſland: then he put into the Bay of *Puteoli*, and endeavoured to have taken the Town, but was prevented by the approach of Succours from *Naples*; but in the Iſle of *Lipari*, after he had waſted the Country, and battered the Town and burnt it, he carried away about 7000 Priſoners, and ſo with a vaſt Booty and miſerable multitude of Slaves he arrived at *Conſtantinople* in the beginning of Autumn, where he was honourably received by *Solyman*, and highly applauded for his good Services both by Sea and Land. And thus ended the Exploits of the famous *Hariadenus Barbaroſſa*, who went upon no other Expedition, that we read of, the remainder of his Life; which terminated in the Year 1547. and his Body was buried at his Houſe call'd *Beſictas* near the *Thracian Boſphorus* on *Europe* ſide, about four Miles from *Pera*, where but a few years before he had at one time ſold about 16000 Chriſtian Slaves taken out of *Corfu*; and to render his Burying-place famous, he built there a Moſque at his own charge, where his Tomb is to be ſeen to this day: about which time alſo there was a Peace concluded between the Emperor *Charles* V. and *Solyman* for five years, wherein King *Ferdinand* was likewiſe included.

His Death.

1549. *Solyman* had now for almoſt three years taken his reſt, when it happen'd that *Ercaſes Imirza* King of *Sirvag*, incenſed with the many Injuries done him by his Brother *Tamas* King of *Perſia*, fled to *Solyman* to crave Aid of him againſt his Brother; which *Solyman* was glad of, and therefore with a ſtrong Army marching into *Armenia*, beſieg'd the City of *Van*, which in ten days was ſurrender'd to him: from whence he ſent his chief Commanders to burn and ravage the Enemies Country, among whom none was more forward than *Imirza*. But *Tamas* foreſeeing the Storm, had after his wonted manner order'd all his People to withdraw with

Solyman *makes war upon the* Perſians.

with their Effects into the mountainous part of the Country; which ſo diſcontented not only the *Turkiſh* Soldiers, but Officers alſo for want of Booty, that they conſulted to kill *Imirza*, or bring him into diſgrace with *Solyman*, as being the occaſion of that unprofitable Expedition. In ſhort, they managed their matters ſo, that having fill'd *Imirza*'s head with ſome apprehenſions of Danger, he fled to one of the Princes of *Chaldea*, who having deliver'd him up to *Tamas*, he cauſed him to be put to death in Priſon. Thus *Solyman* having ſpent a Year and nine Months in this fruitleſs Expedition, and growing weary of it, returned to *Conſtantinople* in 1549.

It happen'd about this time that *Dragut Raiſes*, a notable *Turkiſh* Pirate, having cunningly ſurprized the Cities of *Africa* and *Mahumedia* in the Kingdom of *Tunis*, ſettled himſelf there, as a place very commodious to infeſt the Chriſtians both by Sea and Land: ſo that the Emperor *Charles* being daily ſollicited with the grievous Complaints of his Subjects againſt theſe Pirates, ſent *Auria*, aſſiſted with the Knights of *Malta*, with a ſtrong Fleet and an Army to *Barbary*, to beſiege the City of *Africa*, which they took by Storm on the 10*th* of *Septemb.* and raſed it to the ground; and having done much more harm upon the Coaſt, returned to *Sicily*: while *Dragut* provoked with his Loſs, excited *Solyman* to make war upon the Emperor and King *Ferdinand*, notwithſtanding the five years League was not yet expired. In purſuance to which, the Spring following he furniſh'd *Dragut* with 140 Sail, commanded in chief by *Sinan* Baſſa, who ſuddenly took and ſacked the Caſtle of *Auguſta* in *Sicily*, then landed at Port *Monet* in the Iſle of *Malta*, whoſe Caſtle they batter'd for ſome time to no purpoſe: ſo that removing from thence to the Road of *St. Paul*, and there perceiving they could do no good neither, they ſailed to the little Iſle of *Goza*, about five miles diſtant from *Malta*, and under the Dominion of the Knights of that Order; where, beſides other terrible miſchiefs, they carried 6300 People into Captivity. This done, they ſteered directly for *Tripolis* in *Barbary*, beſtowed upon the ſaid Knights alſo by the Emperor *Charles* V. This place they ſtraitly beſieged, and on the 18th of *Auguſt* began to play

1550. Dragut *ſurprizes* Tunis, *but diſpoſſeſs'd by* Auria.

1551.

1551. their Cannon upon it, and were answered by the Christians with considerable loss to them. Next night they approached nearer the Castle, and notwithstanding the Opposition they met with from the Besieged, they at length had planted a Battery within 150 paces of the Wall, wherein they made a fair Breach even with the Ditch; but the Besieged used such diligence in the repairing of it by night, that it was not to be assaulted: yet in fine, a Soldier of *Provence* being corrupted by the *Turks*, fled to their Camp, and having shewed the Bassa there was a place against the Governour's Lodging with Cellars underneath, which if it were but once batter'd, could not well be repaired again; the Bassa presently fell to work, and batter'd it so, that it began to sink very much: and this so terrified the Soldiers, that nothing would serve them but the Governour *Vallier* must capitulate; and all that the two Knights sent to the Bassa for this purpose could obtain, was, a Promise of their liberty to go where they pleased. But when the Bassa, under a pretence of the final concluding of the Articles, had got the Governour into his Camp, he insisted upon the Payment of the Charge of the War, or else for them all to remain his Prisoners; but the Governour and the Knight that was with him acting both resolutely and warily upon this occasion, brought the Bassa at last to swear a second time by the Head of his great Lord and his own, that they should be all set at liberty, according to the Conventions first agreed on. Upon which, the place was immediately given up, *August* 15. but the faithless *Turk* first broke his Word, by spoiling the Garison of all they had, and then taking them prisoners; neither did the Representations of the *French* Embassador *Arramont*, who put him in mind of his Promise to release at least 200 of them, prevail: tho afterwards he did agree that that number of the oldest and most unfit for Service of them, among whom was the Governour, should be set at liberty. The Castle was surrendred next day, at which the *Turks* mightily triumphed, and the Bassa made a most solemn Feast for his Officers, whereunto he invited the late Governour *Vallier* and the *French* Embassador, and appointed another Tent for them; who when eating was over, entred into that of the Bassa, and obtained the Liberty

Tripolis *taken by the* Turks.

of

of 20 more, upon condition 30 *Turks* taken at *Malta* ſhould be releaſed: but they barbarouſly cut off the Hands and Noſe of their old Gunner of the Caſtle *John de Chabas*, put him quick into the ground to the middle, there at their pleaſure ſhot at him with their Arrows, and at laſt cut his throat, becauſe he had during the Siege ſhot off the Hand of the Clerk-General of the Army.

While theſe things were agitated in *Barbary*, *Solyman* ſent *Achometes* with *Halis* Baſſa of *Buda*, to invade Upper *Hungary*; who firſt took *Temeſwaer*, and contrary to their Faith put the Gariſon to the ſword: then the Caſtle of *Zolnok*, but failed in their Attempt upon *Erſam*. Neither was *Halis* next year, with all the Aſſiſtance he received from *Achometes*, *Chaſan*, and other *Turkiſh* Sangiacks, able to take *Agria*; but was after ſix weeks ſiege glad to draw off to *Peſth*, with the loſs of 6000 Men. However *Solyman*, at the Sollicitation of *Arramont* Embaſſador from King *Henry* II. of *France*, ſending a Fleet into the *Tyrrhene* Sea in 1553, they did great harm upon the Coaſt of *Italy* and the Iſlands of the *Mediterranean*. And the ſame Year *Solyman*, at the Seducement of *Roxolana* and *Ruſtan* Baſſa, put his eldeſt Son *Muſtapha* to death, *Mahomet* being dead before: while Queen *Iſabel* not able to defend her ſelf againſt the Incroachments of the *Turks* in *Tranſylvania*, ſurrendred that Province to *Ferdinand*, and ſo retired into *Poland*.

Turks *in* Hungary.

1552.

1553.

But becauſe we have juſt mentioned the unfortunate *Muſtapha*, we ſhall here briefly run thro the Cauſes of his Ruin, and Manner of Death, before we proceed to other matters. Tho he was but meanly deſcended on the Mother's ſide, ſhe being a *Circaſſian* Bondwoman, yet he was a Prince of excellent Endowments, and beloved of all, eſpecially of the Soldiery. But while he was growing up in Years and Favour with the People, *Solyman* was enticed by *Roxolana*, by whom he had four Sons, *viz. Mahomet*, *Selymus*, *Bajazet* and *Tzianger*, and one Daughter, the Wife of *Ruſtan* Baſſa, to marry her; her main Intention thereby being to get one of her own Sons to ſucceed in the *Ottoman* Throne, in prejudice to *Muſtapha*, who at her perſuaſion was ſent to be Governour of *Caramania*. And the Method ſhe went upon to effect the ſaid Marriage, was briefly thus:

Muſtapha's *Death contrived by* Roxolana.

1553. thus: She ſuddenly grew very devout, and built an Abbey with an Hoſpital and a Church, and asked the *Mufti*, whether ſuch Charities would not be acceptable to God, and good for the Salvation of her Soul? and he anſwering it would do her Soul no good, becauſe ſhe was a Bondwoman; ſhe thereupon appeared very penſive and melancholy: which ſo wrought upon *Solyman*, that he ſoon made her free. And being minded ſome time after to enjoy her, he ſent for her by one of his Eunuchs to his Bed-Chamber; but ſhe with her Eyes lift up to Heaven anſwering, ſhe could not do it, now ſhe was a Freewoman, without a breach of God's Sacred Laws; but yet to pleaſure her Lord as much as lay in her power, ſhe referred her ſelf in all things to the Judgment of the Mufti, with whom ſhe had conferred before at large: *Solyman*, who was raviſhed with her Love, hereupon ſent for the Mufti to know his Judgment of the matter; who, before inſtructed in all Points, agreed with what *Roxolana* had ſaid: ſo that the Sultan, contrary to the manner of the *Mahometan* Emperors, ſolemnly married her, appointing 5000 Sultanies for her annual Dowry. Having gained this great Point, ſhe laboured all ſhe could to breed Suſpicions in *Solyman*'s head, as if the noble *Muſtapha* aſpired to the Empire; wherein ſhe was mightily ſeconded by her Son-in-Law *Ruſtan* the Prime Viſier, who inſtructed all the Governours ſent into *Syria* narrowly to obſerve *Muſtapha*'s Actions, and tranſmit him an account of them: and many of them writing maliciouſly enough of him, their Letters *Ruſtan* put into the hands of *Roxolana*, which at a fit Opportunity ſhe diſcovered to *Solyman*, with all the Aggravations her wicked Mind could ſuggeſt unto her. Yet this meeting not with the deſired effects, ſhe attempted to poiſon *Muſtapha* with a Sute of Clothes ſent him as from his Father. That failing alſo, ſhe at length got a Letter from the Baſſa who had the Government of *Muſtapha* and the Province of *Amaſia*, importing there was a Diſcourſe of a Marriage to be contracted between *Muſtapha* and the King of *Perſia*'s Daughter: and being ſtill aſſiſted by *Ruſtan* in her wicked Suggeſtions againſt the young Prince, *Solyman* was by degrees ſo wrought upon by their conjoint Suſpicions and Accuſations, that he reſolved upon his Son's Ruin

To

To which end having ſent *Ruſtan* with an Army into *Syria*, under pretence of making war againſt the *Perſians*, he commanded him to ſeize his Son and ſend him priſoner to *Conſtantinople*; but finding *Muſtapha* prepared for him, he returned with all the haſte he could for *Conſtantinople*, and maliciouſly told *Solyman*, that he perceived the whole Army was ſo affected to *Muſtapha*, that he thought it the ſafeſt way to bring them back again with all ſpeed, without adventuring any nearer him. The Emperor was ſo moved herewith, that he went in perſon over with a great Army into *Syria*, and ſent for *Muſtapha* to come to him to *Aleppo*; who notwithſtanding the warning given of his Danger by *Achmet* Baſſa, yet after his Doctor had reſolved him his queſtion, whether the Empire of the World or a bleſſed Life were moſt deſirable, by giving the preference to the latter, he made all the haſte he could to go and wait upon his Father: but the crafty and wicked *Ruſtan* having underhand ſent the Janizaries and principal Men in the Army, as it were for Honour's ſake, to meet him; he in the mean time ſo miſrepreſented the matter to *Solyman*, as if the Soldiery had done this without leave, and that he was apprehenſive of the conſequence of it, with which *Solyman* was not a little troubled. *Muſtapha* being come into his Father's Camp, and clothing himſelf all in white, in token of his Innocency, with ſome Letters, according to the ſuperſtitious manner of the *Turks*, in his boſom, he went with a ſmall Retinue of his beſt Friends towards his Father's Tent; at the entrance of which he put off his Dagger, but being come into the more inward part, where he found but one Seat only for himſelf, he was a little perplex'd thereat; and having muſed a while, he at length asked where the Emperor was, he was anſwered he ſhould ſee him by and by: but looking a little aſide, and ſeeing ſeven Mutes coming from the other ſide of the Tent towards him, he preſently cried, Lo! my Death! and endeavouring to flee, he was ſeized, not allowed to ſpeak two words to his Father, but preſently ſtrangled with a Bow-ſtring: all which the unnatural Murderer both ſaw and heard by a Traverſe from the other ſide of the Tent, but was ſo far from being moved with Compaſſion, that to haſten the Execution he ſaid, Will you never diſpatch what I bid you?

Muſtapha's and Tziangir's death

1553. you? Will you never make an end of this Traitor, for whom I have not peaceably rested a night this ten years? *Mustapha* was so hopeful a Prince, that the *Turks* to this day when their Hopes are disappointed say, *Gietti Sultan Mustapha*, *Mustapha* is dead, *i.e.* Our Hope is all lost. And not long after *Mahomet*, *Mustapha*'s Son, was with the like barbarous Cruelty put to death by his order. *Mustapha* being dead, he sent for his Son *Tzianger* the crooked, and sportingly bid him go and meet his Brother *Mustapha*; the young Man mightily rejoiced at it, but he was scarcely arrived at the place of that horrible Execution, but he sent to him one of his Servants to make him an offer of all *Mustapha*'s Treasure and Government. But the brotherly and compassionate *Tzianger*, almost overwhelm'd with Sorrow, said, 'Wicked and ungodly *Cain*, Traitor (I cannot say Father) do thou take all that was '*Mustapha*'s! How could it enter into thy wicked, 'cruel, and savage Heart, contrary to all Humanity, '(I will not say, Reverence of thine own Blood) to 'kill thy worthy, warlike, and noble Son, the Mir'ror of Civility, a Prince of greatest Hope, of whom 'the *Ottoman* Family never had nor shall have the 'like? I'll therefore take care, that neither thou nor 'none for thee for ever hereafter shall thus basely tri'umph over a poor crooked Wretch.' With that he stabbed himself and died: at which *Solyman* was much troubled, but more at the Tumult in the Camp, and Skirmishes between his Men and the Soldiers come thither under *Mustapha*, wherein 2000 Men were slain. But tho *Achomet* Bassa made a shift to appease this, yet the Death of *Mustapha* came no sooner to the ears of the Janizaries and the other Soldiers, but another Tumult arose, and the Soldiers with a great noise, and their drawn Swords, brake into *Solyman*'s Tent; who making a Virtue of Necessity, yet with pale and wan Countenance came out to them, and ask'd, What Broil, Stir, and Insolency was that? what they mean by those fierce and angry Looks? Did they not know their Sovereign, and him that had power to command them? Had they resolved to stain the antient and invincible Honour of themselves and their Ancestors with the Blood of their Lord and Emperor? They answered, they did not deny but he had valiantly com-

manded

manded them for many Years, and they enlarged and preſerved his Empire for him; however that they came thither armed, moved with a juſt cauſe to revenge the Death of guiltleſs *Muſtapha*. Wherefore they requeſted that they might publickly clear themſelves of the Treaſon laid to their charge, and that the Accuſer might be brought forth to juſtify his Accuſation. *Solyman* to appeaſe their Fury deprived *Ruſtan* of all his Honours, and gave his Seal to *Achometes* Baſſa, who at the receiving of it ſaid, that as he then freely beſtowed it upon him, ſo he would one time or other to his no leſs diſgrace take it from him: But tho *Solyman* with an Oath promiſed never to diſplace him as long as he lived, yet not long after he put him to death in favour of *Ruſtan*, who was reſtored to his place of Prime Viſier again.

But to leave theſe domeſtick Imbroilments of *Solyman* with his own Family for a little while, his Fleet this Year committed great Spoils on the Coaſt of *Calabria* and *Sicily*, as they had done the laſt; but the *Venetian* Admiral, in revenge for the *Turks* rifling ſome of the Merchants of the Republick the preceding Year, ſet upon it, and after having done the *Turks* much damage, ranſacked *Durazzo*, then belonging to the *Turks*. But the Admiral Baſſa in 1555. having recovered his Strength, ſurprized the Iſles of *Bambis* and *Elba* belonging to the Duke of *Florence*, and wrote to *Solyman* to make war upon the *Venetians*, as having broken their League with him, but with what effect Hiſtorians acquaint us not. Much about the ſame time *Halis* Baſſa of *Buda* having ſurprized the ſtrong Caſtle of *Baboſa*, but failing to do the like by *Sigeth*, he ſat down before it next Year, *June* 13th, with a great Army, and on the 20th won the outermoſt Walls; but in his ſtorming the Caſtle, the Beſieged in a Sally ſlew him 800 Men, and drove the reſt again from the Wall; yet the *Turks* would not give over the Siege, for notwithſtanding they failed with a great Number of Carts to fill up the Marſh and Ditch about the Town, as alſo to perſuade the Gariſon by fair means to a Surrendry, the Baſſa on the 12th of *July* renew'd the Aſſault; which with freſh Supplies was continued for five days together, tho without Succeſs. Wherefore he raiſed the Siege the 21ſt, but returned 6 days after

1555.

Sigeth *beſieged in vain by the* Turks.

1555. after from *Five-Churches*, and gave another Assault to as little purpose as before; having in all lost 2000 Men to 120 of the Besieged, and spent 10000 great Shot against the Town and Castle. Neither was he more

Turks *overthrown.* fortunate in the Siege of this Place next Year, which he was forced to quit upon the approach of *Ferdinand*'s Army, under *Polcerher* and *Serini*, who fought his Army not far from *Baboſa*, and after a sharp fight defeated and routed him. This, with the coming down of new Supplies under young *Ferdinand*, the King's Son, and Arch-duke of *Austria*, so terrify'd the *Turks*, that they deserted *Baboſa*, *Sammartin*, *San-Laurence*, with several other small Places, and fled to *Five-Churches*; while the Garison of *Sigeth* slew many of them, and overthrew a Convoy of Horse, and took the Mony they brought for the Payment of the Army; and the Governour of *Raab* burnt the Suburbs of *Alba Regalis*, and drove away several Thousands of their Cattel, where we leave the Christians to the Enjoyment of their rich Booty, and return now to recount the other Domestick Troubles of *Solyman*: of which briefly thus.

Solyman had now but two Sons alive, and they also by the fair, but mischievous *Roxolana*, viz. *Selymus* and *Bajazet*. *Selymus* the elder, much resembled his Mother's Temper, as the other did his Father; but however it were, the Mother favoured the younger Son, and would have wished his Advancement to the Empire before *Selymus*, for whom *Solyman* designed the Succession; of which *Bajazet* was well aware: and therefore to make a Trial of his Fortune, having already fallen out with his Brother, and well knowing the general Discontent of the People for the unworthy Death

False Mustapha. of *Mustapha*, whom all longed for, he projected and found out an obscure Fellow, much like unto *Mustapha*, whom he engaged to personate him: who first appear'd in that part of *Thrace*, that lies towards *Moldavia* and *Walachia*, as if he had by chance escaped, with a slender Retinue; who being asked what he was, rather fearfully gave the Enquirers occasion to guess, than plainly told them he was *Mustapha*: neither did he himself much deny it, but at length told them that being sent for by his Father, and apprehensive of Danger, he got one very like him to appear in his stead,

who

who was presently strangled; which made him fly by the way of *Pontus* thither, and requested them to stand by an innocent Man persecuted by the Malevolence of a Step-mother, who with *Rustan* Bassa excited the old Man his Father against him; with a great deal more to that purpose. Insomuch that many of *Mustapha*'s Followers, tho they knew him to be really dead, and this a mere Counterfeit, yet out of pure Discontent were the first that resorted to him, and others came in so fast, that in a few days he had almost made up a good Army. *Solyman* was no sooner advertised hereof, but suspecting one of his Sons at the bottom of the Design, he immediately sent to threaten the Sangiacks of those Parts for not suppressing it in the Bud, that he would send *Partau* Bassa thither with some Soldiers, but that they had better finish the matter themselves before his Arrival: with which the Sangiacks were so excited, that they made all necessary Preparation for it; and the Bassa in the mean time drawing near, the false *Mustapha*'s Army was so terrify'd lest they should be hemmed in on all sides, that every one shifted for themselves, and left him and some few Followers to be taken Prisoners and carried to *Constantinople:* where after *Solyman* by exquisite Torments extorted from them all the Design of *Bajazet* to join them, and so march directly to *Constantinople*, or against *Selymus*, he caused them all at Midnight to be drowned in the Sea, and was projecting with himself how to be revenged on *Bajazet*, when *Roxolana*, by many Arguments, her Womanish Gestures and Tears, obtained her Son's Pardon, upon condition he came and submitted himself to his Father, and received his Charge from him. *Bajazet*, before instructed by his Mother's Letters, yet full of fear, came to *Carestran*, a few Miles from *Constantinople* (into which the *Turkish* Emperors were not wont to admit their Sons when Men grown) and his careful Mother having placed her self at a little Window covered with a thin Cloth by which he was to pass, said to him, *Corcoma Oglan, Corcoma*; that is, fear not my Son, fear not: this made him go the more chearfully into his Father's Presence, who after he had severely reproved him, at length said, it was his Inclination to pardon him, upon Assurance of further Amendment. And then *Solyman*, after the manner

Mustapha *taken and drowned.*

Bajazet *pardoned by his Father, at the Intercession of his Mother.*

1555. ner of that Nation calling for drink, commanded it to be given to *Bajazet*, who not daring to refuse it drank what he thought good, for fear it should have been his last; but herein he was presently undeceived by his Father, who drank a good Draught after him.

Now *Bajazet* behaved himself very dutifully as long as his Mother lived; but she dying two Years after, *viz.* in 1557. he, as a Man destitute of her Aid to assist him, began by some Friends at *Constantinople* to draw to himself the Affection of the Soldiery: but his Father coming to the knowledg thereof, especially by Letters from *Selymus*, he wrote to *Bajazet* to put him in mind of his Duty, to live peaceably in his Station, and not to molest his Father and Brother any more. But knowing, notwithstanding the Plausibility of his Answer, that he was the same Man still, he determined to remove both his Sons further from one another, and from himself also; to which end, by a prefixed day he commanded *Bajazet* to remove from *Cutai* to *Amasia*, and *Selymus* from *Magnesia* to *Iconium*. *Selymus*, as being assured of his Father's Favour, made no great delay in obeying; but *Bajazet* being unwilling to remove, sought delays, and in the mean time to augment his Strength, to provide Armour, Mony, and whatever else he thought necessary for his own defence, and the impugning of his Brother, now residing at *Prusa* by his Father's order. But tho *Solyman* took this in no other part than intended against himself, yet he would not seem to take it so, as knowing that would but make the forward Youth run on the more headlong, as also that the Eyes of all Nations were fixed upon the Discord of his Sons; wherefore he courteously answer'd *Bajazet*'s Request to him for staying where he was, or having some other Province than that of *Amasia*, which was so remote, conferred upon him, that he could not possibly allow it; but for other matters he would take such Measures as to give neither him nor his Brother cause to complain. In pursuance to this, *Solyman* sent *Partau* Bassa to *Bajazet*, and *Mehemet* Bassa to *Selymus*, to see them go to their respective Provinces; but *Bajazet* dismist *Partau* with an Excuse that he would use him as his Patron and Defender with his Father, since he had no other in Court to maintain his Cause, with a Promise he would not be ungrateful

Bajazet unwilling to go to Amasia.

ungrateful to him: and withal desired him to tell his Father, that he would above all things have a regard to his Commands, provided his Brother *Selymus* hindred him not, whose Injuries and Treacheries he had much ado to endure. Hereupon *Solyman* seeing what his Son would be at, made all necessary Preparations against him; but finding the Janizaries, who in reality favoured *Bajazet*, against engaging in the quarrel, which they said was between the two Brothers, and expressing so much openly, *Solyman* had recourse to the Mufti's opinion in their and his Son's Case, tho he named them not in the stating of it to him: who answered, that both the Man and his Accomplices deserved Death, and that such as refused to fight against him, were as profane and irreligious Men to be accounted detestable. Which answer was not only published to the People, but sent by a chief *Chiaus* to *Bajazet* himself, who not long after sent another to his Father, to desire him not to interpose in the Quarrel between him and his Brother; but if he did, he knew how to destroy the Country, and provide for his own Safety: with which Message *Solyman* was not a little disturbed.

Janizaries unwilling to fight against him.

In the mean time *Selymus* understanding his Brother was gone towards *Anasia*, and already got as far as *Ancyra*, found he might now without danger go to *Iconium*, which *Solyman* was very careful should not fall into *Bajazet*'s hands, whereby he would have a passage open to *Syria* and *Egypt*, from whence he might give him a world of trouble; while *Bajazet* having entertained some valiant Horse in his Service, called *Chiorts*, encamped in the Plains of *Ancyra*, whither a great many good Soldiers, besides a multitude of uneasy Persons and Vagabonds resorted to him: by whom he was animated by the Example of his Grandfather *Selymus*'s taking up Arms against his own Father, and the danger he was in of his Life from his Brother, to proceed to the Expedition. *Bajazet* incouraged herewith, as well as from his own Inclinations, marched against his Brother at *Iconium*, now reinforced with his Father's Power; and being come in sight of him, exhorted his Soldiers in a few words to play the Men, and then with great Courage charged the Enemy, and fought a long time himself among the foremost of them,

He stops at Ancyra, and raises Forces.

A great Battel between Bajazet and Selymus.

1558. them, performing all the parts of a brave Commander, and a valiant Soldier. The Battel was very bloody on both sides, and the Victory a great while doubtful, so that 40000 *Turks* were slain upon the place; but at last it began to incline to *Selymus*'s side, and *Bajazet* was forced to retreat: which he performed so leisurely, and in such good order, that it seemed to the Spectators that he had near as well gained as lost the day, and then he retired to *Amasia*. *Solyman* being advertised of the Event of this Battel, by the advice of his Council resolved forthwith to go over into *Asia*; and the rather, because tho *Bajazet* had lost the Victory, yet having encountred his Brother at such disadvantage, and with a handful of Men, and against the fury of the great Artillery, he was mightily applauded by most People, who said he behaved himself in the Battel, not like a young Soldier, but an old experienced Commander; that *Selymus* at his pleasure might boast of himself (as they said) to his Father for the Victory, but *Bajazet* was the Man that deserved to have overcome; and that *Selymus* might to any thing ascribe the Victory, rather than to his own Valour. However the Emperor resolved not to go far from the Sea-Coast of *Asia*, principally for fear if he approached too near with his Army, he might endanger himself by the sudden revolt of the Janizaries, which he feared above all things. *Busbequius* says, he saw the Emperor depart out of *Constantinople* on the first of *June* 1559. and within a few days after himself also was sent for thither, where he admired the great Silence of the *Turks* in their Camp, their Cleanliness, Temperance, and Abstinence; and where one *Albertus* came to him from the Emperor his Master, with Presents to *Solyman*, consisting of a gilt Plate, and most curious Clock carried upon an Elephant like a Castle, which *Solyman* would needs have presented to him in the sight of the whole Army, the better to discover the Friendship between him and the Emperor, and that he needed not fear any danger from the Christians.

Bajazet retires to Amasia.

1559.

Bajazet flies into Persia.

But to return again to *Bajazet* at *Amasia*, having now satisfied his youthful Desires and Grief, he sollicited his Father by Letters for a Reconciliation; to which *Solyman* did not seem averse, tho he dissembled only, his chief aim being to get him alive into his hands, lest despair;

deſpairing of Pardon, he ſhould with ſuch a Power break into the Borders of *Perſia*: For the preventing of which, he ordered his Lieutenants in thoſe parts to be very vigilant; yet his Deſigns were not kept ſo covert, but that *Bajazet* having notice of them, he reſolved to make the beſt of his way to *Perſia*; and the Baſſa of *Sebaſtia* he deceived in this manner: There were two ways, whereof the one of them being intercepted, would much obſtruct his Journy, and that the Baſſa had already taken; wherefore he ſent ſome Perſons, as if they had been Deſerters, to acquaint the Baſſa that he was already gone the other way, whereby the Baſſa going in purſuit of him, the other Road was left open for him. He alſo by another much different Wile deceived the Baſſa of *Erzirum*, for which afterwards in *Selymus*'s Reign, he with two of his young Sons paid for it with their Heads; and at length having paſſed the *Araxis*, the Boundary of the two Empires, he got ſafe into *Perſia*, to the great grief of his Father *Solyman*, with about 20000 Men, and was there kindly entertained by King *Tamas*, who promiſed to leave nothing unattempted for the reconciling him to his Father: and indeed *Bajazet* appeared ſo confident of the *Perſian*'s Friendſhip toward him, that he deſired *Tamas*'s Embaſſador, going for *Conſtantinople*, to tell *Solyman* that he had loſt a Father at *Conſtantinople*, and found another in *Perſia*. But however the matter in reality was managed, it's certain the King of *Perſia*, if not at firſt, yet in ſome time grew jealous of him; and the matter was ſo cunningly ordered, that *Bajazet* could not but ſeemingly agree to the diſperſion of his Men into divers Country Villages, many of whom not long after, upon Quarrels picked on purpoſe with them, were ſlain, and *Bajazet* himſelf with his Sons clapt up in Priſon; of which there was an account immediately tranſmitted to *Solyman*, between whom and *Tamas* there paſt continual Meſſages: but all the Intreaties and Menaces that *Solyman* could make, could not bring *Tamas* to deliver *Bajazet* up to his Father. Hereupon he thought it beſt to try whether he could have him ſlain where he was; and perceiving by *Tamas*'s Complaint of the Charge *Bajazet* and his Followers had been to him, and the ſatisfaction he required of *Solyman* upon that account, by his ſending ſome Perſons of Fa-

1559. ſhion to his Court, with whom *Tamas* could fully tranſact matters, that Mony was the thing he expected, he reſolved to try him that way, and for that end ſent *Haſſan* Aga, and the Baſſa of *Maras*, his Embaſſadors into *Perſia*; where after they had ſeen *Bajazet* in Priſon, and knew him to be really he, tho he was then poor Prince in a miſerable plight, they afterward agreed with *Tamas* to repay him his Expences, and repair the Injury he had ſuſtained, with ſuch further Reward as ſo good a Turn required, upon condition it ſhould be in *Solyman*'s power to have *Bajazet* made away: with which news *Haſſan* poſting to *Conſtantinople*, he was preſently ſent back again to perform the Contract with *Tamas*, and ſtrictly charged to ſtrangle *Bajazet* with his own hands; which he did accordingly, and would not ſo much as let him ſee his Children before he died, three of whom were preſently ſtrangled after him: and *Muhamet* the youngeſt, who was nurſed up at *Pruſa*, being not long after commanded to be ſlain by his cruel Grandfather alſo, the Eunuch that was entruſted to do it, being loth to do the work himſelf, took one of the Porters of the Court along with him for that purpoſe, who going into the room where the Child lay, and fitting the Bow-ſtring to his Neck, the innocent Babe ſmiling, with open Arms offered to have embraced the Villain about the Neck, and kiſſed him; with which he was ſo ſmitten, that he fell down into a Swoon, and there lay for dead. The Eunuch, who in the mean time ſtaid at the door, wondering he tarried ſo long, entered into the room, and finding how the matter ſtood, moſt barbarouſly performed the Execution himſelf. But to purſue the Thred of this melancholy Scene no farther, we ſhall now proceed to other Tranſactions.

Bajazet *and his Sons ſlain.*

1559. In the Year after the Great Emperor *Charles* V. had reſigned the Empire to his Brother *Ferdinand*, the Knights of *Malta* having for ſome years ſollicited the Pope, *Spaniard*, &c. to aſſiſt them in the recovering of *Tripolis* in *Barbary*, about nine years before taken from them by the *Turks*, the Preparations were ſo long a making, that they could not join at *Malta* till the Sea-

1560. ſon was almoſt ſpent; but in *February* following, according as they had agreed in a Council of War, they ſailed directly for the Iſle of *Zerbi*, which they were

firſt

firſt minded to recover from the Enemy, whither the famous Pirate *Dragut*, Governour of *Tripolis*, was come before with 800 Janizaries, and provided all things neceſſary for the defence of the City; from whence he preſently ſent to give *Solyman* notice of the arrival of the Chriſtian Fleet upon the Coaſt of *Africa*. When the Chriſtians had landed their Men, they ſent for *Caravanus* a poor King of the *Moors*, from whom *Dragut* had before taken that Iſland, to have his advice for the better carrying on of their Enterpriſe; but firſt with 8000 Men they laid ſiege to the ſtrongeſt Caſtle on the Iſland, which was quickly ſurrendred to them, while *Caravanus* came into the Camp, and gravely diſcourſed with the Generals about the methods of removing the *Turks* out of *Africa*; but in the midſt of their Diſcourſes, *Pial* Baſſa the *Turkiſh* Admiral was come thither unexpectedly with a Fleet of 85 Gallies, and was daily reinforced with more from divers places, of which the Chriſtians had the firſt notice from *Malta*: which made them new fortify the Caſtle, and enter into an Agreement with the chief Man among the *Moors* of the Iſland, that he ſhould pay yearly to the King of *Spain*, as he had before done unto *Dragut*, 6000 Crowns, one Camel, 4 Oſtridges, 4 Sparrow-Hawks, and as many Falcons. But ſoon after, *viz.* *May* 9*th*, the Grand Maſter by another Pinnace gave them intelligence that the *Turkiſh* Fleet was already gone from the Iſle of *Goza*, well equipped and provided, and adviſed them to retire quickly to ſome Place of Safety. Whereupon the Admiral *John Andreas Auria* deſired the General with the Army to come forthwith aboard; but they being ſtill occupied in fortifying the Caſtle, and making no haſte to retire, the *Turkiſh* Fleet came and ſurprized them. Indeed it luckily happened that the greater part of the Ships, and 14 Gallies were got out and gone the night before, and the Grand Maſter had in *April* recalled his Gallies; but of the reſt of the Fleet ſome few Gallies made their eſcape, ſome ran aground, while ten were preſently taken by the *Turks*, as were the reſt alſo that were left, notwithſtanding all their endeavours to eſcape. However, the Vice-Roy and Admiral by good fortune the night following made their eſcape in two ſmall Frigates unto *Malta*.

The Caſtle of Zerbi taken by the Chriſtians.

The Chriſtian Fleet oppreſs'd by the Turks.

1560. The *Turks* thus far ſucceſsful, on *May* the 17th laid ſiege to the Caſtle, and notwithſtanding the Reinforcements brought them by *Dragut*, the ſame continued 3 Months; during which time the Chriſtians were incommoded with nothing ſo much as Thirſt, there being but one great Ciſtern in the Caſtle, ſo as many poor Souls died of it. So that *Don Alvares* the Governour, ſeeing to what Extremity the Beſieged were reduced, endeavoured with *Leyra*, Admiral of the Gallies of *Naples*, and *Requeſenes* of thoſe of *Sicily*, in the night to eſcape into a Galley that lay under the Caſtle; but being diſcovered by the *Turks*, they were all taken. Whereupon the miſerable Chriſtian Soldiers, upon condition of having their Lives only, gave up the Caſtle, which they had not long enjoyed, and in which unfortunate Expedition it was computed that they loſt one way or other 18000, beſides a great Part of their Fleet. *Pial* no ſooner gave News of this Victory to *Solyman*, but there were great Rejoycings at *Conſtantinople*, and the *Turks* in heaps inſulted the Imperial Embaſſador's Servants at their Maſter's Gate, asking them whether they had any Friends in the *Spaniſh* Fleet at *Zerbi*; for they ſaid if they had, they ſhould ſhortly ſee them there. Then came the Fleet it ſelf in *September* in triumph, which *Solyman* himſelf, going down into a Gallery near the Haven's Mouth, went to ſee; when the Chriſtian Gallies, all diſarmed and unrigg'd, to ſeem the more contemptible in compariſon of the *Turks*, were towed by the *Turkiſh* Gallies; from whence in a few days after the Chriſtian Captives, already almoſt ſtarved with Hunger, were brought to the Court, and much inſulted by the *Turks*, who promiſed to themſelves now the Empire of the World, vainly asking what Enemy they had to fear, now the *Spaniard* was overcome. *Don Alvares Sandes*, the chief of the Priſoners, was carried into the Divan: where being asked by *Ruſtan* Baſſa what his Maſter meant by invading other Mens Territories, when he could not defend his own; *Alvares* anſwer'd, he was no judg of that, but that his Buſineſs was to perform his Duty, which he had endeavoured to do, tho he had been unfortunate therein. Then upon his Knees he beſought the Baſſa to intercede for him to *Solyman*, for that he had a Wife at home, and ſeveral ſmall Children;

Zerbi *retaken by the* Turks.

dren; and *Ruſtan* having, contrary to his manner, anſwered him courteouſly, he was commanded away to *Caradine*'s Caſtle, towards the black Sea, but was quickly remanded, and ſome time after, with ſome others of the chief Priſoners, at the requeſt of the Imperial Embaſſador, ſet at liberty, altho he had before deny'd them to the *French* Embaſſador *Salviat*, who had been an earneſt Interceſſor for them. Now beſides theſe there were two other noble Priſoners made at *Zerbi*, viz. *Don John* of *Cardoua*, and *Don Gaſton*, a Son of the Duke of *Medina*; the firſt of whom had wiſely prepared a great Sum of Mony to be left at *Scio* for his Ranſom, as he was carried to *Conſtantinople*, and ſo obtained his Liberty; but the other could never be heard of, it being ſuppoſed that *Pial* the Admiral Baſſa made away with him, when he heard *Solyman* made great Enquiry after him to have him in his power, for fear his own Covetouſneſs in his firſt concealing him for his Ranſom, ſhould come to light. However, *Pial* knowing his Maſter's Reſentment, durſt not go to *Conſtantinople*, till he found means to obtain his Pardon by the means of *Suleiman* Baſſa the Eunuch, and *Solyman*'s Chamberlain, who granted the ſame to him in theſe remarkable Words from an Infidel Prince: *Well, he has his Pardon from me for ſo great an Offence; but let God, the moſt juſt Revenger of all Villanies, inflict due Puniſhment upon him after this Life.* Neither were the *Turks* idle the following Year in the *Mediterranean*, but robbed and ſpoiled with their Gallies divers Places on the Coaſts of *Italy*, *Sicily* and *Malta*, againſt whom *Philip* II. King of *Spain* ſent out his Fleet; but he unfortunately loſt 25 of his Gallies, with *Mendoza* the Admiral, in a dreadful Storm, which happened on the 18th of *September*. 1561.

Not long after this, *Ferdinand* the Emperor having with much difficulty obtained a Peace of *Solyman*, in a Diet held at *Frankfort*, *Nov.* 24th 1562. got his Son *Maximilian* elected King of the *Romans*; whither *Ibrahim* Baſſa, the *Turkiſh* Embaſſador, came with Preſents, and a Letter from his Maſter to *Ferdinand*, written in a proud imperious Stile, and containing the Conditions of the Truce for 8 Years; the moſt material of which was, That *Ferdinand* ſhould pay unto *Solyman* a yearly Tribute of 30000 *Hungarian* Ducats for *Hungary*, *Peace betwixt* Ferdinand *and* Solyman.

1564. and the Arrears of two Years: and this Truce continued inviolable till *Ferdinand*'s Death, which happened in 1564. being ſucceeded by his Son *Maximilian* in the Empire, when the Commanders of the Frontiers on both ſides, weary of Eaſe, began to ſurprize ſtrong Holds and Towns in one another's Territories; the Author whereof was *Melchior Balas*, the Emperor's Lieutenant in that part of *Hungary* towards *Tranſylvania*, who firſt ſurprized ſeveral Towns upon thoſe Frontiers, which was revenged firſt by the Vayvod of that Country in the taking of *Sackma* with *Balas*'s Wife and Children in it; and then, being aided by 4000 *Turks* and 3000 *Moldavians*, by ravaging the Emperor's Territories, taking of *Hadan*, and laying ſiege to *Ungar*. This made *Maximilian* ſend *Lazarus Suendi*, a valiant Commander, with 8000 Men to beſiege *Tokay*, which

The Peace violated.

1565. he took on the 5th of *Feb.* 1565. and then the rich Town of *Erden*. In the mean time *Solyman*, to facilitate his intended Revenge, ſent an Embaſſador to the Emperor to put him in mind of the League between them, while the Baſſa of *Temeſwaer* beſieged *Giula* with 6000 Men, as the *Tranſylvanians* in *June* did *Erden*. But *Chernivich*, the Emperor's Embaſſador at *Conſtantinople*, returning home about this time, fully convinced his Maſter that the *Turks* meant nothing but War, for all their Pretenſions to the contrary; whereupon he made all neceſſary Preparations for it, tho the *Turkiſh* Embaſſador was ſtill diſſemblingly treating of a Peace, notwithſtanding Arch-Duke *Charles* had cut off 8000 *Turks* at one time that were ravaging the Borders of *Stiria*. In ſhort, *Maximilian* being confirmed on all hands that *Solyman* had projected grand Deſigns againſt him, not only fortify'd his Frontier Gariſons, but reſolved the following Spring to call a general Diet of the Princes of the Empire to meet at *Ratisbon*, to provide for the withſtanding of the common Enemy; where we at preſent leave this matter, and proſecute the Affairs of the *Turks* in the *Mediterranean* againſt the Knights of *Malta*, which is worth recording.

Beſides the manifold Damages done continually to the *Turks* at Sea by the Knights of *Malta*, which determined *Solyman* to take a ſevere Revenge upon them, he was more particularly ſollicited thereunto by *Caſ-*

ſumes

ſumes, the Son of *Barbaroſſa*, King of *Algiers*, and *Dragut*, Governour of *Tripolis*, by whoſe advice he fitted out a ſtrong Fleet for that Expedition, and incouraged his chief Commanders in a pat Speech to deſtroy thoſe *Malteſe* Pirates (as he called them) and the better to effect it, delivered unto them a Plan of the whole Iſland, and a Project of all their Fortifications: of which Proceedings *John Valette*, a *French*-man, and Grand Maſter of the Order, being advertiſed both by Letters and Meſſengers, he aſſembled a Council of his Knights together, acquainted them with the Enemy's Deſigns, and encouraged them with all the Arguments he could uſe to oppoſe them to the utmoſt Extremity; which after they had unanimouſly promiſed to do, and after publick Prayers and Supplications were made in every Church throughout the Iſland, they appointed three Knights, *viz.* one *Italian* ſirnamed *Imperator*, another *Borneas* a *French*-man, and the third *Quatrius* a *Spaniard*, diligently to provide all Neceſſaries for the War, who ordered the Suburbs and Trees that might be any ways injurious to their fortify'd Places to be pulled down, viewed all the Works, ſtrengthned the Gariſon, and ſupply'd them with all manner of Proviſions, while the Grand Maſter ſent to the Pope and other Princes for Aid againſt the common Enemy.

In the mean time *Solyman* leaving *Conſtantinople* on the 22d of *March*, went to *Modon*, where *Muſtapha* Baſſa, a Man 75 years old, General of the Land Forces, muſtered the Army, wherein were 7500 Horſe, called *Spahi*, out of *Aſia*, 400 from *Lesbos* or *Mitylene*, 4500 Janizaries, beſides a ſort of Men who live upon the Revenues of the *Mahometan* Church, to the number of 13000, who had at *Conſtantinople* vowed their Lives for their Superſtition; out of *Thrace* and *Morea* 1200 Horſe, and 3500 Voluntiers out of divers Countries. The Fleet was commanded by *Pial* Baſſa, conſiſting of 130 Gallies, 22 Ships of Burden, beſides one caſt away near *Modon*, wherein were loſt 6000 Barrels of Powder, 13000 Cannon-balls, and 400 *Spahis*; beſides there were ten Gallies from *Rhodes*, two from *Lesbos*, and about 17 Galliots and other ſmall Veſſels. With this Fleet the *Turks* arrived at *Malta* on the 18th of *May*, and put into the Haven of *Marzaſiroc* on the North-Eaſt part of the Iſle; but find-

1565. Turks *Preparation for* Malta.

1565. ing they were not ſafe there, they removed to Port *Major*.

Malta *deſcribed.* The Iſland of *Malta* lies in the *Mediterranean*, between *Africa* and *Sicily*, being 20 Miles in length, in the broadeſt Place 12, and in Circumference about 60 Miles: that part of it which looks towards *Sicily* hath many good Harbours for Shipping; where beſides Port *Marzaſiroc* towards the Eaſt, with another called *Sala*, it hath two good Havens, the one called *Major*, and the other *Marzamoxet*, divided from one another by a narrow Piece of Ground running with a Ridg from North to South, upon the Head of which ſtands the Caſtle of St. *Elmo*, very ſtrong both by Nature and Art. At the Entry into the Haven of *Major* are four Promontories on the left, upon the ſecond of which on a rough high Rock ſtands the ſtrong Caſtle of St. *Angelo*; whereunto adjoins the Town, ſeparated from it by a Wall or Ditch, and ſituated in a Hollow, cut out of the main Rock, ſtrengthned alſo with the Sea and human Induſtry: and upon the third ſtands the Caſtle of St. *Michael*. Again, to the Weſt of Port *Marzamoxet* is the Harbour of St. *George*, and after that another called *Bennorat*, then the Port St. *Paul*, and next the *Salanarum Sinus*; but towards *Africa* there is only the Port *Milliaria*.

Now as to the Proviſion made by the Grand Maſter againſt this mighty Power of the *Turks*, he had about 1300 Mercenaries in the Iſland, 1000 Seamen of the Knights Fleet, 500 in St. *Angelo*, 5000 Country People fled into the fortify'd Places, 500 Knights, beſides Prieſts and Eſquires; in the City of *Malta* it ſelf 200 Soldiers, as many Citizens, with 300 Country Horſe. The firſt thing that happened after the Arrival of the *Turks* was, that 200 of them who went aſhoar took *Rivier*, a Knight of the Order, and his Companion priſoners; and ſometime after the *Turks* landed 20000 Men at Port *Marzaſiroc*, with five Pieces of Cannon, and began to intrench, while *Pial* Baſſa with 7000 went to view the Caſtle of St. *Michael*. At laſt the *Turks* in a Council of War having reſolved to beſiege the Caſtle of St. *Elmo* with all their Forces, they caſt up a Mount in order to batter it, and play upon the Gallies in the Haven, that ſo they might open a way for their Fleet to enter; tho they were quickly beaten

beaten down from the Mount with the Cannon of the Caſtle to their great diſcouragement. But having caſt up another upon higher Ground, they annoyed not only the Harbour, but the Caſtle of St. *Angelo* alſo, with their Battery, and run their Trench nearer to St. *Elmo*; on which they ſo planted their Batteries, as to annoy both it and St. *Michael* alſo. At laſt came *Dragut*, Governour of *Tripolis*, with 13 Gallies and 1600 Soldiers in them to the *Turks*, being followed by ten Galliots from *Bona*, and in them two Companies. The *Turks* encouraged with theſe Supplies (while the Chriſtians from *Sicily* and elſewhere were ſo ſlow to come to the relief of the Order) ſuddenly on the third of *June* aſſaulted the Caſtle of St. *Elmo*, in hopes with their Scaling-Ladders to get over that part of the Rampiers which was nigheſt the Bulwark of the Caſtle; but the Beſieged in the Ditch, which before had ill Flankers to ſecure the ſame, had made a large ſtrong Flanker of Earth and Faggots, from whence they valiantly repulſed the Enemy, and filled the Ditches with their dead Bodies; but they truſting to their Multitudes, came on again, and gained the Flanker, whereby they commanded all that part of the Ditch towards the Port of *Marzamoxet*, and there with wonderful Celerity ſo fortify'd themſelves under the Protection of their Guns from Port *Marza*, that the Beſieged could not hurt them: and having in the night filled the Ditch under the Bulwark, yet loſt 800 Men in a freſh Aſſault they gave, to 45 of the Chriſtians. However the Grand Maſter thought fit now to reinforce the Caſtle with 200 Knights, and divers other Soldiers. In the mean time the *Turks* knowing that the Chriſtians expected Supplies every hour from the Pope and other Places, and that if they could once take the Caſtle of St. *Elmo*, they might ſecure their Fleet in Port *Marzamoxet*, and with more eaſe carry the reſt, they began to batter the Caſtle anew for four days together without Intermiſſion, and the night following gave an Aſſault, and with their Scaling-Ladders had almoſt gained the Top of the Walls, from whence they were driven down with ſuch Violence by the Beſieged, that they never after durſt ſet a Ladder to it, till the laſt Conflict.

The Caſtle of St. Elmo *beſieged by the* Turks.

At

156 At the same time the Grand Master sent *Montserrat* to command in *St. Elmo* instead of the Governour *Brolia*, who had so fatigued himself in the defence of it, that he was fallen sick; while the *Turks* still continuing their Batteries with greater fury than before, gave another Assault: for they had made a Bridg over the Ditch of such a breadth, that ten Men might go a-breast, placed 4000 Musqueteers about the Ditch, and brought all their Fleet to St. *George*'s shore, not far from the Castle. So that when they had for the space of 18 days batter'd the Walls with 13000 Shot, and were now in hopes presently to have won the Castle, behold a brave Body of valiant Knights and Soldiers ran to the Bridg, and there encounter'd the *Turks* hand to hand with incredible Resolution; while the 400 Men who we said the Grand Master had before sent to reinforce the place, thrusting Barrels of Gunpowder under the Bridg, throwing Wildfire and Stone, and firing furiously upon the Infidels, blew up the Bridg, and overwhelm'd 800 *Turks* with it, and most of the rest were wounded. During which, some other *Turks* casting up a Trench on that side of the Castle towards *St. Angelo*, were quickly driven by the Besieged from thence also; insomuch that they thought fit now to retire into their Camp, after they had lost 2000 of their best Men, and the Christians almost 100, and almost as many more wounded. The same day the Grand Master perceiving Port *Marzamoxet* to be but negligently guarded by the *Turks*, caused a Brigantine to be carried from the Haven over land to *Martia Scala*; which he sent with Letters into *Sicily* to the Vice-Roy, importing what the *Turks* had done, and how he might send him Relief, which he press'd him to expedite with the greatest earnestness, because of the great need he stood in of it. In the mean time the *Turks* not valuing the slaughter of their Men, after they had thunder'd day and night with their Cannon upon the Castle, gave a most dreadful Assault upon the Breaches, which lasted for five hours together; but they were at length repulsed by the Valour of the Christians, after they had here lost *Dragut* himself and a vast number of their Men, and the Christians 200. However the *Turks* obstinately persisting to carry the Place or perish, and to that end being about to make all things ready for the last

laſt Aſſault; the Grand Maſter having held a Conſultation with his Knights about abandoning the Caſtle, and bringing the Beſieged off in Pinnaces before they all periſh'd, they agreed to ſend three Knights to them for that purpoſe; who finding it was their deſire to maintain the Place to the laſt extremity, or periſh with it, the Knights made a report of the ſame and the ſtate of the Caſtle to the Grand Maſter, according to every one's different Sentiments of the matter. At laſt the *Turks*, on the 13th of *June*, having with all their Power both by Sea and Land ſurrounded the Caſtle in the dead of the night, ſet up their Ladders, made the Bridges, wrought in their Mines, and with their Artillery batter'd down the reſt of the Walls to the very Rock on which the Caſtle ſtood; ſo that notwithſtanding the Beſieged did Wonders in its defence, and had already loſt four hundred Men, till it was Noon-tide, yet the *Turks* ſtill continuing their freſh Supplies, at length unhappily prevail'd over the ſmall and diſtreſſed number of the Chriſtians, who were not only every Man of them ſlain, but the *Turks* exercis'd a barbarous Cruelty upon the very Bodies of the dead Knights, whoſe Hearts they cut out and their Heads off, then hang'd them up by the heels in their red Clokes with red Croſſes, in ſight of *St. Angelo* and *St. Michael*, and caſt their Bodies afterwards into the Sea: which ſo enraged the Grand Maſter, that he ordered all the *Turkiſh* Priſoners to be ſlain, and his Men to give none quarter.

St. Elmo *taken by the* Turks.

The Caſtle of *St. Elmo* thus loſt, the Grand Maſter, tho very heavy at heart, yet appear'd with a chearful face, and ſupported the Minds of his Soldiers all he could with comfortable Speeches; but at the ſame time writ to *Meſquita* Governour of *Malta*, then at *Meſſina*, a Letter full of Complaint for want of timely Succour, which might have ſaved *St. Elmo*, and now without celerity all would be loſt. But in the mean time *Muſtapha* ſent a Meſſenger to *La Valette*, and an old Priſoner along with him, with promiſe of Liberty if he would go to the Town, and try to induce them to article for the Surrendry of it; but the Grand Maſter was angry at the Propoſal, and told him, that if he had not been a Chriſtian he would have order'd him preſently to have been hanged. About which time one

Philip

1565. *Philip Laſcaris*, a noble *Grecian* by Birth of the City of *Patras*, being privy to many of *Muſtapha*'s Deſigns, on the firſt of *July* threw himſelf into the Sea, and ſwam to the Caſtle of *St. Michael*, and adviſed the Grand Maſter what was to be done at the Point of *St. Michael*, and many other things in reſpect to their Defence, tho little Relief could be expected from the Vice-Roy of *Sicily*, who was very cold upon the matter; and all for the preſent he was willing to do, was to allow the Knights there leave with their own Men and two Gallies to depart for *Malta*, where after much difficulty they landed at the black Rocks on the South part of the Iſland. In the mean time a great and foggy Miſt happening to riſe ſo thick that a Man could hardly ſee for it, a Boy of twelve years old by chance looking out at a window in the Caſtle of *Malta*, ſuddenly cried out he ſaw a *Turk* going from the City to *St. Michael*; who was found to be a *Greek* of *Malta*, and upon his Examination confeſſed his Deſign was to give the *Turks* notice of the landing of thoſe Soldiers, that they might be intercepted by them: for which reaſon he was cut into four pieces.

Theſe new Supplies being come to the Grand Maſter, they requeſted to be put into the Caſtle of *St. Michael*, as the place now moſt aſſaulted by the *Turks*, for which the Grand Maſter highly applauded them, but yet would not remove the old Gariſon: However they made a Sally next-day, and ſlew 200 *Turks*, which inraged *Muſtapha* very much; for knowing they were the new Supplies that did this, he grew ſuſpicious of thoſe whom he had appointed to watch the further part of the Iſland, and changed them; then block'd up the Harbour of *Marzamoxet* with his chained Gallies, and received ſome Bread with *Ochial*, whom he had made Governour of *Tripolis* inſtead of *Dragut*, and ſent thither with five Gallies, but was now come back unto him. He alſo ſent *Zalock* to acquaint *Solyman* with the taking of *St. Elmo*, and a Deſcription of *Malta* as they found it at their arrival; and farther to declare to him, he had found the *Malteſe* much ſtronger than he expected, and therefore if his pleaſure was for him to proceed in the Siege, he deſired further Supplies; and preſently after fell to the battering of the Towns and Caſtle of *St. Michael* and *St. Angelo* with the

Turks *batter* St. Angelo, *&c.*

the greateſt fury imaginable, while three Gallies departed from *Sicily*, *July* 7. wherein beſides the Knights of the Order were 600 *Spaniards* and 300 of the Pope's Soldiers commanded by *Columba*, ſome Proviſion and Ammunition, with a deſign to come to the Relief of *Malta*; but being not able to land in any ſafety, they were forced to return back to *Meſſina* from whence they ſet out. But the *Turks* had better luck, for at the ſame time the King of *Algiers* with ſeven Gallies and ten Galliots, wherein were 2200 Soldiers, came to reinforce them; at whoſe requeſt the Baſſa granted him to carry on the ſiege of *St. Michael*, and joined 2000 of his own beſt Soldiers to his Troops. Hereupon he commanded 90 ſmall Veſſels to be carried over out of Port *Marzamoxet* to *Aqua Martia*, deſigning to beſiege the Caſtle by Water on that ſide; of which the Grand Maſter being advertiſed by a Chriſtian Fugitive, he by the Advice of ſome Maſters of Ships cauſed a Chain to be made from the corner of the Caſtle of *St. Angelo*, to the place where the Enemy deſigned to land. But while the *Turks*, diſappointed of their hopes of landing, were abaſhed at the matter, a deſperate Chriſtian Deſerter came to the King, and promiſed with a Hatchet and the aſſiſtance of two or three more to break the Chain; which being perceived by the Beſieged, five or ſix of them ſwam thither preſently with their Swords drawn in their hands, and having ſlain two of the number, the others fled. However the King began with the Siege in earneſt on the 15th of *July* both by Sea and Land, but he met with a very warm Reception; for the Beſieged's Cannon for the ſpace of three hours together, during which the Aſſault laſted, ſlew 2000 *Turks*, and ſunk 12 of their Galliots, while the reſt could not land their Men for the Chain, but were forced to retire. The Aſſault by Land alſo endured for five hours, wherein many *Turks* were ſlain, and 200 of the Beſieged.

But for all this, the *Turks* unmindful of their Loſs, and deſirous of Revenge, ſo violently batter'd the Caſtle with their Cannon, that what the Beſieged repaired by night they beat down again by day, and in the time of Battery made a Bridg on the 20*th* of *July* over the Ditch, that they might come to a cloſe Fight with the Chriſtians; who perceiving the ſame, *Pariſot* the Grand Maſter's

1565. Maſter's Nephew, *Agleria* and ſome Mercenaries went out to burn it, but were moſt of them ſlain in the Action; and ſo the *Turks* continued their Batteries till the 28th of *July*, when in the Afternoon they made three deſperate Aſſaults upon the Caſtle in divers Places, but were at length forced to retire, with which the Beſieged were very much incouraged; and the ſame made the *Turks* deviſe another Method, and ſo fell to mining, but their Mine, almoſt brought to Perfection, was countermined by the Chriſtians. Next day, which was the 1ſt of *Auguſt*, the Beſieged in a Sally burnt down the Enemies Bridg over the Ditch, with Fire and Gunpowder, and the day after ſlew 300 *Turks* in an Aſſault made by them on that part of the Caſtle where *Rufus* commanded, who was himſelf alſo unfortunately ſlain in that Action; neither would they by any means ſuffer the Enemy to fill up the Ditch, but beat them out from thence alſo with Loſs. However the *Turks* filled up the Ditch at the Caſtle Bulwark, and with two great Cannon, planted upon an high Mount, began to play upon the Caſtle, with which they did ſome Execution; but one *Aquilates*, a *Spaniſh* Soldier, deſerting to the Enemy, and fully informing them how the State of things ſtood with the Beſieged, and the *Turks* ſeeing fair Breaches now both in the Walls of the new City and the Caſtle of St. *Michael* wide enough for Carts to enter, they reſolved, *Auguſt* 7th, to aſſault both Places at once, and performed the ſame with incredible Noiſe and Fury; which being heard by the Knights in the City of *Malta*, who ſaw the Heavens obſcured with the Smoak, they preſently ſally'd out with their Horſe, and fell upon the *Turks* at *Aqua Martia* with that Bravery, Fury and Surprize, that they fled with piteous Cries to their Fellows for help; who being diſcouraged therewith, were glad to give over the Aſſault with the Loſs of about 1500 Men, beſides thoſe who were ſlain in the Chaſe, whereas of the Beſieged not above 100 were ſlain in both Places.

Muſtapha finding this, and another Aſſault he cauſed to be made ſoon after upon St. *Michael*, had not the deſired effect, diſpatched a Galliot with Letters to *Solyman*, to ſhew unto him the State of the Fleet, how the Army was diſtreſſed, that there were but ſmall hopes

hopes of taking the Places beſieged, and how well the Chriſtians were provided, and the like. In the mean time one *Salazar* being attended by two Gallies from *Syracuſe* as far as *Pozalo*, which durſt go no farther, with ſome difficulty got in his little Boat to *Malta*, and there in diſguiſe went into the *Turkiſh* Camp, where he could obſerve ſcarcely 14000 Land Soldiers; and after he had acquainted the Grand Maſter with it, he happily got back again in his little Boat to *Meſſina*: with whoſe Narrative and the Reports of others the Vice-Roy was ſomewhat animated to go to the Relief of *Malta*. But notwithſtanding the great Diſcouragements the *Turks* laboured under, and that one Captain *Givara* had, ten Foot from the Town-wall, which the Enemy had battered down, cauſed a Curtain to be drawn fifty foot long and five thick, with Flankers at both ends, and finiſhed in two nights time, for the Defence of the Beſieged, and that the Chriſtians diſcovered the *Turkiſh* Mine; old *Muſtapha*, contrary to the Opinions of moſt of the other Commanders, continued the Siege, by Batteries, Mining, filling the Ditch, caſting up of Mounds, *&c.* all which were defeated by the Valour and Skill of the Beſieged. But at laſt the Admiral Baſſa, fearing to be ſurprized by the Chriſtian Fleet, cauſed 70 Gallies to be in a readineſs, beſides 40 more that lay at *Marzamoxet* unſerviceable, as wanting both Men and Equipage; which laſt was ſpent in making Bridges, Mines, and other Neceſſaries for the Siege, and the Men either ſick or deſtroyed with frequent Aſſaults: But finding after long expectation no Appearance of the Enemy's Fleet, he landed his Soldiers again, and ſupply'd the Land General with ſome Powder, which he began now to want; when the *Turks*, with greater fury than ever, batter'd the Walls, and finding they had made ſufficient Breaches, they fiercely attack'd both *St. Angelo* and *St. Michael* on the 18th of *Auguſt* at Noon-day, with all their Power, and after three Repulſes came on again, but were at laſt glad to retreat into their Trenches. The Great Maſter did Wonders during this cruel Fight, which laſted five hours; however part of the *Turks* remained ſtill in the Ditch, and to cover themſelves, with admirable Celerity caſt up a Retrenchment of Earth, Faggots, and the like, with a

Deſign

1565. Deſign to approach and undermine the Walls, but the Beſieged's Cannon quickly ſlew many of them, and with Fire conſumed the reſt. The obſtinate *Turks* renewed the Aſſault next day, at the ſame Places as they did the day after attack the ſaid Breaches no leſs than ſeven times, but without ſucceſs: Their Endeavours alſo at the ſame time to enter the Caſtle, at a Place called the *Spur*, were ineffectual, ſo that they were forced to give over with great loſs, while the Chriſtians in all had not above 100 ſlain; but among them were many valiant Knights. However ſome of the Knights now would have the Grand Maſter remove the Records and other valuable things into *St. Angelo*, which he refuſed to do, that the People might not be diſcouraged therewith: but for all this the reſolute Baſſa would be ſtill a doing, and aſſaulted the ſame Breaches with the dawning of the Day anew, and with that Expedition and Succeſs, that a *Spaniſh* Prieſt came with his hands wrung, roaring and crying to the Grand Maſter, that three or four of the Enemies Enſigns were, by the Breach of the Caſtle, broke into the new Town; who thereupon preſently with comfortable words to thoſe about him, haſted with all his Soldiers and Citizens, Men and Women, both old and young, againſt the Enemy, and with much Difficulty, incredible Bravery, and great Slaughter, forced the Enemy with the ſetting of the Sun to retire, with the Loſs of 200 of his own Men, and 2000 of the Infidels.

Now while the Vice-Roy of *Sicily* with a Fleet of 72 Gallies, and 10000 choice Soldiers on board, was come to *Syracuſe*, and from thence ſent a Veſſel out to get Intelligence, before he went farther towards *Malta*, the Knights notably repaired their Breaches, and raiſed other Works for their Defence with great Application; while the *Turks* once more reſolved with all their Troops to ſtorm both the Towns as before, and therefore brought an Engine made of Spars and Boards able to cover 30 Men, under the Breach of St. *Michael*, yet the Beſieged ſallying out quickly burnt it; but their Mine at the Caſtle Breach, in order to blow up the *Turks* if they entered, was diſcovered by the Enemy, whoſe General *Muſtapha*, now diſplaying the ſtately Standard of the *Turkiſh* Emperor, commanded his Soldiers to enter the Breach of the Town of St. *Michael*,

Michael, where there enſued a moſt terrible Fight between them and the Enemy; but at length the Chriſtians prevailing, beat them back, tho what with the Threats and Promiſes of their General they came on again, and renewed the Fight with the ſame ill Succeſs as before: and the Chriſtians the ſame night in a Sally drove them from their Mount, with the Slaughter of 300 of them to 25 of the Chriſtians, beſides 60 they blew up with their Mine at the Caſtle Bulwark. In the mean time the Vice-Roy with the Chriſtian Fleet put out of *Syracuſe* for their relief, but being by a Storm driven to the Iſle of *Æguſa*, 120 Miles Weſt of *Malta*, the Vice-Roy ſent the Grand Maſter word he would quickly with his Fleet come to relieve him, (who by a Deſerter was now further advertiſed of the Infidels deſigns once more to aſſault the Caſtle of St. *Michael*, and if that would not do, to draw off and be gone.) Accordingly being come the 5*th* of *September* to *Gaulas*, and not finding the Signals for his ſafe landing in *Malta*, he retired to *Pozalo*, where *Auria* the Admiral, who followed him thither, told him he had ſeen the Signals, which made them immediately put into *Malta* and land; whereat the beſieged were over-joy'd, while the *Turks* ſore diſmay'd with their Arrival, truſs'd up Bag and Baggage, and ſo embark'd. But on the 11*th* of *September*, while their Fleet was brought out of the Haven of *Marzamoxet*, a Deſerter of *Genoa* came in great haſte to the Grand Maſter, and told him 10000 *Turks* were marching towards *Malta* to meet the Chriſtians upon the way; whereupon he preſently ſent a good body of Soldiers to the Caſtle of St. *Elmo*, and there ſet up one of the Colours of the Order, and upon their arrival took 24 great Cannon, which the *Turks* for haſte could not carry along with them. Now the *Turks*, upon miſinformation that the Chriſtian Succours were not above 3000 Men, landed 7000 at Port *St. Paul*, and marched towards *Malta*, while the Chriſtians in good Order advanced to meet them: they quickly engaged, and the *Turks* were ſoon routed, and purſued to their very Gallies; of whom, beſides 400 that were drowned, 1800 more were ſlain. In this Siege the *Turks* loſt in the whole about 24000 Men, and the Chriſtians about 5000, who for this wonderful Deliverance gave ſolemn Thanks to Almighty God,

Turks *forſake the Siege.*

1566. then repaired their Breaches; and the Grand Maſter communicated the ſame to divers Princes, of whom he requeſted Help againſt the like Dangers.

Tho it may be truly enough ſaid, that the *Turks* were hardly never more baffled in any Enterprize than this, yet we do not find *Solyman* reſent it in the Commanders, as he and his Predeceſſors did in former Times; but after the return of the Fleet to *Conſtantinople*, *Solyman* being angry with the Governour of *Scio* his Tributary, becauſe during the late Siege he held Intelligence with the Grand Maſter, and was two Years Tribute in Arrear, he commanded *Pial* his Admiral to take that Iſland, who preſently with a Fleet of 80 Gallies on the 15*th* of *April* in 1566 arrived at *Scio*; where having accepted of the Preſents of the chief Men in the Iſland with all appearance of kindneſs, immediately poſſeſt himſelf of the Haven in three places; and then ſent for the Governour and 12 of the principal Citizens to come to him, whom he immediately laid in Irons: and then ſending his Soldiers to take the Town-Hall, they pulled down the Town Colours, and ſet up one of the *Turks* in the room of it; and having conſtituted a new *Turkiſh* Governour with a ſtrong Gariſon in the place, and ſet up the *Mahometan* Superſtition, he ſailed for *Italy*, and deſtroyed many Villages on the Coaſt of *Apulia*; beſides many Wretches whom he carried along with him into a miſerable Captivity.

The Turks *ſurprize* Scio.

Their Affairs in Hungary.

We have already told you of the Rupture between *Maximilian* and *Solyman* in *Hungary*, and of the Diet called by the former in order to repreſs the Power and Fury of the other; ſo that *Maximilian* drew together a great Army out of *Germany*, *Italy* and other Countries, from whence divers noble Perſons and valiant Knights, beſides common Soldiers, came voluntarily to ſerve him. The buſineſs was much fomented by the Vayvod of *Tranſylvania*, who would fain be King of *Hungary*, upon the ſame Terms as King *John* had been; and *Solyman* once more was induced to come at the Head of an Army into this unhappy Country, which indeed proved the concluding Scene of his Life. In the mean time the Imperial General *Suendi* laid ſiege to the Town of *Huſth* in the Borders of *Tranſylvania*, while the Baſſa of *Buda* attacked *Palotta* about 8 Miles from *Raab* with greater Fury than Succeſs, he being

forced

forced to riſe from before it with the loſs of ſome Cannon and Baggage, by the Count *Hoffenſtein* come to relieve it; who being reinforced by the Count *de Salm*, took *Weisbrun*, and ſoon after Count *de Salm* took *Tatta* or *Dotis:* likewiſe *Geſtes*, *Witha*, *Iſchokika* and *Samboc* Caſtles were deſerted by the Enemy. In the mean time Count *Serini* Governour of *Raab*, underſtanding *Solyman* approached, detached 1000 Foot and 500 Horſe to lie in Ambuſh for the Forlorn of the *Turkiſh* Army, who near *Five Churches* routed and ſlew or wounded moſt of them (among whom was *Hali-Beg* a great Sangiack of the *Turks*) and got a vaſt Booty.

Solyman with his Army being come to the *Drave*, ordered a Bridge to be made over it, and the Moraſs on the other ſide; which proved a work almoſt of inſuperable Difficulty, but was at length accompliſhed a Mile in length, and the whole Army paſſed over, whoſe Vanguard (on the laſt of *July*) conſiſting of 9000 Men advanced and incamped within a Mile of *Sigeth*, being quickly followed by 100000 Men more out of *Solyman*'s Camp. *Sigeth* is ſtrongly ſituated in a Moraſs on the North of the *Drave* upon the Frontiers of *Dalmatia*, and was at that time a ſtrong Bulwark againſt the *Turks* from entring into *Stiria:* It had a Gariſon of 2300 Men, under the Command of the valiant Count *Nicholas Serini*, who incouraged them to defend the Place, and withſtand the Enemy with the utmoſt Reſolution. On the 6*th* of *Auguſt* came *Solyman* himſelf into the Camp, being received with the diſcharge of all their Cannon and ſmall Arms, and with the loud ſhouts of, *Alla*, *Alla*, *Alla*; which the Chriſtians anſwered with the Name of *Jeſus*. *Auguſt* 7. the *Turks* having raiſed a great Mount, and planted a Battery thereon, fired moſt terribly upon the new Town next day from three ſeveral places; and having with incredible Labour caſt up a Mountain in the midſt of the Marſh, as it were in the Town-ditch, and from thence ſeverely annoyed the inner Caſtle of the Town and the Beſieged, the Count thought fit to withdraw the Gariſon, and ſet it on fire. On the 10*th* of *Auguſt* the *Turks* furiouſly battered the old Town in three places, and ſet all hands to work to make two Ways or Bridges over the Marſh to the old Town; from

Sigeth *beſieged by the* Turks.

1566. whence the Janizaries covered with Sacks and the like, mightily annoyed the beſieged, and at length on the 19*th* entred the Town with ſuch Fury and Celerity, that many of the Gariſon were ſlain before they could recover the Caſtle: againſt which next day they planted four Batteries; and having alſo made two plain ways to it over the Marſh, they fiercely aſſaulted the Breaches on the 29*th*, but were beaten back with the Loſs of many Men, and one of their great Baſſa's.

Solyman's *Death and Character.* But while theſe things were in agitation, *Solyman* fell ſick of a Looſeneſs, and withdrew to *Five Churches*, where he died on the 14*th* of *September*, after he had lived 76 Years, and of them reigned 46. He was tall of Stature, ſlender Make, long-necked, pale-coloured and wan, his Noſe long and hooked, of Nature ambitious and magnificent, more faithful to his Promiſe than moſt of his Predeceſſors, and in ſhort hardly wanted any thing worthy of a great Prince of his Religion. *Muhamet* the Prime Viſier, for fear of the Inſolency of his Janizaries, to conceal his Death cauſed his Phyſicians and Apothecaries to be ſecretly ſtrangled, and ſent Poſt to *Selymus* then at *Magneſia*, to acquaint him with his Father's deceaſe: However the Janizaries beginning to miſtruſt the matter, he cauſed *Solyman*'s dead Body in his wonted Apparel to be brought into his Tent ſitting upright in his Horſe-litter, as if he had been ſick of his uſual Diſtemper the Gout, with which they appeared well ſatisfied.

Sigeth *taken by the* Turks. But to return again to the Siege: The *Turks* having by the 5*th* of *Sept.* undermined and blown up the greateſt Bulwark of the Caſtle, and at length took that alſo near unto the Caſtle Gate, which made the brave *Serini* retire into the inner Caſtle, that was on the 7*th* ſet on fire by them alſo; ſo that the diſtreſſed Count putting on a new Suit of Clothes, and incouraging his Soldiers to ſell their Lives as dear as they could, he at the Head of them with his Sword and Target in hand, ſallied out at the Gate in the midſt of their Enemy, where he and the reſt of them were all ſlain except a few. But this Siege coſt the *Turks* very dear; for according to their own Confeſſion they loſt 7000 Janizaries and 28000 other Soldiers, beſides Voluntiers, and three great Baſſa's. *Serini*'s Head was cut off and put upon a Pole for the Army to gaze at, and then ſent

ſent by the Viſier as a preſent to Count *Salm*, then in the Emperor's Army at *Raab*, with this ſhort Letter: In token of my Love, I ſend thee the Head of a moſt reſolute and valiant Commander, thy Friend; the remainder of his Body I have decently buried as became ſuch a Man: *Sigeth* bids thee farewel for ever. *Guila* alſo was ſurrendred to the *Turks* by the Governour *Keretſchen*, being baſely delivered up to the *Turks* for a great Sum of Mony, at the Inſtigation of his Kinſman *Bebicus*, who contrary to their Faith murdered moſt of the Gariſon; and the Traitor himſelf afterwards being accuſed at *Conſtantinople* for his ſevere uſage of ſome *Turkiſh* Priſoners, was by *Selymus*'s command thruſt into an Hogſhead ſtuck full of Nails with the Point inwards, and this Inſcription upon it: Here receive the reward of thy Avarice and Treaſon, *Guila* thou didſt ſell for Gold; if thou be not faithful to *Maximilian* thy Maſter, thou wilt not be ſo to me. And ſo the Hogſhead being cloſe ſtopped up, he was rolled up and down in it till he died. But the *Turks* were not ſo ſucceſsful in another part of *Hungary*, near *Alba Regalis*, where ſeveral of them were ſlain, and the Governour of that place taken by *George Thuriger*, whom he preſented to the Emperor, and was knighted, and rewarded beſides with a Chain of Gold for it. And it hapning that a *Spaniard* there preſent, who had heard the Governour often at *Conſtantinople* ſay he could with his own Power conquer the *German* King (as the *Turks* commonly term the Emperor) he charged him with it in the Emperor's Preſence again and again; which made him at laſt anſwer, Such is the Chance of War that thou ſeeſt me now a Priſoner, and able to do nothing. With this we ſhall put a period to this great Emperor's Reign, whoſe dead Body we'll leave to be carried (as if living) in a Litter to *Conſtantinople*, till the Arrival of *Selymus*, his Son and Succeſſor, of whom in the next Chapter.

Christian Princes Cotemporaries with *Solyman*.

			A. D.	R.
Emperors of *Germany*.		*Charles* V.	1519.	39.
		Ferdinand.	1558.	7.
		Maximilian II.	1565.	12.
Kings	Of *England*.	*Henry* VIII.	1509.	38.
		Edward VI.	1546.	6.
		Queen *Mary*.	1553.	6.
		Queen *Elizabeth*.	1558.	45.
	Of *France*.	*Francis* I.	1514.	32.
		Henry II.	1547.	12.
		Francis II.	1559.	1.
		Charles IX.	1560.	14.
	Of *Scotland*.	*James* V.	1514.	29.
		Queen *Mary*.	1543.	
Popes of *Rome*.		*Leo* X.	1513.	8.
		Adrian VI.	1522.	1.
		Clement VII.	1523.	10.
		Paul III.	1534.	15.
		Julius III.	1550.	5.
		Marcellus II.	1555.	22 days
		Paul IV.	1555.	4.
		Pius IV.	1560.	5.
		Pius V.	1566.	6.

CHAP.

CHAP. III.

The Life of Selymus *the Second, Emperor of the* Turks,

SELYMUS was no ſooner advertiſed of his Father's Death by Letters from *Muhamet* Baſſa, but he haſted from *Cutai* in *Galatia* to *Conſtantinople*; where he arrived on the 23*d* of *September*, and was by the Janizaries there preſent ſaluted Emperor, being then about 42 years Old. Next day in the Temple of *Sophia* he cauſed ſolemn Prayers and Sactifices to be made for his Father, and gave 10000 Sultanies as a Largeſs to the Janizaries, with a promiſe to augment their Pay. Soon after which he went to meet the Army near *Belgrade*, now gallantly marching homeward with the dead Body of *Solyman*, whom they thought ſtill to be alive; whoſe Death now that it might be made known to all, the Colours were preſently trailed, a dead March ſounded, and a heavy Silence commanded to be obſerved throughout the Camp. It was not long before *Selymus* was proclaimed Emperor in the Army, who arrived at *Conſtantinople* on the 22*d* of *Nouember*; but the Janizaries would not let him enter into his Seraglio before they had a greater Donative, and a Confirmation of all their Privileges, and much ado he had to appeaſe them. 1566. Selymus *ſaluted Emperor.*

Things being thus ſettled at home, *Selymus* was as deſirous of Peace abroad, and particularly in *Hungary*, as *Maximilian* himſelf, becauſe he might be then more at leiſure to ſuppreſs a great and dangerous Rebellion in *Arabia Felix*; neither was he out of fear of the *Perſians*: So that at laſt it was agreed upon between them, that if *Maximilian* would ſend Embaſſadors to *Conſtantinople*, with the Arrear of Tribute-mony, and a Commiſſion to treat of Peace, they ſhould have a ſafe Conduct. Accordingly *Maximilian* having nominated the Biſhop of *Agria*, and the Baron *Tenſenbatch* for this Embaſſy, they ſet out the firſt of *July*, and being arriv'd at *Buda*, made rich Preſents to the Baſſa of that 1567. *Overtures of Peace between the Emperor and the* Turks.

1567. Place for engaging his Friendſhip; from whence after two days they departed for *Conſtantinople*, where they arrived *Auguſt* 22. which happened to be *Friday* the *Turkiſh* Sabbath, about ten in the Morning, when *Selymus* going to his Father's Moſque, paſſed by them without any regard, as if he knew of no ſuch matter as their Arrival. Six days after, they went with the Emperor's Lieger Embaſſador *de Vuis*, to viſit the Prime Viſier *Muſtapha*, and make him Preſents; and the ſame day ſaluted *Partau* Baſſa, and *Ferat* with Civilities of the ſame nature; neither did they forget the other three great Baſſa's in their turn alſo. But for all this they could not obtain Audience of *Selymus* himſelf, till the 21*ſt* of *September*, whereunto they were conducted very honourably, and made exceeding rich Preſents to the Emperor; after which they had divers Conferences with the Great Baſſas about the Peace by *Selymus*'s Order. At laſt the *Turks* propoſed, that whereas during *Ferdinand*'s Reign the *Turkiſh* Subjects in *Hungary* paid all their Taxes and Tribute to their old Lords and Maſters living in the Emperor's Juriſdiction, as *Ferdinand*'s Subjects did to their Lords dwelling in the *Turkiſh* Dominions; now by this Treaty the *Turks* ſhould have their Subjects free. This the Imperial Embaſſadors would by no means agree to, without knowing their Maſter's Pleaſure, to whom they diſpatched a Meſſenger for that purpoſe. At length the Peace was concluded at *Adrianople*, where *Selymus* 1568. then was, in the beginning of *January* 1568. for 8 Years, upon theſe Conditions, That each Prince ſhould hold what he had: That the Emperor ſhould pay 30000 Ducats as a yearly Tribute to *Selymus* for *Hungary*: That the Subjects on neither ſide ſhould pay any thing to thoſe of the other Prince; and laſtly, that the Vayvod of *Tranſylvania* ſhould be comprehended in the Treaty.

Peace concluded.

Peace between the Perſians and Turks. Now while this Peace was in agitation, came an Embaſſador from *Schach Tamas* King of *Perſia* to *Selymus*, to conclude a Peace between them, and he was very honourably entertain'd at *Adrianople*; but had not long been there, when going to viſit *Muhamet* the Prime Viſier, a *Giamoglan* ſhot at him with a Musket, but happily miſt him; at which the Embaſſador was much concerned. The Fellow being taken, was examined before the Viſier and Embaſſador, and boldly anſwered, that

that he had no other reaſon for that Action, but that the Embaſſador was an Heretick, and ſent from an heretical King, and an Enemy to their Religion, and therefore it was not convenient that he ſhould come and treat of a Peace, he being unworthy of it. But he was ſeverely puniſhed for this Inſolence, by being dragg'd at an Horſe-Tail thro the City, having his right Hand cut off, and then his Head. The Embaſſador on the 22*d* of *December* went to deliver the Preſents from his Maſter to the Grand Seignior, which he ſent before him upon 44 Camels; among which, beſides other valuable Things, and in great Numbers, there was an Alcoran with the Authority of *Ali*, as they held, this being their Cuſtom always in their Embaſſies: and *Selymus* allowed the Embaſſador and his Retinue 500 Ducats a day; but it was not long before the Peace was concluded between them, and the Embaſſador returned home.

The *Venetians* alſo renewed their League with *Selymus* this Year, but he brake it the next without any juſt Provocation: for he in the interim being about to build a magnificent Temple at *Adrianople* for his own Sepulcher, with a Monaſtery, a College, and an Alms-Houſe; but wanting Lands wherewith to endow them, ſome of his ſubtle Favorites put him in the head to conquer the Iſland of *Cyprus*, which would abundantly ſupply him. When he propoſed this to the Great Baſſas, *Muhamet* the Prime Viſier oppoſed it with many Arguments drawn from the Danger and Uncertainty of the Expedition, as well as from his League with the *Venetians:* but *Muſtapha* Baſſa, and *Pial* the Admiral ſo impugned his Arguments, that *Selymus* rejected the Viſier's Advice, and in his Anger called him Chriſtian, an opprobrious Term among the *Mahometans*; and ſo made Preparations both by Sea and Land for this Expedition, which was not ſo covertly carried on, but the *Venetian* Embaſſador took notice of it, and complained of the breach of the League, by their abuſing the *Venetian* Merchants to the Viſier, and requeſted that the Grand Signior would ſend an Embaſſador to *Venice* in order to a better Intelligence between them; but in reality his deſign was to protract time, that the Senate might have ſome leiſure to prepare for the impending Storm: and indeed he never left the Viſier, till

1569. *War deſign'd by* Selymus *againſt the* Venetians.

1569. till he had by this means procured that one *Cabates* ſhould be ſent Embaſſador thither, who upon his Arrival delivered *Selymus*'s Letters, put up in a little Bag wrought with Silk and Gold, to the Senate; and while they were tranſlating of them into *Italian*, he delivered alſo his Meſſage by word of Mouth, being a Recapitulation of pretended Injuries done to his Maſter's Subjects, and requiring in his name the peaceable ſurrendry of the Iſland of *Cyprus* to him for Satisfaction, elſe he would force the ſame from them. However, he told them, in the Name of the Prime Viſier, that he was ſorry for the Breach, and therefore adviſed them in their Wiſdom to conſider of proper ways for preventing the Calamity of an heavy War to fall upon them. His Maſter's Letter being much to the ſame purpoſe, the *Venetians* anſwered, That they always kept their Leagues with the *Ottomans*, even when they might have violated the ſame with Advantage; diſſembled many Injuries; and that *Selymus* himſelf, notwithſtanding his pretended Complaints, was the Aggreſſor; that therefore ſince they could not by the Power of the League, they would by force of Arms defend that Kingdom, and committed the Event to a Juſt God, who would revenge the violation of the *Turkiſh* Faith upon them. This done, the Embaſſador was ſent privately away for fear of the People, while the Senate made all neceſſary Preparations both by Sea and Land, at *Cyprus* and elſewhere, to defend themſelves; but for aſſiſtance from other Princes they could get none, but what the Pope, King of *Spain*, and ſome *Italian* Princes did for them: and *Selymus* upon his return clapt up the *Venetian* Ambaſſador *Barbarus*, and the Chriſtian Merchants of the Weſt throughout his Empire.

Cyprus *deſcribed.* But becauſe the Iſland of *Cyprus* is to be the principal Seat of this War, it will not be improper to give a ſhort Account of it: It lies in the *Cilician* Sea, having *Syria* to the Eaſt, *Pamphylia* to the Weſt, *Egypt* Southward, and *Cilicia* or *Caramania* Northward; in Circumference 427 Miles, 175 long, and not above 65 broad. It's very fruitful, and has undergone many Viciſſitudes and Changes: It was given or exchanged by *Richard* I. King of *England*, to *Guy* King of *Jeruſalem*, and continued by many Deſcents, till it came to *Janus*, who in

in 1423. was taken Priſoner by *Melechel* Sultan of *Egypt*; but being ranſomed, it was agreed he ſhould pay yearly Tribute for the Iſland to the Sultan and his Succeſſors, of 40000 Crowns. *John* the Son of *Janus* by *Helena*, of the Noble Family of the *Palæologi*, had a Daughter named *Charlotte*, married to *Lewis* Son to the Duke of *Savoy*, beſides a baſe Son called *James*, who in the Broils of his weak Father's Reign uſurped the Kingdom, and was therein protected by the Sultan of *Egypt* againſt *Lewis* of *Savoy*: after which for his greater aſſurance joining in a League with the *Venetians*, and marrying *Catharine Cornelia* the Daughter of *Marcus Cornelius* a noble *Venetian*, he died not long after in 1470. and left her big with Child; but he dying alſo ſoon after he was born, the Queen was perſuaded by her Brother to make a reſignation of the Kingdom of *Cyprus* to the Republick, which continued in their Power, till taken from them in this War by *Selymus*.

Selymus having made all things in a readineſs, to divert the *Venetians* near home, in the beginning of *February* ſent a good Body of Horſe and Foot to infeſt the Frontiers of *Dalmatia*, while *Pial* Baſſa with the Fleet firſt ſailed to *Eubœa*; but hearing no News of the *Venetians*, he ſteered for *Tenos* one of the *Cyclades* belonging to the Republick, and when he could not by fair or foul means bring the Inhabitants to ſubmit to him, he attacked their Town with much Fury, but without Succeſs. He directed his Courſe for *Rhodes*, where *Muſtapha* General of the Expedition, and *Haly* Baſſa had appointed *Pial* to meet them; but firſt *Muſtapha* ſent the *Venetians* a Letter to require them to deliver up *Cyprus* to him, with ſevere Threatnings in caſe of their refuſal: the *Turks* generally accounting their Expeditions unlawful or unfortunate, without ſome previous ſort of denouncing War to thoſe whom they intend to attack. The whole Fleet, conſiſting of 200 Gallies, Galliots, and ſmall Men of War, with many tranſport Ships, being come to *Cyprus*, they landed their Army without reſiſtance; and preſently intrenching themſelves, they forthwith ſent the Fleet to tranſport the reſt of the Army out of *Pamphylia* into the Iſland; and having conſidered the Country very well, they reſolved firſt to begin with the Siege of *Nicoſia*, which had in the whole about 8000 Horſe and Foot in Gariſon, 1570. Turks *beſiege* Nicoſia.

1572. Garison, but most of them raw Soldiers, and Natives of the Country. The City stands in the middle of the Island, in an open Country, compassed with a Wall about eight Miles in Circumference; but the *Venetians* of late had fortified it with new Walls, thick Rampiers, and 11 strong Bulwarks, and had raised three great Fortresses for the defence of the Wall, with store of Cannon and other Necessaries of War. In the mean time *Mustapha*, *July* 22*d*, incamping within a Mile and half of the City, made the necessary Approaches, planted and plied his Batteries with that wonderful Celerity, that they soon run their Trenches to the very brink of the Town Ditch, which had not been well scoured by the Besieged; and afterwards so battered the Walls, that in a few days not only all the Curtains between three of the Bulwarks were beaten down, but all Places thereabout lay full of dead Bodies, both of the Besiegers and Besieged; which last, tho upon great disadvantage, made a desperate resistance. But after long fighting, the *Turks* entring the Ditch, made two ways to the Walls, which they fortified on both sides with Waggons and Earth. Then they fell to put up their Ladders, fill the Ditch, and undermine the two Bulwarks of *Constance* and *Podocatera*; but the Christians repulsed them in the Assault with great Loss.

Christian Fleet differ, and do nothing.

Now the Summer being almost half spent, the *Venetian* Fleet, which for some time had been infected with the Plague, sailed to *Corfu*, in expectation of the coming of *Auria* the *Spanish* Admiral to join them; but weary of waiting, they sailed to *Candia*, and on the 12*th* of *August* landed at *Suda*, where in the latter end of the Month they were joined by *Colonna* the Pope's Admiral and *Auria*, the whole Fleet together consisting of 192 Gallies and 12 Galeasses, besides Victuallers and Tenders; with which about the middle of *September* they sailed to the relief of *Nicosia* in *Cyprus*: but hearing by the way that *Nicosia* was lost, they so fell at variance among themselves about pursuing the Expedition, and so relieve the rest of the Island, or return home, that all the Authority of the Pope's Admiral, and the Arguments of him of *Venice*, could not induce *Auria* to stay, but return he would to *Messina*, as the others did to *Corfu*; from whence *Zanius* the *Venetian* Admiral was by order of the Senate carried Prisoner

ſoner to *Venice*, where we leave him, and *Venieri* to ſucceed him, and return again to the Siege of *Nicoſia*, from whence we have made this ſhort digreſſion.

Muſtapha dividing his Army into 4 parts, attacked the 4 Bulwarks of the City with greater Force than ever; which tho carried on with utmoſt Reſolution and Obſtinacy, yet the Beſieged ſhewed as much Bravery in their own defence, tho to the great diminution and weakening of them. After this Aſſault, ſome of the Gariſon, contrary to the opinion of *Dandulus* the Governour, were for making a Sally upon the Enemy, to ſhew they were ſtill hearty and vigorous; which was performed by a Company of *Italians* under *Plovianus* and *Scotus*, who penetrating to the very Trenches of the unwary *Turks*, ſlew many of them, but were forced at laſt by the Multitude to retire, with the Loſs of divers Men, among whom were their two Commanders. They had alſo worſe ſucceſs with the Meſſengers they ſent out to the Country People for relief; for being taken by the *Turks*, they were tortured to death before their faces. At length *Muſtapha* finding the many Letters ſhot with Arrows into the City, containing divers Arguments to induce the Beſieged to ſurrender, did not avail; and finding the ſame confirmed to him by the Anſwer of *Conſtantius*, who he deſired might be ſent out to parley with him, and who told him they did not diſtruſt their own Strength, but were ready to endure whatever happened, rather than to prefer the uncertain Friendſhip of an unknown Prince before the gracious Favour of ſuch worthy Princes as they had known Experience of: *Muſtapha* encouraged his Men to another Aſſault, who attempted by the Ruins of the Walls, and other places, to enter the City. Yet the Beſieged valiantly endured the Storm, being ſtill as diſtreſſed Men in hopes of being relieved by the approach of the Chriſtian Fleet. At length *Muſtapha* knowing the diſtreſs of the Beſieged, cunningly cauſed a Retreat to be made to amuſe them to a ſecurity; which took ſo well, that 200 of his choiceſt and nimbleſt Men ſecretly mounted the four Bulwarks, and took them with the ſlaughter or flight of the ſecure Chriſtians therein; and being ſeconded on all hands by freſh Troops, quickly cleared the Walls with a great Slaughter alſo, whilſt the Governour, Biſhop, and better

Nicoſia *taken by the* Turks.

1570. better sort of Citizens retired to the Town-Hall, where the *Turks* brake in upon them, and put them all to the sword. Great was the Barbarity here used to Men, Matrons, Virgins and Children, who became a Sacrifice to the Lust and Wrath of the incensed *Turks*; so that all places were filled with Mourning and dead Bodies, the whole number of the Slain being computed at 14866. and the Booty valued at twenty hundred thousand Millions of Ducats, besides 250 pieces of Cannon. Thus the famous City of *Nicosia*, some time the Regal Seat of the Kings of *Cyprus*, fell into the hands of the *Turks* on the 9th of *September*, in the Year 1570 in whose power it remains to this day. Neither was *Cyrene* long behind it, which the Governour *Palaci* cowardly gave up to the Infidels, on condition he might safely with his Garison march away. From *Nicosia* *Mustapha* marched and laid siege to *Famagusta*; but soon after, by reason of the strength of the Place, approach of Winter, and other Considerations, he thought fit to raise it, and leave the Work for another Year.

Quirinus his Exploits.

In the mean time, while the *Venetian* Admiral lay at *Corfu*, they were incouraged and joined by the rude *Acroceraunian* People to besiege the strong Castle of *Chymera*, which they quickly took; and not long after *Quirinus* their Vice-Admiral landing near the Bay of *Maina* in the *Morea*, took a strong Castle built by the *Turks* two years before, to put a stop to the Christians Passage that way, raised it, put all the Garison to the

1571. sword, and carried 24 Pieces of Cannon along with him to *Zant*. Neither was this brave Man in the beginning of the following Year less successful in the reinforcing *Famagusta* with 1700 Men, and store of Ammunition and Provisions, after he had first gallantly beat some of the *Turkish* Gallies, and driven them aground. Of this Supply *Selymus* was no sooner advertised, but he ordered the Governnour of *Scio* to be beheaded, and him of *Rhodes* to be disgraced, who had the charge of the Guard of those Seas. *Fial* Bassa was also put out of his Admiral's Place, and *Partau* Bassa advanced to his Post.

Relieves Famagusta.

From the very beginning of this War the *Venetians* Pope, and King of *Spain*, had by their respective Plenipotentiaries at *Rome* been deliberating about entring into

into a perpetual League or Confederacy againſt the *Turks*; but they were ſo divided in their Opinions and Intereſt, and they ſpun the time out with many Altercations, that they could come to no final Reſolution upon the matter: But ſomething elſe happened that brought them quickly to a better Temperament and Agreement. *Muhamet* the Prime Viſier, who was a ſecret Friend to the *Venetians*, giving private notice to the *Venetian* Embaſſador *Antonio*, that there were hopes of Peace for them, if the Senate under the pretence of exchanging Priſoners and redeeming Merchants Goods, would ſend ſome fit Perſons to *Conſtantinople* for that purpoſe; one *James Ragazonio* was diſpatched thither, who being a Man of great Underſtanding, ſo managed the Affairs, that things began to come to a good Temperament between him and the Viſier, of which the Pope and King of *Spain* being advertiſed, they were much alarmed, and ſhewed ſuch a forwardneſs to conclude the perpetual League aforeſaid with the *Venetians*, that the Senate inclined to them rather than the *Turk*, and therefore ſent for *Ragazonio*, under pretence of better furthering the Peace, to return home. The Treaty was ſigned on the 24th of *May* this Year, wherein it was agreed that the Sea and Land-Forces ſhould conſiſt of 200 Gallies, 100 Ships, 50000 Foot, and 4500 Horſe, to be ready every Year, in *March* or *April* at fartheſt; to maintain which, the King of *Spain* engaged for one half, and the other to be divided into 3 equal Parts, whereof the *Venetians* ſhould bear two thirds, and the Pope one. *Don John* of *Auſtria*, the King's natural Brother, was to have the chief Command; *Tunis*, *Tripolis*, *Algiers*, if conquer'd, were to remain to *Spain*: but all other Conqueſts were to be divided between the Confederates, with ſome other Articles of leſs moment.

League between the Venetians, Pope and King of Spain againſt the Turks.

While theſe things were in agitation, the *Venetians* alſo, the more to intangle the *Turks*, endeavoured to excite *Tamas* King of *Perſia* to make war upon them. To which end they ſent *Vincent Alexander*, one of their Secretaries (who had lately eſcaped out of Priſon in *Conſtantinople*) by the way of the *Euxine* and *Sinope*, thither; who with much difficulty eſcaping the hands of the *Turks*, that had intelligence of this Embaſſy, at length got to the King's Court at *Casbin*: but after long

Venetians endeavour to bring the Perſians to make war upon the Turks.

1571. long ſollicitation could obtain no more ſatisfactory Anſwer from him than this, That foraſmuch as the Chriſtian Princes had made a perpetual League among themſelves, he would for two years expect the Event thereof, and afterwards, as occaſion ſerved, reſolve upon Peace or War. Of this improvident Reſolution the *Perſians* ſhall in time repent, as you'l hear in the ſequel of this Hiſtory; but we muſt firſt purſue ſome other paces of it.

The Siege of Famaguſta *renewed.*

To return therefore to *Famaguſta*, whoſe Siege this Year in *April*, *Muſtapha* renewed with an Army reinforced to near 200000 Men. It's ſituated on the Eaſt end of the Iſle of *Cyprus*, in a plain low Ground betwixt two Promontories, two Miles in Circumference, and of a ſquare Form; but that ſide towards the Eaſt longer and more winding than the reſt. It was almoſt two parts of it beaten upon by the Seas, and the reſt defended with a Ditch not above 15 Foot broad, a Stone-Wall, ſome Bulwarks and Parapets. Upon the Gate leading to *Amathus* ſtood a ſix-corner'd Tower, with others alſo out in the Wall. The Harbour, whoſe entrance is narrow, was ſhut up with a Chain, and near it ſtood an old Caſtle with 4 Towers. It had one ſtrong Bulwark of a modern Fortification, and its Gariſon conſiſted of 2500 *Italians*, 200 *Albanian* Horſe, and of the *Cypriots* themſelves were muſtered 2500 more; all reſolute Men ready to ſacrifice their Lives in the defence of their Country. The Place being in this ſtate, *Muſtapha* battered it ſeverely with his Cannon, and the Mortars alſo did great damage to the Houſes; but he was ſo far from gaining his Point with his firſt Aſſault, that he was beaten off then and upon other occaſions, with the Loſs of 30000 Men in a few days: which made the *Turkiſh* Commanders not only admire the Bravery of the Beſieged, but begin to deſpair of Succeſs. However, *Muſtapha* having ordered Mounts to be caſt up higher than the Walls of the City, and of the broken Stones made Walls on each ſide, to ſave his Men from the flanking Shot of the Chriſtians; they gave a freſh Aſſault, which was maintain'd daily upon the Breach for the ſpace of ſix Hours together, and alſo kept the Chriſtians in a continual Alarm by night: yet finding all this prevailed not, they contrived a cunning Stratagem, whereby to have poſſeſt themſelves of one of the

the City-Gates. There grew in the Iſland a plenty of a kind of Wood, much of the nature of Fir, eaſy to be ſet on fire, and hardly to be quenched; but in this different, that in burning it had ſuch an offenſive Smell, as could not be endured. Now the *Turks* brought a great quantity of this to the *Limoſine* Gate, cloſe unto which it continued burning for the ſpace of 24 Hours, to the great annoyance of the Beſieged: But for all this, *Bragadino* the Governour, and *Baleoneus* the General of the Gariſon Soldiers, ceaſed not, by all the importunities imaginable, to incourage the Beſieged in a vigorous defence of the Place; neither was the Senate of *Venice* alſo upon their part wanting to write to them to be of good cheer, and ſtill to hold out a while, promiſing them ſpeedy Relief.

The *Turks* on the other hand fell to mining in four ſeveral Places, one of which had that ſucceſs, that it blew up a great part of the Wall near the Tower upon the Haven; and the *Turks* preſently mounting, pitched their Colours upon the Breach, where there enſued a moſt obſtinate and terrible Fight between them and the Beſieged, inſomuch that the *Turks* loſt upon this occaſion 4000 Men and 14 Colours; but the Chriſtians came off with about 100 Men. The *Turks* notwithſtanding this plied them continually with their Batteries, ſo that on the eighth of *June* only they reckoned no leſs than 8000 Cannon-Ball ſhot into the City; on which one of the round Bulwarks being ready to fall down therewith, the Beſieged blew it up themſelves with about ſix hundred *Turks* along with it, who came to aſſault the Place. But the Infidels perſiſting ſtill obſtinate in continuing their Batteries and Aſſaults, whereby the Works were much ruined, and the Beſieged reduced to a ſmall number, who had now no more than 300 ſound Men among them, but ſeven Barrels of Powder, and other Wants increaſing upon them, the Citizens prevailed upon the Governor to capitulate; in order to which, a Ceſſation of Arms was agreed on, and the Place to be delivered up, on condition the Inhabitants ſhould enjoy their Lives, Liberty and Goods, with the free Exerciſe of the Chriſtian Religion; that the Governour and the reſt of the Gariſon might march away with Bag and Baggage, five pieces of Cannon, three Horſes, and be ſafely conducted to *Candia*. Here-upon

Famaguſta *ſurrender'd.*

1571. upon the Governour attended by ſome others of Quality, having leave to wait upon *Muſtapha* the *Turkiſh* General in his Camp; the perfidious Infidel ſecured them all, and next day the brave but unfortunate Governour, having his Ears firſt cut off in deſpite, was brought out to be gazed at, and tortur'd with the moſt exquiſite Pains that Tyranny could deviſe: They alſo many times made him carry a Basket full of Earth upon his back to repair the Rampiers, and as often as he paſſed by was derided, made to fall down upon his Knees, and inſulted by the proud Baſſa, and asked, whether he hoped Chriſt his God would come to help him or not? At laſt to put him out of his Miſery, tho in the cruelleſt manner, he was barbarouſly flay'd alive, his Head cut off, his Skin ſtuffed and hung at the Yard-Arm. They alſo two days after hanged Count *Theupolus*, but the famous Commander *Martinengo* had the good fortune to be hid by one of the Baſſa's Eunuchs, and then by the help of a *Greek* Fiſherman got ſafe to *Leptis*; from whence he went firſt to *Candia*, and afterwards to *Venice*, where he gave the Senate a full account of all that hapned in the Siege, and loſs of *Famaguſta*; which made the whole Iſland of *Cyprus* fall under the *Turkiſh* Yoke, to the no ſmall weakning and mortification of that moſt ſerene Republick.

Turks commit great ſpoil on the Chriſtian Coaſts.

Now while *Muſtapha* was engag'd in the Siege of *Famaguſta*, the two great Baſſa's *Partau* and *Haly*, joined by *Uluzales* Vice-Roy of *Algiers* with the *Turkiſh* Fleet, on the 13*th* of *June* landed 12000 Men at *Suda* in the Bay of *Candia*; where after they had ranged for ſome time up and down the Country, and did all the miſchief they could, they were at length ſet upon by *Juſtiniano*, many of them ſlain, and the reſt forced to their Gallies for ſhelter: neither had they better ſucceſs the next day when they landed again, ſo that they then bore away for *Cythera*, *Zant* and *Cephalonia*, from whence they carried away ſix thouſand poor Chriſtians into Captivity; and came to *Dulcigno* in *Dalmatia*, a little before beſieged by a Body of the *Turks* by Land, which was quickly now ſurrender'd to them, as were alſo the Towns of *Antivari* and *Budua*: and ſo purſuing their good Fortune, they beſieged the Town of *Catharo* both by Sea and Land, which was defended with great Reſolution. In the mean time

Uluzales

Uluzales and *Caracoza* having obtained leave of the Admiral for ten days with ſixty Gallies to go and ravage the adjacent Iſlands of the *Venetians*, they came to the Iſle of *Carzola*, about 80 Miles to the Eaſt of *Raguſa*; and aſſaulting a Town of the ſame name upon the Iſland, *Contareni* the Governor and the Townſmen fled out by night, and left not in the Town above 20 Men, and about 80 Women, who yet all bravely with Arms in their hands reſolved to die rather than to fall into the Enemies hands. In purſuance of which, as even the Women with Stones, Fire, and their other Arms, were oppoſing the Infidels, by the Divine Goodneſs a great Storm came ſuddenly from the North, which ſo incommoded the *Turks*, that they gave over the Aſſault, and went to ravage other places; but hapning at laſt to take a Ship bound from *Meſſina* to *Corfu*, and finding Letters on board for the Governour of that place, giving him an account of the League lately concluded between the Chriſtian Princes againſt the *Turks*, they immediately ſent them away to *Selymus*, who thereupon order'd his Admirals to commit all manner of Hoſtilities in the Dominions of the Chriſtian Confederates, which they did not only upon the Coaſts of *Dalmatia* and *Iſtria*, but upon that of *Apuleia* alſo, and all along the *Italian* Shore; which made the *Venetians* themſelves ſo apprehenſive of danger, that they fell to the fortifying of their City and other places with utmoſt Application. At length, after they had done all the miſchief they could in theſe parts, as alſo at *Corfu* where they landed, the whole *Turkiſh* Fleet ſailed to the Gulph of *Lepanto*, where they are quickly to meet with another ſort of Fortune than had hitherto befallen them.

The Chriſtian Fleet under Don John.

For at laſt after long Expectation *Don John* of *Auſtria*, a young Gentleman of about 24 years of Age, and natural Son to the Emperor *Charles* V. with Admiral *Auria*, and the *Spaniſh* Fleet under his Command conſiſting of 81 Gallies, whereof three were from *Malta*, arrived at *Meſſina*, where he found the *Venetian* Fleet of 10 Gallies, ſix Galeaſſes, two tall Ships, and a great many ſmall Galliots, under Admiral *Venieri*, as alſo 12 of the Pope's Gallies under Admiral *Colonna*. In this Fleet, beſides Seamen, were reckoned 20000 good Sol-

1571. diers, and among them divers Persons of great Quality, who came as Voluntiers in this Expedition; more particularly the never to be forgotten *Alexander Farneſe* Prince of *Parma*, in time to be the Glory of his Country, and to grow up to be the moſt famous Commander of the Age he liv'd in. Now all the Power of the Confederates being thus met together, the General *Don John* called a Council of War, of which conſiſted only himſelf, *Requiſenez* the Vice-Admiral and Director of all his Actions, *Venieri*, *Barbadico* Proveditor-General, *Colonna* the Pope's Admiral and Kinſman, *Pompeius Colonna*, with one Secretary; where the chief Point that came under their Conſideration was, whether they ſhould adventure the general fortune of a Battel againſt ſo potent an Enemy, or only endeavour to defend their own Frontiers. *Requiſenez* was againſt fighting upon that lay, and rather inclined to beſiege *Durazzo*, *Caſtel-nuevo*, or *Orico*; but the *Venetian* Admirals on the contrary uſing many Arguments for engaging the Enemy with their now united Forces, the General thought fit to call ſome others to the Council of War, where *Cornea* and *Sirbellio*, both *Spaniards*, and Perſons of great Valour and Experience, uſing many ſubſtantial Arguments for a Battel, this Opinion prevailed. In purſuance to the ſame, the whole Fleet ſailed from *Meſſina* to *Paxo*, where from a ſmall Broil at firſt there was like to have riſen ſuch a Diſſenſion between the Commanders, as would have ſpoiled the whole Expedition: for *Don John* finding the *Venetian* Gallies but ill mann'd, he put 4000 *Spaniards* and 1000 *Italians* on board of them; where one Captain *Tortona* a *Spaniard* mutinying without cauſe, and likely to do much miſchief, the *Venetian* Admiral *Venieri* cauſed him to be hanged at the Yard-Arm: which the *Spaniards*, and particularly *Don John*, took ſo ill, as ſuppoſing it intrenched upon his Authority, that all the grave and judicious Arguments uſed to him by Admiral *Colonna* would ſcarce appeaſe him. For tho he brought him to ſome ſort of Temper and Accommodation, yet he could not endure to impart his Counſels to *Venieri*, but all matters were tranſacted by *Barbadico*, who was a Perſon of great Wiſdom, and much beloved by all ſorts of Perſons.

The

The Fleet being arrived at *Cefalonia*, and underſtanding by the Governour of *Zant*, that the *Turkiſh* Fleet conſiſting of 335 Sail of all ſorts lay in the Gulph of *Lepanto*, they ſteered their Courſe that way in order to fight them. The *Turks* no ſooner had intelligence hereof, but they held a Council, whether they had beſt fight the Chriſtians, or keep themſelves ſafe within their Harbour; and here they were very much divided in their Opinions: *Chiroche*, who was a Man of great Years and Authority, was clearly againſt a Battel, urging there was no neceſſity for it, and uſed many other Arguments to diſſuade them from it. *Partau* the Admiral Baſſa ſeem'd to be indifferent upon the matter: but *Haly* Baſſa, who was a Man of a fiery Spirit, and the great Champion of the *Turks*, could not endure to hear of any delay, but was for preſent engaging; wherein he was much incouraged by the report of the famous Pirate *Caracoza*, who with a ſwift Galliot viewing the Chriſtian Fleet, by ſome means or other was much deceived in their number, and ſo drew the Baſſa into a belief of his Error: inſomuch that his and his Adherents opinion prevailed for fighting, notwithſtanding the information given them by two other Spy-boats of the great ſtrength of the Chriſtian Fleet, who for all that would not ſuffer themſelves to be undeceived. Hereupon *Partau*, after he had taken on board 12000 *Janizaries* and *Spahies* drawn out of the neighbouring Gariſons, and four thouſand other Soldiers, and made a Speech to incourage his Commanders the more to their Duty, they very chearfully put out of the Gulph, and ſteered their Coaſt for the Iſle of *Echinates*, about half way between *Patras* and *Lepanto*. The Order of their Line of Battel was thus: The two great Baſſa's *Partau* and *Haly* commanded in the Center, *Mahomet Beg* with 56 Gallies was in the right Wing, and *Uluzales* with 95 Gallies in the left, while *Amurathes Dragute* with 30 Gallies, and ſeveral other ſmall Veſſels, was in the Rear.

The Fight of Lepanto.

In the mean time the Chriſtians were moving towards the Enemy; and finding by their Spy-boats on the 7th of *October* in the Afternoon that they were at hand, *Don John* commanded the great Enſign of the Confederates, the Signal appointed for the Fight, to be

1571. put up, and in bright glittering Armour went in Perſon to all the Squadrons of the Fleet in his Long-boat, to incourage them to play the Men; while *Auria* did the ſame in the right Wing where he commanded, and *Barbadico* in the left. The day was now well ſpent, when both the Fleets were ready to give battel. This Action being one of the moſt memorable that ever happen'd at Sea, we deſire to be a little more particular in the relation of it: The Signal of Battel was no ſooner given on both ſides, but the *Turks* with a hideous Cry, firſt lighted upon ſix Galeaſſes that lay at Anchor almoſt a Mile before the Fleet, who out of their Fore-Caſtles fired very briskly upon the *Turks*, and in their paſſing by ſo gauled them with whole broadſides, that divers of their Gallies were ſunk, which made them bear farther off; and they were the more ſurprized at it, as not knowing ſuch ſort of Ships carried ſuch Cannon and ſo many of them, ſo that this proved of great advantage to the Chriſtians, and the beginning of the *Turks* Miſery. The Wind alſo, which had favoured the Infidels all that day, at that time chopt about to the Weſt, and ſo carried the Smoak upon them, to their no ſmall diſadvantage: but for all this they preſently made good their diſordered Squadrons, and came on with admirable Reſolution to the Engagement, wherein *Haly* obſerving the Admiral's Gally, ran upon her with ſuch violence as he would have preſently ſtemmed her; but he met with ſuch reſiſtance, that both their Beaks were broken, and fell into the Sea. There enſued a moſt terrible Fight between theſe two great Commanders and the other Ships that ſeconded them. Now there were in the Admiral's Gally of the Chriſtians 400 choice Men pick'd out of the whole Army, and conſiſting moſtly of Officers, who did very great ſervice upon this occaſion, and at laſt enter'd the Enemy's Gallies even to the main Maſt, where they fought ſo terribly on both ſides, that they enter'd in all no leſs than three times, and were as often repulſed by the *Turks*. *Venieri* ſeeing how things went, came up to the General's relief, but was encounter'd on the way by *Partau* Baſſa with his Gallies; and notwithſtanding the Example and amazing Courage of the Admiral (now above 70 years old) the *Turks* enter'd the

Prow

Prow of his Gally, which had certainly been taken had not the ſudden coming in of two brave *Venetian* Captains to his relief, turn'd the ſcale in ſome meaſure, which yet they perform'd with the loſs of their own Lives. At length the Chriſtians took two of the *Turkiſh* Gallies, while *Partau* himſelf eſcaped the danger in a Long-boat, and ſo got him out of the Battel. Not far from thence *Colonna* the Pope's Admiral was furiouſly fighting againſt, and made great ſlaughter of the Enemy, wherein he took one Gally: *Lignius* the *Genoeſe* Admiral did the ſame; and the Prince of *Parma*, with the other Voluntiers here, obtain'd immortal Honour.

Now *Chiroche*, or *Sirock*, otherwiſe called *Mahomet Beg*, with his right Wing falling in with the Galeaſſes, was ſore gauled and much dammified by them: To avoid which danger, as alſo a Shelf lying between him and the ſhore, he ſent a great part of his Gallies, and one *Alis* a *Genoeſe* Runnagade round about upon the right, and ſo to fall upon the Rear of *Barbadico*; who preſently tack'd about to receive him, and in this terrible Fight had no leſs than five Gallies upon his own at a time, but *Ciconia* ſix. Here the brave *Barbadico* grappling with the Enemy, and ſhunning no danger, was ſtruck in at the left Eye and almoſt thro the Brain with an Arrow, of which he died three days after; which ſo incouraged the *Turks*, that the Gally had certainly been loſt, had not *Nani* and *Portia* come in ſpeedily to relieve her, by whoſe means ſhe was preſently cleared of the Enemy, who fell here in great numbers: But both theſe Commanders were dangerouſly wounded; *Nani* being wounded in the Thigh and right Side, and the other having ſix of the Enemies Gallies upon him at once, was not only ſorely burnt in the Face with Wild-fire, but muſt unavoidably have been loſt, had not ſudden relief come in, whereby they renewed their Courage, and took one of the principal Gallies of the Enemy. It was not far off that the noble *Contareni* and *Syrock* had a terrible Engagement, wherein many Men periſhed on both ſides; but the *Turks* had the worſt of it, for the Chriſtians took his Gally, and having ſlain or driven over-board all that were in her, took *Sirock* himſelf, yet breathing, but half dead, whom they preſently diſpatch'd out of the way.

1571. But to return again to *Don John* himself, who now with the terriblest fighting that ever was known, and doubtful Victory, had been above three hours engaged with *Haly* Bassa; he, notwithstanding the great Assistance given him by *Bacianono* from the Rear, finding himself in great danger, betook himself to his only and best Refuge, which was to bring forth his 400 select Men from under the Hatches, as before-mention'd, by whose Valour and Assistance he vanquished and took the Bassa's Gally; who being mortally wounded in the Head, and all over bloody, was taken Prisoner, and presently beheaded, and his Head upon the point of a Spear held aloft by *Don John* himself as a Trophy of his Victory. This so discouraged the rest of the Gallies that were still valiantly fighting, with the noise of the Christians crying Victory throughout the Fleet, that they fled towards the Shore that was not much above a Mile from them; but divers of them were taken and sunk by *Canalis*, and the famous Pirate and Runnagade *Caracoza* was one that fell among the rest: while *Achmet* and *Mahomet* the two Sons of *Haly* Bassa, and the Nephews of the Emperor *Selymus*, were by *Requisenez* both taken alive in their Gally.

Notwithstanding all this good success, the Fortune of the day was still doubtful in the right Wing, where *Auria* and *Uluzales*, both of them valiant and expert Commanders, did engage: *Auria* at first out of Policy seemed not only to decline bearing up to the Enemy, but stood off; while *Uluzales* extending his Wing, designed as if he would have hemmed him in, but offered not Battel, expecting some advantage also, which he soon obtained, by enclosing 12 of the *Venetian* Gallies (which had unadvisedly separated from the rest) whom he boarded and took; only *Superantio* a noble *Venetian*, rather than fall into the Infidels hands, blew himself and his Gally up. In the mean time the noise of the firing in this part of the Fleet, brought the Admiral of *Malta* to *Auria*'s assistance; where coming up singly, he had presently six *Turkish* Gallies upon him, who plied him so close that he was upon the very brink of being lost, when two of the other *Maltese* Gallies, who were engaged with three of the Enemies, seeing the danger their Admiral was in, came presently up to rescue him, which they effectually performed. *Uluzales* now understanding

derſtanding that the Center and right Wing of the Fleet was overthrown by the Chriſtians, thought it moſt adviſable to make the beſt of his way out of the Fight, and eſcape, which with ſome difficulty he effected with 25 Gallies and 10 Galliots, back again into the Bay of *Lepanto*. The number of the *Turks* ſlain in this famous naval Fight, could not certainly be known; *Guarnerius* who wrote of this War makes them to amount to 32000 Men, beſides Priſoners which were about 3500. The Gallies taken from them amounted to 161, with 40 ſunk or burnt; and of Galliots and other ſmall Veſſels were about 60 more taken, amongſt all which the *Turkiſh* Admiral's Gally was exceeding beautiful and rich; and *Hali* Baſſa's Casket found therein with 6000 Ducats, beſides a yearly Penſion of 300 Ducats, was given in reward to a *Greek* of *Macedon* who ſlew the Baſſa, for which he was alſo knighted by *Don John*. Beſides all this, he had the Burrel of the *Turks* Standard conferred upon him, which upon his return to *Venice* he ſold to a Goldſmith: the Senate paying a Ducat for every Ounce thereof, repurchaſed it from him, and repoſited the ſame among the Trophies of that moſt famous Victory. It was all of maſſy Silver gilt, and engraven round about with *Turkiſh* Letters, on one ſide whereof was, *God conducts and adorns the Faithful in worthy Enterprizes, God favours* Mahomet: on the other, *God hath no other God, and* Mahomet *is his Prophet.* Turks *overthrown.*

Two days after this Victory, *Venieri* ſent *Juſtiniano* with the News thereof to *Venice*, where it was celebrated with the utmoſt Joy; and to make the ſame the more Univerſal, all Priſoners were ſet at liberty, and all Debts that exceeded not 25 Crowns, paid out of the Treaſury; and the Day on which it was gained, *viz. Octob. 7th*, dedicated to the Memory of *Juſtina*, was by a Decree of the Senate made for ever a Feſtival; and to perpetuate the ſame, a great deal of Mony was coined, with *Juſtina* upon it, and an Impreſſion declaring the Victory. All the neighbouring Princes alſo congratulated the Republick upon the Victory; but in the midſt of this Joy, one of the chief *Turkiſh* Priſoners, hearing the Victory compared with the Loſs of *Cyprus*, wittily and truly enough ſaid, that the loſt Battel was to *Selymus* no other than as if a Man ſhould ſhave his Beard

1571. Beard that would in a little time grow again; but the loſs of *Cyprus* to the Republick was as the loſs of an Arm, which once cut off, could never again be recovered. Some alſo have wrote that *Selymus* himſelf upon receipt of the fatal News, made as little account of the loſs; ſaying, that it ſeemed by the event, that God Almighty had allotted the Chriſtians the dominion of the Seas, and him of the Land: but others relate that he was ſo oppreſs'd with Melancholy, that he would not ſuffer any on that day he received the News to ſpeak to him, and at laſt reſolved to maſſacre all the Chriſtians in his Dominions, leſt they ſhould lay hold of the preſent Opportunity for a general Revolt. But while the other Baſſa's (as Men diſmayed) would not adventure to diſſuade him from this tyrannical and deſtructive Reſolution; *Muhamet* Baſſa, who was much in his favour, undertook and happily effected it, by filling his Head with other moſt neceſſary Conſiderations for the Support and Security of his Government. So that at laſt being brought to a right temperament of mind, he ordered his Fleet to be repaired with all poſſible diligence, while the Chriſtians (now Winter approached) diſſolved theirs, and returned to their reſpective homes, but agreed to meet again in *April* following at *Corfu*.

However, the *Venetians* ſtill grieved for the loſs of *Cyprus*, gave not over ſo; but repairing their Navy with 30 Gallies, wherein were imbarked 6000 Soldiers, they won the Caſtle of *Margarita* in *Epirus*, and alſo recovered the Town of *Suppoto*, which the *Turks* the Summer before had taken from them: beſides which, the Gallies of *Candia* under *Canalis* intercepted many of the *Turkiſh* Veſſels, laden with Priſoners and the Spoils of *Famagusta*, as they were returning to *Conſtantinople*. But *Martinengo* had not the ſame ſucceſs in the Siege of *Caſtel-nuovo*; for tho at his firſt approach he had taken the Suburbs, and brought the Town to great Extremity, yet hearing of the coming up of the *Beglerbeg* of *Greece* with a great Power to relieve it, he gave over his Enterprize. The *Turks* in like manner to diſtreſs *Cattaro*, built a ſtrong Fort on the Bay leading to it; which *Superantio*, who commanded then as Admiral at *Corfu*, underſtanding, he undertook with 20 Gallies well mann'd to raze it, and relieve the Town:

to

to which end coming by night before the Mouth of the Bay, and there dividing his Fleet, he left one part at Anchor before the Fort, while with the other he bravely paſſed it farther into the Bay with ſmall oppoſition, and then began to batter it on that ſide as the reſt of the Gallies did on the other, and withal landed their Men on both ſides; who upon a Signal given, ran reſolutely to the Fort, and by plain force entring the ſame, put all the *Turks* to the ſword. They found therein 17 great Pieces of Cannon, much Armour, and abundance of Victuals, and ſeven Galliots that lay at Anchor under the Fort. *Cattaro relieved.*

Cattaro being thus relieved, *Superantio* with Victory returned to *Corfu*; where *Fuſcarini* now Admiral of the *Venetian* Fleet in the room of *Venieri*, with whom *Don John* could not well accord, as we have before obſerved, had lain ſome time in a readineſs expecting the Confederates coming to join him: but being now grown impatient with their delay, contrary to agreement, he ſent *Superantio* with 25 Gallies to *Meſſina* to haſten their coming, tho upon his Arrival he found little Preparation for that purpoſe. This made the Senate of *Venice* very uneaſy, and the rather becauſe they underſtood that the *Turks* with admirable diligence had fitted out a Fleet of 200 Gallies, and that the ſame was commanded by *Uluzales*, otherwiſe called *Occhial*, an *Italian* born in *Calabria*; who being in his Youth taken by the *Turks* at Sea, renounced his Faith, and from one Preferment to another was now advanced to be Admiral by *Selymus*. Wherefore they earneſtly ſollicited the Pope, King of *Spain*, and *Don John* himſelf, to haſten their Preparations, and more particularly *Superantio* was very preſſing with, and uſed many Arguments to *Don John* for that purpoſe; tho he put it off with many excuſes, and eſpecially that they were apprehenſive in *Spain*, the *French* with a great Fleet from *Rochel* would invade it, and for that reaſon he had poſitive command from the King not to leave *Meſſina* till further Order. But however the matter was in reality, he at length ſent 22 Gallies under the Command of *Lilly* of *Andrada* to *Corfu*, with whom went *Colonna* the Pope's Admiral. *Fuſcarini* upon their Arrival, tho it was now the Month of *Auguſt*, uſed very preſſing Arguments to perſuade them to 1572.

ſail

1572. ſail with their united Forces towards the Eaſt to fight the Enemy; which at laſt they agreed to, upon condition they ſhould by no means fight the Enemy but with their Galleons and Galeaſſes firſt placed in the front of the Battel. The whole Fleet conſiſted of 155 Gallies, ſix Galeaſſes, and twenty tall Ships; in the Right was *Superantio*, in the Left *Canalis*, and in the Center *Colonna*, *Fuſcarini* and *Lilly*, with *Quirinus* in the Rear. In this order they ſailed to *Dragonaria*, over againſt *Cerigo*; from whence ſending *Suriano* to diſcover the ſtrength of the Enemy, he returned with an account that the *Turkiſh* Fleet conſiſting of 160 Gallies, 60 Galliots and four great Ships, lay about *Malvaſia*, and ſoon after they were diſcovered to make towards *Malea*. But they did all they could, upon the coming up of the Chriſtian Fleet, to decline fighting: for tho *Uluzales* made a ſhew as if he would engage, yet in reality he meant nothing leſs; and upon the approach of Night he cauſed all his Cannon to be fired off only with Powder, and ſo in the thick Smoak retreated unſeen, and alſo coloured his cunning departure by Lights left in Cockboats, to make a ſhew as if the whole Fleet had been there ſtill. Hereupon the Chriſtians returned to *Cerigo*, and being very deſirous of an Engagement, appeared three days after in the Morning before the Bay of *Metapan*, where the *Turks* lay; who preſently came out of the Haven with their Fleet divided into three Squadrons, whereof the Left was extended a great way into the Sea; the Right kept near the Shore; and *Uluzales* himſelf commanded in the middle, who came on very ſwiftly, and fearing nothing more than the Galeaſſes, commanded both his Wings to fetch a compaſs to the Right and Left, aloof from the Galeaſſes, and ſo attack the Wings of the Chriſtians on the ſides or behind. But the Chriſtians perceiving his Deſign, in their Wings tacked about alſo, drawing up in the form of an half Moon; their main Battel ſtill facing that of the *Turks*, whoſe Wings being now thus ſeparated from the reſt, ſeemed to offer great advantage to the Chriſtians. This being readily obſerved by *Fuſcarini*, he deſired *Colonna* and *Lilly*, that without ſtaying for the heavy Ships and Galeaſſes, they would with him ſuddenly attack the Enemies main Squadron now deſtitute of the Wings, which undoubtedly

edly muſt have been overthrown before they could join them; but this they abſolutely refuſed to do, for what reaſon is uncertain. Now the Wings of the Chriſtians in tacking about to face thoſe of the Enemy, were a little diſordered, which being perceived by the *Turks*, they deſigned with fifteen Gallies to fall upon the ſtraggling ones of the Chriſtians; to oppoſe whom, *Superantio* made up with four Gallies to engage them, and after a ſharp Fight was in good time relieved by 20 Gallies and 2 Galeaſſes, which ſo gauled and tore 18 of the *Turkiſh* Veſſels, that they were glad to retreat: and ſo both Fleets falling into their Order again, without any farther Action, that of the *Turks* ſailed away to *Coron*, while the Chriſtian Fleet retired to *Cerigo*; from whence, contrary to the deſire and requeſt of the *Venetian* Admiral, they ſailed at length according to *Don John*'s order to *Corfu*, who himſelf then was arrived at *Spilca* in the uttermoſt part of that Iſland, with 53 Gallies, and 18 Ships of War. Here after ſome chidings of *Don John*, they unanimouſly agreed to ſet forward again towards the Enemy; but they had not been long under Sail, when two of their Spy-Boats brought them word the Enemies Fleet was come to *Navarino*, where for want of right timing of matters, failing to ſurprize them, they got ſafe at length to the Harbour of *Modon*. The Chriſtians coming to th mouth of the Bay, and the *Venetian* Admiral obſerv..g all advantages, endeavoured by a great many Arguments to induce *Don John* with the whole Fleet to enter into the Bay, and there in the Harbour to deſtroy all the Naval Strength of the Enemy, which he made as if there was no difficulty in the accompliſhing of it; but *Don John* urging many reaſons to the contrary, abſolutely refuſed his Requeſt, and returned with his Fleet to *Navarino*.

Modon and Navarino beſieged in vain by the Chriſtians.

While they lay here, they held a Council what Enterprize they had beſt go upon; and concluding at laſt to beſiege the Caſtle of *Modon* by Sea and Land, they went thither again, and landed 7000 of their beſt Soldiers to attack the Caſtle by Land, while the Galeaſſes were to batter it by Sea; which that they might the more conveniently do, they made two of the greateſt Gallies faſt together with Maſts and Ropes, and ſo boarding them clear over, they thereupon placed their Gabions

1572. Gabions all afront, filled with Earth, and planted with great Cannon between: But this Engine proving altogether ineffectual, and the Place being reinforced with ſome Horſe, they gave the Siege over. But reſolving to do ſomething before the Seaſon was quite ſpent, they agreed to beſiege the Caſtle of *Navarino*, the antient *Pylus*, much celebrated for being the Birth-place of old *Neſtor*; and the buſineſs was entruſted to the care of *Alexander Farneſe* Prince of *Parma*, who landing 2000 *Italians*, 1000 *Spaniards*, and 500 *Germans*, began with 12 great pieces of Cannon to batter it, which was done with ſo much vigour, that in all probability the Place had been carried, if they had poſſeſt themſelves of the ſtrait and troubleſom Paſſes, through a rough and thick Foreſt, by which the City was relieved: but that being neglected, the Enemy made a Sally, and in the mean time the *Turks* by a Gate towards the Foreſt on the other ſide of the City, threw in a great number both of Horſe and Foot; which the Beſiegers underſtanding, they forthwith raiſed the Siege. However they might have ſtill ſucceeded better in their Enterprize, had the Chriſtian Fleet continued to block them up by Sea, ſince the *Turks* were oppreſt at one and the ſame time with the Plague and Famine; and their Fleet which remained in the Bay, and conſiſted now of no more than 100 Gallies, and 40 Galliots, were ſo weak and ſlenderly mann'd, that the greateſt Gallies had ſcarce 120 Men left in them, and they ſo meager and faint, as ſcarce to be able to hold up their Arms. But after all the Debates, Arguments and Conſultations between the Chriſtian Commanders about continuing or not the Enterprize, the *Spaniards*, quite contrary to the Importunities and Reaſons of *Fuſcarini* the *Venetian* Admiral, would return home; as *Fuſcarini* did alſo with greater Honour than Succeſs to *Venice*, where he was kindly received both of the Citizens and Senate: whom we'll leave a little while, to conſider of the Unkindneſs, Inſtability and Irreſolution of their Confederates, as well as the preſent ſtate of their own Affairs in reſpect to the potent Enemy, whom, they feared now more than ever, they ſhould have ſingly to do with, and to whom they thought it moſt adviſable to ſue for Peace; of which more preſently, when we have very briefly ſaid ſomewhat of

the

the Affairs of *Tunis* in *Africa*, and *Don John*'s Adventures in those parts.

Muleasses King of *Tunis*, of whom we have made frequent mention in the preceding Chapter, being dispossest of his Kingdom by his unnatural Son *Amida*, who caused his Father's and two Brothers Eyes to be barbarously put out, was himself by degrees driven out of his Kingdom by the *Turks*; and leading about this time a private Life with his two Sons at *Guletta*, with *Francis Tovares* the *Spanish* Governour, when he heard of the *Turks* Overthrow at *Lepanto*, and the good success of the Christians, he sent Embassadors to *Don John* then in *Sicily*, to crave his assistance for the recovery of his Dominions, promising to defray the whole Charge of the War, and to be for ever Tributary to the King of *Spain*. Which Proposal of his being well weighed in *Spain*, the King in *October*, the following Year, sent *Don John* from *Trapono* in *Sicily*, with 105 Gallies and 40 Ships to *Guletta*, where he was joined by the *Maltese* Gallies, soon after by Admiral *Auria* with 19 more, and *Colonna* the Pope's Admiral with 14. Here, after he had learnt of *Amida* and the Governour the State of *Tunis*, he made no delay to land his Men about four Miles from the City, and detached 2500 Men before him towards the Place, who upon their arrival found it all desolate, the *Turks* and *Moors* being fled before for fear, some to *Caravana*, and some to *Biserta*; but when they came to the Castle, they found 200 *Moors* therein, who said they kept it for *Amida* their King, but would not let the Christians enter. *Don John* being advertised hereof, early next Morning came up with the whole Army, and entring the City, came up to the Castle, where he found nothing but store of Oil, Butter and Wool. While he staid here, news was brought him, *October* 12*th*, that the *Turks* and *Moors*, who had abandoned *Tunis*, going to *Biserta*, and being refused entrance by the Citizens, fell to plunder and ravage the adjacent Country. Whereupon he sent *Tovares* thither with part of his Army, who routed those *Turks*, and had the City peaceably delivered up to him. But for *Amida*, whom *Don John* had all this while ordered to stay at *Guletta*, he was for all this success quite balked in his hopes of repossessing his Kingdom: For *Don John* being thorowly informed

Amida King of Tunis, his Adventures.

1573.

1573. informed of his unnatural Proceedings towards his Father and Brethren, and that in deteſtation of the Chriſtians and their Religion, he had already held intelligence with the *Turks*, and procured the death of ſome Chriſtians, he ſentenced him firſt to be diveſted of his Kingdom, and then of his Sight, and ſo with both his Sons to be carried Priſoner into *Sicily*, there to remain for ever; and then, in purſuance to the Command of the King of *Spain*, *Mahomet*, *Amida*'s elder Brother, was conſtituted King of *Tunis* and his Vaſſal; upon whoſe Settlement in his Kingdom, 40000 *Moors* that had before left *Tunis*, upon their Supplications to *Don John*, had leave eaſily granted to return into the City, whoſe neighbouring parts being mightily infeſted with 1500 *Turks*, and 3000 wild *Arabs*, they were ſoon routed by the Chriſtians. *Don John* after this having ordered a ſtrong Caſtle to be built between *Tunis* and *Guletta*, for the performing of which he left 2000 *Italians*, and as many *Spaniards* at *Guletta*, and diſpos'd of all other things as he thought moſt convenient for neceſſary occaſions, departed for *Sicily*; from whence we take our leave of him, and return again to the *Venetians*, to purſue their Affairs with the *Turks*, where we left them.

Amida's Eyes put out.

We have already hinted to you, that the Senate, after mature Deliberation of the Poſture of their Affairs, both in reſpect to their Confederates and Enemies, at laſt generally inclin'd to a Peace, which was referr'd by them to the management of *Anthony Barbato* their Embaſſador at the Port (who had all this while been kept in ſafe Cuſtody at *Conſtantinople*) and requir'd him to uſe the aſſiſtance of the *French* Embaſſador therein, who had been always a Perſuader of Peace: but he, by what Motives is not truly known, being too eager and deſirous of it, did much Injury to the common Cauſe of the Republick, which he moſt coveted to have furthered. *Selymus* having diſcern'd this, order'd *Muhamet* Baſſa to tell the *French* Embaſſador, when he came to him about it, that himſelf had often ſollicited his Great Lord and Maſter upon that Subject, and with much ado had brought him to incline to it; whereas it was in reality the thing that *Selymus* himſelf deſir'd. The Embaſſador for ſome days was courteouſly heard by the Baſſa, who promis'd to make things eaſy; and

it

it being more particularly agreed upon between them, that the Republick ſhould ſend an Embaſſador on purpoſe to the Port, to conclude and confirm the deſir'd Peace; they appointed *Superantio* for that Imployment, who upon his Arrival found the *Turks* very diſdainful, inſolent, and ſhy; yea, and the Baſſa was ſo barefac'd, as proudly to ask him how they durſt be ſo bold as to impugn the Great Emperor *Selymus*'s Fleet at Sea. Whereunto the Embaſſador made anſwer, That the *Venetians* had always honour'd the Majeſty of the *Turkiſh* Emperors, neither had they at any time taken up Arms againſt him but in their own juſt Defence, when Force was by Force to be repell'd; a thing lawful even for the wild Beaſts in the Wilderneſs to do. At laſt, after much Diſſimulation, a Peace was concluded between them upon theſe Conditions: That the *Venetians* ſhould give *Selymus* 300000 Ducats, one hundred to be paid preſently, and the other two by equal Proportions in two Years to come: That the Merchants Goods ſhould be reſtor'd on both ſides: and, Laſtly, that ſuch Places as the *Turks* had taken from the *Venetians* ſhould ſtill remain in their hands, but that thoſe which the Republick had taken from them ſhould be forthwith reſtor'd. Thus ended this famous War between the *Venetians* and *Turks*, on the 11th of *February* 1574. to the great benefit of the latter; while the Republick, notwithſtanding the hard Terms put upon it, did not think it tended to their Diſadvantage: and ſo we'll leave them to enjoy it, and ſee what game the reſtleſs Infidel had next to play.

Peace between the Venetians and Turks. 1574.

Selymus therefore now at peace with the Republick, to imploy his Soldiers, turn'd his Arms againſt the Vayvod of *Moldavia*, concerning whom we muſt premiſe a few words for the better underſtanding of that which is to follow. *Bogdanus*, who was Vayvod before this *John*, becauſe of his Amity with the *Polanders*, in whoſe Dominions he reſided for a time, being ſuſpected by *Selymus*; this *John*, the ſuppos'd Son of Vayvod *Stephen* (having liv'd a long time as a Merchant among the *Turks*, and the better to ingratiate himſelf with them, turn'd *Mahometan*) by degrees ſo work'd his ends with *Selymus* againſt *Bogdanus*, that he made him Vayvod in his ſtead. Being thus peaceably poſſeſs'd of a Principality, he not only return'd to the Chriſtian

Selymus makes war upon the Moldavians.

1574. Faith; but by the Intrigues of the Vayvod of the leſſer *Walachia*, who was a Suitor to *Selymus* for his own Brother *Peter*, to be made Vayvod of *Moldavia* in *John*'s ſtead, he came to be ſo far ſuſpected by the Emperor, that he ſent a Meſſenger to demand an unreaſonable Sum of Mony of him, or elſe to require him in Perſon to wait upon *Selymus*, and give place to another Man: but if he refus'd that alſo, then to denounce War againſt him. The Vayvod having communicated the ſame to his Nobles, and in a notable Speech declar'd unto them the great Hardſhips of the Conditions, the whole tending to Tyranny and Servitude; they unanimouſly agreed with him never to endure ſo much Slavery, and thereupon offered to ſerve him at their own Charge, and on the Banks of the *Danube* to meet the proud Enemy; for which after the Vayvod had highly commended their Reſolution and Fidelity, and taken their Oath, he anſwered the Meſſenger he would willingly give the Tribute *Selymus* required, were it not for the People who would never endure ſuch intolerable Slavery, and therefore deſired the Emperor his Lord not to take it ill. Hereupon having ſent the Embaſſador home, full of diſcontentment for his mean uſage, he made all neceſſary Preparation for War, and endeavoured to enter into a Confederacy with the King of *Poland* againſt the *Turks*; but failing of that, he without the King's knowledg entertained a Body of *Polonian* Coſſacks, under the command of *Sujercevius*, in his Service.

The Vayvod overthrows the Turks.

In the mean time *Selymus* being acquainted by the Meſſenger with Vayvod *John*'s Anſwer, he immediately ſent 30000 *Turks*, and 2000 *Hungarians*, to the *Palatine* of *Wallachia Tranſalpina*, to ſecure *John*, and ſet up his Brother *Peter* in his ſtead; with which and his own Troops, which made altogether 202000 Men, he ſwam over the River *Moldavus*, and was ſo confident of effecting his Buſineſs, that he kept no manner of Diſcipline in his Army. Of this the Vayvod was no ſooner advertis'd, but he ſent *Sujurcevius* with his Coſſacks, and 5000 Light Horſe, to obſerve the Poſture of the Enemy; who luckily hemm'd in and took 500 of them, from whom having learnt all that he had a mind to know concerning the *Palatine*'s Army, and inform'd the Vayvod of it, he unexpectedly on one ſide, and *Sujercevius*

cevius on the other, ſet upon their diſorder'd Army, and fill'd their Camp with ſo much Slaughter, Terror, and Confuſion, that the Enemy had not time to recover their Horſes grazing in the Meadows, nor their Arms, but were miſerably ſlain; inſomuch that few or none of that huge Army eſcap'd, except the *Palatine* and his Brother, who ſwam over the River to the Caſtle of *Brailovia*, while the Vayvod entred into his Country, and with Fire and Sword ſpar'd nothing that came in his way, but exercis'd the utmoſt Cruelty he could even to innocent Infants, who were barbarouſly murder'd. Then hearing where the *Palatine* was, he ſummon'd the Governor of the Caſtle to deliver him and his Brother up; but the other returning him a rough Refuſal by four Meſſengers, the Vayvod was ſo offended, that he caus'd their Noſes, Lips, and Ears to be cut off, both their Feet to be with great Nails faſtned to a long piece of Timber, and ſo with their Heads hanging downwards to be put up before the City for the People to gaze at. Preſently after he attack'd the City, and took it with ſuch horrible Slaughter, that no living things, not ſo much as the very Dogs were ſpar'd; and his Soldiers were exceedingly enrich'd with the Spoils of the Place, which he ras'd. While the Vayvod was thus engag'd in the Spoils of *Brailovia*, News was brought him that 15000 *Turks* advanc'd to the Relief of the Caſtle, againſt whom having immediately diſpatch'd *Sujercevius* and his Coſſacks with 8000 light *Moldavian* Horſe, he fell upon them, and ſlew almoſt 14000 of them, while the reſt fled to the Caſtle of *Teina*, whoſe Town the Vayvod ſoon after laid ſiege to, quickly took, and left not a Soul alive therein. Having alſo, by the Service of *Sujercevius*, overthrown the *Turks* that advanc'd towards *Brailovia*, *Selymus* was ſo much afraid of being expell'd out of *Wallachia*, that he appointed general Supplications and Prayers to be made to the Prophet *Mahomet*, for the better Succeſs of his Wars. In the mean time the Vayvod, being minded for a while to break up his Army, committed part of it to the care of his old Friend *Jeremy Czarnieviche*, to defend the Paſſes over the *Danube* into his Country; to whom the Baſſa, who commanded the *Turks* on the other ſide, having ſent Meſſengers, with 30000 *Hungarian* Ducats, for a Preſent,

Takes Brailovia.

1574. and desiring he might come over to have a Conference with *Peter* the *Palatine*'s Brother; the Mony, with *Peter*'s Arguments and Promises, so wrought upon his corrupt Heart, that he drew his Troops farther off under pretence of Forage, and gave the *Turks*, who were 200000 strong, free Passage over. Upon this he posted to acquaint the Vayvod, then at the Siege of the Castle of *Teina*, with the News, and how he wanted Force to oppose so numerous an Enemy. This made the Vayvod presently leave the Siege, and march against them; and being come in four days time within three Miles of them, he sent *Sujercevius* with his Cossacks, and the faithless *Jeremy* with 6000 Horse, to view the Enemy's Camp. Upon which occasion, after they had put 6000 *Turkish* Horse (that were their Scouts) to flight, the Cossacks, by some means or other, began to suspect *Jeremy*, and advis'd the Vayvod not to trust him too much: but the other having no manner of Suspicion of his old Friend, would give no ear to it, but having fortify'd his Camp near the Lake that runs into the *Danube*, he advanc'd with all his Power against the Enemy.

Czarnievi-che treacherous to the Vayvod.

He divided his Horse, in number 30000, into 30 Troops, before each of which he plac'd some Field-Pieces; and for his Foot, which were numerous, tho a rude homely People, and but indifferently arm'd, he posted them by themselves: and being at length come unto an Hill, from whence he could easily discern the huge Army of the Enemy, wherein it seems he had been deceiv'd before by *Czarnieviche*, he now sent for him; but the other excusing himself because of the nearness of the Enemy, added withal, he should see him presently in the Field as forward as any against them: but upon the Signal of the Battel, when he had approach'd with 13000 of the best Soldiers in the Army near unto the Enemy, he caus'd his Colours to be lower'd, and his Men with their Caps upon the point of their Spears and Swords, in token of voluntary Submission, to bow down their Heads and Bodies, whom the *Turks*, with their Spears and Lances lifted up, joyfully receiv'd. But the *Turks* in joining Battel perceiving these revolted *Moldavians*, as Men prick'd in Conscience, shrink back, they forc'd them on to blunt the Enemy's Swords, and such as hung back they slew them-

Revolts to the Turks.

Moldavians overthrown by the Turks.

themſelves; ſo that moſt of theſe Traitors being one way or other ſlain, the *Turks* came on over their dead Bodies, and after a moſt cruel fight, as if they had been diſcourag'd, began to retreat with a deſign to draw the Chriſtians into an ambuſh: but being deceiv'd in their Expectations by the foreſight of *Sujercevius*, they came on afreſh with greater Fury than before; and after a moſt terrible Conflict, wherein their Multitudes only prevail'd, they at laſt overthrew the *Moldavians*, moſt part of whom were ſlain here and in the Purſuit, and of the Coſſacks there were only 250 left. However the Vayvod, who had ſtill 20000 Foot and ſome Horſe left, retreated to an adjacent Town which he had ras'd but a little before, and there fortify'd himſelf as well as he could in the Ruins thereof againſt the Enemy; who the next day, which was the 11th of *June*, fir'd their Cannon briskly upon his Camp, tho to little purpoſe: ſo that they thought it moſt adviſable to ſend Meſſengers to him, to ſhew him the Danger he was in, and perſuade him in time to yield, which he declin'd not; and they came to this Agreement, That the Coſſacks might ſafely return home; That himſelf ſhould be ſent alive, and without any violence done him, to *Selymus*, to anſwer his own Cauſe: and for the *Moldavians*, he had no need to make any Terms for them, for any Injury offer'd to them tended to the detriment of *Selymus* himſelf, and of him whom he ſhould appoint to be their Vayvod. Theſe Articles were ſolemnly ſwore to by every Officer in the *Turkiſh* Army ſeven times, and then the Vayvod, drawing out of his Frenches, took his leave of his Men, and divided what Mony and Jewels he had amongſt them: After which he went in the manner of a Suppliant to the *Turkiſh* Camp, where he had full four hours Talk with the chief Commanders of the Army, till at laſt *Capuchi* Baſſa, either offended with his Words, or unmindful of his Faith, ſtruck him firſt on the Face, then on the Belly with his Scimeter; and preſently the Janizaries ſtriking off his Head, they immediately held it up on a Lance for every body to ſee it. The valiant Vayvod being thus perfidiouſly mur-der'd, the *Turks*, with the like Treachery, preſently fell upon the *Moldavians*, and ſlew them downright as ſo many Beaſts appointed for the Slaughter; which the Coſſacks ſeeing, and expecting no better Uſage, they

The Vayvod barouſly ſlain.

1574. thruſt themſelves into the thickeſt of their Enemies, and there valiantly fighting were all ſlain, except a few reſerv'd for Ranſom, among whom was the brave *Sujercevius*, who with other Officers were afterwards redeem'd for great Sums of Mony. Neither did the *Turks* reſt here, but they over-run all the Country of *Moldavia*, put all the Nobility to the Sword, carry'd away a great many of the People to ſettle Colonies in the remoteſt Parts of the *Turkiſh* Empire, and ſubjected the whole Country; and not only ſo, but open'd a way for themſelves into *Podolia*, a Province of *Poland*, when they pleas'd.

Selymus, at the ſame time, being not a little concern'd at the loſs of *Tunis*, taken by Don *John* as before-mention'd, and that the *Turkiſh* Rovers had now for ſo long a time been depriv'd of the commodious Harbours of *Guletta*, he made vaſt Preparations both by Sea and Land for the beſieging one of them; and accordingly a Fleet of 300 Gallies under *Sinan*, *Pial*, and *Uluzales*, arriv'd before *Guletta* on the 13th of *July*, where they were join'd by more Ships from *Alexandria*, *Algiers*, and other Places. They firſt laid ſiege to the Water-Town, which was bravely defended by a Gariſon of 800 Men, till moſt of them being ſlain, the Governor commanded the reſt to quit it and retire to the Caſtle, and ſo leave it to be poſſeſs'd by the *Turks*, who loſt 3000 Men in the taking of it. Hereupon they began to beſiege the Caſtle, and at length, after many furious Aſſaults, to their great advantage took the Channel of the Lake of *Tunis*: but notwithſtanding ſome Companies of *Spaniards*, ſent from the new Caſtle by *Serbellio*, got into *Guletta*, and that the Beſieg'd in a Sally they made on the 20th of *Auguſt* repuls'd the *Turks* with a very great Slaughter; yet they continually bringing on freſh Soldiers, after they had continu'd a moſt terrible Fight all day, *Auguſt* 23. they at length, two hours after Sunſet, took the Caſtle, and put all therein to the Sword. *Guletta* thus taken, the *Turks* preſently laid ſiege to the new Caſtle, which was gariſon'd by 4000 good Soldiers, under the Command of the valiant Commanders *Serbellio* and *Salazar*; which alſo, after many moſt terrible and deſperate Aſſaults, was at laſt on the 13th of *September*, when they had for ſix hours together furiouſly aſſaulted it and ſlain moſt of the Beſieg'd, taken

Guletta *taken.*

taken by them. The gallant *Serbellio* being ſhot with two Bullets, and willing rather to die than fall into the hands of his Enemies, thruſt himſelf into the midſt of them, there to have periſh'd; but by the haſty coming in of *Pial* Baſſa, both he and *Salazar* were taken alive, who firſt ſtruck *Serbellio*, then caus'd his Son to be cruelly murder'd before his Face. But theſe Conqueſts coſt the *Turks* dear, they being computed to have loſt in leſs than three Months time, that the Siege laſted, above 30000 Men. This done, they march'd to and eaſily poſſeſs'd themſelves of *Tunis*, where *Mahomet* the young King was taken Priſoner. And having ſet all things in order both here and at *Guletta*, the Baſſas, with a Fleet of 400 Sail, on the 4th of *October* appear'd in ſight of *Malta*; but underſtanding the Knights were ready for them, and remembring their former Diſgrace there, they bore away directly for *Conſtantinople*; where the Emperor *Selymus*, ſpent with Wine and Women, ſoon after, *viz.* on the 9th of *December*, departed this Life, when he had liv'd 51 years, and of that reign'd 8. He was but of a mean Stature, and of a heavy Diſpoſition, his Face rather ſwollen than fat, and much reſembling a Drunkard; he had the leaſt Valour of any of his Predeceſſors, and therefore was leaſt regarded, as being a Perſon wholly given to ſenſual Pleaſures.

The New Caſtle taken.

Tunis *taken by the* Turks.

Selymus's *Death and Character.*

Chriſtian Princes, Cotemporaries with *Selymus* II.

			A.D.	R.
Emperor of *Germany.*		*Maximilian* II.	1565.	12.
Kings	Of *England.*	Queen *Elizabeth.*	1558.	45.
	Of *France.*	*Charles* IX.	1560.	14.
	Of *Scotland.*	Queen *Mary.*	1543.	20.
		James VI.	1567.	
Popes of *Rome.*		*Pius* V.	1566.	6.
		Julius III.	1572.	12.

CHAP. IV.

The Life of Amarath *the Third.*

1574. Amurath's *Acceſſion to the Throne, and firſt Actions.*

THE Death of *Selymus*, for fear of the Inſolency of the Janizaries, being notably conceal'd by the great Baſſa's, until *Amurath* his eldeſt Son's Arrival out of *Aſia* at *Conſtantinople*, which happen'd in about twelve days after; he took poſſeſſion of the Empire on the 25th of *December*, being about 30, or, as ſome write, 37 years old. His firſt Buſineſs was, for the appeaſing of the Murmurs of the Janizaries, beſides the uſual Largeſs beſtow'd upon them on ſuch Occaſions, to augment their Pay, and grant them this Privilege, that their Sons, as ſoon as they were twenty years old, ſhould be enroll'd among the number of the younger Janizaries, and be Partakers alſo of their Immunities: but his ſecond Work was of a more ungrateful and cruel nature, when after the manner of the *Turkiſh* Policy, he caus'd his five Brethren, *Muſtapha*, *Solyman*, *Abdulla*, *Oſman*, and *Tzihanger*, to be all ſtrangled in his preſence; which ſo affected the Mother of *Solyman* with Sorrow, that ſhe ſtabb'd her ſelf to the heart, and ſo dy'd; at which tragical Sight, it's reported *Amurath* let ſome Tears fall, as not delighting in ſuch barbarous Cruelty, but that the Maxims of his Government did ſo require. Neither was he wanting in the beginning of his Reign to enact wholeſome Laws, alter the Coin, and bountifully to relieve the Poor. But tho he were naturally of a peaceable Diſpoſition, yet that he might not degenerate from his Anceſtors, he proſecuted his Father's Wars by the *Precopenſian* Tartars; who, in

Puts his Brethren to death.

1575. *October* 1575. enter'd *Podolia*, and committed great Ravages: but whilſt they were dividing the Spoil with *Peter* the new Vayvod of *Wallachia* aforemention'd, the *Poliſh* Coſſacks brake into their Country, and there endeavour'd to make Reprizals. But notwithſtanding all theſe Broils, and that the *Poles*, upon the Deſertion of *Henry de Valois*, were about to chuſe a new King, the

the more powerful Candidates being the Emperor *Maximilian*, and the Great Duke of *Muſcovy*; they had ſuch a regard to *Amurath*'s Letter in recommendation of *Stephen Battori*, Vayvod of *Tranſylvania*, to be their King, that they choſe the Princeſs *Ann* of the *Jagellonian* Family to be their Queen, upon condition ſhe ſhould marry the Vayvod, which was done accordingly, and *Stephen* prov'd a brave Prince; inſomuch that *Amurath* would afterwards often boaſt he had given the *Polanders* their King. And indeed *Amurath* had reaſon to be pleas'd with it, ſince *Stephen* ſome time after enter'd into a League with him, whereby he became ſecure on that ſide, and had an Opportunity to carry on his Deſigns in the Conqueſt of *Perſia*; of which by and by.

Recommends Battori to the Poles.

There aroſe great Troubles in the Kingdom of *Perſia* the following Year, of which as the ſame gave an Opportunity to the *Turkiſh* Emperor to invade that Country, we ſhall premiſe a few words before we enter upon the Particulars of that bloody War. Old King *Tamas* dying on the 11th of *May* this year, he out of eleven Sons had appointed *Iſmael* the ſecond, becauſe of the Infirmity of *Mahomet* the eldeſt, to ſucceed him. *Aidere*, the third Brother, endeavouring to ſettle himſelf in the Throne at *Casbin*, before *Iſmael* could get thither from *Cahacha*, where he was at his Father's Death, was circumvented therein by the Artifice of his eldeſt Siſter *Periaconcona*, who got him ſeiz'd and beheaded: And when *Iſmael* was ſettled in the Throne, he, in conformity to the *Turks*, caus'd his eight younger Brethren to be beheaded, as alſo all their near Relations and Friends. Reſting not here, he committed ſuch other Cruelties and Enormities, and brought ſo much Terror and Perplexity on the Minds of the People, for fear of the change of their Religion, which was given out he would introduce, that he was by a Conſpiracy of the forementioned Princeſs *Periaconcona*, and ſome others, cut off on the 24th of *November*, 1577. and the Princeſs for the preſent took the Adminiſtration upon her, wherein ſhe was promis'd to be ſupported by divers of the greateſt Princes and Governours of that Country. But *Mirizi Salmas*, the chief of them, eſpouſing the Intereſt of *Mahomet* the eldeſt Son, manag'd his matter with that dexterity, that he preſented

1576. *The Troubles of Perſia.*

1577.

1577. ſented him with the Head of *Perſaconcona* at one of the Gates of *Casbin*, and fixed him on his Father's Throne. However this and other Diſguſts, which muſt neceſſarily happen in ſuch tumultuous Times, ſeeming to make for farther Mutations and Miſeries; *Amurath* being informed of all that happen'd, and more particularly by *Uſtreff* of *Van* in *Armenia*, he became more fixedly inclined than before to turn his Arms for the Conqueſt of the Kingdom of *Perſia*: wherein he was ſeconded by the Arguments and Perſuaſions of the three great Baſſa's, *Mahomet*, *Sinan*, and *Muſtapha*, who all were of opinion it were leſs dangerous, and better to make a War upon the *Perſians*, than the Chriſtians; *Muſtapha* eſpecially, among the reſt, preferring the Valour of the *Latins*, whereof he had had ſufficient Experience at *Famaguſta*, before the Armies of the *Georgians* and *Perſians*.

Amurath *reſolves upon a War againſt the* Perſians.

Upon this Reſolution there aroſe new Conſultations about the manner of putting them in execution: Some were of opinion it would be moſt convenient to ſend an Army to *Babylon*, and from thence to *Syras*, the antient *Perſepolis*; while others adviſed, that the Army ſhould be directly ſent to *Tauris*, there to erect ſtrong Fortreſſes, and take poſſeſſion of the adjacent Country; but 'twas ſaid, there wanted not ſome who thought it better to ſend two ſeveral Armies to the forementioned places. But *Amurath* not daring to truſt to a divided Army, firmly reſolved to ſend one only thither; and ſo preferring the great hopes he had conceived of conquering the Country of *Siruan*, and the principal Cities of the greater *Media*, before the difficulty of making War towards *Syras*, and repoſing alſo a great Confidence in the promiſed Aſſiſtance of the *Precopenſian Tartars*, he confirmed his great Baſſa's in the ſame Opinion; and withal diſcovered a thing to them, which to all of them, eſpecially to *Sinan*, ſeem'd very ſtrange, to wit, that he was reſolved not to go to the War in Perſon, but to ſend one of his chiefeſt Commanders in his ſtead. But while they were thus conſulting about the Expedition, he diſpatch'd his Orders to the Baſſa's and Governours of *Van*, *Babylon* and *Erzirum*, that they ſhould make Inroads into the *Perſian* Territories, and there commit all the ſpoil they could. This they were not backward

to

to put in execution, and more eſpecially *Uſtreff*, or *Huſreve*, Baſſa of *Van*, who with frequent Incurſions did much miſchief as well in the Countries tributary, as ſubject to the King of *Perſia*.

Now among the many ambitious Competitors for the management of theſe great Deſigns of *Amurath*, *Muſtapha* Baſſa, who in his Father's Reign had conquer'd *Cyprus*, was appointed General of the Expedition, and all the Baſſa's and other Commanders of the *Turkiſh* Dominions Eaſtward, commanded with their Soldiers of all ſorts, bound by their perpetual Annuities, to go to the War in the beginning of the Spring this Year, and to rendevouz at *Erzirum* in *Cappadocia*; where the General himſelf arrived in the beginning of the Summer, from whence he went for *Siruan*, after he had firſt reviewed the Army, conſiſting of 12000 *Meſopotamians*, 14000 *Aſſyrians* and *Babylonians*, 2000 *Syrians*, 10000 *Natolians*, 1000 *Jews* and *Philiſtines*, and 4000 *Cilicians*; after whom followed the Soldiers of *Greece*, to the number of 10000 brave Men, and next the General's Guard of *Conſtantinopolitan Janizaries*, being alſo 10000; beſides all which there were 4000 of the Juriſdiction of *Erzirum*: ſo that in ſhort, upon the general review the Army was found to be about 101000 ſtrong, and moſt of them Horſe. And for Artillery, the General had along with him 500 ſmall Pieces, with many loads of Mony to pay his Men. With this Army he marched to *Chars*, the Boundary of the *Turkiſh* and *Perſian* Empires, and incamped afterwards under the Mountains of *Chielder* with all imaginable precaution for fear of the Enemy, whom he heard to be in Arms. *Mahomet* the new King of *Perſia*, to obviate the deſigns of the *Turks*, made Sultan *Tocoman* the Governour of *Reivan*, and a Man of great Reputation among the *Perſians*, his General; but all that the King, his General, and other Governours could do, could not draw above 20000 Men together, which yet were all Horſe, armed with Bow and Scimeter, and ſome Fire-Arms; with which the General, keeping the way of *Tauris* and *Genge*, came to the turning of *Chars*, where he had notice that the Enemies Army was already paſſed: but being miſinformed by his Scouts of the number of them (they having ſeen only the Body that was encamped under the

Muſtapha made General againſt the Perſians.

1578.

1578. the Baſſa's *Byran* and *Dervis*) he marched on boldly to attack them. Now the two Baſſa's, who quickly from the Hills perceived the *Perſians* coming in the Plain, tho they knew them to be Men of great Courage, yet they immediately mounted and advanced to meet them in the ſaid Plains under Mount *Chielder*, where about one in the Afternoon they began to engage; and the *Perſians* behaved themſelves ſo well, that the *Turks* loſt 7 Sangiacks, and a great many Soldiers, with little or no damage to the other ſide. But *Muſtapha*, who obſerved all, ſeeing now his People not able to endure any longer the Fury of the Enemy, came on moſt furiouſly, and ſo renewed a moſt terrible Battel, wherein the *Perſians* ſhewed incredible marks of their Valour, and upon the approach of the Night retreated with as little Loſs as poſſibly might be, tho there were 3000 of them taken Priſoners by the numerous Enemy, and 5000 of their Heads preſented to *Muſtapha*, who greatly rejoiced at it; and to make his Victory ſeem the greater, deſiring by all means to conceal his own Loſſes, and by the Fame thereof to raiſe a greater Terror in his Enemies, he cauſed thoſe 3000 Priſoners to be preſently beheaded, and a Bulwark to be made of their Heads in thoſe Fields. *Muſtapha* the ſame day being informed that *Manucchiar*, the younger Son of the *Georgian* Widow *Dedeſmit*, a great Prince in that Country, was coming to wait upon him, he ordered all the Officers of the Army with Drums, Trumpets, and other Military Entertainments, to go and receive him; who after he had ſaluted the General in his Tent and made his Preſents, told him he was always devoted to the *Ottoman* Family for the reſpect he bore to the *Turkiſh* Valour, that he had often deſired to ſpend his Life and Fortune in their Service; ſo that being at this time moved therewith, excited by the ſtrange Fame of this victorious Army, and deſirous to learn the Military Art under ſo famed a General, he came to offer him his Service, and conſecrate it to his Commands, and therefore beſought him to accept of him in *Amurath*'s Name, whoſe obedient Vaſſal he vowed to remain for ever. *Muſtapha* having ſhewed him the Pile of Heads aforementioned, together with the Power of his Army, told him all thoſe Forces were God's Gift, who always favour'd the righteous Coun-

Defeats the Perſians.

ſels

ſels of the *Ottoman* Emperors, ſo that they lorded it over all the World; that for himſelf he had better have ſubmitted ſooner, but however he accepted of his offer: then he made him Preſents, and never ſuffered him to go out of his Tent without a train of his Slaves to attend him.

The Prince thus entertain'd, the General gave Orders they ſhould decamp from thoſe Mountains next Morning; but while they were preparing for it, there aroſe a terrible ſtorm of Wind and Rain, mixt with Thunder and Lightning, which continued ſo violently for the ſpace of four days, as if the Heavens had been diſſolved into Water; and this occaſioned ſuch a ſtench from the dead Carcaſes and Heads beforementioned, as brought divers Diſeaſes amongſt the Army: ſo that what with one thing and another, when *Muſtapha* came to review them afterwards at *Archicheleck* in his march towards *Teflis*, he found he had loſt 40000 Men, beſides many more that ſtraggled up and down the Country for Victuals, ſlain by the *Georgians*, before he arrived at that City. The Caſtle of *Teflis* being deſerted by the Gariſon, he put 6000 Men into it under the Command of *Mahomet* Baſſa, and then departed for *Siruan*; at what time thoſe of *Soria*, who had brought a thouſand Loads of Tribute-Corn from *Aleppo* to the Camp, being themſelves 1000 Men in number, with 500 more in their Company, returning homeward, were ſet upon by *Alexandro*, *David* and *Giuſuf*, three of the *Georgian* Lords, and all ſlain except a few who by the ſwiftneſs of their Horſes made their eſcapes.

40000 Turks *wanting upon a review.*

Now *Muſtapha* having paſt the ſteep Mountains of *Teflis*, was next day attended by an Embaſſador from *Alexander* the Great, a *Georgian* Prince; who told him, if he pleaſed, his Maſter was ready to wait upon him, to promiſe him that Devotion he had always bore to the *Ottoman* Emperors: which the General gladly accepted of, and upon his arrival the Prince offered him his Obedience, called *Amurath* his Lord, and ſeemed to take it ill that he had not paſſed through his Country, yet hoped in his return from *Siruan*, he would take it in his way; telling him moreover, *That tho his Affairs would not poſſibly admit him to accompany him to* Siruan, *yet he ſhould always do it in his Mind,*

1578. *Mind, and continually pray for his Prosperity.* All this and his Presents the Bassa courteously received, and having made him some returns after the *Turkish* manner, promised when he came back to pass thro his Country.

Mustapha having in 12 days march reached the Neighbourhood of *Siruan*, and received the Submission of the City of *Sechi*; the Soldiers after that tiresom March, finding little or no subsistence in that unknown Region, began to be much distressed: but having taken some *Persians*, who told them upon their Examination, that not far off, when they had passed some Morasses where the Cannon fell into the *Araxis*, they should find many Fields of Rice and Corn, with Cattel sufficient to relieve the whole Army; the General gave leave to about 10000 of the most servile of them, with Camels, Horses and Mules, to go and fetch away the Corn and Cattel aforesaid. But the Event was not answerable to their Expectations, for *Tocomac* the *Persian* General after the late Overthrow having drawn together the scatter'd Remains of his Army, diligently observed all the Motions of the Enemy; and having sent out divers Persons with Instructions to declare unto the *Turks* as a great Secret what good Prey was hard by them, it so fell out that in three days time the said 10000 Men came to the desired place, where they were set upon and almost all slain by the *Persians*; who also staying there too long, out of an over-greedy desire of Booty, gave *Mustapha* in a great measure an opportunity to revenge his Mens deaths: for the *Turks* hemming them in there in a *Peninsula* made by the *Araxis* and *Canac*, their General *Tocomac* with *Emir Chan*, and the other great Commanders were the first that turned their backs, and by the help of their courageous Horses swam over the *Canac*; while many of the other *Persians* attempting to follow their Example, were most of them drowned in the River: the rest perceiving nothing but Death before them, and armed with despair, threw themselves headlong into the midst of the Enemy, and there valiantly fighting, as it were one against an hundred, were all slain. The *Turks* in this Conflict lost not above 3000 Men, besides the 10000 Foragers; tho *Tocomac*, to make his Loss seem the more tolerable, gave his King an account of a great slaughter made of them.

10000 Turks *slain.*

Many of the Persians *drowned.*

Musta-

Muſtapha was now come to the River *Canac*, which he was to paſs over to *Siruan*, which made the whole Army grumble; and notwithſtanding all the incouraging words he gave them, wherein he propoſed himſelf to be the firſt Perſon that would attempt the Paſſage, yet he could excite in his Soldiers no great Inclination to follow him, tho indeed many of them next Morning growing aſhamed of their not following, took the River alſo, but with the Loſs of no leſs than 8000 Men that periſhed in it: which made the reſt with Complaints and blaſphemous Curſings ſpend the whole ſucceeding Night on this ſide of it; and 'tis very likely they would have broke out into ſome dangerous Tumult, had they not accidentally diſcovered a Ford which gave them Paſſage, and was cauſed by the Gravel raiſed up by the Troops that followed *Muſtapha* over the day before. Neither were they in a much better condition at firſt after their getting over than before, being hard preſt with Hunger in thoſe barren Quarters, until at length they got into more plentiful Regions, and arrived at *Eres*, the principal City in that part of *Siruan* as you travel from *Georgia*, which was deſerted as well as other places by the *Perſians*, and where *Muſtapha* ſtaying 21 days, erected a Fortreſs, which with the City he furniſhed with Cannon and a Gariſon of 5000 Men; and having by *Oſman* Baſſa poſſeſt himſelf of *Samachia*, he gave him the Title of Vizier, and Governour General of *Siruan*, with a farther Charge that he ſhould uſe his utmoſt Endeavour to open a Paſſage to *Derbent*, and give the *Tartars* notice of his arrival there.

8000 Turks *drowned.*

Muſtapha having ſettled all matters as he thought beſt in his new Conqueſts, at the importunity of the *Janizaries* and *Greeks*, return'd homewards towards the Country of *Alexander*, ſirnamed the Great, as he had promiſed in his late march towards *Siruan*; and having by a Bridge made on purpoſe paſſed the *Canac*, he gave *Sahamal* a *Georgian* Lord notice of his arrival, who preſently came and ſubmitted himſelf as Vaſſal to the *Turks*. Then marching forward, and being at length enter'd into the Country of *Alexander*, he cauſed Proclamation to be made thro the Army, that no Man upon pain of Death ſhould any ways injure any of his Subjects. Being come to *Zaghen*, *Alexander* ſent

1578. ſent him Cattel, Corn, Fruit, *&c.* in great abundance, with a ſolemn excuſe that the infirmity of his Body would not let him wait upon him himſelf; wherewith *Muſtapha* reſting ſatisfied, he continued his march for *Teflis*, where he relieved his Gariſon, that were miſerably pinch'd with Famine, with all manner of Neceſſaries. From *Teflis* he marched over rough Mountains, and encounter'd a thouſand difficulties, which made the Soldiers keep no Order: This being obſerv'd by ſome *Georgian* Lords, they quickly drew together, and finding that *Hoſaine* Bay with his Regiment had withdrawn from the reſt of the Army, and under certain Coverts to ſhelter himſelf from the Storm and Wind, they preſently fell upon and ſlew them, and there took a great Booty. At laſt the Army, after having endured a world of Miſery in paſſing over the craggy ſteep Woods, and ſnowy and icy Straits of *Georgia*, arrived in the Territories that lay under *Altunchala*, the Princely Widow of *Dedeſmit*'s Palace; where they were relieved with all Neceſſaries for ſix days, and the Widow with her eldeſt Son *Alexander* came to make their ſubmiſſion to *Muſtapha*, who received them very kindly, and told the Princeſs he would ſend *Alexander* and her younger Son *Manucchiar* (who was with him in all the Expedition) to *Amurath* with Letters of Credence for their yielding Obedience, and Teſtimonies of their good deſert; which the aged Lady diſſembled her Conſent to. From hence *Muſtapha* marched to *Erzirum*, where he disbanded his Army, and ſent *Amurath* an account of all his Adventures; not forgetting to magnify his own Actions, as alſo his opinion about fortifying of *Chars*, and of the two Brothers *Alexander* and *Manucchiar*, wherein he ſaid the younger was the better Perſon for Government, and the readier to do him Service.

The Widow Princeſs of Dedeſmit *ſubmits to* Muſtapha.

It was not long after *Muſtapha*'s departure from *Eres*, before the *Crim-Tartars*, to the number of 30000, under their General *Abdilcherai*, marched thither; of whoſe approach *Oſman* Baſſa was no ſooner advertiſed, but he invited them to enter into *Siruan*, which they did accordingly. Now *Ares Chan* late Governour of *Sumachia*, who for fear of the Power of the *Turks* had before left the City, hearing of the departure of the *Turkiſh* General, reſolved with the other Governour of

Eres

Eres and *Sichi* to return again to their forſaken Country; but when he was come near unto *Sumachia*, and underſtood by ſome intercepted Letters of the *Tartars* to *Oſman*, how ſtrong they were, he retired towards the *Canac*, where the *Tartar* General ſuddenly ſurprized and defeated his Army, and taking him alive, he was hanged at *Sumachia* by *Oſman*'s Order by the Neck, out of a Lodging in the ſame State-houſe where he had not long before ſat as Governour. But while theſe things were doing, and that the *Tartar* alſo ſacked *Genge*, the King of *Perſia* having raiſed ſome new Forces, diſpatched *Emir Hamze Mirize*, his eldeſt Son, with 12000 Men to *Siruan*. The Prince uſed ſuch diligence in his March, that he arrived at *Eres* long before the King his Father thought he could have done it, which he recovered from the *Turks*, with all the Booty taken by them in the adjacent Country, after a fierce and bloody Battel with *Caitas* Baſſa the Governour, who was therein ſlain and all his Followers. The Prince fluſhed with ſo happy a beginning, leaving his Mother at *Eres*, he diſcovered the Camp of the *Tartars* from the Hills in his march towards *Sumachia*; and obſerving the Army was careleſly laid down to reſt, he fell on them with ſo much fury and ſurprize, that he not only quickly defeated and made a great ſlaughter of them, but took a great many Priſoners, among whom was the General *Abdilcherai* himſelf, whom he ſent to the King his Father. This ſecond Enterprize being ſo happily atchieved alſo, he reſolved to lay ſiege to *Sumachia*, and ſummoning *Oſman* Baſſa to ſurrender upon condition of having Life and Eſtate granted him, he deſired three days to put things in a readineſs for it; but in the mean time fearing the Faith of his Enemy, he privately in the night made his eſcape with all that he had to *Derbent*, leaving the Citizens to receive the Prince in next Morning, on whom he took ſevere Vengeance for their Infidelity, and raſed the old and new Walls of their City; and when he had alſo ſeverely puniſhed thoſe of *Eres* and *Sechi*, he carrying his Mother *Begun* back with him, return'd victoriouſly to *Casbin*, where the Queen falling in love with *Abdilcherai*, it had like to have imbroiled them with Domeſtick Troubles: but he being ſlain, and the Queen

Prince of Perſia *defeats the* Turks *and* Tartars, *and recovers* Eres, Sumachia, *&c.*

1578. made away, all things were brought to an amicable Composure.

In the mean time *Osman* Bassa having made his escape to *Derbent*, as already mentioned, and that being the only place now left in the hands of the *Turks* in *Siruan*, he was continually contriving how to secure that Country under *Amurath*'s Government; and for that end finding no better way than to enter into a strict Friendship and Alliance with old *Sahamal* a *Georgian* Lord of the Mountain *Brus*, he at length married his Daughter: yet finding soon after by his Wife, who doted upon him, that her Father was not sincere, but was reconciled to the King of *Persia* with a design to ruin him, *Osman* invited him to a solemn Feast, and there slew him and all his Followers; at which the *Persian* was much surprized, and with which the *Turks* concluded their Enterprizes against that Nation for this Year in *Siruan*, wherein one way or other they lost above 70000 Men. *Amurath* being informed of all that had past as well by *Mustapha*'s Letters as otherwise, enter'd into deep Consultations what he had farther to do, either for assuring or enlarging his Conquests in the East; many of his Counsellors were for advising him to send an Army to *Tauris*, and there to erect a Fortress, which might not only be perfected in a few days with such a Power as he had, but he might also penetrate as far as he would into the Enemies Country. This, tho a very pleasing Proposal, yet was disliked by him; so that at last he resolutely concluded with himself, first to secure his own Borders, and then to encroach by degrees upon the Enemy, still fortifying convenient places as they advanced: to which end he charged *Mustapha* against the Spring to provide all Necessaries for building of Forts upon the ways that lead from *Erzirum* into *Georgia*, so that when he had brought those People under his Obedience, he might afterwards attempt greater things. *Mustapha* hereupon sent out his Orders to *Aleppo*, *Damascus*, and other places in *Syria* and *Mesopotamia*, to bring together 20000 Pioneers, and at the same time wrote to all the Countries out of which he had raised his Army last Year, that all the Soldiers, yea, and in greater numbers, should be in a readiness against the Spring to return

turn to the Wars; he alſo commanded the Taxes and Tenths of thoſe Countries to be collected, and further made uſe of the Chambers of *Aleppo*, and other places, for ſuch Sums of Mony as he thought neceſſary for theſe occaſions.

Neither was the *Perſian* Court at *Casbin* on its part idle to defend the Country againſt the powerful and encroaching Arms of the Enemy; and among others, *Emanguli Chan* Governour of *Genge* being apprehenſive of loſing it, if he did not beſtir himſelf, took occaſion to offer unto the King, upon pain of loſing his Head, to defend *Siruan*, and not to ſuffer *Oſman* Baſſa to make any new Fortifications and Conqueſts in that Province: which the King freely agreed to, and charged the neighbouring Governours to give him all neceſſary Aſſiſtance. But how to protect the Country of *Georgia*, was thought a matter of the greateſt importance; and this Affair ſo troubled the King, that he ſeemed to have bent his whole thoughts upon it, when *Sinan* a *Georgian*, and famous Commander (ſome time a Priſoner with *Iſmael* the late King at *Cahaca*, and by the familiarity he had with him ſeduced from the Chriſtian Faith) thinking it now a proper time to obtain ſuch Aſſiſtance of the King as he had long deſired for the recovery of his Dominion uſurped by *David*, otherwiſe called *Daut Chan*, his younger Brother, offered now unto him his faithful Service, for the defence of that part of *Georgia* where *Teflis* ſtood againſt the *Turks*, being by right part of his own Inheritance. The King aſſented to his propoſal, making him Chan of all that Kingdom, and ſent *Aliculi* Chan with him into *Georgia* with 5000 Men, where he was joyfully received by the People.

Now the Spring beginning to approach, *Muſtapha* 1579.
in twelve days marched with the Army to *Chars*; and Chars *fortified.*
having in twenty days more fortified the place, notwithſtanding the murmurs of the Soldiery, who thought much to put their hands to the work, the General reſolved to ſend Succours to *Teflis*; and to that end detached between 18 and 20000 Men thither, under the Command of *Haſſan* Baſſa, the Son of *Muhamet* the Grand Vizier, and *Reſuan* Commander of the Voluntiers, as alſo a good quantity of Proviſion. *Haſſan*, who was a very gallant Man, being come to the famous Strait of *Tomanis*, was there, as he paſſed through

1579. Perſians *attack the* Turks, *with a great ſlaughter of them.*

the Woods, notwithſtanding all the precaution he had uſed, ſuddenly attacked by the *Perſians* under *Aliculi* Chan and *Simon*, and could not get through without the Loſs of a great many of his Men: wherefore being bent upon Revenge, he encamped there for two days together, and having appointed *Reſuan* to lie in ambuſh, as expecting the Enemy would ſuppoſe he was afraid to advance, and ſo attack him a ſecond time, it fell out the third day according to his Expectation; for the *Perſians* not only fell into the ſaid Ambuſh, but were ſlain in great numbers, and *Aliculi* Chan taken priſoner. Hereupon *Haſſan* having relieved the Miſeries of the Gariſon of *Teflis*, reinforced them, and made *Amet* Baſſa their Governour; but he was way-laid a ſecond time by the *Perſians* in the Strait of *Tomanis*, yet being diſintangled from the danger by the Advice of *Aliculi* Chan his Priſoner, upon promiſe of Liberty, the faithleſs *Turk* broke his word with him upon a ſimple excuſe, that it did not lie in his power to do it. However, *Simon* fretted with the diſappointment, ſo eagerly purſued him, that he deſtroy'd the Rear of his Army, and took his Treaſure from him. *Haſſan* being in eight days March come to *Chars*, whither he had ſent *Aliculi* to *Muſtapha* before, who ſent him priſoner to *Erzirum*, *Muſtapha* himſelf not long after return'd thither with his Army much weakened and diſcontented, which he there preſently disbanded, and therewith ended the *Turkiſh* Enterprizes this Year in the Eaſt; to favour which, and make an eaſier Paſſage into *Georgia*, *Amurath* had about the ſame time ſent *Uluzales* with a great Fleet into the *Euxine*, to erect ſome Forts in *Mingrelia*, which yet were preſently after his departure demoliſhed by the Inhabitants. So that all things conſidered, there were no mighty matters done by the *Turks* this Campaign: *Haſſan* Baſſa was indeed nobly rewarded by the Grand Signior with a Battel-Ax all gilt, and ſet full of Stones, a Target of Gold and Pearl, and a rich Veſt of Cloth of Gold; whereas *Muſtapha* who now lay at *Erzirum*, had ſo many Complaints preferred againſt him, that it began to diſcontent *Amurath*'s Mind, who now ſuſpected he had not managed his Affairs well: yet the remembrance of his good Services, and his being his old Tutor, would ſtill have ſupported his Credit, had not *Sinan* Baſſa, his old Enemy,

Enemy, and Emulator in Glory and Merit, backed thoſe Complaints all he could, and exaggerated the Accuſations brought againſt him with all the evil Suggeſtions imaginable; inſomuch that at laſt *Amurath* ſent for his Chancellor and Treaſurer to *Conſtantinople*, where they were preſently clapt up in Priſon, and ſtrictly examined as to all particulars relating to the Conduct of *Muſtapha* their Maſter, who at length on the *9th* of *April* the Spring following came thither alſo, and there by the powerful Mediation of ſome Court Ladies obtained *Amurath*'s favour for himſelf, his Chancellor and Treaſurer, but he was put out of his Command, and *Sinan* Baſſa made General againſt the *Perſians* in his ſtead. The Grand Viſier's place was alſo filled up in this time once and again; for the Great Viſier *Muhamet*, having for ſome light Offence taken away his Penſion from a Soldier of *Conſtantinople*, he ſtudying revenge took upon him the Habit of a religious Dervistar; and having by that means acceſs to the greateſt Perſonages and to the Prime Viſier himſelf under pretence of Alms, who daily relieved him, he took his opportunity in the Divan with a Dagger to ſtab him to the Heart, in whoſe room *Achemetes* Baſſa ſucceeded a little while; but he dying, *Muſtapha* who was the third Baſſa and next in courſe, had indeed a ſhadow of the Viſier's Authority for a time, but the Seal was ſent to *Sinan* Baſſa, who ever ſince he was made General was projecting great matters againſt the Enemy, and making continual Preparation to ſet forward towards *Erzirum*.

Muſtapha *turned out.*

The King of *Perſia* being informed of all theſe Changes and Alterations, and that *Sinan* the General was not in himſelf averſe to Peace, reſolved to ſue for it; and therefore having appointed *Maxut Chan* his Embaſſador to *Amurath*, he ordered him firſt to wait upon *Sinan* for a ſafe Conduct, who treated him after the beſt manner the rudeneſs of his Nature would admit, gave him ſafe Conduct, and wrote to *Amurath* the particulars of all that he thought proper to be demanded; and at the time of his diſmiſſing the Embaſſador, he adviſed him not to go without reſolving to offer the Emperor ſome great and good Terms, and yield unto him all the Country, which by force of Arms he had before conquered: For he knew *Amurath*'s

1580. Perſians *ſue for Peace.*

1580. mind very well, that he was poſitively reſolved not to yield ſo much as a hand's breadth of Ground which he had won with the Sword. This Diſcourſe ſtaggered the Embaſſador ſo much, that he was for a time in ſuſpence whether to purſue his Journey or no, but at length determining to go forward in hopes of better things from *Amurath*'s own mouth, he arrived at *Conſtantinople* on the 4th of *Auguſt*, where he was honourably entertained by the great Baſſa's of the Court, and eſpecially by *Muſtapha*, who ſuddenly died within two days after, he being ſuppoſed to have poiſoned himſelf, for fear the Embaſſador ſhould complain he had (when General) diſhonourably ſuppreſſed ſome Embaſſies from the King of *Perſia* to the Grand Seignior. The Embaſſador having his Audience on the 7th of *Auguſt*, uſed all the proper Arguments he could think of, to induce the Emperor to a Peace, but he was diſmiſt without any Reſolution at all, only there was order given, that whatever he ſaid concerning the Peace, he was to treat about the ſame with his Viſier. At laſt the Embaſſador finding but little Succeſs in his Negotiation, and that he was looked upon rather as a Spy than an Embaſſador, he thought it adviſable to alter his Note to the Viſier, and entertain him with hopes he ſhould be able to perſuade the King his Maſter to agree to *Amurath*'s Demands. Hereupon the Embaſſador was civilly diſmiſt and ſent to *Chars*, with orders to *Sinan* to have him ſafely conducted into *Perſia*; where, upon his arrival, he acquainted the King with all the Particulars of his Embaſſy, who for the preſent appearing well ſatisfied with his Conduct, rewarded him with the Charge of the Chamber of *Tauris*; but *Emir Chan*, an antient Enemy of his, being Governour of that City, he ſubſtituted a Deputy to execute his Office, and withdrew himſelf from thence: which *Emir* made ſuch an advantage of, by ſuggeſting to the King, he not only ſlighted his Favours, but by withdrawing himſelf towards the *Turkiſh* Frontiers, in all appearance held Intelligence with the Enemy, that he got a command ſecretly to ſeize him; but *Maxut* having ſome inkling of the deſign, fled with his Family and the beſt of his effects to *Sinan* the *Turkiſh* General, who kindly received and quickly ſent him to *Conſtantinople*. And thus terminated the firſt Conferences of Peace between the

Perſian Embaſſador diſmiſt.

Falſly accuſed, flies to the Turks.

the *Perſians* and *Turks*; which lead us now to a view of the Military Actions that hapned between them.

Sinan the *Turkiſh* General having reviewed his Army and Stores at *Chars*, directed his march towards *Tomanis*, with a Reſolution to build a Fort there; but being prevented therein by a continual Rain that laſted for eight days, and Apprehenſions of Dangers from the Enemy, he removed from thence to carry Succours to *Teflis*. As ſoon as he was paſt the Strait, *Tal-Ogli* Captain of the Janizaries of *Damaſcus*, and other Officers, hearing of a conſiderable Booty both of Corn and Cattel, hardly with 2000 Men reſolved to go and ſeize it. Now *Simon* the *Georgian* and the *Perſians* following the *Turkiſh* Army at a diſtance, had diſtributed his Men into all ſuch places, where there was either Corn or Water; and perceiving theſe Men careleſly coming on for the Booty, he ſuddenly fell upon them, and cut the whole 2000 to pieces, except *Tal-Ogli*, and *Homar* Sangiack of *Safetto* only. With this Loſs *Sinan* came to *Teflis*, where having provided the place with all Neceſſaries, removed the old Governour for misbehaviour, and conſtituted *Giuſuf-Beg* a *Georgian* Lord in his ſtead, he paſſed the Straits of *Tomanis* again; where being joined by *Muſtaffad* Baſſa Governour of *Aleppo*, and told by him there was ſtore of Corn and Cattel not far off, and but few *Georgians* to guard them, *Sinan* was induced to ſend 10000 Horſe with their Servants and *Muſtaffad* at the head of them to take it: but when they had almoſt laden their Beaſts therewith, *Tocomac*, *Simon*, and the other *Perſian* Commanders with their Men ſuddenly riſing out of their Ambuſh, fell upon them, and ſlew no leſs than 7000 of them, beſides Priſoners, Horſes and Mules; and returned to their Faſtneſſes again, leaving *Sinan* to march towards the Plains of *Cheilder*, to ſend Meſſengers to the King of *Perſia* to perſuade him to ſend another Embaſſador to *Amurath* to ſue for Peace, to make a mock ſhew of Battel with his own Troops who derided him for it, and at length to receive one *Aider* an *Aga*, as Embaſſador from the King of *Perſia*, who after he had made ſome Propoſals to him, *Sinan* promiſed to deal with *Amurath* about it, if the King would ſend another Embaſſador to *Conſtantinople*, which he did ſome time after; while *Sinan* returning

2000 Turks *ſlain by the* Perſians.

7000 Turks *more ſlain.*

1580. to *Chars*, and thence to *Erzirum*, disbanded his Army, and gave *Amurath* an account of the Succours he had left at *Teflis*, of the Losses he received from the Enemy, of all that which was misrepresented by *Mustapha*, of the coming of the *Persian* Embassador to him, and of the Promises made touching a new Embassy, which at length came to him, the Person being *Ebraim Chan*, a Man of great Eloquence, and highly honoured in *Persia*. *Sinan* giving present Intelligence hereof to *Amurath*, and withal renewing his Sollicitations that he might himself return to Court, that he might there more fully explain himself as to divers matters which he could not so well express by Writing; he had leave granted him by the Emperor, with whom upon his first arrival he set down the Articles upon which the Peace with *Persia* was to be made, and the Embassador himself when he had his Audience was referred to the Prime Visier, to treat of all matters relating to it.

Another Embassador from Persia *to* Amurath.

But failing after all to agree upon the Terms with him, the Embassador had many Affronts put upon him, and more particularly when *Amurath* was about to circumcise his eldest Son *Mahomet*, then about sixteen

1581. Years of Age, and that the Embassadors of divers Christian Princes then at peace with the *Turks*, had Scaffolds erected for them, according to their degrees, in the great Market-place of *Constantinople*, for the more convenient seeing of the Solemnity, that prepared for his standing was not only in contempt of him ordered to be pulled down, but himself and his Retinue were shut up close Prisoners in *Muhamet* Bassa's House at *Constantinople*; where they were so narrowly kept, that tho a hundred of them died there of the Plague, yet he could not obtain so much favour as to be removed from thence to some other place, till at length Directions were given he should

Imprisoned by him.

be carried prisoner to *Erzirum*. But not totally to omit the Solemnity now occasionly mentioned, after they had solemnized the same for forty Days and forty Nights, yet the young Prince was circumcised not publickly, but privately in his Father's Chamber, by *Mechmet* one of the inferior Bassa's, sometime the Emperor *Solyman*'s Barber.

Peace thus not succeeding between those two Empires a second time, *Sinan*, who now commanded as Grand

Grand Viſier at *Conſtantinople*, fearing the Gariſons of *Chars* and *Teflis* might for want of Succours fall again into the hands of the Enemy, boldly and freely advis'd *Amurath* to ſend a Gariſon to *Van* for the ſafety of the adjacent Country; and then, under the Conduct of ſome valiant Commander, to ſend Succours to *Teflis*, and propos'd ſeveral Perſons to him for that purpoſe. But *Amurath*, contrary to his Inclinations, making choice of *Muhamet* Baſſa, Nephew to *Muſtapha* late Baſſa, he was ſent to *Erzirum* with the Title of Baſſa of the Province, and withal honour'd with the name of General of the Army for *Teflis*; and preſently order'd *Haſſan* Baſſa of *Caraemit*, *Muſtapha*, ſometime call'd *Manucchiar* the *Georgian*, (formerly mention'd to have been ſent to *Conſtantinople*, with his Brother *Alexander*, by *Muſtapha*, where he turn'd *Mahometan*, and had his Brother's Territories conferr'd upon him) with others, to repair with their Forces to the Standard of General *Muſtapha*, and ſo to follow him to *Teflis*; who when he had got an Army of 25000 Men together, and other Neceſſaries, advanc'd from *Erzirum* to *Archelec*, where he was met by *Muſtapha* or *Manucchiar* with all his Forces; and, according to his Advice, was paſſing thro his Country to *Teflis* as far as *Gori*, when they diſcover'd in ſome adjacent Fields a great Army of *Georgians*, mingled with *Perſians* in *Georgian* Habits, the better to diſguiſe them, that it might be no interruption to the Peace they ſtill hop'd for, who ſent a Meſſage of Defiance to the General, and offer'd him Battel; at which he was much troubled, and endeavour'd to ſhun it all he could. That Evening he was indeed favour'd in his Deſign by the continu'd Rain that fell; but next day proving fair, both Armies march'd in ſight of each other, till about four hours and a half before night, when the *Turks* arriv'd near a River that ſeparated both the Hoſts. Whereupon the General conſulted with *Muſtapha* the *Georgian*, whether they ſhould paſs the River before night, or ſtay where they were till next morning; but the *Georgian* giving his Opinion for the latter, the other not only diſliking it, but withal ſuſpecting he might have correſpondence with the Enemy, and that in ſuch caſe it was dangerous for him to delay, he order'd *Muhamet* his Lieutenant, a bold young Man, to venture over, and after him

Muhamet *Baſſa made* *General.*

1581. him the Mony-Waggons and Corn, and then the whole Army, of whom for mere haſte only many periſh'd in the River. Now as ſoon as the *Georgians* perceiv'd they had got over, they fell on them with ſuch Reſolution and Fury, before they had time to draw into any good order, that they ſtain'd and fill'd the River with the Blood and Carcaſes of the *Turks*, while thoſe that eſcap'd waded back again to ſave their Lives. Great was the Shame and Confuſion, but greater the Loſs they receiv'd; for in the heat of Action the Emperor's Mony and Corn was taken by the *Georgians* and *Perſians*: But drawing in order together next morning, and finding they had ſtill ſo much Mony and other Refreſhments as might ſuffice to eaſe the afflicted Minds of the diſtreſs'd Soldiers in *Teflis*, they reſolv'd to march thither, and made ſuch haſte that they arriv'd there next day in the evening; but the Gariſon proteſting to the General that they would abandon the Place, if they were not forthwith ſupply'd with neceſſary Proviſions, he call'd a Council of the chief Commanders about him, and propoſing that every one would upon ſuch an emergent occaſion contribute, according to his Ability, for the ſupport of the Place, he firſt disburs'd 4000 Ducats himſelf, and his Example at laſt induc'd the reſt to make up the Sum 30000 Ducats; and then word was preſently ſent to *Levent-Ogli* at *Zaghen*, to ſend Grain, Mutton, and other Proviſions thither, that they might the better continue the Defence of the Fort: and when he had appointed *Homar* Baſſa to be Governor of *Teflis* inſtead of *Giuſuf*, he after two days departed thence.

Turks *routed by the* Georgians.

Mony raiſed for the Subſiſtance of the Gariſon of Teflis.

But before their Departure, it was agreed they ſhould march by the way of *Tomanis*, and thereupon order was given that they ſhould all paſs the River; but when the *Curdi*, who went firſt, had pitch'd their Tents on the other ſide, the General countermanded that Order, and requiring them to return, the Sangiacks were ſo enrag'd at ſuch unſtable Counſels, that they abſolutely refus'd, and kept on their way till they arriv'd at *Chars*, and that long before him, who with the reſt of the Army march'd the ſame way they came to *Teflis*; and being arriv'd at *Altanchala*, the chief Caſtle of *Muſtapha* the *Georgian*, the General here contriv'd a Plot to cut that Prince off. To which end having ſummon'd

mon'd a Council of War to meet in his Tent, as if it had been by order from the Port, *Muſtapha*, who was to be invited to it, was by Perſons ſet on purpoſe to be there ſlain. However the Deſign being not kept ſo covertly, but that *Muſtapha* had ſome intimations of it, he reſolv'd, for fear of giving ſuſpicion, and to prevent the ruin of his Country, to be preſent; yet ſo as to have fifty of his choice Men at hand to ruſh into the Tent, at the leaſt noiſe they heard. This done, *Muſtapha* went into the Tent, and deſiring to know the General's pleaſure, a ſham Command as from the Emperor was preſently order'd to be read; to which *Muſtapha* gave an attentive Ear, while the other Baſſa's and Sangiacks began to ſit down, contrary to the Cuſtom of the *Turks* upon ſuch Occaſions. Then the *Georgian* having promis'd to obey it, and being about to take his leave, the *Capigi* Baſſa, or great Uſher of *Mahomet* came up, pull'd him by the Sleeve, and would have forc'd him to ſit down. Hereupon *Muſtapha* crying out, and with his left hand pulling the Turbant of *Mahomet*'s Lieutenant, who was right againſt him, off his Head, he, to the great aſtoniſhment of all there preſent, with his Sword chopt his Head, Neck, and Breaſt even to his very Stomach in twain, then ſtruck off the Ear of the Baſſa of *Caraemit*; and attacking *Muhamet* Baſſa the General, wounded him deſperately in five ſeveral Places, and he had much ado to eſcape with his Life. This wrought great Confuſion in the Camp, and all of them march'd with all the ſpeed they could towards *Chars*, while *Muſtapha* ſent immediate notice to the Emperor of the treacherous Conſpiracy againſt him, and poſſeſs'd him ſo with it, that he ſent him both a Cloth of Gold and a gilt Battel-Ax for a Preſent; neither was *Muhamet* on his part wanting to juſtify his own Conduct, and to expoſe *Muſtapha* to *Amurath* as much as lay in his power.

Now as ſoon as the Emperor heard of all theſe Misfortunes, he diſcharg'd his Anger in ſharp Terms, and laid all the fault upon *Sinan* the Prime Viſier, who ſhould have ſtaid in the Eaſt to command the Army; and who, on the other hand, in a proud and peremptory manner anſwer'd, *That as the laſt year's Succours had been convey'd to* Teflis *without any loſs or trouble, ſo had they been alſo now, if he had follow'd his Advice; for he had*

Sinan Prime Viſier baniſh'd.

1581. *had told him that* Muhamet *was not fit for the Charge; but ſince he would have him be the Man, he was to blame no other for his Error but himſelf.* As for his coming to *Conſtantinople*, it was a thing long before thought neceſſary, from the account of his Advice upon the ſtate of things, which as he had not yet thought fit to receive, he was willing now, if he pleas'd, to give. The Emperor, tho inwardly much chafed with this inſolent freedom of his Slave, yet being willing to hear what he had to ſay, bid him go on: Whereupon he propounded theſe two things; 1ſt, That they ought not to proceed in that War with erecting Forts and Fortreſſes, for which they had not Treaſure enough to ſupport the Gariſons; and, 2dly, That to have a good iſſue of things, the Emperor ought in Perſon to go to the War. But this was ſo diſlik'd by the effeminate Emperor, that he preſently baniſh'd him, and advanc'd *Sciaus* Baſſa his own Brother-in-law into his place.

1582. But for all the Misfortunes that *Amurath* met with in this War, and how much ſoever the Expreſſions of *Sinan* might tend to diſcourage him, he ſtill perſiſted in his Reſolution of carrying it on; and for that end made choice of one *Ferat*, a Man of ripe Years and fierce of Courage, to be his General, purpoſing at firſt to imploy him no farther than to ſecure the Paſſage to *Teflis*, and ſo into *Georgia*, and to have deſtroy'd the Country of *Muſtapha* the *Georgian*: but when he heard of the Troubles in *Perſia*, between the King and his younger Son *Abbas Mirize* (which were fomented by the falſe Viſier *Mirize Salmas*, and at laſt terminated in his death) he commanded *Ferat* to build a Fortreſs at *Reivan*, and to ſecure the Paſſage from *Chars* thither, for thereby they ſhould be reveng'd on *Tocomac*, and open the way to *Tauris*. But for *Muſtapha* the *Georgian*, he order'd the General to diſſemble matters with him for the preſent, and make uſe of him as an Inſtrument (if poſſible) to convey Mony and Succours to *Teflis*.

Ferat made General of the Turks, *and his Actions.*

1583. General *Ferat* having got his Army in a readineſs, directed his march for *Reivan*, a Country about eight or nine days Journy from *Tauris*, where ſeizing on the Houſes and Gardens of *Tocomac*, he in the ſpace of fifteen days erected a ſtrong Fortreſs there 750 yards in circum-

circumference, while *Tocomac* could have no Aid neither from the King of *Perſia*, *Emir* Chan, nor *Simon*, to oppoſe him. In the mean time *Ferat* having put *Sinan* Baſſa, a runnagade *Genoeſe*, with 8000 Men to gariſon the Fort, march'd with the Army to *Chars*, where he was ſurpriz'd with the ſtrange News of *Muſtapha* the *Georgian*'s Revolt; for he, with two Capigi and a Chiaux, being on their way with 30000 Ducats of *Amurath* to relieve *Teflis*, and meeting with his Couſin *Simon*, he perſuaded him to renounce Mahometaniſm; and thereupon killing the *Turks*, and ſeizing the Treaſure, they divided the Spoil between them. However the General had the good fortune by *Haſſan* Baſſa to relieve *Teflis*; after which *Reſuan* Baſſa with 6000 Men committed great Spoil in the revolted *Muſtapha*'s Country: but Winter now drawing on, and the General having executed the Emperor's Commands, he march'd to *Erzirum*, where the Army was broke up for that Year; which we ſhall conclude with the death of *Hama Cadum*, Mother to the Emperor *Amurath*, on the 29th of *November*, who lies bury'd by her Husband *Selymus*, and his five Sons ſtrangled by *Amurath*.

Muſtapha *revolts from the* Turks.

Now the King of *Perſia* underſtanding that *Ferat* this year with a mighty Power would invade *Naſſivan*, he march'd with all the Forces he could draw together to *Tauris*; of which *Ferat* giving an account to *Amurath*, he was by him countermanded in his Orders of going to *Naſſivan*, and requir'd to ſecure the Paſſage to *Tomanis* and *Lori*. In order to which the General, to cover his Deſign, caus'd the Rumour of his going to *Naſſivan* to be more and more increas'd, while he advanc'd with his Army to the Caſtle of *Lori*, ſometime belonging to *Simon* the *Georgian*, and diſtant two ſhort days Journy from *Teflis*. This Caſtle he ſtrongly fortify'd, and then committing all the Ravage he could in the Country as he paſs'd, he came to *Tomanis*; where having cut down a thick Wood, and built a ſtrong Fort upon the Strait, he ſent *Reſuan* Baſſa and *Caraemit* with 20000 Men to put Succours into *Teflis*; and ſoon after, for fear of any danger, diſpatch'd the Baſſa's of *Caramania* and *Maras* with 10000 Men more to reinforce them: whilſt *Simon* the *Georgian*, miſtaken in their ſtrength, with 4000 Men only came reſolutely on to fight them; and finding *Reſuan* encamp'd

Ferat *built Forts, at* Lori, *and* Tomanis.

1583. camp'd with 6000 Men only at the foot of a Hill, on the back side whereof lay all the rest of the Army, he charg'd him, but was quickly hemm'd in with all his Men by the *Turks* from the other side, between whom and this handful of Christians there ensu'd a most terrible Fight, wherein *Simon* had his Horse slain under him, and was like to have been taken; when *Resuan* discovering the 10000 Men above-mention'd coming up, and fearing them to be *Persians*, it put him and his Army to such a stand and suspence, that it gave the brave *Simon* and his surviving *Georgians* an opportunity to escape.

Simon *narrowly escapes.*

But tho the Year was now far spent, the General was resolv'd to go and ravage the Country of the revolted *Mustapha*, and advanc'd as far as *Archeleek*; where, as well as before, the Soldiers having endur'd unspeakable Hardships and Miseries, all the Janizaries and Spaoglans of *Constantinople* rose up in a Tumult; and after having entertain'd the General with very opprobrious and despiteful Language, requir'd him peremptorily to return to *Erzirum*. But the General in a Council concluding to send all their strong Sumpter-Horses to *Ardachan*, and the rest to follow him to *Manucchiar*'s Country, where they should be refresh'd with all Necessaries, they readily obey'd, and advanc'd as far as *Glisca*, where *Ferat* designing to erect a Fort, he commanded *Resuan* Bassa to go and put up an Ensign on the Tower, and so make Proclamation of the General's Intentions; but the Janizaries and Spaoglans in a fury pull'd it down, and striking *Resuan* once or twice about the Head, they insolently told the General himself, they were no Masons nor Bricklayers, but Gentlemen Soldiers, and that if he lov'd his Head, he should give over that Design: but he still persisting stiffly in his Resolution, saying, He would obey his Lord alone in whatever he commanded him, if none would stand by him; they not only fell to Railings, but to Arms, and in a trice overturn'd all the Tents of the Bassa's and other Commanders, and seiz'd upon all the Sheep and other Cattel which the General Officers carry'd along with them for their ordinary use; and then turning afresh upon their General, declar'd, if he did not forthwith march to *Erzirum*, those Vallies and Fields should without fail become the Sepulchres of the Bassa's,

Soldiers mutiny.

Baſſa's, and thoſe Hills retain the eternal memory of ſo bloody a Day. The General ſeeing now there was no other remedy but compliance, march'd to *Ardachan* (tho with the loſs of his Women by the way) and there disbanding the Army, return'd himſelf to *Erzirum*, hated and upbraided by every body; neither was *Amurath* himſelf pleas'd with his Conduct upon many accounts, but conceiv'd a more particular diſſatisfaction againſt him, becauſe he had ſuffer'd *Aliculi* Chan, whom he took this year along with him from *Erzirum* as his Guide, to make his eſcape; neither was the General's Precaution, in ordering *Aly* Baſſa of *Greece* to fortify *Saitan Chars*, or Devil's Caſtle, whereby to ſecure the dangerous Paſſage from *Rivan* to *Teflis*, ſufficient to atone or divert the Sultan's Diſſatisfaction, which was ſtill more aggravated by the Accuſations and Inſinuations of others againſt him: So that in ſhort *Amurath* having conceiv'd a great opinion of *Oſman* Baſſa, left at *Samachia* in *Siruan* by General *Muſtapha* the firſt year of this War, he ſent for him to come to *Conſtantinople*, in order to make him General; but *Sciaus* the Grand Viſier, who was jealous of *Oſman*'s Abilities, and ſo fearful to be ſupplanted by him, did all he could to hinder his coming to *Conſtantinople*; and having many times been a Friend to *Muhamet* the *Cuman-Tartar* King, and diverted *Oſman*'s frequent Accuſations of him to *Amurath*, for failing to aid him according to his Promiſe and Duty, he wrote to the ſaid King then at *Caffa*, that *Oſman* was to come to Court, and that therefore he would do well to remember what an Enemy he had been to him, and if he could do ſo much againſt him with *Amurath* while abſent, what would he be able to do when preſent? The *Tartar* King having receiv'd this account from the Grand Viſier, and fearing the danger, he commanded 12000 Men to change their Arms and Apparel, and go and way-lay *Oſman* between *Chalchis* and *Iberia*, and kill him if they could, while the fault at the ſame time was to be laid upon the *Tartarian Nomades*, *Mingrelians*, *Georgians*, or *Muſcovites*. In the mean time *Oſman*, who well knew what troubleſome and dangerous Paſſages he was to travel thro, choſe 4000 old Soldiers for his Guard; and being come to the ſhores of the *Euxine* Sea, he was there ſet upon by the ſaid *Tartars*;

Ferat *forc'd to give way to the Soldiers.*

Oſman *way-laid, defeats* 12000 Tartars.

1583. *Tartars*; but his Men ſtanding bravely by *Oſman*, overthrew them, and kill'd a great many of them: And coming to underſtand by his Priſoners how matters partly ſtood, he diſpatch'd them by the nigheſt way to *Amurath*, and inflam'd him to revenge ſo dangerous an Injury. This he preſently did, by ſending *Uluzales* his Admiral to *Caffa* to fetch *Oſman*, and withal to carry *Iſlan* the *Tartar* King's Brother thither, with orders for him to put the King to death, and advance his Brother into his place; which was ſoon effected by him.

Made Grand Viſier and General.

This done, *Oſman* ſoon after arriv'd at *Conſtantinople*, where he was highly honour'd, and *Amurath* himſelf enter'd into a Conference with him about taking of *Tauris*; where being incourag'd by *Oſman*, he depos'd *Sciaus* from his Grand Viſierſhip, and not only nam'd *Oſman* to ſucceed, but alſo made him General of his Army againſt the *Perſians*: whoſe King growing very jealous of the great Preparations made againſt him, ſent out Spies to diſcover their real Deſigns, whether upon *Naſſivan* (as they gave out) or *Tauris*; neither did he fail, by divers Meſſengers ſent to *Oſman*, to endeavour to penetrate into the Secret, under the colour of ſounding his mind as to a Peace, tho without ſucceſs. And ſo we ſhall leave them at preſent to make their Preparations, and come by the way to treat of ſome other matters that occur in our Hiſtory, and are worth obſerving, before we return to the remaining Particulars of this War between them.

This Summer *Amurath*, to divert himſelf with his Mutes, mounted on fair and fat, but heavy and unweildy Horſes, rode himſelf on a light and nimble Horſe, ſometimes about one, and ſometimes about another, ſtriking now the Man, and then the Horſe at his pleaſure; but was ſuddenly taken with a Fit of the Falling-ſickneſs, his old Diſtemper, and ſo falling off his Horſe was taken up for dead, inſomuch that the Janizaries believing it to be really ſo, according to their uſual manner upon ſuch occaſions, rais'd a Tumult, which was not appeas'd but with the hanging ſome of them. However *Amurath* recover'd ſoon after, and to appeaſe the Rumour, openly upon their Sabbath, which is Friday, rid from his Palace to the Temple of *Sophia*, where *Leunclavius* ſays he ſaw him, but

but he look'd pale and wan. This Year alſo happen'd an Accident, which had like to have caus'd a War between the *Venetians* and *Turks*. The Widow of *Ramadan* Baſſa, late Governor of *Tripolis*, being bound with three Gallies from *Conſtantinople* thither, and being driven by a Storm into the *Adriatick*, *Peter Emus* a *Venetian* Senator, that then commanded in the Gulph, immediately took the Gallies, and committed great Barbarities as well upon the Women as Men; of the laſt he ſlew 250, and *Ramadan*'s Son in his Mother's Lap, then caus'd the Women to be raviſh'd, their Breaſts to be cut off and thrown into the Sea; nay, the Brother of *Emus*, notwithſtanding all her Intreaties, would not ſpare a fair Chriſtian Virgin among them; but when he had firſt deflour'd her, he then threw her into the Sea alſo. This News ſo enrag'd the *Turks* at *Conſtantinople*, that they had much ado not to kill the *Baillo* or *Venetian* Embaſſador there; and *Amurath* diſpatch'd a Meſſenger to *Venice* to expoſtulate the matter with the Senate, and demand ſatisfaction of them. They made as plauſible Excuſe as they could to appeaſe his Diſpleaſure, and *Emus* ſoon after was not only beheaded, but the Gallies and Goods reſtor'd only for 400 Chriſtian Slaves that were in them, and the Republick reſtor'd as many *Turks* to their liberty.

But to leave theſe matters, with other things which muſt give way to more important Relations, we ſhall look a little into the Affairs of *Egypt* and *Damaſcus*, imbroil'd very much about this time with inteſtine Troubles. *Amurath* had formerly ſent *Haſſan* Baſſa the Eunuch to be Baſſa of *Caire* in *Egypt*, who being exceeding covetous, and therefore to ſatisfy his Avarice greatly oppreſſing the People, they humbly petition'd the Emperor to remove him; who thereupon deſigning that rich Government for *Ebrain* Baſſa, a *Sclavonian* by Birth, whom *Amurath* intended alſo to make his Son-in-law, he ſent him towards *Egypt*; but the Eunuch being not willing to abide his coming, tho he pretended many Excuſes before to *Amurath* to colour his dilatory return, ſet out for *Conſtantinople* by the way of *Syria*: which making *Amurath* jealous leſt he might take the opportunity from thence of flying into *Perſia*, and there diſcover the Secrets of the Port, he ſent the Maſter of his Horſe and forty Capighi to

1585. bring him to Court, who met him near *Apamea:* But the Baſſa underſtanding their Buſineſs, he order'd his Guard of Slaves to admit none into his Tent but the Embrador or Maſter of the Horſe himſelf; who delivering his Meſſage from the Emperor, and importuning his return, the crafty Baſſa anſwer'd, *He was coming of himſelf, being aſſur'd not only to find Pardon and Pity, but alſo Favour in his Maſter's ſight, whoſe good nature had been abus'd by falſe Accuſers to the prejudice of the Innocent.* In the mean time he diſpatch'd divers Letters to the Sultana's to intercede for him; but as ſoon as he was come to *Scutari*, *Amurath* order'd his Treaſure to be ſeiz'd, and his Perſon to be confin'd in the ſeven Towers, but at length at the Sultana's Interceſſion he was ſet at liberty.

In the mean time *Ebrain* Baſſa, more greedy of Wealth than his Predeceſſor, took yet unjuſter Methods to amaſs a vaſt Treaſure together in a ſhort time, and had Orders to return to Court to accompliſh the intended Marriage with the Emperor's Daughter, and to return thro *Druſia*, to confirm ſuch as he found loyal in their Obedience, and to force the ſtubborn to a ſubmiſſion. Now the *Druſians* were ſuppos'd to be the Poſterity of the *Franks*, that went to fight againſt the Infidels in the Holy Land. They are a warlike People, and live uncircumcis'd, inhabiting the Borders of *Joppa* above *Cæſarea* and *Paleſtine:* They were at this time govern'd by five Captains, whereof three of them, *viz. Ebne-Frec*, *Ebne-Carſus*, and *Ebne-Manſur* were always Friends, and came now and ſubmitted themſelves to *Ebrain* with Preſents and a great many Followers at *Jeruſalem*, from whence *Ebrain*, already accompany'd with 20000 Horſe, came in the month of *July* 1585. by the way of *Damaſcus*, to the Plains of *Bocca*. *Serafadin* alſo, another of the two Captains of the *Druſians*, being poor both in Wealth and Forces, thought fit with a great many Preſents to come hither to ſubject himſelf to the Baſſa, by whom he was impriſon'd: But *Man-ogli* the fifth excuſing himſelf by a Letter to *Ebrain* for not coming, upon the account of ſome of his inveterate Enemies being then with him; he immediately ſent out Men to ravage his Country, who burnt twenty four of his Towns, and then he went and incamp'd upon Mount *Libanus*. However *Man-*

An Account of the Druſians.

Man-ogli's *Druſians* defeated 1500 *Turks* under *Veis* Baſſa, and his Son the Sangiack of *Jeruſalem*, and took all their Baggage. *Ebrain* hereupon fell to his Artifices to get *Man-ogli* to come to him, and herein made uſe of one *Gomeda*, *Ebne-Manſur*'s Agent; but all the Fineſs that ever could be us'd would never bring the wary *Druſian* to truſt himſelf in the Baſſa's hands, tho he ſent him divers Preſents and ſome Arms he requir'd of him. The Baſſa being diſappointed in his main Aim, ravag'd the reſt of *Man-ogli*'s Country, and burnt *Andrea*, the place of his Reſidence. After which having by the means of *Emir Ebne-Frec* entic'd *Man-ogli*'s *Mancademo*, or Lieutenant, with 350 Soldiers to come over to him, all the Men were ſlain; and the *Mancademo* being brought before the Tyrant, he was immediately order'd to be ſtript and flay'd alive, while the unfortunate Man, as they were ſtripping him, ſtoutly upbraided *Ebrain* with his Perfidy, and ſaid, *Cut off my Members, after you have put them into the Privities of that infamous* Ebrain's *Wife, put them afterward into his Mouth, for ſo I believe he will be contented and ſatisfy'd with my Fleſh.* And to them who were the Executioners of his miſerable Death, he ſaid, *Great is your fortune indeed to ſpill my Blood, and take away my Life in ſuch a baſe manner, whereas none of you durſt ſingly have drawn one drop from me, or endure to look me in the face; proceed in your unſatiable deſire of Blood, and fulfil the cruel Command of the Viſier; for at laſt there will alſo light on you the juſt Reward of this villanous Act.* Not ſatisfy'd with this Barbarity, *Ebrain* alſo caus'd about 150 of *Serafadin*'s Followers to be ſlain, and with 4000 Men from his Gallies at *Sydon* ranſack'd all the Sea-Coaſt as far as *Cæſarea* and *Paleſtine*, deſtroying a multitude of People of all Ages and Sexes, together with Towns and Caſtles, and carrying away 3000 Perſons into Captivity. When he had done this, conſtituted *Ebne-Carſus* Baſſa of thoſe Regions, and got what Mony he could out of him and others, he, contrary to his Faith, carry'd *Ebne-Manſur* a Priſoner into his Gallies, with which he ſail'd to *Tripolis*, where he found *Serafadin* in the cuſtody of *Veis* and *Haly* Baſſa's, and thence ſail'd to *Conſtantinople* with a vaſt Treaſure; inſomuch that *Mindano*, who has writ of theſe Affairs, reported the Sum he preſented the Em-

Man-ogli would not ſubmit to the Turks.

Ebrain's Wealth and Actions.

1585. peror with amounted to a Million of Gold, beſides the yearly Revenue of *Caire*, conſiſting of 600000 Ducats, with 60 fine Horſes richly caparison'd, an Elephant, Giraffle, which is a Beaſt like a Camel, and a Panther, two dead Crocodiles, a Chair of maſſy Gold beſet with precious Stones, and many other things; beſides many valuable Preſents made to the Court Ladies, valu'd, according to *Leunclavius*, at 200000 Sultanies.

The number of Oſman's *Army.*

But to return again to *Oſman* the Grand Viſier, who was all this while preparing for his *Perſian* Expedition: When he had drawn together an Army of 180000 Men, beſides 40000 of the meaner ſort, which he had diſcharg'd, about the 11th of *Auguſt* he march'd from *Erzirum* towards *Tauris*, tho he always gave out his Deſign was for *Naſſivan*; but he had not advanc'd two days, when the Soldiers of *Greece* and *Conſtantinople* came and upbraided him to his face for want of Proviſions, and told him, If they began already to want, what muſt they do before they came to *Naſſivan*? But he ſoon remedy'd this, by diſtributing Neceſſaries to them out of his Stores, and ſeverely puniſhing thoſe who converted it to their own uſe, and continu'd his march to the Plains of *Calderan*, famous for the great Battel between *Selymus* and *Iſmael*; where, after he had review'd the Army, he mov'd directly towards *Tauris*, which occaſion'd the ſame Soldiers to talk very inſolently to him again, who ſaid they could not endure to be put upon, and that they were not a number ſufficient to go to *Tauris*, with a great deal more opprobrious Language. But the General telling their Officers, that all he did was in obedience to the Emperor's Command, that it was only to amuſe the Enemy, and make them provide leſs for the ſecurity of *Tauris*, that it was given out they ſhould march to *Naſſivan*, and that they had Men enough for the Enterprize; they were quickly appeas'd again, and march'd on till they came in ſight of *Tauris* to their great joy. Here the Vanguard going to the *Bridge of Salt-Water* upon a little River to refreſh themſelves with the Delights and Conveniences of the Place, *Emir Hamze* Prince of *Perſia* lying cloſe with 10000 Men, ſet upon them with that Surprize, Courage, and Fury, that he quickly broke and diſpers'd them, with the loſs of about 7000 of them, beſides many Priſoners, Horſes, Colours, and Drums,

Turks *twice defeated by the Prince of* Perſia.

Drums, which he carry'd along with him to his blind Father, who lay about 12 miles off with 50000 Men; *Aliculi* Chan being left with only 4000 Men in *Tauris*. In the mean time *Oſman* hearing of the Defeat, detatch'd two Baſſa's with 14000 Men to purſue the Prince, who overtaking him about two hours before night, he bravely fac'd about, and engag'd fiercely till night parted them, to the diſadvantage (as 'twas thought) of the *Turks*, who beſides 6000 Men loſt here, had ſuffer'd a general Rout if the day had laſted.

Next morning the *Turks* incamp'd within two miles of *Tauris*, and after *Aliculi* Chan had done them great damage in two ſeveral Sallies, he fled to the King's Camp, and left the poor Citizens to ſhift for themſelves, who yet defended their Gates very gallantly againſt a multitude of ſervile *Turks*, who thought to have got in preſently for Plunder, and after that fortify'd their Houſes againſt them, ſo that there was a prodigious ſlaughter made of them; but at laſt they were forc'd to give way to their numerous Enemies, to their great miſery: but when the General underſtood it, he made Proclamation that no Man ſhould moleſt the Citizens, and went about himſelf to find out a fit place to build a Fortreſs on.

Tauris *taken by the* Turks.

At length having pitch'd upon a pleaſant Garden on the South-ſide of the City, which for the Delicacy thereof was call'd by the Inhabitants *Sechis Genet*, i. e. the eighth Paradiſe, he immediately ſet his Men at work upon the Foundation of the Fort, which was finiſh'd in 36 days; but in the mean time *Oſman* fell ſick of a Flux and Fever, which at length brought him to his Grave; and eight of his *Janizaries* and ſome *Spaoglans* being found ſtrangled in a Bath at *Tauris*, the *Zaini*, *Spahi*, and *Janizaries* made ſuch a Complaint hereof to the General, that he commanded the City to be forthwith ſack'd; where for ſeveral days the Soldiers committed the greateſt Rapine, Murders, Cruelties, and Barbarities they were capable of. At which the King of *Perſia*, eſpecially the Prince his Son was ſo concern'd, that he reſolutely commanded 500 Horſe to march, and appearing in the very ſight of the Enemy's Camp, dar'd them forth to Battel. Hereupon the ſick General commanded *Sicala* Baſſa and *Muhamet* Baſſa of *Caraemit*, with about 34000

The Caſtle of Tauris *built.*

The City ſacked.

1585. Men, to advance and fight the *Persians*, whose five hundred Horse aforesaid so cunningly skirmish'd with them, and drew them so far on, that the Prince with 20000 Men had an opportunity to engage, and that in one of the deadliest and cruellest Battels that was ever writ of. At last the Bassa of *Caraemit* was defeated and put to flight, while *Sicala* still maintain'd the Charge very gallantly against the prevailing Enemy; but he also at last was forc'd to follow his Companion, having left behind them 8000 Men slain upon the spot.

A great slaughter of the Turks.

The Prince of *Persia* being highly flush'd with this success, sent the sick Visier a Challenge to fight him in what manner he pleas'd; but not being able to go in Person, he sent all his Commanders with his Army to dare him to Battel, who then lay about 12 miles off, and upon their coming up fell on with incredible Fury, himself bravely entring amongst the Soldiers of the Bassa of *Caraemit*, who now, in *Osman*'s Absence, commanded as General; and after having dispatch'd all that came in his way, singled out the Bassa himself, and striking off his Head, gave it to one of his Followers to carry it on the top of his Lance. The *Turks* were so dismay'd, and the *Persians* incourag'd at the sight hereof, that the former were quickly put to the rout with great slaughter, computed at 20000 Men, besides the Bassa of *Trapezond*, Sangiack of *Prusia*, and five more, to say nothing of *Amurath* Bassa of *Caramania*, who was here taken Prisoner. *Osman*, who had now nothing to do more in those Countries, after he had constituted *Giaffer* Bassa of *Tripolis* Governor of *Tauris*, with the Title of Bassa of the Court, and 12000 Men furnish'd with all Necessaries in Garison, he march'd off to a place call'd *Sancazan*, seven miles distant from *Tauris*, where the *Turks* being about incamping, discern'd in the Rear a confus'd military noise, which they immediately took to be the Enemy; but while several Troops drew that way to oppose them, the Prince of *Persia* with 28000 Horse, without any signal of Battle, fell upon them on the other side. The first thing he did was to take 18000 Camels and Mules well laden with Victuals, and the Booty of the Town; then he fell on the Enemy with such a fury as is hardly credible, insomuch that the *Turks* themselves were

The Battel of Sancazan.

were aſtoniſhed at their Bravery: and indeed they had penetrated even as far as the Tent of the ſick Viſier himſelf, if they had not brought their Cannon to bear upon them, which in that Medley and Confuſion of both Armies deſtroy'd both Parties; but the *Perſians* by their ſpeedy retreat were thoſe that fared beſt, and loſt but very few Men in this brave Action to 20000 of their Enemies. Among the reſt, *Oſman* the Prime Viſier died here, not by the Enemies hand, but of an Ague and the bloody Flux, and by his Will conſtituted *Cicala* Baſſa Commander in Chief of the Army; who, notwithſtanding all his Artifice to conceal his Death, could not long keep the ſame from the knowledge of the Prince of *Perſia*, by whom the *Turks* were bravely attacked again in their Retreat homewards, tho not with that Succeſs as before. The Prince indeed deſigned as ſoon as ever he ſaw the *Turks* begin to move, to retreat and ſo decoy them into a filthy and deep Mariſh; but this being perceived by the Rebels *Maxut* and *Daut* Chan, the Baſſa preſently cauſed a great compaſſing Wing to be formed, and ſo to charge home the Enemy. The Prince perceiving by this, his Intentions were diſcovered, immediately ordered his Men to retreat, which could not ſo readily be done, but they loſt one way or other 3000 Men. So the *Turks* marched on now undiſturbed till they came to *Van*, where after a general Review, wherein they found 85000 Men wanting, they were disbanded; and in the mean time a Council being held at *Van* about ſending Succours to *Teflis*, *Daut* Chan ſucceſsfully performed the ſame, for which he was made Baſſa of *Maras*, as the other Rebel *Maxut* was of *Aleppo*.

Oſman's *Death.*

The *Perſians* were ſo concerned at the Fortreſs lately built ſo much to their prejudice at *Tauris*, that they reſtrained all their Wits how to be rid of it: At length the King having found a way to engage 10000 *Turcomans* in his Service, they by treacherous Contrivance and Management obtained of the King his third Son, young *Tamas*, to be their Governour, with a deſign to ſet him up King, and then proceeded on with the Siege of the ſaid Fortreſs; which was in the Judgment of all Men upon the point of being taken, when they ſuddenly marched away in the night towards *Casbin*, giving young *Tamas* the Title of King, and abuſing the

Turcomans *revolt from the* Perſians.

1585. King his Father and the Prince all they could by their Railleries. This alarmed them both to a high degree, but especially the Prince, who being now to his great Mortification forced to raise the Siege, with 12000 Men and the King's ordinary Guards marched after the Rebels, and having overtaken them at *Calisteza*, a day's Journy from *Casbin*, he attacked and quickly routed them, took young *Tamas*, *Mahomet Cham* their General, and *Calife* the Sultan, Prisoners; which last two were immediately beheaded. Now *Giaffer* Bassa Governour of *Tauris*, fearing the Prince of *Persia* would return again quickly to renew the Siege, he sent to *Cicala* Bassa for Aid, who delay'd not to set forward with a good body of Men and Ammunition for that purpose; but understanding by some *Persian* Spies (whom he had the luck to take) that their King was on his march with an Army towards *Sancazan*, he was so discouraged and apprehensive of danger, that he retreated to *Van* again: Yet *Giaffer* for all this had the good Fortune of being supplied by the succeeding General, before the *Persians*, who were ingaged in their Domestick Broils, and raised Men slowly, could come to attack him.

Ferat *made General.*

In the mean time *Amurath* at *Constantinople*, being sollicitous about the choice of a General, at length pitched upon *Ferat* Bassa, one that had formerly sustained the Charge before *Osman*, and to whom he granted the ordinary Authority, to manage, as he thought fit, such Affairs of the Empire as related to his Expedition. Upon this Resolution general Precepts were sent out to all Cities within the Kingdom, with special Directions, that all their Soldiers, together with their Taxes, Tenths, Munitions, Victuals, *&c.* should be ready upon the first warning in the Spring. There was not only a great deal of Mony raised, but vast Sums borrowed of the *Aleppo* Merchants, to the great discontent of the People; the General had also 400 pieces of Cannon, and so ordered the matter that he got *Maxut Chan* to be his Guide, and *Cicala* Bassa, who was none of his Friend, to be removed from *Van* to be Bassa of *Babylon*.

1586. All things being thus in a readiness, he left *Constantinople* in *April*, but staid at *Sivas* till the latter end of *July*; from whence he hasted to *Van*, and set his Army in

in order, for fear of the Enemy, of whoſe approach towards *Tauris* he had certain Information given him by *Giaffer*. And indeed the Prince of *Perſia* about the latter end of *July* actually arrived there with the greateſt part of the Army, tho contrary to all Mens opinion he had made no long ſtay; but underſtanding that *Zeniel* Baſſa of *Salmas* lay incamp'd before that City, and had relinquiſhed the *Perſian* Religion and Intereſt, he marched away ſuddenly with 12000 Men thither, and attack'd him, and gave them ſuch a rout, that the Baſſa himſelf with a few others had much ado to ſave themſelves, but loſt the City to the *Perſians*, which was miſerably ſacked by them. This done, and the Prince alſo having defeated the Baſſa of *Reivan*, he retreated towards his Father's Camp, where the reſt of the Army to the number of 40000 was come up: 8000 of the Soldiers of *Steri* the Prince detached under the Command of the traitorous *Aliculi Chan* their General, and part alſo of the *Turcomans* under *Emanguli Chan*, with orders that they ſhould at all advantageous Paſſes infeſt the Enemy; but the latter being wholly influenced by the former, and he a very Traitor, they were ſo far from weakning the Enemy (as the Prince hoped) that the *Turks* relieved *Tauris* without any manner of Impediment, and the brave Deſigns of that Heroick Prince were diſappointed; his time being now wholly taken up for the ſecurity of his own Perſon againſt the Conſpiracies of *Aliculi* and his Accomplices, whom at length he totally hunted out of the Quarters of *Tauris*, and then in all haſte marched towards *Genge*. Here having drawn together a good number of Troops, he deſigned to go and intercept the Succours to be brought by the *Turks* to *Teflis*. Now he had always found *Emanguli Chan* faithful to him, and therefore he communicated his Intentions to him, lodging in his City till all things were in a readineſs for putting the ſame in execution: But alas he was miſerably prevented therein, by being moſt villanouſly and barbaro ſly murdered in the Night as he ſlept upon his Pal : by one of his own Eunuchs; but who was the real occaſion thereof, could never clearly be determined.

Aliculi traitorous to the Perſians.

Prince of Perſia *ſlain.*

But to leave the Affairs in this quarter of the World for a while, we'll ſee a little what the *Turks* have been doing

Affairs towards Hungary.

1586. doing nearer home, and observe that notwithstanding the League between the Emperor *Rodolphus* II. and *Amurath*, many sharp Rencounters happened between the Christians and *Turks* upon the Frontiers; and particularly in *December* this Year, when the *Turks* making an Inroad into *Croatia*, were defeated, and among others the Bassa of *Bosnia* and his Brother slain. The 1587. Christians also in *February* the following Year, being provoked by the frequent Outrages of the *Turks*, surprized the Castle of *Koppan* near the Lake of *Balaton*, where there were three Sangiacks, and 1000 Men, whereof a great many fell into the hands of the Christians, besides a Booty worth 40000 Ducats. The *Turks* waiting an opportunity to revenge the Injury, on the 8*th* of *August* brake into the Territories of the Christians, destroy'd 17 Villages about *Limbach*, and carried away all the Country People and Spoil along with them; which coming to the ears of *George* Count *Serini*, Governour of *Canisia*, he speedily drew some Troops together between the *Drave* and *Mura*, and being joined by Count *Nadasti*, *Bathiani* and others, he seized the Passes through which the *Turks* were to march, and made a horrible Slaughter of them. Here the Sangiack of *Five Churches* was slain, and the Sangiack of *Mohaz* thinking to make his escape stuck fast in a Morass, and with a Musket-ball was shot through the Head: The Sangiack of *Koppan* was some time after also taken, as were 1300 *Turks* more, 1500 Horses, besides 2000 Men that perished, and all the Booty and Prisoners recovered; and this Service was performed with 1500 Foot, and 500 Horse only, of whom there were but eleven slain, but most of the rest wounded. When *Amurath* was informed of these things, he ordered *Aly* Bassa of *Buda* to be strangled for violating the League, and *Sinan* Bassa to take his Post; and about this time likewise he renewed the League with *Sigismund* the new King of *Poland* now chosen, in the room of King *Stephen* deceased, to sit upon the Throne. But what Intentions soever *Amurath* had in changing the Bassa of *Buda*, the same *Sinan* brake into the Christians Territories the following Year in *September*, took and burnt *Saxo*; but *Claudius Russel* then General in those parts, having drawn some Troops together, defeated and slew 2500 of the *Turks*, besides 300 drowned

drowned in the River *Schayo:* And the Chriſtians ſoon after in their turn took ſome Forts from the Enemy in upper *Hungary*; but *Sinan* in ſome time after was diſplaced for what he did, and *Ferat* General of the *Perſians* put into his Poſt, to whom now it is time we ſhould return.

It was now come to the memorable Year 1588, when *Ferat*'s firſt Enterprize was to take the City of *Genge* from the *Perſians*, the ſame being before for fear of the *Turks* quite abandoned by the Inhabitants; who yet upon his Faith given returned again, and agreed to pay a yearly Tribute of 5000 Ducats: but when he would have advanced farther into the Enemy's Country, and that part of his Army was cut off by the way, the Soldiers mutinied, wounded and forced him to return. *Cicala* Baſſa alſo paſſing the *Euphrates*, had divers Skirmiſhes with the Enemy with various Succeſs; but *Amurath* at length growing weary of this long and chargeable War, and moved likewiſe thereunto by many other weighty Reaſons, a Peace was concluded for ten Years between him and the *Perſians*, to the great ſatisfaction of both Nations: Tho *Amurath* indeed preſently after was troubled with a more dangerous ſort of War; for the Janizaries returning out of *Perſia*, and very inſolently demanding their Pay, the Sultan to ſatisfy them raiſed the Value of his Coin, and laid a new ſort of Tax upon all his Subjects without any exception; but the People, eſpecially the Janizaries, very ſtiffly oppoſed it, and a Fire hapning next Night in *Conſtantinople*, they were ſo far, as they were commanded, from helping to quench it, that they hinder'd the People from carrying Water to do it, ſo that 7 of their Moſques, 5 great Inns, 15000 Houſes, and a great many Ware-houſes and Shops were conſumed by it. At laſt when *Amurath* found the very Prieſts and every body oppoſe the Payment of the Tax aforeſaid, he gave way that the *Beglerbeg* of *Greece*, and *Paſſy* the Jew, the Contrivers of it, ſhould fall a Sacrifice to the Rage of the People, and was glad to pay the Soldiers out of his own Treaſury. There being nothing elſe remarkable this Year in relation to *Amurath*'s Reign, ſave only his congratulating *Elizabeth* Queen of *England* in very obliging Terms upon the Succeſs of her Fleet againſt the mighty Armada of *Spain*,

1588. Genge *taken by* Ferat.

Janizaries *mutiny.*

1589. *Spain*, we ſhall paſs on to the next (which is ſtill leſs conſiderable) wherein the *Polonian Coſſacks* having according to their uſual manner made an Inroad into the *Turkiſh* and *Tartarian* Territories, ſurprized *Koſlan*, and did much miſchief; the *Tartars* by way of reprizal with 40000 Men broke into *Podolia*, and were not wanting to commit all the ſpoil and ravage they could, which had like to have imbroil'd the Affairs of the *Poles* and *Turks*: but all things were again accommodated by the Mediation of the Queen of *England*, and the League renewed.

1590. *Opinions about making a new War.* *Amurath* now at peace with all the World, the Baſſa's would not long let him be ſo, but uſed all the Arguments they could deviſe to make him ingage in another War; but againſt whom, was the grand matter to be determined, and indeed there were eight ſeveral Opinions concerning it. Some were for renewing the War againſt the *Perſians*, and the principal Arguments urged for it were, That the King of *Perſia* would of himſelf break the League, that the conquered Countries were not yet appeaſed, and that it were neceſſary to aſſure them by further footing in the Country, and that they ſhould have the aſſiſtance of the *Tartar* and Prince of *Geilan* therein. Others were for carrying the War into *Africa* againſt the King of *Morocco*, commonly called the *Seriphe*; ſaying, it was a ſhame for their Empire not to ſubdue thoſe few *Moors*, and to have ſo ſmall a Territory as they had in *Africa*, the third quarter of the World; that by this means they would get more Maritime Towns, and increaſe their Trade, *&c.* Thoſe that were for warring againſt the *Malteſe*, urged that the *Turks* received daily Injuries from them, which ought to be revenged as well as the former Diſgraces and Loſſes received in that Iſland in the days of *Solyman*. But ſuch as would have them invade the *Spaniſh* Territories, ſaid it was impoſſible for them ever to think of attaining to the Univerſal Monarchy, as long as *Spain* was ſo ſtrong and powerful; that now was their beſt opportunity to attack that Monarch, by reaſon of the Diverſions given him in the *Low-Countries* and elſewhere: and in ſhort, they multiplied ſo many Reaſons for undertaking this War, that one might think nothing could have withſtood them. But for thoſe that made for the Invaſion of the *Venetian* Territories,

Territories, they were rather probable than true; whereas the Arguments for attempting *Italy* carried a face of plauſibility along with them, ſome ſaying the *Romans* had at length attained to the Sovereignty of the World, becauſe they were in poſſeſſion of that Country, and that the *Huns*, *Goths*, *Vandals*, &c. bent all their thoughts upon it, with a great deal more to that purpoſe. Again, there were ſome who were for carrying the War into *Poland*, and they alſo had their Reaſons, tho weak, for it; while the prevailing Opinions and Arguments determined their Minds at laſt, eſpecially *Amurath* himſelf, to invade the Territories of the Emperor of *Germany*: whereunto he was much excited by *Oſman* Grand Viſier, and *Haſſan* Baſſa of *Boſnia*, who under pretence that the *Uſcocchi* and others of the Arch-Duke's Subjects infeſted the *Turkiſh* Territories, got leave to make Incurſions into *Croatia*; and indeed the *Turks* were not wanting upon this occaſion to infeſt the Subjects of the *Venetians* by Sea alſo, which made both the Emperor and Republick complain by their Embaſſadors at the Port, and deſire redreſs. But tho *Amurath* made a ſpecious pretence, as if he meant nothing more than to keep the League of 8 Years with his Imperial Majeſty, yet he ordered the Baſſa of *Boſnia* with an Army of 50000 Men to enter into *Croatia*, who laid ſiege to *Wihitz* the Metropolis of that Country, which he took upon Articles; while the Emperor ſollicited the Princes and States of *Germany* for Aid againſt the common Enemy, of whom *Erneſt* the Arch-Duke was the firſt that came with 5000 Men to *Gratz* in *Stiria*. In the mean time the *Turkiſh* Army daily increaſing in *Croatia*, hemmed in 6000 Foot and 500 Horſe of the Chriſtians, and having ſlain moſt of them, the Baſſa laded ſix Waggons with their Heads. The *Turks* proving thus ſucceſsful (while the Chriſtian Emperor and the Princes were debating and conſulting how to ward off the danger) on the 18th of *September*, ſuddenly in the Night attack'd the Caſtle of *Tocay* in Upper *Hungary*; but failing in that, as alſo in their attempt upon the leſſer *Comara* or *Shut*, *Haſſan* Baſſa on the 26th incamping with his Army between the *Kulp* and the *Save*, in the dead of the Night paſſed over into the fertile Iſle of *Turopolis*, which he miſerably waſted with Fire and Sword; and about the end of the Month the

1591. *War reſolved upon againſt the Emperor.*

1592. *Wihitz taken by the* Turks.

1592. the Bassa of *Zigeth* incamped with a strong Army between *Zigeth* and *Rodesto*: with which News, as also that the *Turkish* Army was now about 160000 strong, had committed great Ravages, and carried a multitude of People into Captivity, the Emperor was mightily alarmed; and yet more still, when he heard that the 7000, whom but a little before he had sent into *Croatia* to oppose the Incursions of the Enemy, sending 50 Horse to discover their strength, were misinformed therein by them; which rendring the rest careless of their safety in their Camp, they were suddenly surrounded by the *Turks*, and notwithstanding they were basely deserted by their Officers (who were afterwards punished for it with the Loss of their Heads) yet they made a most gallant and obstinate resistance till they were almost all slain; but they sold their Lives very dear, the *Turks* having lost about 12000 Men in this desperate Action. The Night following, the Infidels surprized St. *George*'s Castle, and without respect to Age or Sex put all to the Sword, except 150 Persons, and then burnt the Castle; they also took a great many Prisoners about *Siseg*, and to heighten the Calamities of this miserable Country, 300 Waggons laden with all sorts of Provisions, and sent out of the Provinces for the relief of the Garisons of *Croatia*, were all taken by the Enemy. But the *Turks* now hearing of the great Preparations of the Christians, and that they had made a strong Bridge over the *Drave*, which they had fortified, they withdrew into their own Territories; and the rather, because the Plague not only raged at *Constantinople*, but had also reached the *Turkish* Army, which put a period to the Troubles of this Year.

7000 *Christians slain by the* Turks.

1593. But in the beginning of the next, the Enemy renewed their Incursions; and the Garison of *Petrina*, a Fort new built by the *Turks* contrary to the League, on the *Kulp*, entring into the Isle of *Turopolis*, burnt the Town and Castle of *Beck-Vochobinam*, and having made a great slaughter, carried away 400 Prisoners. Neither were they wanting to do all the mischief they could in *Hungary*, where 3000 of them near *Nuhuse* dividing themselves into two Parties, one of them appear'd before the Town, while the other lay in ambush; this made the Garison sally, wherein the *Turks* decoy'd

Divers Incursions of Turks *into* Croatia, *&c.*

decoy'd them ſo far, that they were paſt the place where the reſt lay, who immediately roſe up with a deſign to ſurprize the Town, but they were beaten off by the great Cannon, and failed in their attempt. But the Gariſon of *Petrina* had better Succeſs in taking the Town of *Martenize*, and another Caſtle near the *Kulp*, where they got much Booty. The Caſtles of *St. Hedwig* and *Iſna* fell likewiſe into the hands of the Enemy, which were all clear Indications of the bloody War to enſue, as was the ſtrict confining of the Imperial Ambaſſador at *Conſtantinople* to his Houſe, by *Amurath*'s Order. But tho the Emperor was now fully ſatisfied of the Sultan's Reſolution for War, yet to ſhew his willingneſs to preſerve the League on his part, and to make a farther trial of their Intentions, he wrote both to him and *Sinan* the Prime Viſier upon the Subject, and was anſwered by the latter firſt, with a complaint that his Son was turned out from being Baſſa of *Buda*, becauſe he aſſured his Maſter the uſual Preſents from him would certainly come, but at laſt did not, with other frivolous matters. Then he propoſed he ſhould ſend the laſt two years Preſents ſpeedily to the Port, and ſet their Sangiacks at liberty, or elſe he muſt expect nothing but War and Deſtruction, *&c.* wherein, no doubt, he was ſincere enough, of which the Emperor was well aware, and therefore thought fit to ſave his Preſents.

Summer in the mean time approaching, the Baſſa of *Boſnia* reſolved to be revenged upon the Governour or Abbot of *Siſeg*, whom he affronted in this manner: The Baſſa the preceding Year having ſent a Meſſenger to require him to ſurrender the Caſtle, the Abbot, after he had civilly entertained him, and learnt all that he could of him concerning his Enemy, coming to know his Steward had plotted to betray the Caſtle to the Baſſa, he threw both him and the Meſſenger out at a Window into the *Save*; and upon the Baſſa's expoſtulating the matter, anſwered he had ſent the Meſſenger back ſome days before, and wondered he was not yet arrived: adding withal, that if he would ſend ſome Men of Quality for the covering of his Credit, to receive the Monaſtery, he was ready to yield it up. Hereupon ſome Troops of Horſe coming three days after from the Baſſa thither, the Noblemen firſt, and after

1593. ter them about 500 more were let in; but the Portcullisses being presently let down, they were all cut to pieces, while their Companions without fled with the ill News to the Bassa, who in his Rage swore by *Mahomet* he would raze the Monastery, and pull the Abbot's Skin over his Ears, and gave him to understand so much by a Letter written to that purpose. Now the Bassa being mindful of his Promise, with an Army of 30000 Men (after he had taken *Trenschyn*) came on the 12th of *June* and encamped before *Siseg*, where after he had beaten down the new Tower, he continued to batter the place for ten Days together without Intermission. This being known to the Bishop of *Zagrabia*, and *Eygenberg* the Imperial General then at *Zagrabia*, they craved Aid of Count *Aversberg* Governour of *Carolstad*; and having on the 17th of *June* rendevouz'd with their Forces at *Justawitz*, they passed the *Save* next day, and were joined by more Troops: but while they continued to the 22d encamped at *Gradisca* in expectation of the coming of Count *Serini*, they were advertised by a Soldier sent from the Besieged of the great distress of the Place; yet they were so divided in their Opinions about marching on to relieve or not relieve it, that had it not been for the Elocution and Arguments of Count *Aversberg*, they had given over the Enterprize. When they were advanced, being in number about 4000 Men, within a Mile of the Enemy's Camp, and drawn up in order of Battel, the *Turks* brought all their Horse over the *Kulp*, and doing the like with their Foot, the *Croats* and *Hussars* who were posted in the Van of the Christian Army began the Charge; but after a long Fight, being overpowered by the multitudes of their Enemies, they began to retreat: when *Aversberg* coming on, not only restored the Battel, but put the Bassa to flight, and coming to the new Bridge before the *Turks*, took the Passage from them; and in short, they were all either slain or drowned in the *Kulp* and *Odur*, being computed at about 18000 Men, among whom was the General himself. This was no sooner understood by those that remained at the Siege, but they set fire to their Powder and Provision, and fled; leaving their Tents, Artillery, and much rich Spoil to the Christians.

Siseg *besieged by the* Turks.

Turks *routed.*

But

But how ſucceſsful ſoever the Chriſtians were in this, they failed to take *Petrina*; and the Emperor *Rodolphus* could not procure a Peace from the Enemy, who at laſt after a very inſolent and blaſphemous manner denounced War againſt him, and *Amurath* gave the Command of his Army, conſiſting of 40000 Men, of whom 5600 were Janizaries, to *Sinan* the great Perſuader of this War, with which he marched towards *Buda*; while the *Beglerbeg* of *Greece* with a much greater Power advanced towards *Croatia*, and carried on a moſt vigorous Siege againſt *Siſeg*, which was exceeding valiantly defended till the 3d of *September*, when the Place was taken by Storm, and all the Gariſon cut to pieces. In the mean time *Sinan* the General being come before *Weisbrun*, laid cloſe Siege to that City, when the Gariſon eaſily perceiving it was not long to be defended againſt ſo great a Power, they ſet ſeveral Barrels of Gunpowder in Mines under the Walls and Bulwarks, with Trains to them, and ſo in the dead of the Night endeavour'd to make their eſcape, which they could not do ſo ſecretly but that the Enemy perceived them, and moſt of them were ſlain: However the *Turks* greedily entring the City on the 6th of *October*, there were abundance of them blown up by the Mines laid for them, and the place much defaced with the blow. From *Weisbrun* the Baſſa marched to the Caſtle of *Palotta*, which was quickly ſurrendred to him upon condition the Gariſon might ſafely depart with Bag and Baggage; but they were all contrary to his Oath barbarouſly ſlain, except the Commander and two more: and the Conſequence of this Succeſs was his eaſy ſubduing all the adjacent Country near the Lake of *Balaton*.

Siſeg taken.

Weisbrun and Palotta taken by the Turks.

The Chriſtians now at laſt having drawn together an Army of 18000 Men, Count *Hardeck* Covernour of *Raab*, about the latter end of *October* laid ſiege to *Alba Regalis*, and after ſome ſharp Aſſaults raiſed the ſame on the ſecond of *November*; but being informed by a Spy, as he was about to draw off, that the Enemy, to the number of 20000 Men under the Baſſa of *Buda*, was now at hand, he immediately drew his Men into order of Battel, and advanced towards them, and notwithſtanding the diſadvantage of the Ground, bravely mounted the Hill, fought, and by dint of Sword put them

Alba Regalis beſieged in vain by the Chriſtians.

1593. them to the Rout, killing about 8000 of them, and taking all their Cannon, Waggons and Provisions, besides many Standards. The Christians were mightily flushed with this Success, and many of them would have the Count besiege *Alba Regalis* in Form; but he contenting himself for the present with burning of its Suburbs, on the 5th of *November* departed and marched off for *Raab*.

Soon after this Count *Teffanbach* with 14000 Men laid siege to *Sabatzka* in upper *Hungary*, which he took *November* 19th, and put all the Garison to the sword: from whence he marched to attack *Filec*, which the Bassa of *Temeswaer* with an Army of 18000 Men came to relieve. This being understood by the Christian General and other Commanders, he with 7000 brave Soldiers suddenly fell upon the *Turks* in their Tents, routed and slew 6000, and taking all their Cannon and Baggage, returned victoriously to the Camp at *Filec*; where being joined by 6000 Men more under Count *Palfi*, they renewed the Siege with that vigour, that they took and burnt the City on the 24th of *November*, and notwithstanding the obstinate resistance of the Enemy, in two days more took the Castle, and put all to the sword, except 800 that in the most inward part thereof capitulated and were spared. Hereupon the *Turks* abandoned divers places, as the Castles of *Diitzein* and *Somoske*, with the Towns of *Setschine*, *Blavenstein* and *Sallek*; and nothing but the severity of the Season could have hindred the General from prosecuting his Success to much greater advantage. However divers other Territories and Places were still forsaken by the Enemy, as *Ainacke*, *Sollock*, *Westhe*, &c. while the Sangiack of *Palotta* was defeated by *Peter* the Hussar, and 3000 *Turks* more from *Petrina* and the adjacent Parts were routed by Count *Graswin*, with the Loss of 500 of them, besides divers considerable Prisoners, and the rest were almost all drowned in the River: with which, and the levying of many Soldiers in *Saxony* and other parts of *Germany* against the approaching Spring, to go against the Enemy, we shall conclude the Transactions of this Year.

Turks routed, and Filec *taken by the Christians.*

Divers places abandoned by the Turks.

1594. Now we are come to another Year, wherein *Amurath* going out of *Constantinople* on the 11th of *January* to review his Army, was overtaken with such a Storm

Amurath's Dream.

of

of Wind and Rain, as overthrew his Tent and Chariots, nay his Horſes and Men had much ado to withſtand it: which ſo troubled his Mind, that laying himſelf down upon his Bed, he dreamt he ſaw a very tall Man ſtanding with one Foot upon the Tower of *Conſtantinople*, and the other over the Strait in *Aſia*, who ſtretched out his Arms, and held the Sun in one of them and the Moon in the other; which whilſt he wondred at, the Monſter ſtruck the Tower with one Foot, which in the fall overthrew the great Moſque and the Imperial Palace. *Amurath* being awakened with the imaginary Noiſe, and ſuperſtitiouſly conſulting his Wizards about it, they hypocritically anſwered him, That foraſmuch as he had not with all his Power attacked the Chriſtians, their great Prophet *Mahomet* threatned by that Dream to overthrow the Religion and Empire of the *Turks*. Which vain Interpretation made him turn all his Forces againſt the Chriſtians; between whom, notwithſtanding the ſharpneſs of the Seaſon, there paſſed many ſharp skirmiſhes: and 2000 of the Infidels on the 15th of *January* making an Inroad into the Country about *Filec*, were ſet upon by Count *Teſſenbach*, where 1500 of them were ſlain or taken priſoners.

Novigrade beſieged and taken by the Chriſtians.

Now Arch-Duke *Matthias*, whom the Emperor had conſtituted General of his Army, being informed by a *Turkiſh* Soldier that *Novigrade* had but 800 Men in it, but Store of Proviſion, he uſed ſuch diligence that by the 8th of *March* he got before it with the whole Army; and after they had battered the Caſtle, which was ſtrongly fortified both by Art and Nature, as well as they could, the General commanded an Aſſault to be made upon it in the Night, which continued with much Fury till 4 in the Morning, when the ſame was given over by the Chriſtians: but the Arch-Duke ordering the Battery to be renewed, wherein it hapned the *Turks* principal Gunner in the Caſtle, who was a runnagade *German*, was ſlain; the Infidels were ſo diſcouraged, that after much altercation, they agreed to ſurrender upon condition of ſafe departure with their Clothes and Scimeters only. And ſo *Novigrade* was recovered by the Chriſtians, after it had been ſixty Years in poſſeſſion of the *Turks*; and the Infidels ſo reſented the Loſs of it, that all the excuſes which the

1594. commanding Sangiack made for his surrendring, could not save him from being hanged on a Tree near the Gate of *Buda*, by the order of the Bassa of that place. The Christians also were successful against the *Turks* in the Borders of *Stiria*, where Count *Serini* possest himself of the Castle of *Bresenza*, *Sigest*, and *Baboschе*, all which were abandoned by the Enemy; whereby there was an easy Passage opened as far as *Sigeth*, the Bassa whereof was not a little apprehensive of being besieged likewise by them. Neither were the Christians idle in upper *Hungary*, where Count *Teffenbach* the Arch-Duke's Lieutenant with an Army of 20000 Men, on the 16th of *April* laid siege to *Hatwan*, a strong Town 6 Miles from *Buda*; whose Bassa, with 13000 choice Soldiers, on the last of *April* incamped in the sight of the Christian Army by the River *Sagijwa*, in order to relieve it, but not being able to pass it there, he retreated towards *Jasprin*, where there was a Bridge and a good Ford also near it, with a design to get over, and so fall upon the Rear of the Christians. This being perceived by the Count, he with much difficulty passed the River, and coming up with the Bassa on the 1st of *May* between *Zarcha* and *Fuscasalva*, he first disordered his Rear with his Cannon, then fell on furiously upon their whole Body: the *Turks* for a long time sustained the Charge with a wonderful Resolution, but at length fled, and were pursued almost as far as *Buda*; having lost in the whole 2500 Men, and as many wounded, of whom many perished and were found dead in the Highways leading to *Pesth* and *Zolnock*, and no quarters given to any Prisoner. They also lost 13 Field-pieces and 24 Colours, and at the same time deserted *Jasprin* and the Fort of *Zabola*; after which, the Christians renewed the Siege of *Hatwan*.

Hatwan *besieged by the Christians.*

Gran *besieged by the Christians.*

While the Count was engaged in this Siege, the Arch-Duke with an Army of 44000 Men on the 6th of *May* approached the City of *Gran*, sometime the Metropolis of *Hungary*; and understanding by a *Turkish* Youth the State of the place, next day at night he ordered certain Balls of Wild-fire to be shot into the City, which set St. *Adelbert*'s Tower on fire; that also fired the Church and a great part of the Town, which did much damage to the Place. Next day the Besiegers having made a breach in the Castle-Wall, nigh unto which

which there was a high and broad ſandy Rampier, that could not well be battered, the *Germans* for all that fiercely aſſaulted the Breach, but could not carry it, ſo that they fell to their Battery again; when about 8 in the Morning the *Raſcians* in the old Town, offer'd the General, if he would, at a place by them appointed, aſſault the greater Town, and draw the *Turks* thither, they would in the mean time deliver the old City to the Chriſtians; which was agreed on and performed accordingly. Then the Chriſtians fell to work with the new Town and Caſtle, the laſt of which they battered ſeverely, and aſſaulted with greater Courage than Succeſs. The *Turks* a little before the Siege had fortified a Hill, which in ſome meaſure commanded the Caſtle; this the Chriſtians bravely gained on the 17th of *May*, and putting all the *Turks* there to the ſword, turned the Cannon upon the Caſtle: and on the 22d in the dead of the Night, ſome Companies of Foot attacked the lower Town, and with much ado got over the outer Wall; but meeting with a deep and broad Countermure, they were ſo diſmayed and put to it, to get back over the Ditch, that many of them ſtuck faſt in the deep Mud, and there periſhed; inſomuch that in the whole of this Attack, they had about 1000 Men ſlain and wounded. On the 4th of *June* about 500 *Turks* made a ſhift to get into the Town, which ſo incouraged the Beſieged, that they made a more obſtinate defence than before; ſo that in five ſeveral Aſſaults the Chriſtians loſt 5000 Men: All which did not ſo diſcourage the Arch-Duke, but he perſiſted to carry on the Siege, and at the ſame time ſent 1200 Foot to reinforce Count *Teffenbach* at the Siege of *Hatwan*. *June* 14th, he ordered the Town to be aſſaulted in three ſeveral places, which was pertinaciouſly continued from 9 to 3 with great Slaughter on both ſides, when the ſame was given over by the Chriſtians: about which time Count *Palfi* erected a Fort that barred the Beſieged from receiving Succours by the way of the River, and took alſo another Fort in an Iſland on the other ſide of the River. This done, the Caſtle and lower Town were moſt ſeverely battered from the new-built Fort, Iſland and old Town; and the *Turks* were ſo put to it, that they thought beſt to make a deſperate Sally upon the new Fort; which they renew-

The Particulars of the Siege.

1594. ed a second time, while the Admiral of their Gallies came up the River, and attacked it on that side also, tho all without Success. Many other notable Actions and Adventures happened during this Siege, till such time as the General receiving certain Advice of the March of *Sinan* Bassa with a great Army to the relief of the Besieged, did, in pursuance to the Resolution of the Council of War, tho contrary to the Protestation of divers Princes and others in the Army, raise the Siege on the 28th of *October*, having fired the old Town, and rased St. *Nicholas* Fort: and then passing the *Danube* near *Kokara*, expected what course *Sinan* would take, who was reported then to be near at hand. In the mean time, tho Count *Tessenbach* carried on the Siege of *Hatwan* with great Vigour, and slew 5000 Men that came under the Bassa of *Buda* to relieve it; yet the *Turks* proved so obstinate in the defence of the Place, and the Count was so weakened by his Losses, and the *Hungarians* slinking home from him, that he thought also fit to give over this Enterprize. But while the Christians were ingaged in the two Sieges before mentioned, the *Rascians*, weary of the *Turkish* Thraldom, first took 13 of the *Turkish* Vessels upon the *Danube*, with great store of Ammunition and Provision; and then drawing together a Body of 15000 Men between *Buda* and *Belgrade*, they twice defeated the Bassa of *Temeswaer*, in his return with 14000 Men from fortifying and victualling *Lippa*, with great loss; and afterwards took *Beezkerek* 4 Miles from *Belgrade*, the Castle of *Ottadt*; and laying siege to that of *Beche* upon the *Theysse*, the old Bassa of *Temeswaer* and his Son came in great haste with 11000 Men to the relief of it; but he was so encountred by the brave *Rascians*, that he lost near 10000 of his Men with 18 pieces of Cannon: and the Consequence of the Victory was their taking *Wersetza* and *Lutz*, and their sending to the Arch-Duke for Aid, especially of Gunners, and offering to put themselves and their Country under the Emperor's Protection.

The Siege of Gran *raised.*

The Siege of Hatwan *raised.*

The Rascians *Actions against the* Turks.

Sinan *takes* Dotis, *&c.* Thus were all things almost in a broil in *Hungary*, when *Sinan* approached with a huge Army of 150000 Men, of whom 40000 were *Tartars*; who with much ado had made their escape thro *Podolia* and upper *Hungary*,

gary, from the *Coſſacks*, after they had firſt loſt 30000 of their number. The Armies, both of the *Turks* and Chriſtians, marched for ſome time, in ſight of one another, on each ſide the *Danube*, the firſt towards *Comorra*, and the other to *Dotis*; where the Baſſa arriving on the 21ſt of *July*, he ſo plied the Place with his Batteries and conſtant Alarms, that it was ſurrendred to him in 3 days time; and the Caſtle of St. *Martins*, not far from *Dotis*, fell likewiſe quickly into his hands. This done, the Baſſa ſet forward towards *Raab*, which was his principal aim before, the ſame being a City about 12 *German* Miles diſtant from *Vienna*, and accounted the principal Bulwark of it; whoſe Governour at this time was the valiant Count *Hardeck*, and the Gariſon 5000 ſtrong of all ſorts. *Sinan* inveſted the Place on the laſt of *July*, and on the 2d of *Auguſt* furiouſly battered it, and run his Trenches within Muſket-ſhot of the Walls; while 4000 *Tartars* and 6000 *Turks* paſſing over the River, took a Fort of the Chriſtians, and turned the Cannon thereof upon the Chriſtian Camp: which ſo alarmed them, that they forced the *Turks* back again thro the River, after they had ſlain divers of them, and almoſt all the reſt were drowned. They were alſo overthrown upon a ſecond coming over with a great Slaughter: Neither was *Sinan* more ſucceſsful in the Siege, wherein he made yet but a ſmall Progreſs; and ſo we leave him, and obſerve, That ſome *Turks* on the 15th of *Auguſt* before Sunriſing, getting in Boats over the *Danube*, took a Fort from the Chriſtians; but *Medici* with 2000 *Italians* quickly beat them out again, ſlew many of them, and forcing the reſt into the River, they were all drowned. Neither did 5000 *Tartars*, who in other places were got over the River into an Iſland, fare much better; for the *Huſſars* driving them back into the River, and the *Turks* on the other ſide with their Arms in their hands pretending to ſtop their Flight, there was ſuch a Rencounter between them, that few of the *Tartars* eſcaped to carry the ill News to their Fellows. However the *Tartars* being yet unwilling to take warning, on the 19th went over into the Iſland again, and loſt 3000 of their number, as they did alſo 2000 in aſſiſting the *Turks* to attack the Chriſtians Camp, beſides the *Turks* that

Lays ſiege to Raab, *with the particulars of it.*

1594. that were slain there. Thus was the *Turkish* Army daily diminished, besides that the want of Provision, and the bloody Flux, so much increased among them, that many would have persuaded *Sinan* to raise the Siege, which he could not be induced to do; notwithstanding the Imperialists in the mean time were so successful as to take *Castrowitz* near *Croatia*, *Petrina*, *Siseg* and *Gara*, whereby the whole Country of *Croatia* was for that time secured.

August 28th, 20000 Christians passing over out of the Island, and joining with the Besieged, fell upon the *Turkish* Camp, and penetrated so far as to nail some of their Cannon; but the *Turks* being reinforced, beat them off, with considerable Loss on both sides. In the mean time 1500 *Hungarians* and *Germans* coming over in Boats to help their Friends, and landing a little too late, they were beaten back, and many of them drowned; but the Christians not discouraged herewith, sallied upon the Enemy a second time, slew 2000 of them, and took 17 Colours, with the Loss of 400 on their own side. In short, no Day passed without some Action, till the 9th of *September* came, when 10000 *Turks* having landed in the Isle of *Schut*, suddenly set upon the secure Christians, and slew about 2000 of them; while the Arch-Duke *Matthias*, General of the Army, narrowly escaped, leaving all their Artillery, Provision, Ammunition, Mony and Baggage behind: so that the Loss was computed, with the Waggons, Boats, and Gallies that were lost, at 500000 Ducats. But tho this Victory cost the Enemy 2500 Men, yet they hereby opened themselves a way as far as *Vienna*, sacked and burnt *Weisenburg*, and committed all the Spoil they could in the Country. The Bassa being incouraged with these Successes, on the 23d of *September* gave a general Assault upon the Town, which was continued from Morning till Night; and the same was renewed for the two following Days, with all the desperate Resolution imaginable, wherein 12000 *Turks* were slain: But the *Turks*, in a few Days after, having by a Mine blown up one of the Bulwarks of the Town, this in some measure so filled up the Ditch, that they with all their Force thrice next day attempted to enter it, tho without Success. Neither this, nor the Bravery of the Besieged, would make them give over; but they repeated

repeated their Batteries and Aſſaults ſo often, that at length they gain'd two of the Bulwarks, to their great Advantage, and Terror of the Beſieg'd. Whereupon Count *Hardeck* the Governour entring into a Conſultation with the chief Officers about giving up the Place, after he had got a publick Inſtrument under their hands, to certify the World it was impoſſible to be defended any longer, he baſely and traitorouſly ſurrendred that ſtrong and well provided Fortreſs to the Enemy; for which afterwards he had his right Hand cut off, and was beheaded.

Raab *betray'd to the* Turks.

Sinan fluſh'd with this Succeſs, laid ſiege to the ſtrong Town of *Comorra* in the Iſle of *Schut*, both by Water and Land, which was for ſome time both bravely attack'd and defended; but Arch-Duke *Matthias* in the mean time having drawn a good Body together on the 28th of *October*, encamp'd at *Nitria* within five miles of *Comorra*: which, with the *Tartars* leaving him, and returning home, ſo diſcourag'd *Sinan* and his *Turks*, that he immediately rais'd the Siege, and paſſing over the *Danube*, he march'd to *Dotis*, from whence the Army were ſent into Winter Quarters; of whoſe farther Proceedings in this part of the Country we ſhall hear no more during this Emperor's Reign, and therefore we will a little follow the *Tartars* for the preſent, and obſerve ſome of their Adventures. When they were got in their way home as far as the Frontiers of *Tranſylvania* and *Moldavia*, ſeveral of them were cut off by Count *Palfi*, and the reſt finding the Paſſes beſet by the Prince and Vayvod of *Wallachia*, they fell to burning ſome Towns and Villages in *Upper Hungary* about *Tockay*; and paſſing over the *Danube* at *Gran*, they winter'd at *Weisbrun*, *Palotta*, and other Places about *Raab*, and liv'd upon the Spoil of the poor diſtreſs'd Chriſtians on the Frontiers of *Auſtria*, even as far as *Mineſdorf*.

Comorra *beſieg'd in vain by the* Turks.

Now theſe *Tartars*, when they firſt came to the aid of *Sinan*, not only did a world of Miſchief in *Tranſylvania*, but conſpiring with ſome of the principal *Tranſylvanians*, in concert with the Port, who had entertain'd ſome ſuſpicion of the Prince, to take him priſoner and depoſe him, ſome of the Traitors deſigning to get *Balthazor Bator* the Prince's near Kinſman, advanc'd in his room; the Prince eluded all their Deſigns,

Princes of Tranſylvania, Wallachia, *&c. revolt from the* Turks.

1595. ſigns, and manag'd his matters ſo well, that he ſecur'd and executed all the Conſpirators at *Clauſenburg*. Then Prince *Sigiſmund* not only entred into a ſtrict Alliance with the Emperor *Rodolphus* againſt the *Turks*, but by many Arguments and Perſuaſions induc'd *Michael* Vayvod of *Wallachia*, and a Prince of equal Merit with himſelf, to revolt from the Infidels. And he had no ſmall Influence over *Aaron*, Palatine of *Moldavia*, to do the like; but more particularly *Michael* being a Prince very zealous for the Honour of his Country, and not able to bear any longer the Inſolency of the *Turks*, call'd a General Aſſembly of the States of his Country, wherein it was agreed, by an unanimous Conſent, to join with the Emperor, and throw off the *Turkiſh* Yoke. Whereupon the Vayvod, with 2000 *Hungarians*, firſt ſlew 1000 Janizaries, that had proudly without his leave ſettled in his Country, then the reſt of the *Turks* and *Jews* there; after which he took *Dziurdzowa*, a great Town of the *Turks* upon the *Danube*, and burnt it. The *Turks*, that ſought Revenge upon him, who ſeem'd ſtill to retain his Obedience to *Amurath*, ſent one of their *Emirs*, a Deſcendant of the falſe Prophet *Mahomet*, and then *Cadileſchar*, with 2000 Men, 50 of the Grand Signior's Chamber, and many of the *Zanzii* and *Spahi* ſuddenly to *Bucharеſt*, the Vayvod's Place of Reſidence, with a deſign indeed to ſurprize him. In order to which, after they had behav'd themſelves inſolently enough in the Place, the *Emir* knowing he lay in his Palace near the Monaſtry, without the City, upon the River *Dembowiz*, went thither with 10000 Men, under pretence of paying him a Viſit: But the Vayvod ſuſpecting the matter, preſently got into his Camp of *Hungarian* Mercenaries, when the *Turk*, deceiv'd of his hope, ſent to know why he entertain'd ſo many *Hungarians* in time of Peace, and promis'd, if he disbanded them, to lend him a Tun of Gold to pay them off. This the Vayvod ſeem'd thankfully to accept of, but yet commanded the *Hungarians* to be on their guard, while himſelf with ſome other Soldiers and Courtiers drawing together in a Valley, ſuddenly ſurrounded and ſet upon the *Turks* in their Lodgings, which they ſet on fire; who were, notwithſtanding the bold Reſiſtance they made, either all burnt, ſlain, or taken priſoners: among which

which laſt was the *Emir* himſelf, who was ſo far from being able with his Mony and large Promiſes to ſave the Lives of others, that he could not prevail for his own. The Vayvod incourag'd herewith, not long after ſurpriz'd and ſack'd the Town of *Phloch*, and did the ſame by *Herſowa*, after he had defeated the *Turks* upon the Ice in his March; with the Spoils whereof, and that of *Siliſtria* a City of *Macedonia*, which he alſo ranſack'd and burnt, he mightily fluſh'd his Men, and was now become no leſs a Terror than a Grief unto the Enemy.

Amurath's Death and Character, &c.

But while the foremention'd Confederacy between the Emperor and Prince of *Tranſylvania* was in agitation, and that the Troubles thus aroſe in *Wallachia*, *Amurath* grievouſly afflicted with the Stone and Falling-ſickneſs, his uſual Diſtemper, and inwardly tormented with the Inſolency of the Janizaries and other matters, towards the cloſe of the laſt year, in great Agony both of Body and Mind, departed this Life on the 18th of *January*, 1595. when he had liv'd 51 years, or as ſome ſay 52, and of them reign'd 19. His Death was attended with ſo ſudden and terrible a Storm at *Conſtantinople*, that many thought the World was juſt diſſolving. He was a Prince of a manly Stature, but pale and corpulent, wearing his Beard thin and long. The fierce Nature of the *Ottoman* Kings did not appear in his Countenance, he being indeed of himſelf of a peaceable Diſpoſition, a Lover of Juſtice, and in the way of his Superſtition very zealous. The Riot and Exceſs of his Father's Reign he reform'd by his own Temperance, and the ſevere Puniſhment of notorious Drunkards; tho ſome have reported he would drink plentifully himſelf of Wormwood Wine. He was more of a penurious nature than became his high Quality, and gave more way to the Counſels of his Mother, Wife, and Siſter, than of his great Baſſa's, which many imputed to be Simplicity in him. His Corps was pompouſly bury'd by *Mahomet* his eldeſt Son, in a Moſque which he himſelf had before built at *Conſtantinople*.

Chriſtian

Chriſtian Princes Cotemporaries with *Amurath* III.

			A.D.	R.
Emperors of *Germany*.		*Maximilian* II.	1565.	12.
		Rodolph II.	1577.	37.
Kings	Of *England*.	Queen *Elizabeth*.	1558.	45.
	Of *France*.	*Charles* IX.	1560.	14.
		Henry III.	1574.	14.
		Henry IV.	1589.	21.
	Of *Scotland*.	*James* VI.	1565.	60.
Popes of *Rome*.		*Gregory* XIII.	1572.	12.
		Pius I.	1585.	5.
		Urban VII.	1590.	12 days
		Gregory XIV.	1590.	10m. 10d
		Innocent IX.	1591.	2m. 1 d.
		Clement VII.	1592.	13.

The End of the First Volume.